# Foreword

**Congratulations on choosing a SUBARU vehicle. This Owner's Manual has all the information necessary to keep your SUBARU in excellent condition and to properly maintain the emission control system for minimizing emission pollutants. We urge you to read this manual carefully so that you may understand your vehicle and its operation. For information not found in this Owner's Manual, such as details concerning repairs or adjustments, we recommend that you contact the SUBARU dealer from whom you purchased your SUBARU or the nearest SUBARU dealer.**

**The information, specifications and illustrations found in this manual are those in effect at the time of printing. FUJI HEAVY INDUSTRIES LTD. reserves the right to change specifications and designs at any time without prior notice and without incurring any obligation to make the same or similar changes on vehicles previously sold. This Owner's Manual applies to all models and covers all equipment, including factory installed options. Some explanations, therefore may be for equipment not installed in your vehicle.**

**Please leave this manual in the vehicle at the time of resale. The next owner will need the information found herein.**

**NOTE: "SUBARU dealer" means an authorized SUBARU dealer and/or repairer.**

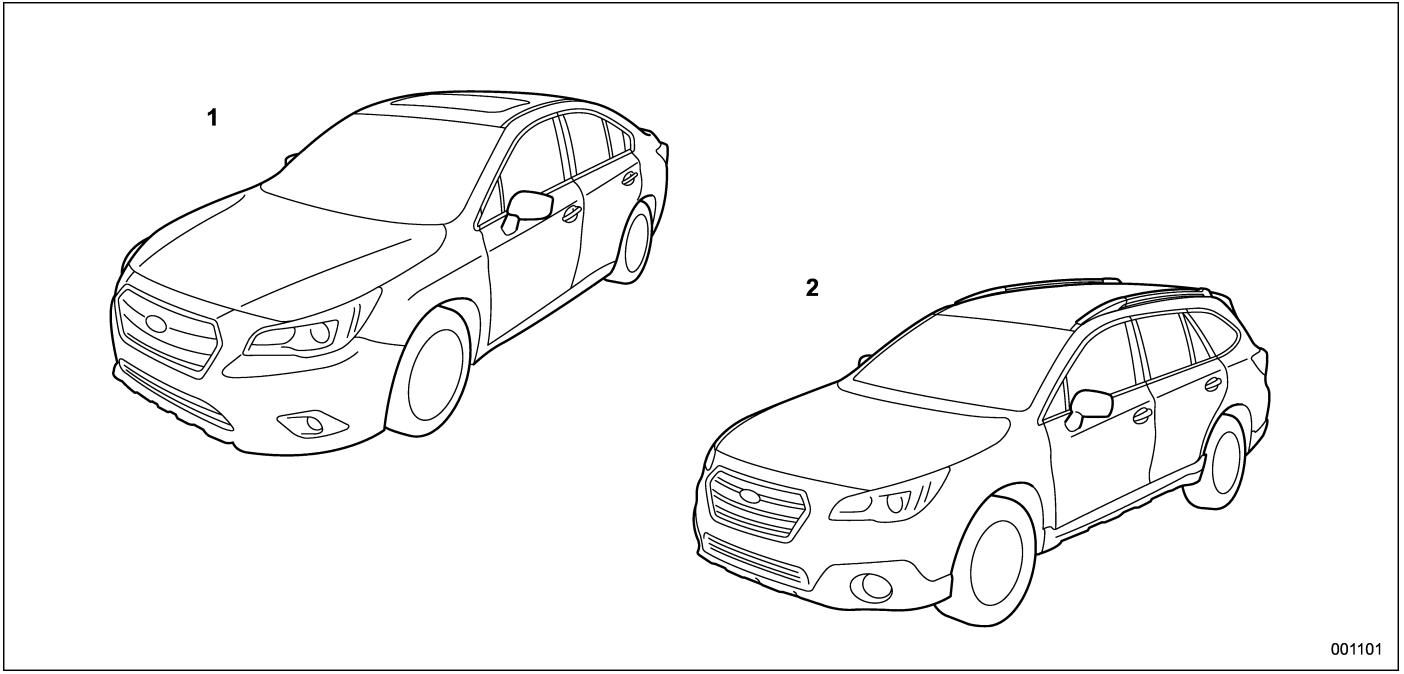
**FUJI HEAVY INDUSTRIES LTD., TOKYO, JAPAN**

SUBARU is a registered trademark of FUJI HEAVY INDUSTRIES LTD.

Ⓒ Copyright 2015 FUJI HEAVY INDUSTRIES LTD.

This manual uses recycled paper.

This manual describes the following vehicle types.




1) Sedan
2) Outback

## Warranties

All warranty information, including details of coverage and exclusions, is in the “Warranty and Service Booklet”. Please read these warranties carefully.

## How to use this Owner’s Manual

### ■ Using your Owner’s Manual

Before you operate your vehicle, carefully read this manual. To protect yourself and extend the service life of your vehicle, follow the instructions in this manual. Failure to observe these instructions may result in serious injury and damage to your vehicle.

This manual is composed of fourteen chapters. Each chapter begins with a brief table of contents, so you can usually tell at a glance if that chapter contains the information you want.

**Chapter 1: Seat, seatbelt and SRS airbags**

This chapter informs you how to use the seat and seatbelt and contains precautions for the SRS airbags.

**Chapter 2: Keys and doors**

This chapter informs you how to operate the keys, locks and windows.

**Chapter 3: Instruments and controls**

This chapter informs you about the operation of instrument panel indicators and how to use the instruments and other switches.

**Chapter 4: Climate control**

This chapter informs you how to operate the climate control.

**Chapter 5: Audio**

This chapter informs you how to operate your audio system.

**Chapter 6: Interior equipment**

This chapter informs you how to operate interior equipment.

**Chapter 7: Starting and operating**

This chapter informs you how to start and operate your SUBARU.

**Chapter 8: Driving tips**

This chapter informs you how to drive your SUBARU in various conditions and explains some safety tips on driving.

**Chapter 9: In case of emergency**

This chapter informs you what to do if you have a problem, such as a flat tire or engine overheating.

**Chapter 10: Appearance care**

This chapter informs you how to keep your SUBARU looking good.

**Chapter 11: Maintenance and service**

This chapter informs you when you need to take your SUBARU to the dealer for scheduled maintenance and informs you how to keep your SUBARU running properly.

*– CONTINUED –*

**Chapter 12: Specifications**
This chapter informs you about dimension and capacities of your SUBARU.
**Chapter 13: Supplement**
This chapter informs you of supplementary information complied with some countries' requirements.
**Chapter 14: Index**
This is an alphabetical listing of all that's in this manual. You can use it to quickly find something you want to read.

**For models with EyeSight system:**
For details about the EyeSight system, refer to the Owner's Manual supplement for the EyeSight system.

## ■ Safety warnings

You will find a number of WARNINGs, CAUTIONs and NOTEs in this manual.
These safety warnings alert you to potential hazards that could result in injury to you or others.
Please read these safety warnings as well as all other portions of this manual carefully in order to gain a better understanding of how to use your SUBARU vehicle safely.

**⚠ WARNING**

**A WARNING indicates a situation in which serious injury or death could result if the warning is ignored.**

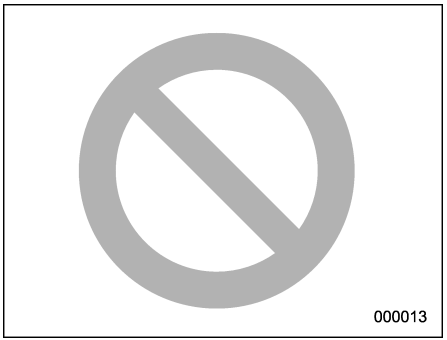
**⚠ CAUTION**

**A CAUTION indicates a situation in which injury or damage to your vehicle, or both, could result if the caution is ignored.**

**NOTE**

**A NOTE gives information or suggestions how to make better use of your vehicle.**

## ■ Safety symbol




You will find a circle with a slash through it in this manual. This symbol means "Do not", "Do not do this", or "Do not let this happen", depending upon the context.

## ■ Abbreviation list

You may find several abbreviations in this manual. The meanings of the abbreviations are shown in the following list.

| Abbreviation | Meaning |
|---|---|
| A/C | Air conditioner |
| ABS | Anti-lock brake system |
| ALR | Automatic locking retractor |
| AWD | All-wheel drive |
| CVT | Continuously variable transmission |
| EBD | Electronic brake force distribution |
| ELR | Emergency locking retractor |
| FWD | Front-wheel drive |
| GPS | Global positioning system |
| INT | Intermittent |
| LED | Light emitting diode |
| LHD | Left-hand drive |
| LSD | Limited slip differential |
| MPW | Maximum permissible weight |
| MT | Manual transmission |

| Abbreviation | Meaning |
|---|---|
| OBD | On-board diagnostics |
| Rear MPAW | Maximum permissible rear axle weight |
| RHD | Right-hand drive |
| RON | Research octane number |
| SI-DRIVE | SUBARU Intelligent Drive |
| SRS | Supplemental restraint system |
| TPMS | Tire pressure monitoring system |

## Vehicle symbols

There are some of the symbols you may see on your vehicle.

| Mark | Name |
|---|---|
|  | WARNING |
|  | CAUTION |
|  | Read these instructions carefully |
|  | Wear eye protection |
|  | Battery fluid contains sulfuric acid |
|  | Keep children away |
|  | Keep flames away |
|  | Prevent explosions |

## Safety precautions when driving

### ■ Seatbelt and SRS airbag

**⚠ WARNING**

- **All persons in the vehicle should fasten their seatbelts BEFORE the vehicle starts to move. Otherwise, the possibility of serious injury becomes greater in the event of a sudden stop or accident.**
- **To obtain maximum protection in the event of an accident, the driver and all passengers in the vehicle should always wear seatbelts when the vehicle is moving. The SRS (Supplemental Restraint System) airbag does not do away with the need to fasten seatbelts. In combination with the seatbelts, it offers the best combined protection in case of a serious accident.**

  **Not wearing a seatbelt increases the chance of severe injury or death in a crash even when the vehicle has the SRS airbag.**
- **The SRS airbags deploy with**

*– CONTINUED –*

**considerable speed and force. Occupants who are out of proper position when the SRS airbag deploys could suffer very serious injuries. Because the SRS airbag needs enough space for deployment, the driver should always sit upright and well back in the seat as far from the steering wheel as practical while still maintaining full vehicle control and the front passenger should move the seat as far back as possible and sit upright and well back in the seat.**

For instructions and precautions, carefully read the following sections.

- For the seatbelt system, refer to "Seatbelts" ☞1-15.
- For the SRS airbag system, refer to "*SRS airbag (Supplemental Restraint System airbag)" ☞1-45.

## ■ Child safety

**⚠ WARNING**

- **Never hold a child on your lap or in your arms while the vehicle is moving. The passenger cannot protect the child from injury in a collision, because the child will be caught between the passenger and objects inside the vehicle.**
- **While riding in the vehicle, infants and small children should always be placed in the REAR seat in an infant or a child restraint system which is appropriate for the child's age, height and weight. If a child is too big for a child restraint system, the child should sit in the REAR seat and be restrained using the seatbelts. According to accident statistics, children are safer when properly restrained in the rear seating positions than in the front seating positions. Never allow a child to stand up or kneel on the seat.**
- **Put children in the REAR seat properly restrained at all times in a child restraint device or in a seatbelt. The SRS airbag deploys with considerable speed and force and can injure or even kill children, especially if they are not restrained or improperly restrained. Because children are lighter and weaker than adults, their risk of being injured from deployment is greater.**




A) AIRBAG

**WARNING**

- **NEVER use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIRBAG in front of it, DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur.**
- **Always turn the child safety locks to the "LOCK" position when children sit on the rear seat. Serious injury could result if a child accidentally opens the door and falls out. Refer to "Child safety locks" ☞2-26.**
- **Always lock the passengers' windows using the lock switch when children are riding in the vehicle. Failure to follow this procedure could result in injury to a child operating the power window. Refer to "Windows" ☞2-27.**
- **Never leave unattended children, adults or animals in the vehicle. They could accidentally injure themselves or others through inadvertent operation of the vehicle. Also, on hot or sunny days, the temperature in a closed vehicle could quickly become high enough to cause severe or possibly fatal injuries to them.**
- **Help prevent children, adults or animals from locking themselves in the trunk. On hot or sunny days, the temperature in the trunk could quickly become high enough to cause death or serious heat-related injuries including brain damage to anyone locked inside, particularly for small children.**
- **When leaving the vehicle, close all windows and lock all doors. Also make certain that the trunk is closed.**

For instructions and precautions, carefully read the following sections.

- For the seatbelt system, refer to "Seatbelts" ☞1-15.
- For the child restraint system, refer to "Child restraint systems" ☞1-26.
- For the SRS airbag system, refer to "*SRS airbag (Supplemental Restraint System airbag)" ☞1-45.

## ■ Engine exhaust gas (carbon monoxide)

**WARNING**

- **Never inhale engine exhaust gas. Engine exhaust gas contains carbon monoxide, a colorless and odorless gas which is dangerous, or even lethal, if inhaled.**
- **Always properly maintain the en-**

*– CONTINUED –*

**gine exhaust system to prevent engine exhaust gas from entering the vehicle.**

- **Never run the engine in a closed space, such as a garage, except for the brief time needed to drive the vehicle in or out of it.**
- **Avoid remaining in a parked vehicle for a long time while the engine is running. If that is unavoidable, then use the ventilation fan to force outside air into the vehicle.**
- **Always keep the front ventilator inlet grille free from snow, leaves or other obstructions to ensure that the ventilation system always works properly.**
- **If at any time you suspect that exhaust fumes are entering the vehicle, have the problem checked and corrected as soon as possible. If you must drive under these conditions, drive only with all windows fully open.**
- **Keep the trunk lid or rear gate closed while driving to prevent exhaust gas from entering the vehicle.**

## ■ Drinking and driving

**⚠ WARNING**

**Drinking and then driving is very dangerous. Alcohol in the bloodstream delays your reaction and impairs your perception, judgment and attentiveness. If you drive after drinking – even if you drink just a little – it will increase the risk of being involved in a serious or fatal accident, injuring or killing yourself, your passengers and others. In addition, if you are injured in the accident, alcohol may increase the severity of that injury.**

**Please don't drink and drive.**

Drunken driving is one of the most frequent causes of accidents. Since alcohol affects all people differently, you may have consumed too much alcohol to drive safely even if the level of alcohol in your blood is below the legal limit. The safest thing you can do is never drink and drive.

## ■ Drugs and driving

**⚠ WARNING**

**There are some drugs (over the counter and prescription) that can delay your reaction time and impair your perception, judgment and attentiveness. If you drive after taking them, it may increase your, your passengers' and other persons' risk of being involved in a serious or fatal accident.**

If you are taking any drugs, check with your doctor or pharmacist or read the literature that accompanies the medication to determine if the drug you are taking can impair your driving ability. Do not drive after taking any medications that can make you drowsy or otherwise affect your ability to safely operate a motor vehicle. If you have a medical condition that requires you to take drugs, please consult with your doctor.

Never drive if you are under the influence of any illicit mind-altering drugs. For your own health and well-being, we urge you not to take illegal drugs in the first place and to seek treatment if you are addicted to those drugs.

## ■ Driving when tired or sleepy

**⚠ WARNING**

**When you are tired or sleepy, your reaction will be delayed and your perception, judgment and attentiveness will be impaired. If you drive when tired or sleepy, your, your passengers' and other persons' chances of being involved in a serious accident may increase.**

Please do not continue to drive but instead find a safe place to rest if you are tired or sleepy. On long trips, you should make periodic rest stops to refresh yourself before continuing on your journey. When possible, you should share the driving with others.

## ■ Modification of your vehicle

**⚠ CAUTION**

**Your vehicle should not be modified. Modification could affect its performance, safety or durability, and may even violate governmental regulations. In addition, damage or performance problems resulting from modification may not be covered under warranties.**

## ■ Car phone/cell phone and driving

**⚠ CAUTION**

**Do not use a car phone/cell phone while driving; it may distract your attention from driving and can lead to an accident. If you use a car phone/cell phone, pull off the road and park in a safe place before using your phone. In some countries, only hands-free phones may legally be used while driving.**

## ■ Driving vehicles equipped with navigation system

**⚠ WARNING**

**Do not allow the monitor to distract your attention from driving. Also, do not operate the controls of the navigation system while driving. The loss of attention to driving could lead to an accident. If you wish to operate the controls of the navigation system, first take the vehicle off the road and stop it in a safe place.**

## ■ Driving with pets

Unrestrained pets can interfere with your driving and distract your attention from driving. In a collision or sudden stop, unrestrained pets or cages can be thrown around inside the vehicle and hurt you or your passengers. Besides, the pets can be hurt under these situations. It is also for their own safety that pets should be properly restrained in your vehicle. Restrain a pet with a special traveling harness which can be secured to the rear seat with a seatbelt or use a pet carrier which can be secured to the rear seat by routing a seatbelt through the carrier's

*– CONTINUED –*

handle. Never restrain pets or pet carriers in the front passenger's seat. For further information, consult your veterinarian, local animal protection society or pet shop.

### ■ Tire pressures

Check and, if necessary, adjust the pressure of each tire (including the spare — if equipped) at least once a month and before any long journey.

Check the tire pressure when the tires are cold. Use a pressure gauge to adjust the tire pressures to the values shown on the tire placard.

For detailed information, refer to "Tires and wheels" ☞11-33.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Driving at high speeds with excessively low tire pressures can cause the tires to deform severely and to rapidly become hot. A sharp increase in temperature could cause tread separation, and destruction of the tires. The resulting loss of vehicle control could lead to an accident.**

## EU Battery directive 2006/66/EC

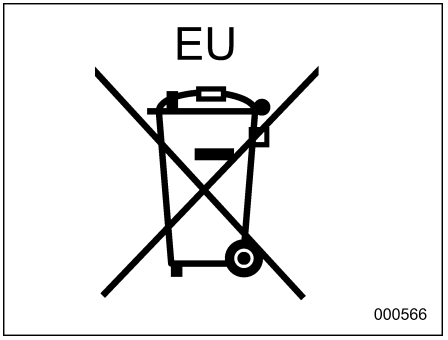
Followings are the symbol of EU Battery Directive 2006/66/EC.

This directive applies to the collection of batteries, recycling of disposed batteries and accumulators, and batteries not disposed of in landfills because they could be hazardous to the environment.

In your vehicle, there are some batteries that do not have the 2006/66/EC EU Battery directive symbol.

Please check and obey all local laws and regulations for the disposal of batteries or accumulations.

The following devices utilize batteries that do not have the symbol:




- Keys (if equipped): CR1620
- Access keys (if equipped): CR2032

*1: This battery cannot be replaced or removed individually. It must be replaced or removed with the navigation system as a unit.

## General information

### ■ Gear shift indicator (Europe models)

**⚠ CAUTION**

**The indication of the gear shift indicator is only a guideline for driving more fuel-efficiently. The indicator does not inform the driver about safe shift operation timing. The driver has the responsibility for suitable shift operation depending on the traffic conditions or driving conditions (e.g., overtaking or driving on an uphill slope).**

This indicator supports the driver to drive more fuel-efficiently. The vehicle system determines the shift operation timing depending on the driving conditions, and informs the driver by the indicator on the combination meter. For details, refer to “Select lever/gear position indicator” ☞3-31.

### NOTE

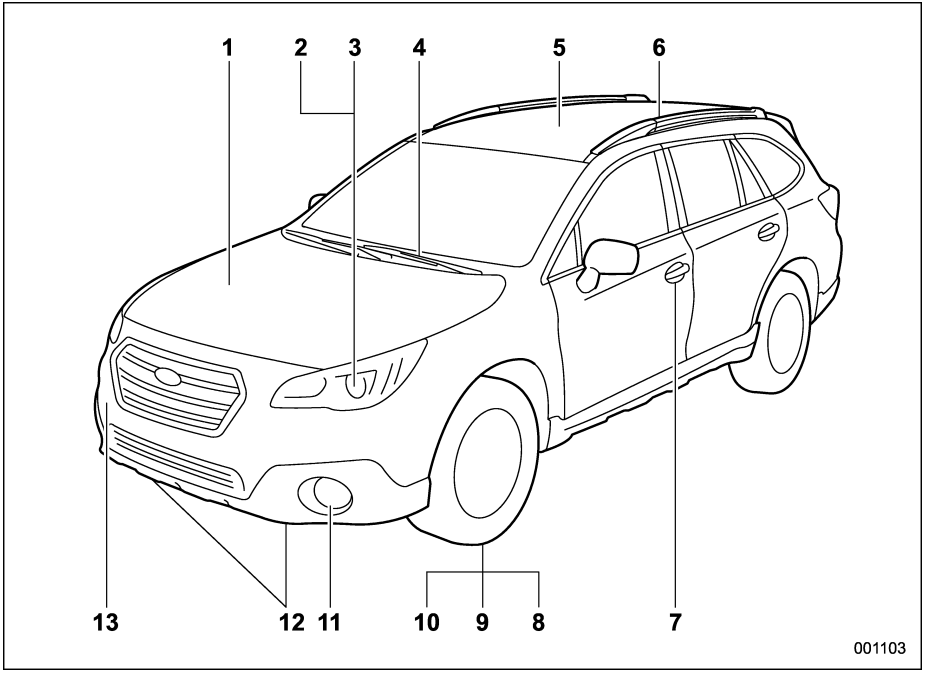
**Usually, the gear shift indicator is guideline for driving more fuel-efficiency and it also may operate to prevent a possible engine stall at low engine speed.**

## Table of contents

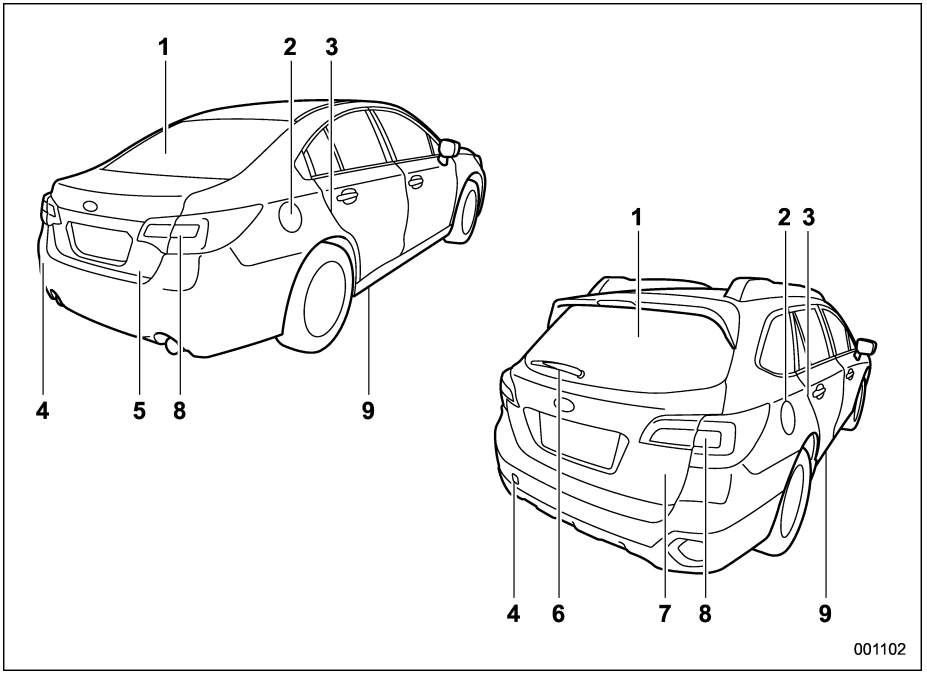

| | |
|---|---|
| *Seat, seatbelt and SRS airbags* | *1* |
| *Keys and doors* | *2* |
| *Instruments and controls* | *3* |
| *Climate control* | *4* |
| *Audio* | *5* |
| *Interior equipment* | *6* |
| *Starting and operating* | *7* |
| *Driving tips* | *8* |
| *In case of emergency* | *9* |
| *Appearance care* | *10* |
| *Maintenance and service* | *11* |
| *Specifications* | *12* |
| *Supplement* | *13* |
| *Index* | *14* |

## Illustrated index

### ■ Exterior




1) Engine hood (page 11-11)
2) Headlight switch (page 3-47)
3) Replacing bulbs (page 11-49)
4) Wiper switch (page 3-59)
5) Sunroof (page 2-39)
6) Roof rails with integrated crossbars (page 8-16)
7) Door locks (page 2-4)
8) Tire pressure (page 11-35)
9) Flat tires (page 9-7)
10) Tire chains (page 8-13)
11) Fog light switch (page 3-55)
12) Tie-down hooks (page 9-25)
13) Towing hook (page 9-25)

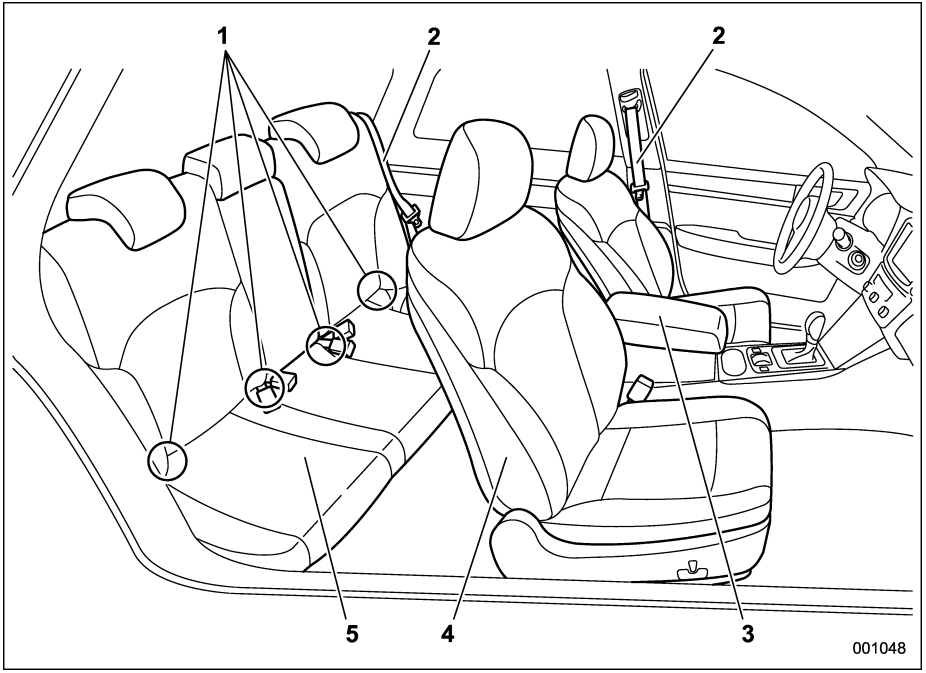



1) Rear window defogger switch (page 3-63)
2) Fuel filler lid and cap (page 7-4)
3) Child safety locks (page 2-26)
4) Towing hook (page 9-25)
5) Trunk lid (page 2-31)
6) Rear wiper switch (page 3-62)
7) Rear gate (page 2-32)
8) Bulb replacement (page 11-53)
9) Tie-down holes (page 9-25)

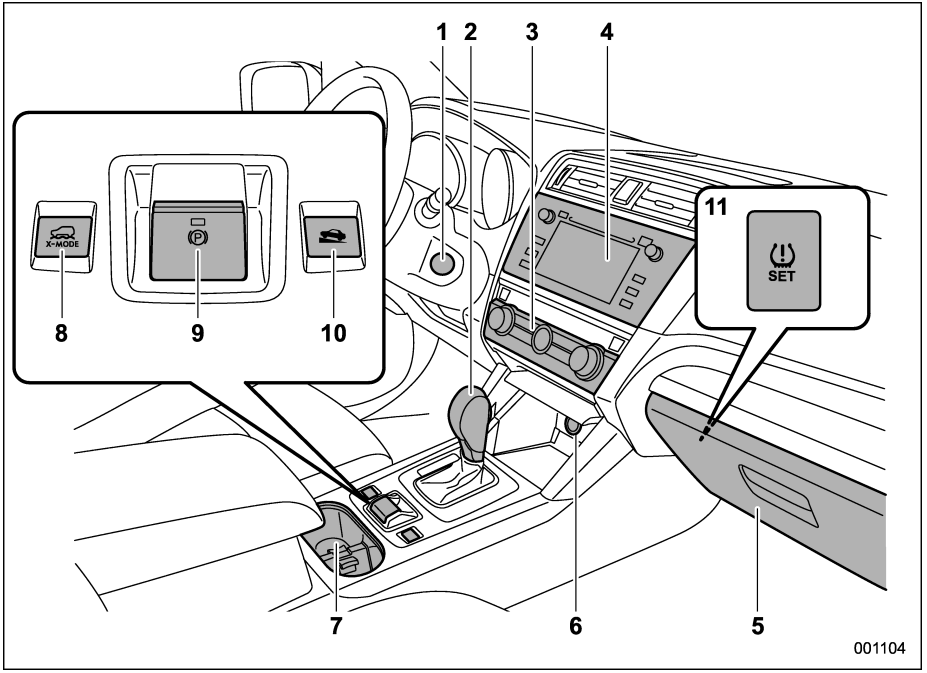
*– CONTINUED –*

## ■ Interior

### ▼ Passenger compartment area

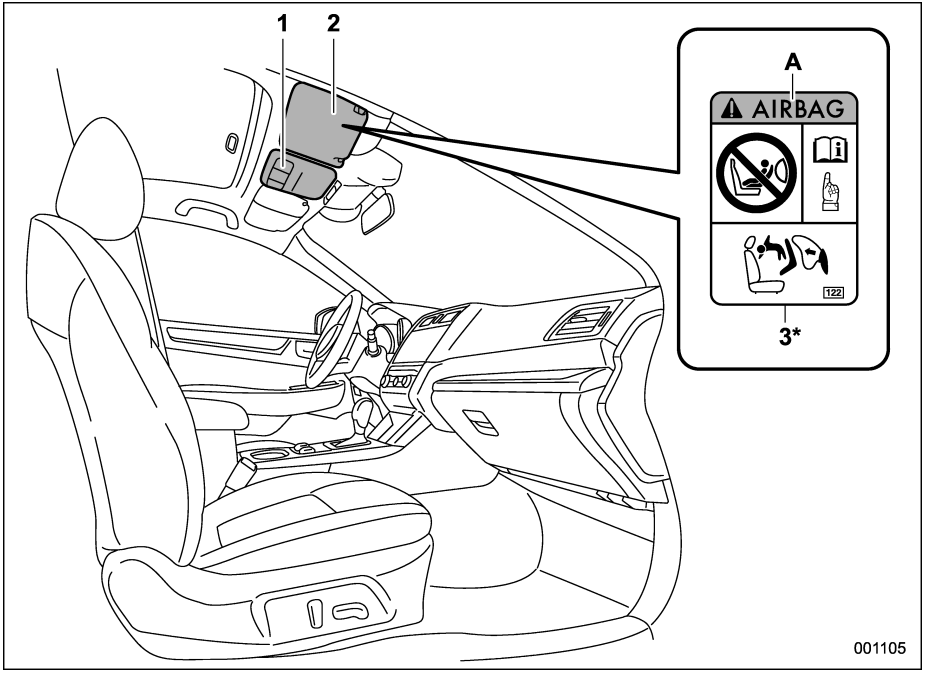



1) Anchor bars for ISOFIX child restraint system (page 1-39)
2) Seatbelt (page 1-15)
3) Center console (page 6-5)
4) Front seat (page 1-2)
5) Rear seat (page 1-11)




1) Ignition switch (models without push-button start system) (page 3-3)/Push-button ignition switch (models with push-button start system) (page 3-5)
2) Shift lever (MT) (page 7-14)/Select lever (CVT) (page 7-18)
3) Climate control (page 4-1)
4) Audio (page 5-1)/Navigation system (Refer to the Owner's Manual supplement for the navigation system)
5) Glove box (page 6-4)
6) Accessory power outlet (page 6-8)
7) Cup holder (page 6-6)
8) X-mode switch (page 7-34)
9) Electronic parking brake switch (page 7-36)
10) Hill Holder switch (page 7-39)
11) TPMS set switch (page 7-44)

*– CONTINUED –*



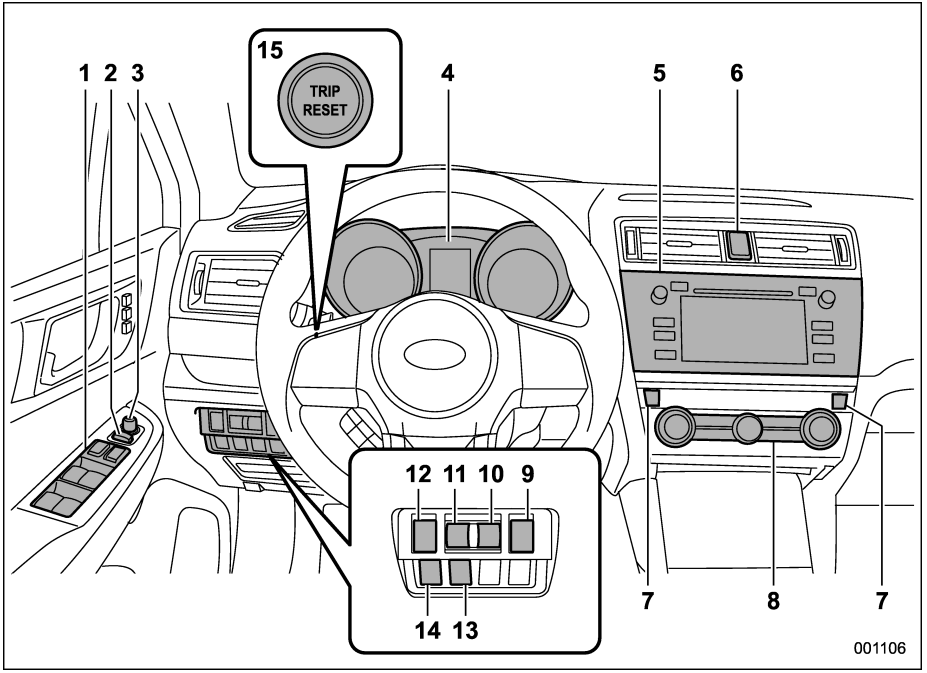

1) Sunroof switches (page 2-40)
2) Sun visor (page 6-4)
3) Warning labels for child restraint system (page 1-29)

A) AIRBAG

*: NEVER use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIRBAG in front of it, DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur.

## ■ Instrument panel

### ▼ Left-hand drive models



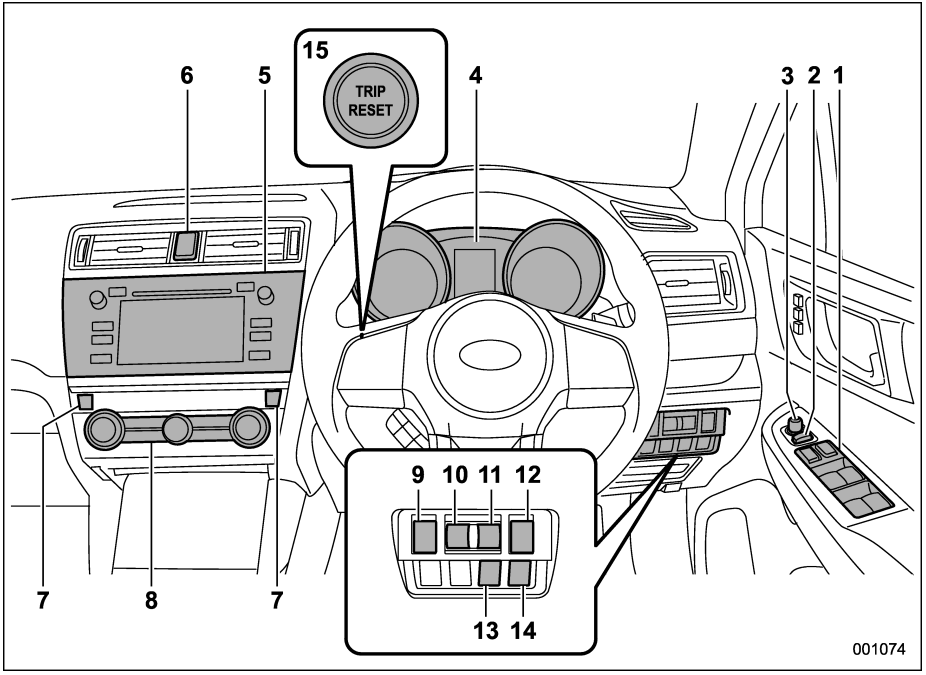

1) Power windows (page 2-27)
2) Power folding mirror switch (page 3-67)
3) Remote control mirror switch (page 3-66)
4) Combination meter (page 3-8)
5) Audio (page 5-1)/Navigation system (Refer to the Owner's Manual supplement for the navigation system)
6) Hazard warning flasher switch (page 3-8)
7) Front seat heater switch (page 1-9)
8) Climate control (page 4-1)
9) Memory switch (page 2-37)
10) Headlight beam leveler (page 3-52)
11) Illumination brightness control dial (page 3-51)
12) Power rear gate switch (page 2-33)/ Trunk lid opener switch (page 2-32)
13) Auto Start Stop OFF switch (page 7-51)
14) Vehicle Dynamics Control OFF switch (page 7-32)
15) Trip reset switch (page 3-9)

## NOTE

**For models with EyeSight system: Refer to the Owner's Manual supplement for the EyeSight system.**

*– CONTINUED –*

▼ **Right-hand drive models**

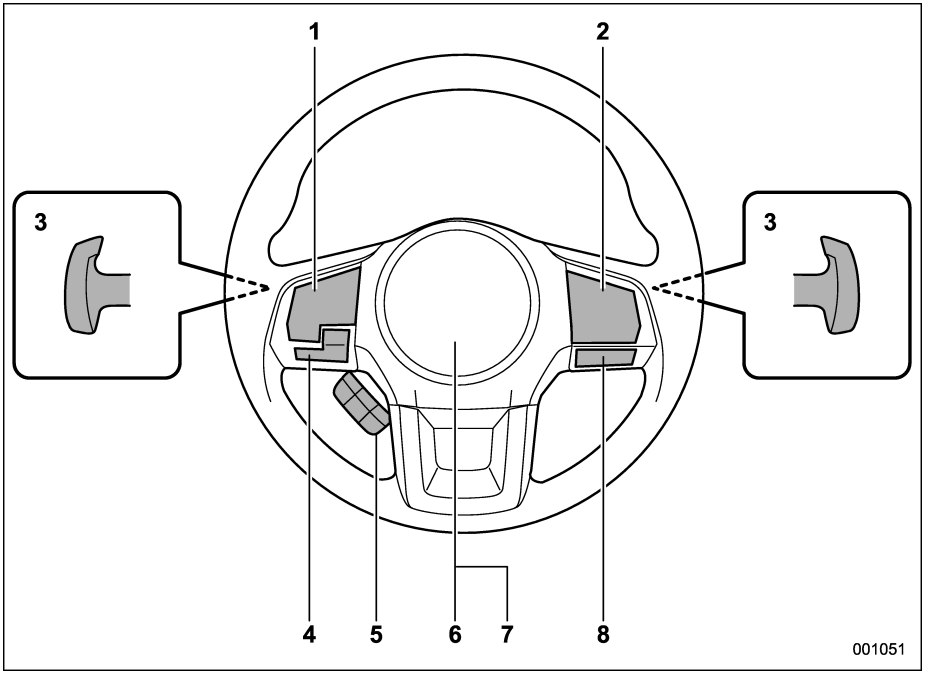



1) Power windows (page 2-27)
2) Power folding mirror switch (page 3-67)
3) Remote control mirror switch (page 3-66)
4) Combination meter (page 3-8)
5) Audio (page 5-1)/Navigation system (Refer to the Owner's Manual supplement for the navigation system)
6) Hazard warning flasher switch (page 3-8)
7) Front seat heater switch (page 1-9)
8) Climate control (page 4-1)
9) Memory switch (page 2-37)
10) Illumination brightness control dial (page 3-51)
11) Headlight beam leveler (page 3-52)
12) Power rear gate switch (page 2-33)/ Trunk lid opener switch (page 2-32)
13) Auto Start Stop OFF switch (page 7-51)
14) Vehicle Dynamics Control OFF switch (page 7-32)
15) Trip reset switch (page 3-9)

## NOTE

**For models with EyeSight system: Refer to the Owner's Manual supplement for the EyeSight system.**

## ■ Steering wheel

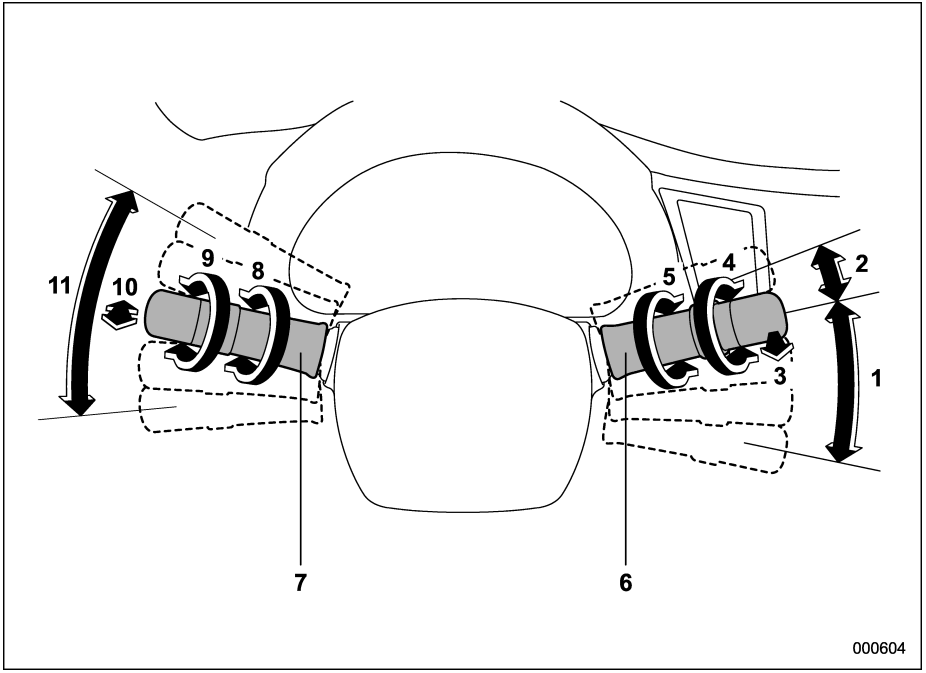



1) Audio control buttons (page 5-23)
2) Cruise control (page 7-45)
3) Shift paddle (page 7-20)
4) Hands-free switches (page 5-80)
5) Multi information display control switches (page 3-37)
6) SRS airbag (page 1-45)
7) Horn (page 3-68)
8) SI-DRIVE switches (page 7-22)

*– CONTINUED –*

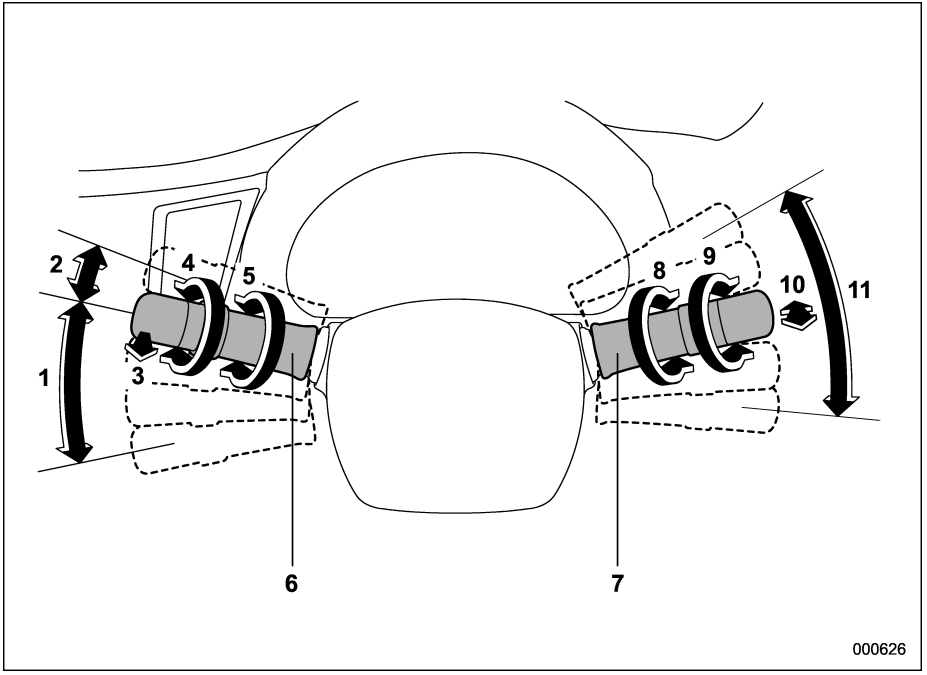
## ■ Light control and wiper control levers/switches

### ▼ Except Australia models




1) Windshield wiper (page 3-59)
2) Mist (page 3-59)
3) Windshield washer (page 3-61)
4) Rear window wiper and washer switch (page 3-62)
5) Wiper intermittent time control switch (page 3-61)/Sensor sensitivity control (page3-60)
6) Wiper control lever (page 3-57)
7) Light control switch (page 3-47)
8) Fog light switch (page 3-55)
9) Headlight ON/OFF/AUTO (page 3-47)
10) Headlight flasher High/Low beam change (page 3-49)
11) Turn signal (page 3-50)

▼ **Australia models**

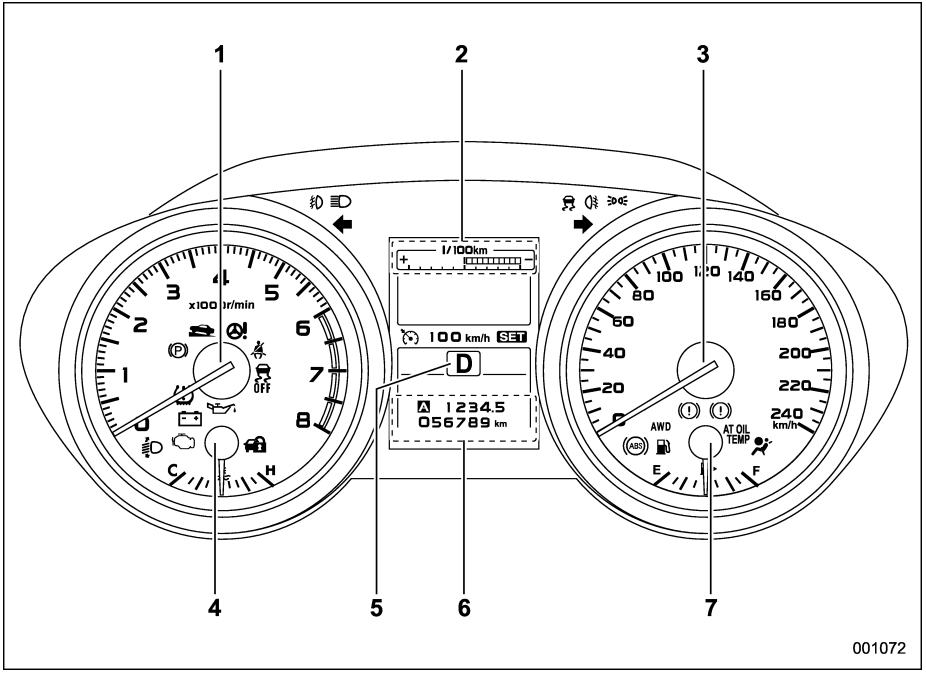



1) Windshield wiper (page 3-59)
2) Mist (page 3-59)
3) Windshield washer (page 3-61)
4) Rear window wiper and washer switch (page 3-62)
5) Wiper intermittent time control switch (page 3-61)/Sensor sensitivity control (page3-60)
6) Wiper control lever (page 3-57)
7) Light control switch (page 3-47)
8) Fog light switch (page 3-55)
9) Headlight ON/OFF/AUTO (page 3-47)
10) Headlight flasher High/Low beam change (page 3-49)
11) Turn signal (page 3-50)

*– CONTINUED –*

## ■ Combination meter

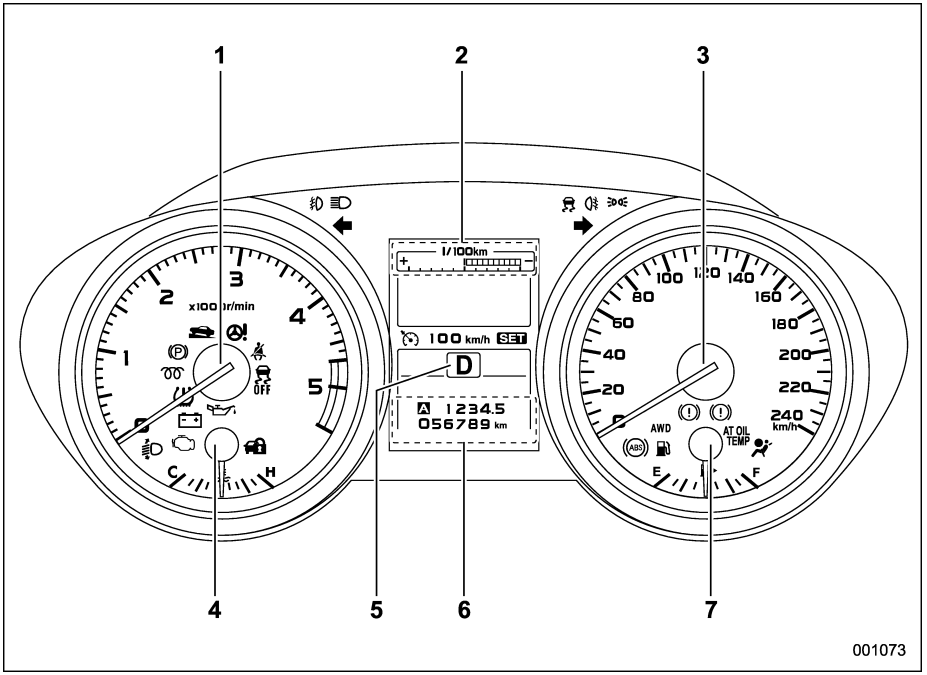
### ▼ Petrol engine models




The illustration above is a typical example. For some models, the combination meter may be slightly different than that shown in the illustration.

1) Tachometer (page 3-10)
2) ECO gauge (page 3-12)
3) Speedometer (page 3-8)
4) Temperature gauge (page 3-11)
5) Select lever/gear position indicator (page 3-31)
6) Trip meter and odometer (page 3-9)
7) Fuel gauge (page 3-10)

▼ **Diesel engine models**




The illustration above is a typical example. For some models, the combination meter may be slightly different than that shown in the illustration.

1) Tachometer (page 3-10)
2) ECO gauge (page 3-12)
3) Speedometer (page 3-8)
4) Temperature gauge (page 3-11)
5) Select lever/gear position indicator (page 3-31)
6) Trip meter and odometer (page 3-9)
7) Fuel gauge (page 3-10)

*– CONTINUED –*

## ■ Warning and indicator light

| Mark | Name | Page |
|---|---|---|
|  | Seatbelt warning light | 3-13 |
|  | Front passenger's seatbelt warning light (if equipped) | 3-13 |
|  | SRS airbag system warning light | 3-15 |
|  | Front passenger's frontal airbag ON indicator light | 3-15 |
|  | Front passenger's frontal airbag OFF indicator light | 3-15 |
|  | Malfunction indicator light (Check Engine light) | 3-16 |
|  | Charge warning light | 3-16 |
|  | Oil pressure warning light | 3-17 |
|  | Engine low oil level warning indicator | 3-17 |
|  | AT OIL TEMP warning light (CVT models) | 3-17 |
|  | ABS warning light | 3-19 |

| Mark | Name | Page |
|---|---|---|
|  | Brake system warning light (red) | 3-21 |
|  | Electronic parking brake warning light (yellow) | 3-22 |
|  | Electronic parking brake indicator light | 3-23 |
|  | Hill Holder indicator light | 3-23 |
|  | Door open indicator light | 3-24 |
|  | All-Wheel Drive warning light (CVT models) | 3-25 |
|  | Power steering warning light | 3-23 |
|  | Fuel filter warning indicator (diesel engine models) | 3-24 |
|  | Preheating indicator light (diesel engine models) | 3-33 |
|  | Diesel particulate filter warning indicator (diesel engine models) | 3-33 |
|  | Over-rev warning light (yellow) (MT diesel engine models) | 3-34 |

| Mark | Name | Page |
|---|---|---|
|  | Vehicle Dynamics Control warning light/Vehicle Dynamics Control operation indicator light | 3-20 |
|  | Vehicle Dynamics Control OFF indicator light | 3-21 |
|  | Turn signal indicator lights | 3-32 |
|  | High beam indicator light | 3-32 |
|  | LED headlight warning light (if equipped) | 3-25 |
|  | Automatic headlight beam leveler warning light (if equipped) | 3-25 |
|  | Front fog light indicator light | 3-33 |
|  | Rear fog light indicator light (if equipped) | 3-33 |
|  | Access key warning indicator (if equipped) | 3-25 |

| Mark | Name | Page |
|---|---|---|
|  | Immobilizer indicator light | 3-30 |
|  | Headlight indicator light | 3-33 |
|  | Cruise control indicator | 3-32 |
|  | Cruise control set indicator | 3-32 |
|  | Low fuel warning light | 3-24 |
|  | Low tire pressure warning light (if equipped) | 3-18 |
|  | X-mode indicator (if equipped) | 3-33 |
|  | Hill descent control indicator (if equipped) | 3-33 |
|  | Windshield washer fluid warning indicator | 3-24 |
|  | Sport (S) mode indicator (petrol engine models) | 3-31 |
|  | Intelligent (I) mode indicator (petrol engine models) | 3-31 |

| Mark | Name | Page |
|---|---|---|
|  | Sport Sharp (S#) mode indicator (3.6 L models) | 3-31 |
|  | Icy road surface warning screen | 3-38 |

## Function settings

A SUBARU dealer can change the settings of the functions shown in the following table to meet your personal requirements. We recommend that you contact the nearest SUBARU dealer for details.

| Item | Function | Possible settings | Default setting |
|---|---|---|---|
| Keyless access[*1*2] | Audible signal volume | Level 1 to 7 | Level 5 |
| | Automatic locking | Operation/Non-operation | Operation |
| | Automatic locking operation period | Can be set in range from 20s to 60s | 30s |
| | Door unlock selection function | Operation/Non-operation | Non-operation |
| Remote keyless entry system[*1] | Automatic locking | Operation/Non-operation | Operation |
| | Automatic locking operation period | Can be set in range from 20s to 60s. | 30s |
| | Door unlock selection function | Operation/Non-operation | Non-operation |
| Key lock-in prevention[*1] | Key lock-in prevention | Operation/Non-operation | Operation |
| Defogger and deicer system | Rear window defogger, outside mirror defogger and windshield wiper deicer | Operation for 15 min./ Continuous operation | Operation for 15 min. |
| Map light/Dome light/Cargo area light | Operation of map light/dome light/cargo area light OFF delay timer | OFF/Short/Normal/Long | Long |
| Battery drainage prevention function | Battery drainage prevention function | Operation/Non-operation | Operation |
| Auto on/off headlights | Sensitivity of the operation of the auto on/ off headlights | Low/Normal/High/Very high | Normal |
| Windshield wiper | Automatic adjusting mode of wiper timing | Rain-sensing mode/ vehicle speed interlocking mode | Rain-sensing mode |
| | Automatic headlight illumination linked wiper operation | Operation/Non-operation | Operation |
| | Automatic operation when starting the vehicle | Operation/Non-operation | Operation |

| Item | Function | Possible settings | Default setting |
|---|---|---|---|
| Auto dimmer cancel | Sensitivity of the operation of the auto dimmer cancel | OFF/Min/Low/Mid/Hi/Max | Mid |
| Headlight off delay function | Operation period | OFF/30 seconds/60 seconds/90 seconds | 30 seconds |
| Reverse gear interlocked rear wiper | Reverse gear interlocked rear wiper operation | Operation/Non-operation | Operation |
| One-touch lane changer | Operation of the one-touch lane changer | Operation/Non-operation | Operation |

*1: Not applicable to models equipped with double locking system
*2: If equipped

**Front seats** ..... 1-2
- Manual seat (if equipped) ..... 1-3
- Power seat (if equipped) ..... 1-4
- Head restraint adjustment ..... 1-8

**Seat heater (if equipped)** ..... 1-9
- Front seat heater (if equipped) ..... 1-10
- Rear seat heater (if equipped) ..... 1-10

**Rear seats** ..... 1-11
- Head restraint adjustment ..... 1-11
- Reclining the seatback (Outback) ..... 1-13
- Folding down the rear seatback ..... 1-14
- Armrest ..... 1-15

**Seatbelts** ..... 1-15
- Seatbelt safety tips ..... 1-15
- Emergency Locking Retractor (ELR) ..... 1-16
- Automatic Locking Retractor/Emergency Locking Retractor (ALR/ELR) (if equipped) ..... 1-17
- Seatbelt warning light and chime ..... 1-17
- Rear seatbelt indicator light (if equipped) ..... 1-17
- Fastening the seatbelt ..... 1-17
- Seatbelt maintenance ..... 1-23

**Seatbelt pretensioners** ..... 1-24
- System monitors ..... 1-25
- System servicing ..... 1-25
- Precautions against vehicle modification ..... 1-26

**Child restraint systems** ..... 1-26
- Where to place a child restraint system ..... 1-27
- Choosing a child restraint system ..... 1-29
- When installing child restraint systems to the passenger's seat (models with occupant detection system) ..... 1-31
- Installing child restraint systems with seatbelt ..... 1-33
- Installing a booster seat ..... 1-38
- Installation of child restraint systems using ISOFIX anchor bars ..... 1-39
- Top tether anchorages ..... 1-42

***SRS airbag (Supplemental Restraint System airbag)** ..... 1-45
- General precautions regarding SRS airbag system ..... 1-45
- Components ..... 1-52
- SRS airbags ..... 1-58
- System operation ..... 1-62
- SRS airbag system monitor ..... 1-73
- SRS airbag system servicing ..... 1-74
- Precautions against vehicle modification ..... 1-75

## Front seats

**⚠ WARNING**

- **Never adjust the seat while driving to avoid loss of vehicle control and personal injury.**
- **Before adjusting the seat, make sure that cargo or the hands and feet of rear seat passengers are clear of the adjusting mechanism.**
- **After adjusting the seat, push it slightly to make sure it is securely locked. If the seat is not securely locked, it may move or the seatbelt may not operate properly.**
- **Do not put objects under the front seats. They may interfere with front seat locking and cause an accident.**
- **Seatbelts provide maximum restraint when the occupant sits well back and upright in the seat. To reduce the risk of sliding under the seatbelt in a collision, the front seatbacks should be always used in the upright position while the vehicle is running. If the front seatbacks are not used in the upright position in a collision, the risk of sliding under the lap belt and of the lap belt sliding up over the abdomen will increase, and both can result in serious internal injury or death.**



100082

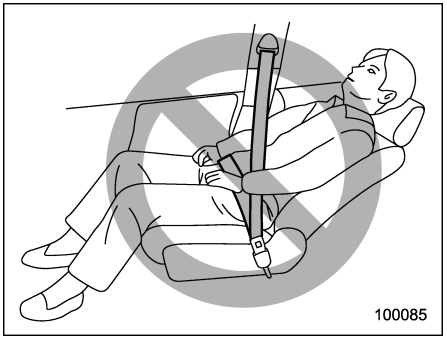
**⚠ WARNING**

**Put children in the REAR seat properly restrained at all times in a child restraint device or in a seatbelt, whichever is appropriate for the child's age, height and weight. The SRS airbag deploys with considerable speed and force and can injure or even kill children, especially if they are not restrained or improperly restrained. Because children are lighter and weaker than adults, their risk of being injured from deployment is greater.**

**Secure ALL types of child restraint devices (including forward facing child seats) in the REAR seats at all times.**

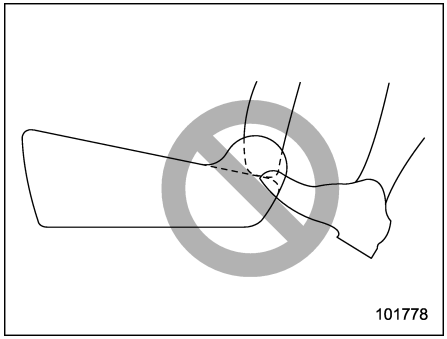
**NEVER INSTALL A REARWARD FACING CHILD SEAT IN THE FRONT SEAT. DOING SO RISKS SERIOUS INJURY OR DEATH TO THE CHILD BY PLACING THE CHILD'S HEAD TOO CLOSE TO THE SRS AIRBAG.**

**According to accident statistics, children are safer when properly restrained in the rear seating positions than in the front seating positions. For instructions and precautions concerning child restraint systems, refer to "Child restraint systems" ☞1-26.**




**⚠ WARNING**

**To prevent the passenger from sliding under the seatbelt in the event of a collision, always put the seatback in the upright position while the vehicle is in motion. Also, do not place objects such as cushions between the passenger and the seatback. If you do so, the risk of sliding under the lap belt and of the lap belt sliding up over the abdomen will increase, and both can result in serious internal injury or death.**



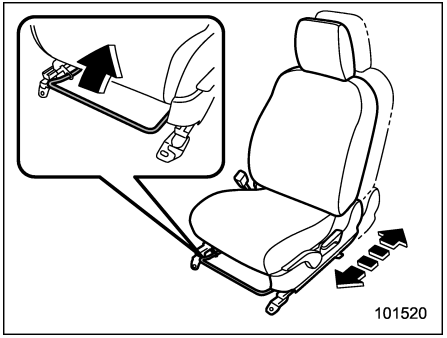

**⚠ WARNING**

**Do not let rear passengers rest their feet between the front seatback and seat cushion. Doing so may lead to improper operation of the following systems and could result in serious injury.**

- **Occupant detection system (if equipped)**
- **SRS side airbag**
- **Front seat heater (if equipped)**
- **Power seat (if equipped)**

## ■ Manual seat (if equipped)

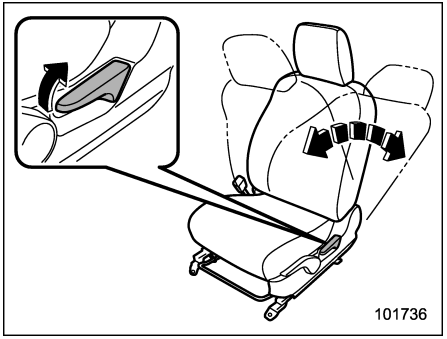
### ▼ Forward and backward adjustment




1. Sit in the seat to adjust.
2. Pull the lever upward, slide the seat to the desired position, and then release the lever.
3. Try to move the seat back and forth to make sure that it is securely locked into place.

***– CONTINUED –***

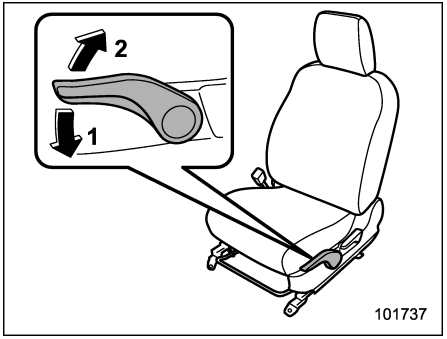
### ▼ Reclining the seatback




1. Pull up the reclining lever, adjust the seatback to the desired position, and then release the lever.
2. Make sure the seatback is securely locked into place.

The seatback placed in a reclined position can spring back upward with force when pulling up the lever. While operating the lever to return the seatback, hold the seatback lightly so that it may be raised back gradually.

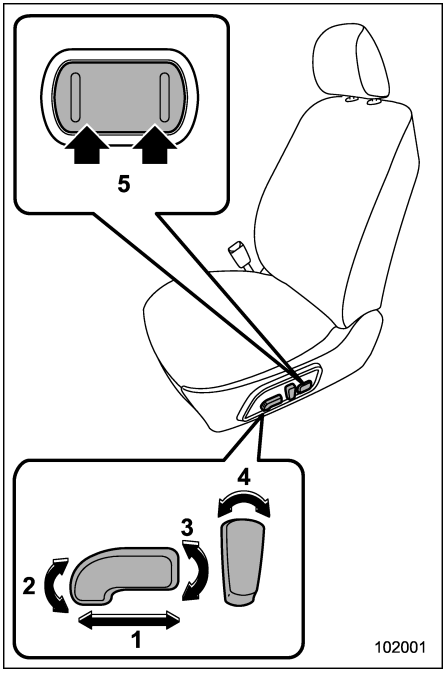
### ▼ Seat cushion height adjustment (if equipped)




1) Push the lever down to lower the seat.
2) Pull the lever up to raise the seat.

You can adjust the height of the seat by moving the seat cushion adjustment lever up or down.

## ■ Power seat (if equipped)




1) **Seat position forward/backward control switch**
To adjust the seat forward or backward, move the control switch forward or backward. During forward/backward adjustment of the seat, you cannot adjust

the seat cushion angle or seat cushion height.

2) **Seat cushion angle control switch**
To adjust the seat cushion angle, pull up or push down the front end of the control switch.

3) **Seat height control switch**
To adjust the seat height, pull up or push down the rear end of the control switch.

4) **Seatback angle (reclining) control switch**
To adjust the angle of the seatback, move the control switch.

5) **Lumbar support control switch (driver's seat only)**
To increase lower back support, push the front side of the switch. To decrease lower back support, push the rear side of the switch.

### ▼ Memory function (driver's seat — if equipped)

**⚠ WARNING**

- **Never adjust the seat while driving to avoid loss of vehicle control and personal injury.**
- **Before adjusting the seat, make sure that cargo or the hands and feet of rear seat passengers are clear of the adjusting mechanism.**
- **Never retrieve the seat position while driving to avoid loss of vehicle control and personal injury.**
- **Perform the seat position retrieval before driving. Be sure to confirm that the select lever is in the "P" position (CVT models), and the parking brake is applied, when adjusting the seat position. Do not drive until the retrieval of the seat position is complete.**
- **When retrieving a registered seat position, make sure the hands, feet and possessions of rear seat passengers are clear of the seat adjusting mechanism.**
- **When any unusual conditions or malfunctions occur during the retrieval of the seat position, stop the retrieval of the seat position by performing any of the following procedures.**
  - **Operate any of the power seat switches**
  - **Press the "SET" button**
  - **Press button "1" or "2"**

Some of your desired seat positions can be registered. Register the seat position with button "1" or "2" or each of the access keys (if equipped) and retrieve the seat position.

The following seat positions can be registered.

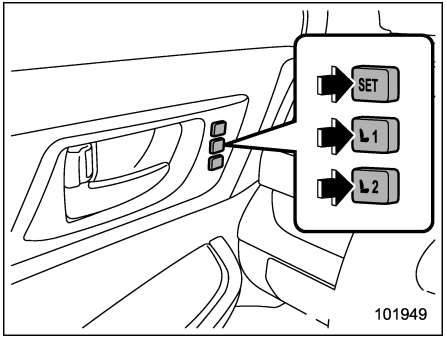
- Forward/backward position of the seat
- Angle of seatback
- Angle of seat cushion
- Height of seat

#### ▽ Registration of seat position with button "1" or "2"

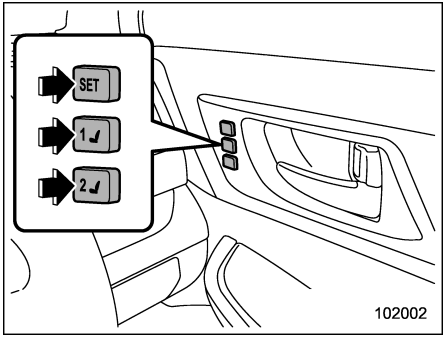
1. Adjust the seat position under the following conditions.
   - The parking brake is applied.
   - The ignition switch is in the "LOCK"/"OFF" position.
   - The select lever is in the "P" position

– CONTINUED –

(CVT models).




**LHD models**




**RHD models**

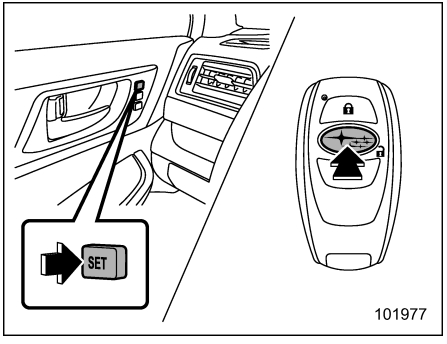
2. While pressing the “SET” button, press and hold the desired button “1” or “2”.

A chirp sounds once, and the seat position is registered.

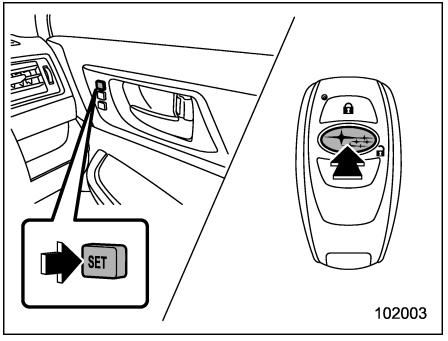
▽ **Registration of seat position with each access key (if equipped)**

1. Adjust the seat position under the following conditions.

- The parking brake is applied.
- The ignition switch is in the “LOCK”/“OFF” position.
- The select lever is in the “P” position (CVT models).




**LHD models**




**RHD models**

2. While holding the access key and pressing the “SET” button, press the “🔓” button of the access key.

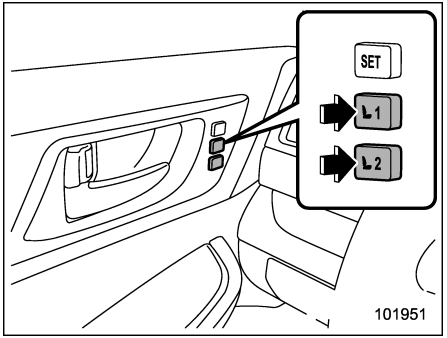
A chirp sounds once, and the seat position is registered.

▽ **Retrieval of seat position registered with button “1” or “2”**

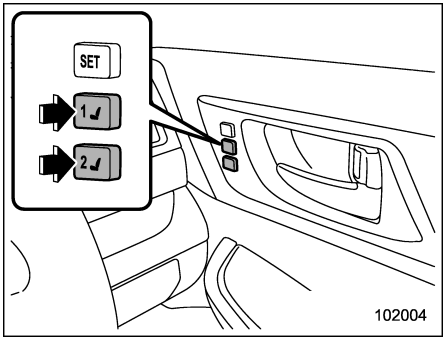
**⚠ WARNING**

**Be sure to press the correct button to retrieve your registered seat position. If the seat position is not optimum for you, it may adversely affect your driving and may reduce the effectiveness of the seatbelt. That could result in an accident**

**involving serious injury or death.**




**LHD models**




**RHD models**

1. Turn the ignition switch to the “ON” position.
2. While the select lever is in the “P” position (CVT models) and the parking brake is applied, press button “1” or “2”.

A chirp sounds and the seat moves to the registered position.

When the seat moves to the registered position, a chirp will sound.

## NOTE

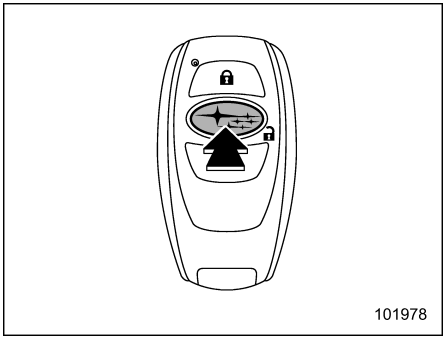
**• If a new position is registered for the same button, the previously registered seat position is deleted.**

**• If the vehicle battery is removed, the registered seat position is not deleted.**

**• When the button “1” or “2” is pressed within 45 seconds after the driver’s door is opened, the registered seat position can be retrieved even if the ignition switch is in the “LOCK” or “OFF” position.**

### ▽ Retrieval of the seat position registered with access key (if equipped)

1. Hold the registered access key.




2. Unlock the driver’s door by pressing the “🔓” button or gripping the door handle.
3. Open the driver’s door.

A chirp sounds and the seat moves to the registered position.

When the seat moves to the registered position, a chirp will sound.

## NOTE

**• If the registered seat position cannot be retrieved after performing the previous procedures, try the following procedures.**

**(1) Press the “SET” button on the**

*– CONTINUED –*

**driver's door.**
**(2) Press the "🔒" button on the access key or the door lock button to lock the doors.**
**(3) Perform the prior procedures again.**

**• If the keyless access function is disabled, the seat position cannot be retrieved by gripping the driver's door handle. However, the seat position can still be retrieved by pressing the "🔒" button on the access key. For information about how to enable/disable the keyless access function, refer to "Disabling keyless access function" ☞2-16.**

**• If a new position is registered for the same access key, the previously registered seat position is deleted.**

**▽ Clearing the registered seat position with access key (if equipped)**

1. Close the driver's door.
2. While holding the access key and pressing the "SET" button, press the "🔒" button on the access key.

A chirp will sound, and the registered seat position will be cleared.

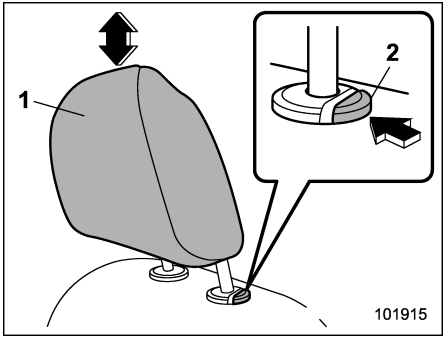
## ■ Head restraint adjustment

**⚠ WARNING**

- **Never drive the vehicle with the head restraints removed because they are designed to reduce the risk of serious neck injury in the event that the vehicle is struck from the rear. Also, never install the head restraints the opposite way round. Doing so will prevent the head restraints from functioning as intended. Therefore, when you remove the head restraints, you must reinstall all head restraints correctly to protect vehicle occupants.**
- **All occupants, including the driver, should not operate a vehicle or sit in a vehicle's seat until the head restraints are placed in their proper positions in order to minimize the risk of neck injury in the event of a crash.**

Both the driver's seat and front passenger's seat are equipped with head restraints. Both head restraints are adjustable in the following ways.

**▼ Head restraint height adjustment**



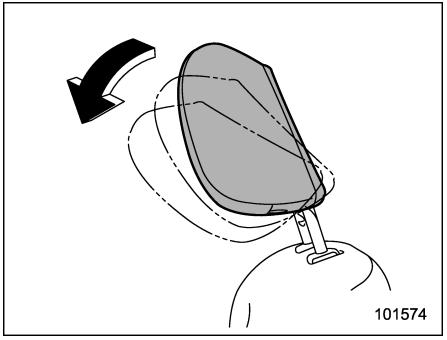

1) Head restraint
2) Release button

Each head restraint should be adjusted so that the center of the head restraint is closest to the top of the occupant's ears.

**To raise:**
Pull the head restraint up.
**To lower:**
Push the head restraint down while pressing the release button on the top of the seatback.
**To remove:**
While pressing the release button, pull out the head restraint.
**To install:**
Install the head restraint into the holes that

are located on the top of the seatback until the head restraint locks. Press and hold the release button to lower the head restraint.

▼ **Head restraint angle adjustment**




The angle of the head restraint can be adjusted in several steps. While maintaining a suitable driving posture, adjust the head restraint to a position where the back of your head is as close to the head restraint as possible.

**To tilt:**

Tilt the head restraint by hand to the preferred position. A click will be audible when the head restraint is locked.

**To return:**

Tilt the head restraint once as far forward as it can go. The head restraint will automatically return to the fully upright position. Then, adjust the head restraint again to the preferred angle.

## Seat heater (if equipped)

The seat heater operates when the ignition switch is in the “ON” position.

**⚠ CAUTION**

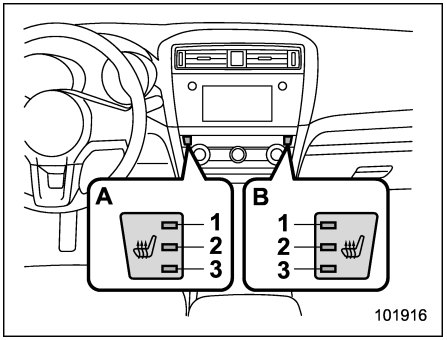
- **People with delicate skin may suffer slight burns even at low temperatures if they use the seat heater for a long period of time. When using the heater, always be sure to warn the persons concerned.**
- **Do not put anything on the seat which insulates against heat, such as a blanket, cushion, or similar items. This may cause the seat heater to overheat.**
- **When the seat is warmed enough or before you leave the vehicle, be sure to turn off the seat heater.**

### NOTE

**Use of the seat heater for a long period of time while the engine is not running can cause battery discharge.**

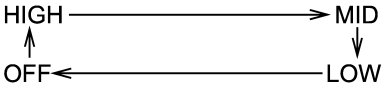
*– CONTINUED –*

## ■ Front seat heater (if equipped)




**Front seat heater switch**
1) HIGH mode indicator
2) MID mode indicator
3) LOW mode indicator
A) Left-hand side
B) Right-hand side

Press the front seat heater switch to turn on the front seat heater. Then select the “HIGH”, “MID” or “LOW” mode, as desired, depending on the temperature. Each time you press the switch, the mode will change as follows.

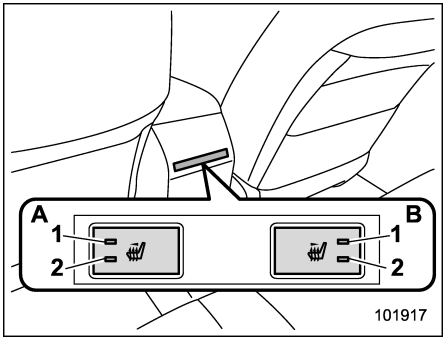



You can turn off the front seat heater by pressing and holding the front seat heater switch.

When LOW mode is selected, the LOW mode indicator on the front seat heater switch illuminates. When MID mode is selected, both the LOW and MID mode indicators illuminate. When HIGH mode is selected, all 3 LOW, MID and HIGH mode indicators illuminate. When the OFF mode is selected, all the indicators turn off.

Selecting “HIGH” mode will cause the seat to heat up quicker.

## ■ Rear seat heater (if equipped)




**Rear seat heater switch**
1) HIGH mode indicator
2) LOW mode indicator
A) Left-hand side
B) Right-hand side

Press the rear seat heater switch to turn on the rear seat heater. Then select the “HIGH” or “LOW” mode, as desired, depending on the temperature. Each time you press the switch, the mode will change as follows.



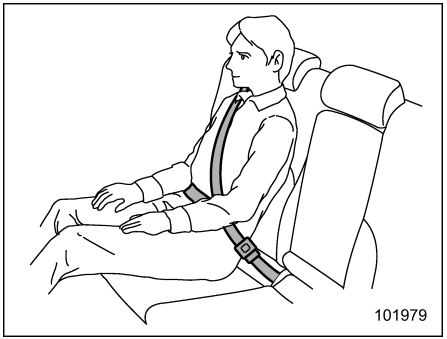

When LOW mode is selected, the LOW mode indicator on the rear seat heater switch illuminates. When HIGH mode is selected, both the LOW and HIGH mode indicators illuminate. When the OFF mode is selected, all the indicators turn off.

Selecting “HIGH” mode will cause the seat to heat up quicker.

### NOTE

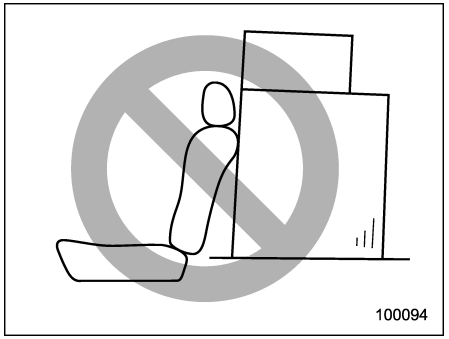
**Only the front seat heater switches retain the previous switch position even if the engine has restarted. The rear seat switch will reset.**

## Rear seats




**WARNING**

**Seatbelts provide maximum restraint when the occupant sits well back and upright in the seat. Do not put cushions or any other materials between occupants and seatbacks or seat cushions. If you do so, the risk of sliding under the lap belt and of the lap belt sliding up over the abdomen will increase, and both can result in serious internal injury or death.**




**WARNING**

**Never stack luggage or other cargo higher than the top of the seatback because it could tumble forward and injure passengers in the event of a sudden stop or accident.**

### ■ Head restraint adjustment

Both the rear window side seats and the rear center seat are equipped with head restraints.

**WARNING**

- **Never drive the vehicle with the head restraints removed because they are designed to reduce the risk of serious neck injury in the event that the vehicle is struck from the rear. Therefore, when you remove the head restraints, you must reinstall all head restraints to protect vehicle occupants.**
- **All occupants, including the driver, should not operate a vehicle or sit in a vehicle's seat until the head restraints are placed in their proper positions in order to minimize the risk of neck injury in the event of a crash.**

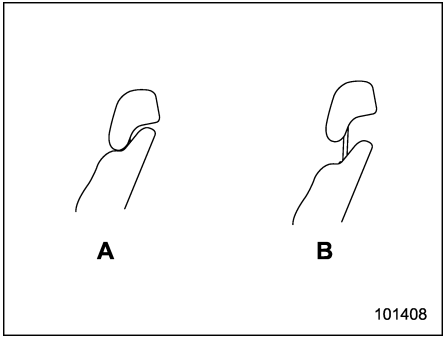
**▼ Rear window side seating position**

**CAUTION**

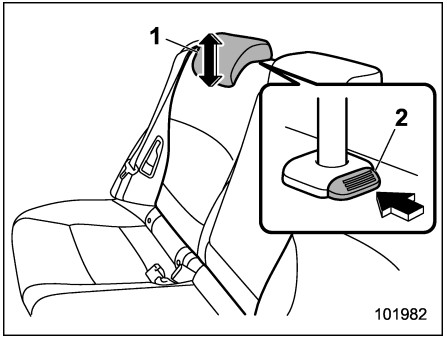
**The head restraint is not intended to be used at the lowest position. Before sitting on the seat, raise the**

*– CONTINUED –*

**head restraint to the click position.**




A) When not used (lowest position)
B) When used (click position)




1) Head restraint
2) Release button

**To raise:**

Pull the head restraint up.

**To lower:**

Push the head restraint down while pressing the release button on the top of the seatback.

**To remove:**

While pressing the release button, pull out the head restraint.

**To install:**

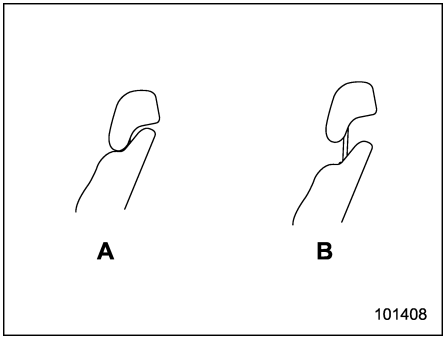
Install the head restraint into the holes that are located on the top of the seatback until the head restraint locks.

When the seats are not occupied, lower the head restraints to improve rearward visibility.

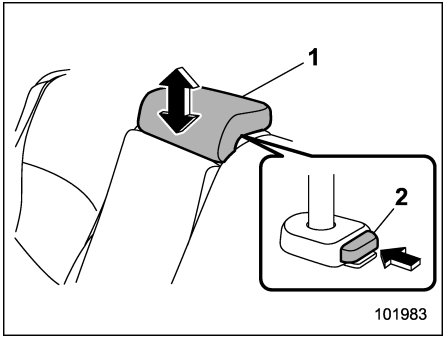
▼ **Rear center seating position**

**⚠ CAUTION**

**The head restraint is not intended to be used at the lowest position. Before sitting on the seat, raise the head restraint to the click position.**




A) When not used (lowest position)
B) When used (click position)




1) Head restraint
2) Release button

**To raise:**

Pull the head restraint up.

**To lower:**

Push the head restraint down while pressing the release button on the top of the seatback.

**To remove:**

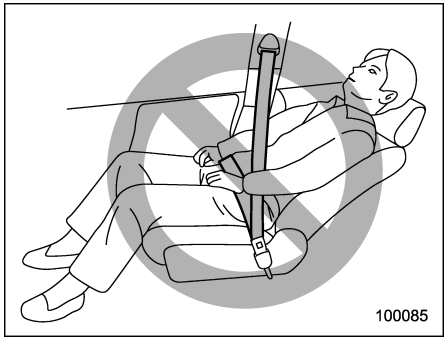
While pressing the release button, pull out the head restraint.

**To install:**

Install the head restraint into the holes that are located on the top of the seatback until the head restraint locks.

When the rear center seating position is not occupied, lower the head restraint to improve rearward visibility.

## ■ Reclining the seatback (Outback)



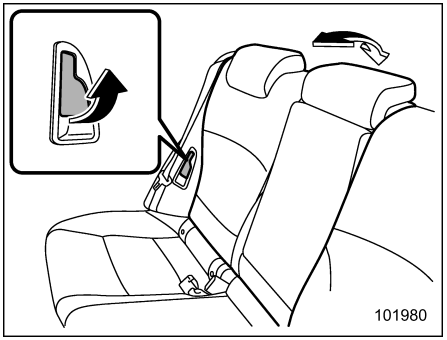

**⚠ WARNING**

**To prevent the passenger from sliding under the seatbelt in the event of a collision, always put the seatback in the upright position while the vehicle is in motion. Also, do not place objects such as cushions between the passenger and the seatback. If you do so, the risk of sliding under the lap belt and of the lap belt sliding up over the abdomen will increase, and both can result in serious internal injury or death.**

**⚠ CAUTION**

**When using the cargo area cover, observe the following precautions.**

- **Be careful not to pinch your hand between the headrest and the cargo area cover when you recline the rear seat.**
- **Move the front cover of the cargo area cover backward so that the cover is not damaged by the reclined seatback. Refer to "Cargo area cover (Outback)" ☞6-13.**




Adjust the seatback to the desired position while pulling the lever.

After adjusting the seatback, release the lever and make sure the seatback is securely locked into place.

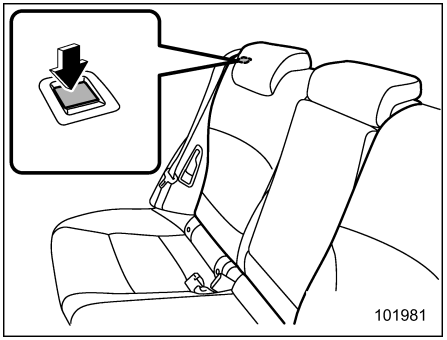
*– CONTINUED –*

## ■ Folding down the rear seatback

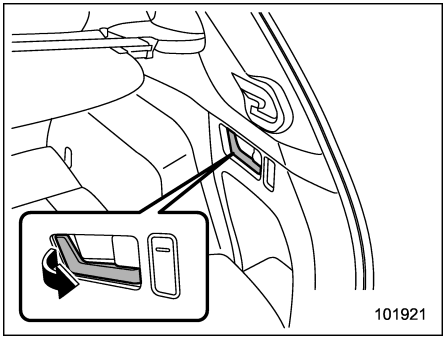
**⚠ WARNING**

- **When you fold down the seatback, check that there are no passengers or objects on the rear seat. Not doing so creates a risk of injury or property damage if the seatback suddenly folds down.**
- **Never allow passengers to ride on the folded rear seatback or in the cargo area or trunk. Doing so may result in serious injury or death.**
- **Secure all objects and especially long items properly to prevent them from being thrown around inside the vehicle and causing serious injury during a sudden stop, a sudden steering maneuver or a rapid acceleration.**
- **When you return the seatback to its original position, shake the seatback slightly to confirm that it is securely fixed in place. If the seatback is not securely fixed in place, the seatback may suddenly fold down in the event of sudden braking, or objects may move out from the cargo area, which could cause serious injury or death.**
- **After returning the rear seatback to its original position, be certain to place all of the seatbelts and the tab attached to the seat cushion above the seat cushion. Also, make certain that the shoulder belts are fully visible.**

1. Lower the head restraints.




**Release button (both Sedan and Outback)**

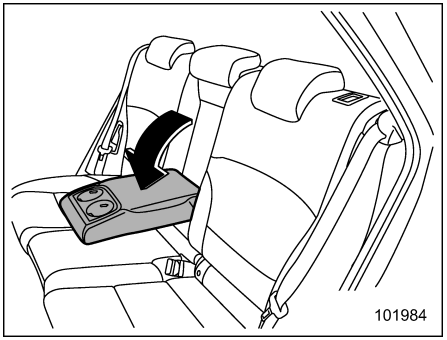



**Release lever on both sides of the cargo area (Outback)**

2. Unlock the seatback by performing either of the following procedures and then fold the seatback down.
   - Push the release button (both Sedan and Outback)
   - Pull the release lever (Outback)

To return the seatback to its original position, raise the seatback until it locks into place. Make sure that it is securely locked.

## ■ Armrest




To lower the armrest, pull on the armrest's top edge.

**⚠ WARNING**

**To avoid serious injury, passengers must never be allowed to sit on the center armrest while the vehicle is in motion.**

# Seatbelts

## ■ Seatbelt safety tips

**⚠ WARNING**

- **All persons in the vehicle should fasten their seatbelts BEFORE the vehicle starts to move. Otherwise, the possibility of serious injury becomes greater in the event of a sudden stop or accident.**
- **All belts should fit snugly in order to provide full restraint. Loose fitting belts are not as effective in preventing or reducing injury.**
- **Each seatbelt is designed to support only one person. Never use a single belt for two or more persons – even children. Otherwise, in an accident, serious injury or death could result.**
- **Replace all seatbelt assemblies including retractors and attaching hardware worn by occupants of a vehicle that has been in a serious accident. Also, be sure to replace seatbelt assemblies that show signs of severe fraying or having been cut. The entire assembly should be replaced even if damage is not obvious.**
- **When wearing the seatbelt, insert the tongue plate into the correct buckle. Otherwise, in an accident, serious injury or death could result.**
- **Do not fasten your seatbelt with a child on your knees. Otherwise, in an accident, serious injury or death could result.**
- **Put children in the REAR seat properly restrained at all times in a child restraint device or in a seatbelt, whichever is appropriate for the child's age, height and weight. The SRS airbag deploys with considerable speed and force and can injure or even kill children, especially if they are not restrained or improperly restrained. Because children are lighter and weaker than adults, their risk of being injured from deployment is greater.**

  **Secure ALL types of child restraint devices (including forward facing child seats) in the REAR seats at all times.**

  **NEVER INSTALL A REARWARD FACING CHILD SEAT IN THE FRONT SEAT. DOING SO RISKS**

– CONTINUED –

**SERIOUS INJURY OR DEATH TO THE CHILD BY PLACING THE CHILD'S HEAD TOO CLOSE TO THE SRS AIRBAG.**

**According to accident statistics, children are safer when properly restrained in the rear seating positions than in the front seating positions. For instructions and precautions concerning the child restraint system, refer to "Child restraint systems" ☞1-26.**

**▼ Infants or small children**

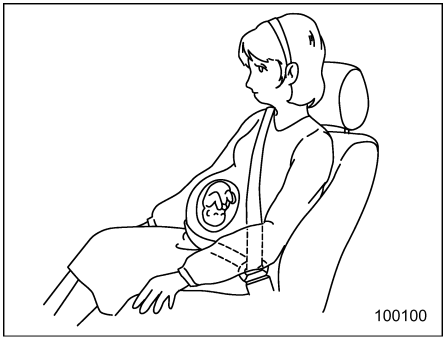
Use a child restraint system that is suitable for your vehicle. Refer to "Child restraint systems" ☞1-26.

**▼ Children**

If a child is too big for a child restraint system, the child should sit in the rear seat and be restrained using the seatbelts. According to accident statistics, children are safer when properly restrained in the rear seating positions than in the front seating positions. Never allow a child to stand up or kneel on the seat.

Seatbelts are designed under the assumption that adult-sized occupants will use them. If the shoulder portion of the belt crosses the face or neck, move the child closer to the belt buckle to help provide a good shoulder belt fit. Care must be taken to securely place the lap belt as low as possible on the hips and not on the child's waist. If the shoulder portion of the belt cannot be properly positioned, a child restraint system should be used. Never place the shoulder belt under the child's arm or behind the child's back.

**▼ Expectant mothers**




Expectant mothers also need to use the seatbelts. They should consult their doctor for specific recommendations. The lap belt should be worn securely and as low as possible over the hips, not over the waist.

## ■ Emergency Locking Retractor (ELR)

All seatbelts in the vehicle have an Emergency Locking Retractor (ELR).

The emergency locking retractor allows normal body movement but the retractor locks automatically during a sudden stop, impact or if you pull the belt very quickly out of the retractor.

## ■ Automatic Locking Retractor/ Emergency Locking Retractor (ALR/ELR) (if equipped)

For some models, each rear passenger's seatbelt has an Automatic Locking Retractor/Emergency Locking Retractor (ALR/ELR). The Automatic Locking Retractor/Emergency Locking Retractor normally functions as an Emergency Locking Retractor (ELR). The ALR/ELR has an additional locking mode, "Automatic Locking Retractor (ALR) mode", intended to secure a child restraint system.

First check if the ALR mode is equipped for the seatbelts of the vehicle. If the ALR mode is equipped, the seatbelts function as follows.

When the seatbelt is once drawn out completely and is then retracted even slightly, the retractor locks the seatbelt in that position and the seatbelt cannot be extended. As the belt is rewinding, clicks will be heard which indicate the retractor functions as an ALR. When the seatbelt is retracted fully, the ALR mode is canceled and the ELR mode is restored.

For models with ALR/ELR seatbelts, when securing a child restraint system on the rear seats by using a seatbelt in the forward-facing direction, the seatbelt must be changed over to the Automatic Locking Retractor (ALR) mode. For instructions on how to install the child restraint system using a seatbelt, refer to "Installing child restraint systems with seatbelt" ☞1-33.

When the child restraint system is removed, make sure that the retractor is restored to the Emergency Locking Retractor (ELR) mode by allowing the seatbelt to retract fully.

## ■ Seatbelt warning light and chime



Refer to "Seatbelt warning light and chime" ☞3-13.

## ■ Rear seatbelt indicator light (if equipped)

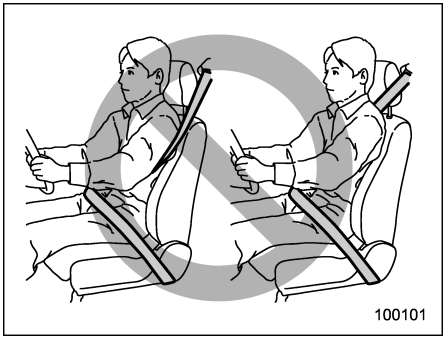
Refer to "Rear seatbelt indicator light" ☞3-14.

## ■ Fastening the seatbelt

**⚠ WARNING**

- **Never use a belt that is twisted or reversed. In an accident, this can increase the risk or severity of injury.**
- **Keep the lap belt as low as possible on your hips. In a collision, this spreads the force of the lap belt over stronger hip bones instead of across the weaker abdomen.**
- **Seatbelts provide maximum restraint when the occupant sits well back and upright in the seat. To reduce the risk of sliding under the seatbelt in a collision, the front seatbacks should be always used in the upright position while the vehicle is running. If the front seatbacks are not used in the upright position in a collision, the risk of sliding under the lap belt and of the lap belt sliding up over the abdomen will increase, and both can result in serious internal injury or death.**
- **Do not put cushions or any other materials between occupants and seatbacks or seat cushions. If you do so, the risk of sliding under the lap belt and of the lap belt sliding up over the abdomen will increase, and both can result in serious internal injury or death.**

– CONTINUED –




**⚠ WARNING**

**Never place the shoulder belt under the arm or behind the back. If an accident occurs, this can increase the risk or severity of injury.**

**⚠ CAUTION**

**Metallic parts of the seatbelt can become very hot in a vehicle that has been closed up in sunny weather; they could burn an occupant. Do not touch such hot parts until they cool.**

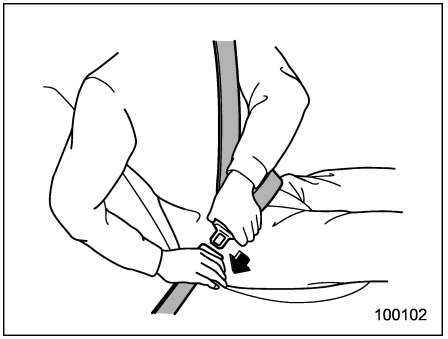
### ▼ Front seatbelts

1. Adjust the seat position:

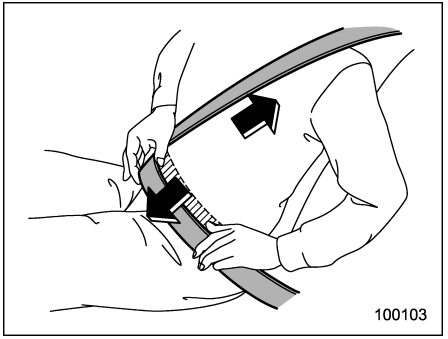
**Driver's seat:** Adjust the seatback to the upright position. Move the seatback as far from the steering wheel as practical while still maintaining full vehicle control.

**Front passenger's seat:** Adjust the seatback to the upright position. Move the seat as far back as possible.

2. Sit well back in the seat.
3. Pick up the tongue plate and pull the belt out slowly. Do not let it get twisted.
   - If the belt stops before reaching the buckle, return the belt slightly and pull it out more slowly.
   - If the belt still cannot be unlocked, let the belt retract slightly after giving it a strong pull, then pull it out slowly again.

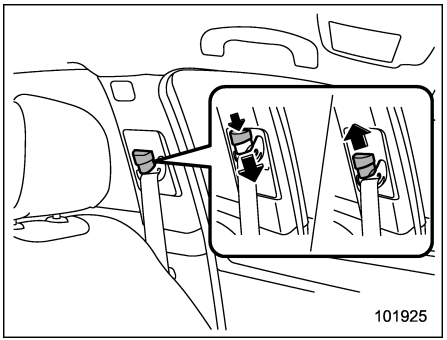



4. Insert the tongue plate into the buckle until you hear a click.




5. To make the lap part tight, pull up on the shoulder belt.
6. Place the lap belt as low as possible on your hips, not on your waist.

▽ **Adjusting the front seat shoulder belt anchor height**




Adjust the shoulder belt anchor height to the position best suited for the driver/front passenger. Always adjust the anchor height so that the shoulder belt passes over the middle of the shoulder without touching the neck.

**To raise:**

Slide the anchor up.

**To lower:**

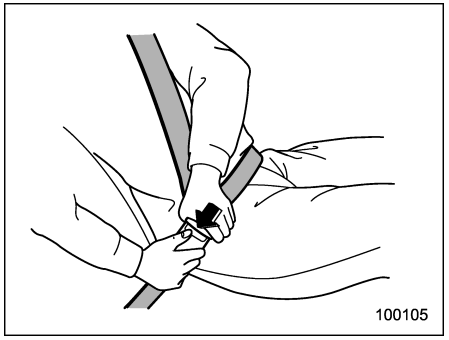
Pull the upper part of the anchor and slide the anchor down.

Pull down on the anchor to make sure that it is locked in place.

**⚠ WARNING**

**When wearing the seatbelts, make sure the shoulder portion of the webbing does not pass over your neck. If it does, adjust the seatbelt anchor to a lower position. Placing the shoulder belt over the neck may result in neck injury during sudden braking or in a collision.**

▽ **Unfastening the seatbelt**

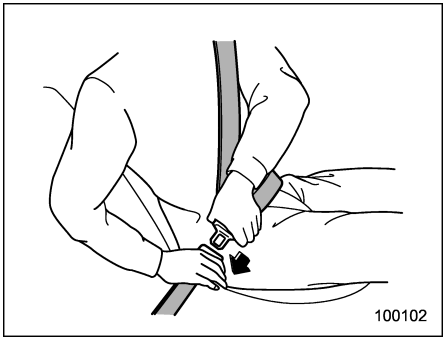



1. Push the button on the buckle.
2. Have the seatbelt retracted slowly to avoid the seatbelt being tangled or twisted.

Before closing the door, make sure that the belts are retracted properly to avoid catching the belt webbing in the door.

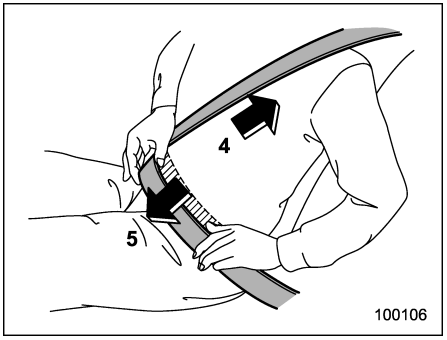
▼ **Rear seatbelts (except rear center seatbelt on Outback)**

1. Sit well back in the seat.
2. Pick up the tongue plate and pull the belt out slowly. Do not let it get twisted.
   - If the belt stops before reaching the buckle, return the belt slightly and pull it out more slowly.
   - If the belt still cannot be unlocked, let the belt retract slightly after giving a strong pull on it, then pull it out slowly again.



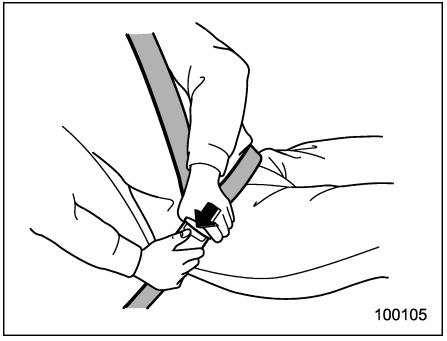

3. Insert the tongue plate into the buckle until you hear a click.

– CONTINUED –




4. To make the lap part tight, pull up on the shoulder belt.
5. Place the lap belt as low as possible on your hips, not on your waist.

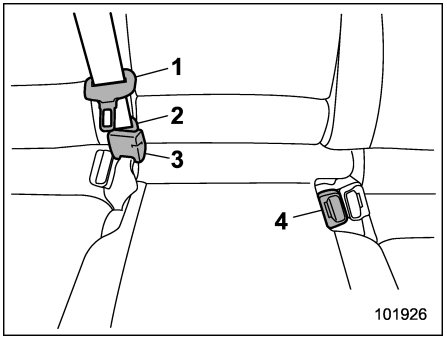
▽ **Unfastening the seatbelt**



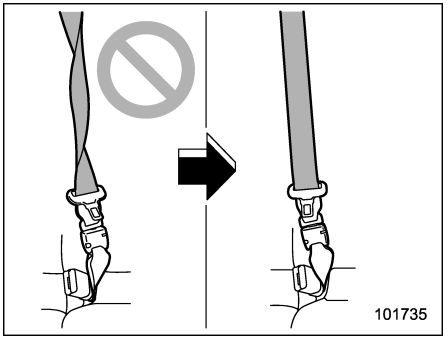

1. Push the button on the buckle.
2. Have the seatbelt retracted slowly to avoid the seatbelt being tangled or twisted.

Before closing the door, make sure that the belts are retracted properly to avoid catching the belt webbing in the door.

▼ **Rear center seatbelt on Outback**

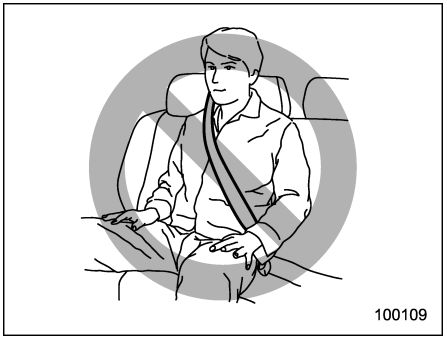



1) Center seatbelt tongue plate
2) Connector (tongue)
3) Connector (buckle)
4) Center seatbelt buckle



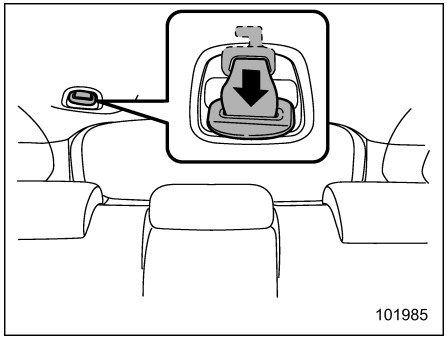

**⚠ WARNING**

**Fastening the seatbelt with the webbing twisted can increase the risk or severity of injury in an accident. When fastening the belt after it is pulled out from the retractor, especially when inserting the connector's tongue plate into the mating buckle (on right-hand side), always check that the webbing is not twisted.**



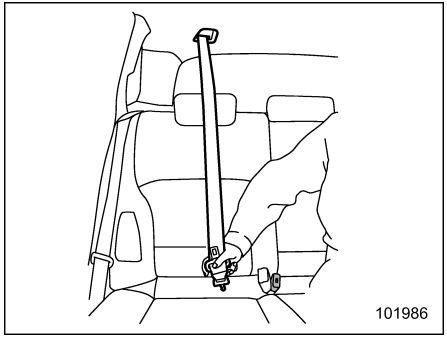

**⚠ WARNING**

**Be sure to fasten both tongue plates to the respective buckles. If the seatbelt is used only as a shoulder belt (with the connector's tongue plate not fastened to the connector's buckle on the right-hand side), it cannot properly restrain the wearer in position in an accident, possibly resulting in serious injury or death.**

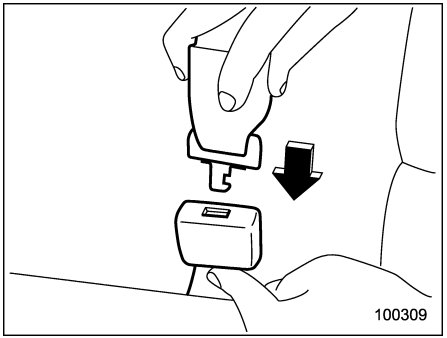



Rear center seatbelt is stowed in the recess of the ceiling.

1. Retrieve the connector (tongue) plate from the slot in the recess by pulling the connector (tongue) plate.

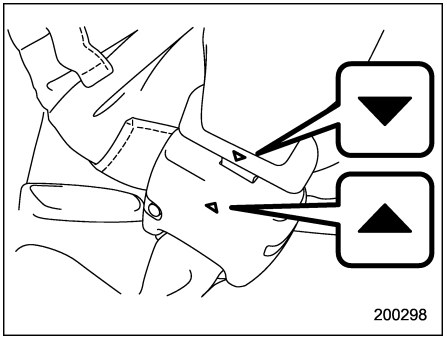



2. Pull out the seatbelt slowly from the retractor.

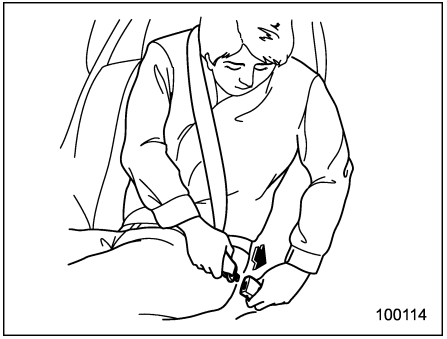



3. After confirming that the webbing is not twisted, insert the connector (tongue) attached at the webbing end into the buckle on the right-hand side until a click is heard.
   - If the belt stops before reaching the buckle, return the belt slightly and pull it out more slowly.
   - If the belt still cannot be unlocked, let the belt retract slightly after giving it a strong pull, then pull it out slowly again.

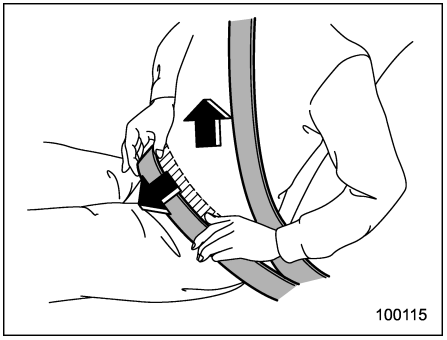
– CONTINUED –




4. After fastening the seatbelt, make sure that the "▼" mark on the connector (tongue) and the "▲" mark on the buckle face outwards.

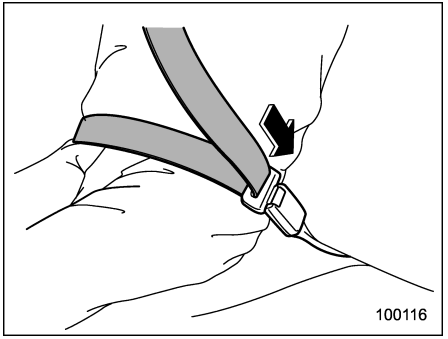



5. Insert the center seatbelt tongue plate into the center seatbelt buckle marked "CENTER" on the left-hand side until it clicks.

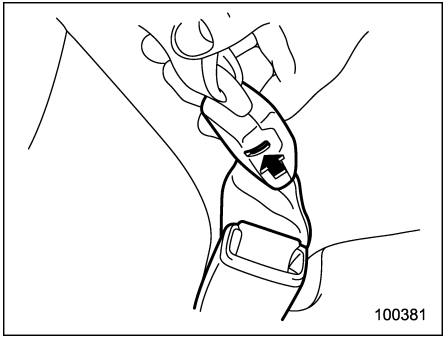


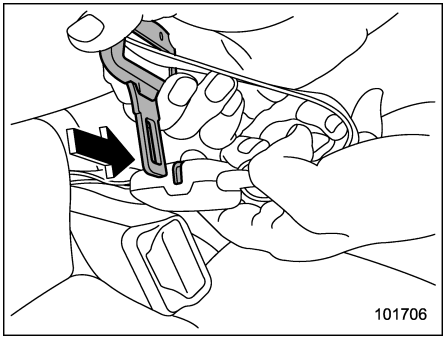

6. To make the lap part tight, pull up on the shoulder belt.
7. Place the lap belt as low as possible on your hips, not on your waist.

**▽ Unfastening the seatbelt**

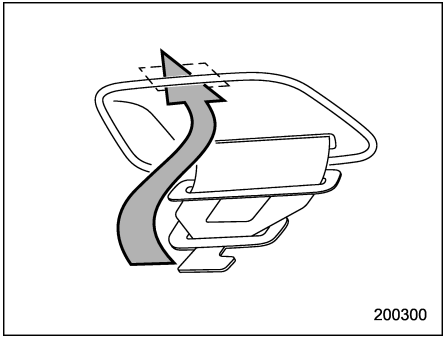



1. Push the release button of the center seatbelt buckle (on the left-hand side) to unfasten the seatbelt.

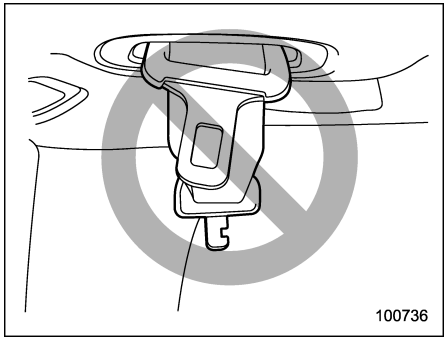





2. Insert a tongue plate or other hard pointed object into the slot in the connector (buckle) on the right-hand side and push it in, and the connector (tongue) plate will then disconnect from the buckle.




3. Allow the retractor to roll up the belt. You should hold the webbing end and guide it back into the retractor while it is rolling up. Neatly store the tongue plate in the recess and then insert the connector (tongue) plate into the slot.




**⚠ CAUTION**

- **Do not allow the retractor to roll up the seatbelt too quickly. Otherwise, the metal tongue plates may hit against the trim, resulting in damaged trim.**
- **Have the seatbelt fully rolled up so that the tongue plates are neatly stored. A hanging tongue plate can swing and hit against the trim during driving, causing damage to the trim.**

## ■ Seatbelt maintenance

To clean the seatbelts, use a mild soap and lukewarm water. Never bleach or dye the belts because this could seriously affect their strength.

Inspect the seatbelts and attachments including the webbing and all hardware periodically for cracks, cuts, gashes, tears, damage, loose bolts or worn areas. Replace the seatbelts even if only minor damage is found.

**⚠ CAUTION**

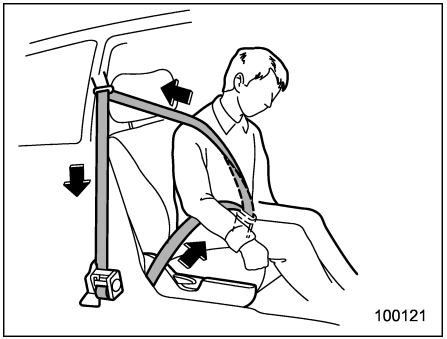
- **Keep the belts free of polishes, oils, chemicals and particularly battery acid.**
- **Never attempt to make modifications or changes that will prevent the seatbelt from operating properly.**

## Seatbelt pretensioners

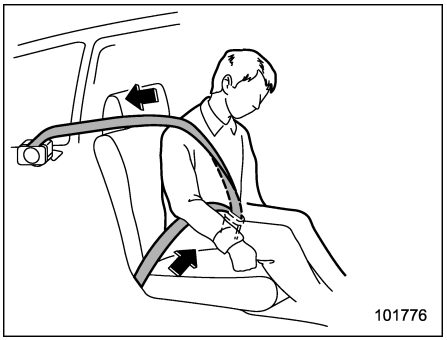
The following seatbelts have a seatbelt pretensioner.

- Driver's seatbelt
- Front passenger's seatbelt
- Rear window-side seatbelt

The seatbelt pretensioners are designed to be activated in the event of an accident involving a moderate to severe frontal collision.




**Front seatbelt pretensioner**




**Rear seatbelt pretensioner**

If the frontal SRS airbag sensors detect a certain predetermined amount of force during a frontal collision, any seatbelt which has a seatbelt pretensioner is quickly drawn in by the pretensioner to take up the slack so that the belt more effectively restrains the seat occupant.

When a seatbelt pretensioner is activated, an operating noise will be heard and a small amount of smoke will be released. These occurrences are normal and not harmful. This smoke does not indicate a fire in the vehicle.

Once the seatbelt pretensioner has been activated, the seatbelt retractor remains locked. Consequently, the seatbelt cannot be pulled out and retracted and therefore must be replaced.

### NOTE

**• Seatbelt pretensioners are not designed to be activated in minor frontal impacts, in side or rear impacts or in roll-over accidents.**

**• The seatbelt pretensioners and frontal SRS airbags operate simultaneously. In models with front passenger's occupant detection system, even if the front passenger's frontal SRS airbag does not operate as the front passenger's seat is not occupied, the seatbelt pretensioner for the front passenger's seat will operate in combination with the driver's frontal SRS airbag/seatbelt pretensioner.**

**• Pretensioners are designed to function on a one-time-only basis. In the event that a pretensioner is activated, we recommend that you have the seatbelt retractor assemblies, which are equipped with seatbelt pretensioners, replaced with genuine SUBARU parts by your authorized SUBARU dealer.**

**• If a seatbelt which has a seatbelt pretensioner does not retract or cannot be pulled out due to a malfunction or activation of the pretensioner, we recommend that you contact your SUBARU dealer as soon as possible.**

- **If the seatbelt retractor assembly or surrounding area has been damaged, we recommend that you contact your SUBARU dealer as soon as possible.**
- **When you sell your vehicle, we urge you to explain to the buyer that it has seatbelt pretensioners by alerting the buyer to the contents of this section.**

**⚠ WARNING**

- **To obtain maximum protection, the occupants should sit in an upright position with their seatbelts properly fastened. Refer to "Seatbelts" ☞1-15.**
- **Do not modify, remove or strike the seatbelt retractor assemblies equipped with seatbelt pretensioners or the surrounding area. This could result in accidental activation of the seatbelt pretensioners or could make the system inoperative, possibly resulting in serious injury. Seatbelt pretensioners have no user-serviceable parts. For required servicing of seatbelt retractors equipped with seatbelt pretensioners, we recommend that you consult your nearest SUBARU dealer.**
- **When discarding seatbelt retractor assemblies equipped with seatbelt pretensioners or scrapping the entire vehicle due to collision damage or for other reasons, we recommend that you consult your SUBARU dealer.**

## ■ System monitors

A diagnostic system continually monitors the readiness of the seatbelt pretensioner while the vehicle is being driven. The seatbelt pretensioners share the control module with the SRS airbag system. Therefore, if any malfunction occurs in a seatbelt pretensioner, the SRS airbag system warning light will illuminate. For details, refer to "SRS airbag system monitor" ☞1-73.

## ■ System servicing

**⚠ WARNING**

- **When discarding a seatbelt retractor assembly or scrapping the entire vehicle damaged by a collision, we recommend that you consult your SUBARU dealer.**
- **Tampering with or disconnecting the system's wiring could result in accidental activation of the seatbelt pretensioner and/or SRS airbag or could make the system inoperative, which may result in serious injury. Do not use electrical test equipment on any circuit related to the seatbelt pretensioner and SRS airbag systems. For required servicing of the seatbelt pretensioner, we recommend that you consult your nearest SUBARU dealer.**

**⚠ CAUTION**

**The front sub sensors are located on both the right and left sides at the front of the vehicle, and the SRS airbag control module including the impact sensors is located under the center console. If you need service or repair in those areas or near the seatbelt pretensioner, we recommend that you have the work performed by your authorized SUBARU dealer.**

– CONTINUED –

**NOTE**

**If the front part of the vehicle is damaged in an accident to the extent that the seatbelt pretensioner does not operate, we recommend that you contact your SUBARU dealer as soon as possible.**

### ■ Precautions against vehicle modification

We recommend that you consult your SUBARU dealer if you want to install any accessory parts to your vehicle.

**⚠ CAUTION**

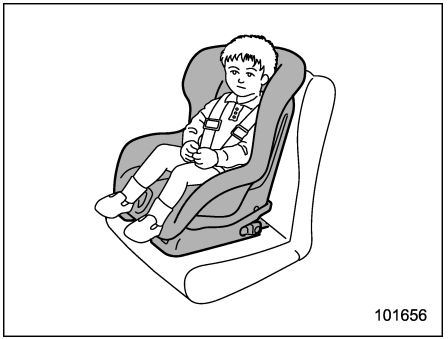
**Do not perform any of the following modifications. Such modifications can interfere with proper operation of the seatbelt pretensioners.**

- **Attachment of any equipment (bush bar, bullbar, winches, snow plow, skid/sump plate, etc.) to the front end other than genuine SUBARU accessory parts or parts that match the quality of genuine SUBARU accessory parts.**
- **Modification of the suspension system or front end structure.**
- **Installation of a tire of different size and construction from the tires specified on the vehicle placard attached to the driver's door pillar or specified for individual vehicle models in this Owner's Manual.**

## Child restraint systems

**NOTE**

**For Australia models:**
**Refer to the Owner's Manual supplement for the instructions of the child restraint system.**

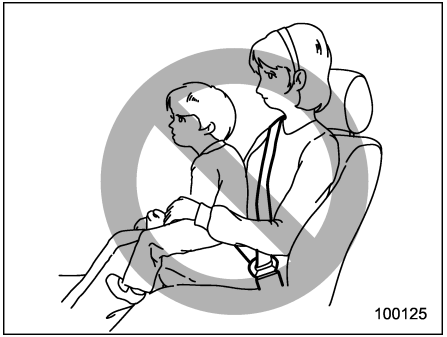



Infants and small children should always be placed in an infant or child restraint system while riding in the vehicle. You should use an infant or child restraint system that is appropriate for the child's age and size. All child restraint systems are designed to be secured in the vehicle seats.

Children could be endangered in an accident if their child restraints are not

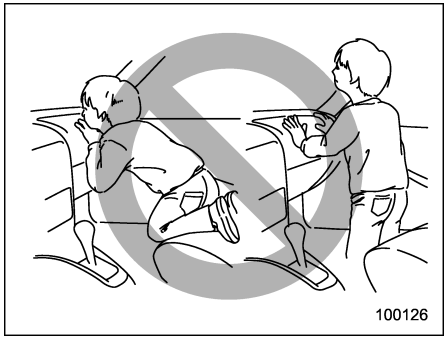
properly secured in the vehicle. When installing the child restraint system, carefully follow the manufacturer's instructions.

According to accident statistics, children are safer when properly restrained in the rear seating positions than in the front seating positions.




**WARNING**

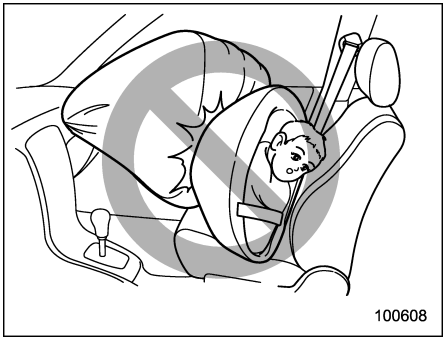
**Never let a passenger hold a child on his or her lap or in his or her arms while the vehicle is moving. The passenger cannot protect the child from injury in a collision, because the child will be caught between the passenger and objects inside the vehicle.**




**WARNING**

- **Children should be properly restrained at all times. Never allow a child to stand up, or to kneel on any seat. Unrestrained children will be thrown forward during sudden stop or in an accident and can be injured seriously.**
- **Never allow a child to stand up, or to kneel on the front passenger's seat, or never hold a child on your lap or in your arms. The SRS airbag deploys with considerable force and can injure or even kill the child.**

## ■ Where to place a child restraint system




**WARNING**

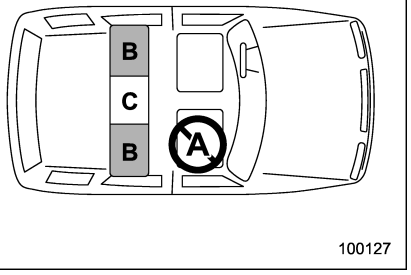
- **Secure ALL types of child restraint devices (including forward facing child seats) in the REAR seats at all times. The SRS airbag deploys with considerable speed and force and can injure or even kill children, especially if they are not restrained or improperly restrained. Because children are lighter and weaker than adults, their risk of being injured from deployment is greater. According to accident statistics, children are safer when properly**

*– CONTINUED –*

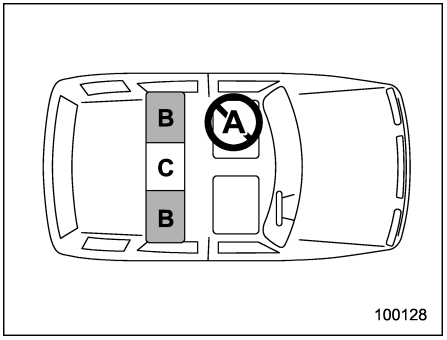
**restrained in the rear seating positions than in the front seating positions.**

- **NEVER INSTALL A REARWARD FACING CHILD SEAT IN THE FRONT PASSENGER'S SEAT. DOING SO RISKS SERIOUS INJURY OR DEATH TO THE CHILD BY PLACING THE CHILD'S HEAD TOO CLOSE TO THE SRS AIRBAG.**

The following descriptions are SUBARU's recommendations on where to place a child restraint system.




**Left-hand drive models**




**Right-hand drive models**

**A: Front passenger's seat**

Do not install a child restraint system (including a booster seat) due to the hazard to children posed by the passenger's airbag.

Only for the models with the occupant detection system, a child restraint system can be used when all of the required conditions are met. For details, refer to "When installing child restraint systems to the passenger's seat (models with occupant detection system)" ☞1-31.

**B: Rear seat, window-side seating positions**

Recommended positions for all types of child restraint systems. In these positions, the following equipment is provided for installing a child restraint system.

- Emergency Locking Retractor (ELR) seatbelts
- Automatic Locking Retractor/Emergency Locking Retractor (ALR/ELR) seatbelts (if equipped)
- ISOFIX anchor bars
- Top tether anchorages

Some types of child restraints might not be able to be secured firmly due to projection of the seat cushion.

In this seating position, you should use only a child restraint system that has a bottom base that fits snugly against the contours of the seat cushion and can be securely retained using the seatbelt.

**C: Rear seat, center seating position**

The ELR seatbelt is provided in this position. Some types of child restraints might not be able to be secured firmly due to projection of the seat cushion.

In this seating position, you should use only a child restraint system that has a bottom base that fits snugly against the contours of the seat cushion and can be securely retained using the seatbelt.

When you install a child restraint system in the rear seat's center seating position, remove the center head restraint.

If a child restraint system is not correctly fixed in place, you should install the child restraint system in a rear seat, window-

side seating position.

▼ **Warning label**

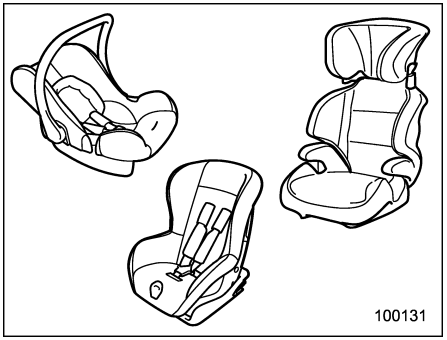
**⚠ WARNING**

- **Warning labels are located on both sides of the front passenger's sun visor. The warning label indicates that it is forbidden to install a rearward facing child restraint system in the front passenger's seat.**
- **NEVER use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIRBAG in front of it, DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur.**




**Warning label**
A) AIRBAG

## ■ Choosing a child restraint system




Choose a child restraint system that is appropriate for the child's size and age to provide the child with proper protection.

Also it is important that the child restraint system meets safety standards applicable to your country.

In most European countries, child restraint systems must meet the requirement of ECE regulation No. 44. It can be identified by looking for the approval label on the child restraint system or the manufacturer's statement of compliance on the box and the system.

*– CONTINUED –*

According to the ECE regulation No. 44, child restraint systems are classified into the following five “mass groups”:

**Group 0:** for children of a mass less than 10 kg

**Group 0+:** for children of a mass less than 13 kg

**Group I:** for children of mass from 9 to 18 kg

**Group II:** for children of mass from 15 to 25 kg

**Group III:** for children of mass from 22 to 36 kg

For European countries, refer to the following table for the recommended child restraint system.

“i-Size” child restraint systems do not apply to this vehicle.

### ▼ Child restraint system suitability for various seating positions

| Mass Group | | Suitability | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | Front passenger*1 | Rear | |
| | | | Outboard | Center |
| 0 | up to 10 kg | X | L1 or U | L1 or U |
| 0+ | up to 13 kg | X | L1 or U | L1 or U |
| I | 9 to 18 kg | L2 or UF | L2 or U | L2 or U |
| II | 15 to 25 kg | X | L3, L4 or UF | X |
| III | 22 to 36 kg | X | L3, L4 or UF | X |

U: Suitable for universal category child restraint system.
UF: Suitable for forward-facing “universal” category restraints approved for use in this mass group.
L1: Childseat SUBARU Baby Safe Plus
L2: Childseat SUBARU Duo Plus
L3: Childseat SUBARU Kid Plus
L4: Childseat SUBARU Kidfix
*1: Only for models with the occupant detection system. For details, refer to “When installing child restraint systems to the passenger’s seat (models with occupant detection system)” ☞1-31.

▼ **Child restraint system suitability for various seating positions (models with ISOFIX rigid anchors)**

| Mass Group | | Size class | Fixture | Vehicle ISOFIX positions | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | | Front Passenger | Rear | |
| | | | | | Outboard | Center |
| carrycot | | F | ISO/L1 | NA | X | NA |
| | | G | ISO/L2 | NA | X | NA |
| 0 | up to 10 kg | E | ISO/R1 | NA | IL1 | NA |
| 0+ | up to 13 kg | E | ISO/R1 | NA | IL1 | NA |
| | | D | ISO/R2 | NA | IL1 | NA |
| | | C | ISO/R3 | NA | IL1 | NA |
| I | 9 to 18 kg | D | ISO/R2 | NA | IL1 | NA |
| | | C | ISO/R3 | NA | IL1 | NA |
| | | B | ISO/F2 | NA | IUF | NA |
| | | B1 | ISO/F2X | NA | IL2 or IUF | NA |
| | | A | ISO/F3 | NA | IUF | NA |
| II | 15 to 25 kg | | | NA | IL3 | NA |
| III | 22 to 36 kg | | | NA | IL3 | NA |

IUF: Suitable for ISOFIX forward child restraint systems of universal category that are approved for use in the mass group.
IL1: Childseat G0/1S ISO FIX with Childseat G0/1S ISO FIX base
IL2: Childseat SUBARU Duo Plus
IL3: Childseat SUBARU Kidfix
X: ISOFIX position not suitable for ISOFIX child restraint systems in this mass group and / or this size class.

## ■ When installing child restraint systems to the passenger's seat (models with occupant detection system)

**⚠ WARNING**

- **NEVER INSTALL A REARWARD FACING CHILD SEAT IN THE FRONT PASSENGER'S SEAT. DOING SO RISKS SERIOUS INJURY OR DEATH TO THE CHILD BY PLACING THE CHILD'S HEAD TOO CLOSE TO THE SRS AIRBAG.**
- **Never install a forward facing child restraint system when the front passenger's frontal airbag ON indicator is illuminated. Otherwise, there is an increased risk of injury to the child when the airbags are deployed, even with a child restraint system.**
- **When you install a child restraint system, follow the manufacturer's instructions supplied with it. After installing the child restraint system, check to ensure that it is held securely in position. If it is not held tight and secure, the danger of your event of an accident may be increased.**

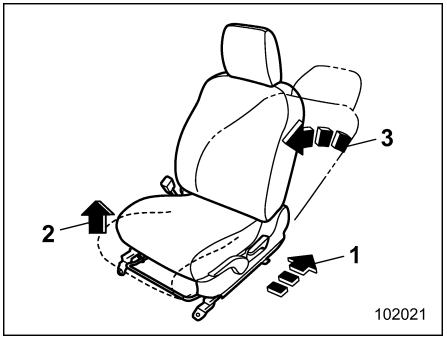
*– CONTINUED –*

- **Do not place the head restraint that has been removed in the passenger compartment to prevent it from being thrown around in the passenger compartment in a sudden stop or a sharp turn.**

### ▼ Required conditions

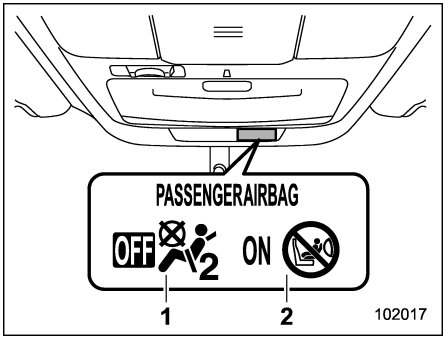
When you install a child restraint system to the passenger's seat, be sure that all of the following required conditions are met.

- The passenger's seat is adjusted as follows.




1) Seat position: fully rearward position
2) Seat cushion height: highest position (models with seat cushion height adjustment)
3) Seatback reclining: most upright position

- The front passenger's frontal airbag ON indicator is off.




1) Front passenger's frontal airbag OFF indicator
2) Front passenger's frontal airbag ON indicator

Depending on the type and/or form of the child restraint system, and the child's weight, the front passenger's frontal airbag ON indicator may not turn off. In this case, install the child restraint system to a rear seating position. For details about the front passenger's frontal airbag ON indicator, refer to "Occupant detection system" ☞1-58.

- The child restraint system does not contact the head restraint. If the child restraint system makes contact with the head restraint, raise the head restraint to

the extended position. If the child restraint system still makes contact, remove the head restraint. For details, refer to “Head restraint adjustment” ☞1-8.

▼ **Installation procedure**

• For the installation procedure, refer to “Installing child restraint systems with seatbelt” ☞1-33.

## ■ Installing child restraint systems with seatbelt

**⚠ WARNING**

- **Child restraint systems and seatbelts can become hot in a vehicle that has been closed up in sunny weather; they could burn a small child. Check the child restraint system before you place a child in it.**
- **Do not leave an unsecured child restraint system in your vehicle. Unsecured child restraint systems can be thrown around inside of the vehicle in a sudden stop, turn or accident; they can strike and injure vehicle occupants as well as result in serious injuries or death to the child.**

**⚠ CAUTION**

**When you install a child restraint system, follow the manufacturer’s instructions supplied with it. After installing the child restraint system, check to ensure that it is held securely in position. If it is not held tight and secure, the danger of your child suffering personal injury in the event of an accident may be increased.**

First check if the Automatic Locking Retractor (ALR) is equipped for the seatbelts of the vehicle according to the following procedure.

1. Draw out the seatbelt completely.
2. Retract the seatbelt even slightly and try to draw out the seatbelt again.
3. If the seatbelt is locked in that position and cannot be extended, it indicates that an ALR is equipped for the seatbelt.

When the seatbelt is retracted fully, the ALR mode is canceled and the Emergency Locking Retractor (ELR) mode is restored.

### NOTE

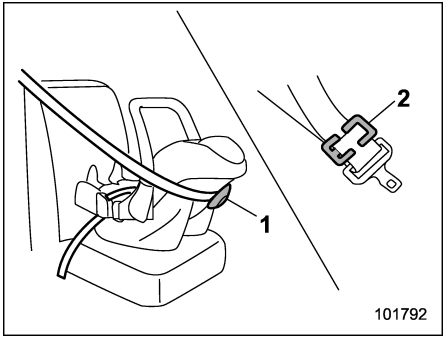
**• For details about the ELR, refer to “Emergency Locking Retractor (ELR)” ☞1-16.**

**• For details about the ALR, refer to “Automatic Locking Retractor/Emergency Locking Retractor (ALR/ELR)” ☞1-17.**

▼ **Installing a rearward facing child restraint**

### NOTE

**• For models with ALR:**
**If using ALR mode is recommended by the manufacturer’s instructions supplied with the child restraint system, use ALR mode.**



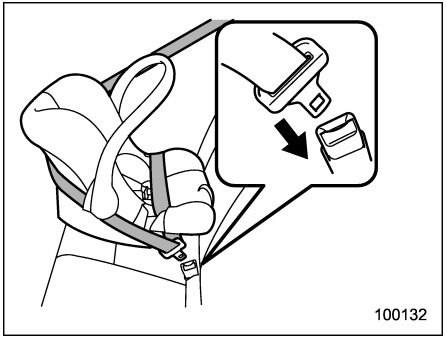

1) Lock-off device
2) Locking clip

**• If using the lock-off device or the locking clip is recommended by the manufacturer’s instructions supplied**

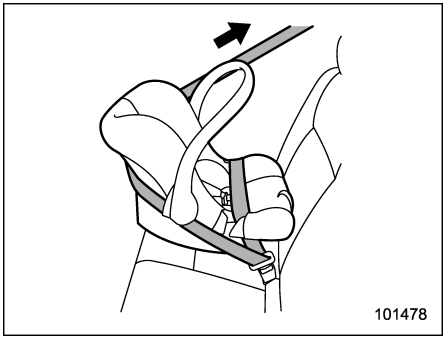
– CONTINUED –

**with the child restraint system, use the lock-off device or the locking clip to secure the child restraint system.**

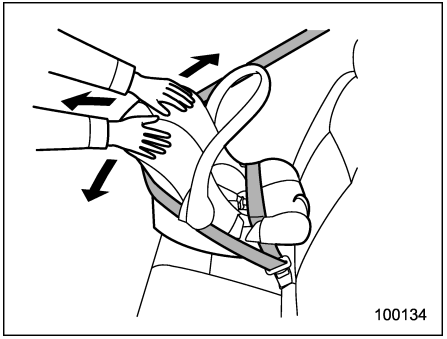
Through the following steps, the child restraint system is fastened with a seatbelt that is set to ELR mode.




1. Place the child restraint system in the rear seating position.
2. Run the lap and shoulder belt through or around the child restraint system following the instructions provided by its manufacturer.
3. Insert the tongue plate into the buckle until you hear a click.




4. Take up the slack in the lap belt.




5. Push and pull the child restraint system forward and from side to side to check that it is firmly secured.
6. To remove the child restraint system, press the release button on the seatbelt buckle.

**⚠ WARNING**

**NEVER INSTALL A REARWARD FACING CHILD SEAT IN THE FRONT PASSENGER'S SEAT. DOING SO RISKS SERIOUS INJURY OR DEATH TO THE CHILD BY PLACING THE CHILD'S HEAD TOO CLOSE TO THE SRS AIRBAG.**

**▼ Installing forward facing child restraint**

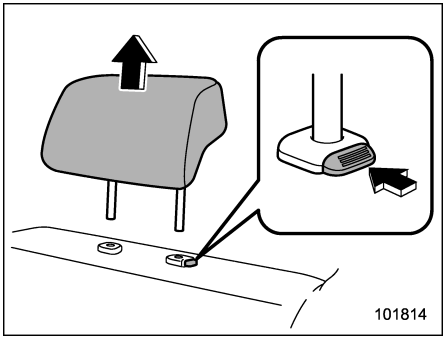
If the ALR is not equipped for the seatbelt, refer to "Models without ALR" ☞1-35.

If the ALR is equipped for the seatbelt, refer to "Models with ALR" ☞1-36.

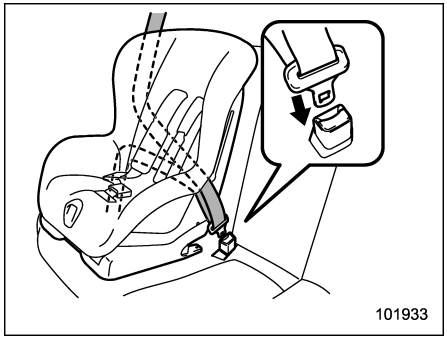
**⚠ CAUTION**

**Do not place the head restraint that has been removed in the passenger compartment to prevent it from being thrown around in the passenger compartment in a sudden stop or a sharp turn.**

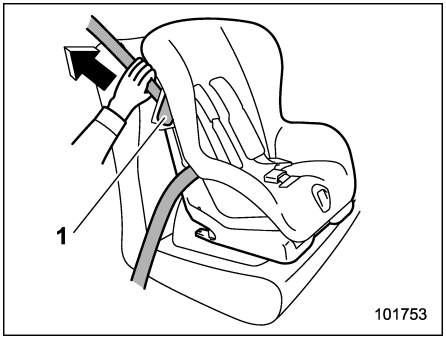
▽ **Models without ALR**




1. Remove the head restraint of the rear seating position where the child restraint system is to be installed.
2. Store the removed head restraint in the trunk (Sedan) or cargo area (Outback).
3. Place the child restraint system on the seat.



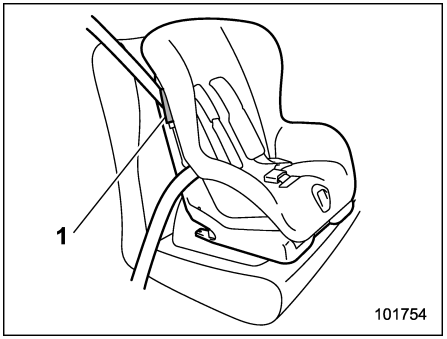

4. Run the lap and shoulder belt through or around the child restraint system following the instructions provided by its manufacturer.
5. Insert the tongue plate into the buckle until you hear a click.




1) Lock-off lever

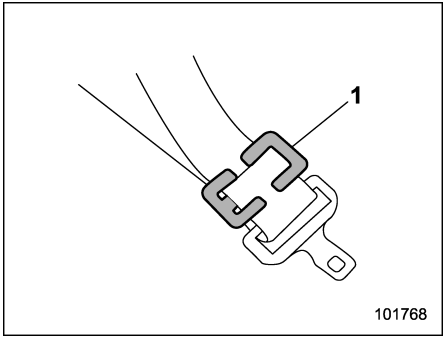
6. Release the child restraint system lock-off lever and pass the shoulder belt through the lock-off lever.
7. Take up the slack in the lap belt. At this time, to secure the child restraint system more firmly, apply your weight to push it down into the seat cushion as you tighten the seatbelt.

– CONTINUED –



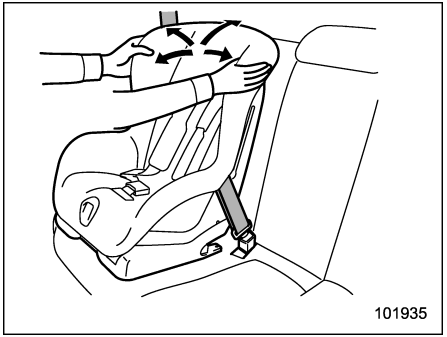

1) Lock-off lever

8. Lock the child restraint system lock-off lever to fix the shoulder belt.




1) Locking clip

9. If your child restraint system is not equipped with a lock-off (a seatbelt locking feature), secure the child restraint system using a locking clip.



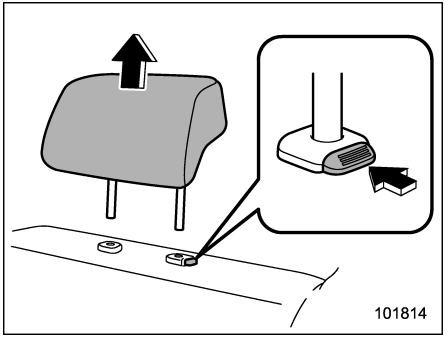

10. Before having a child sit in the child restraint system, try to move it back and forth and right and left to check that it is firmly secured.

▽ **Models with ALR**

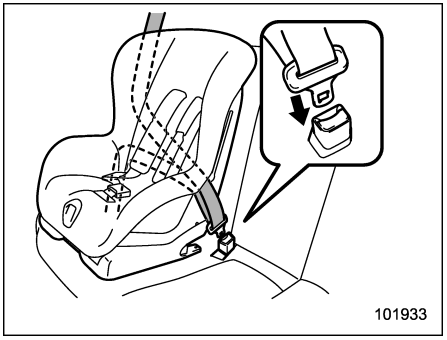
## NOTE

**If using ALR mode is not recommended by the manufacturer's instructions supplied with the child restraint system, use the lock-off lever or the locking clip instead of using ALR mode. In this case, refer to the previous section "Models without ALR" ☞1-35.**

Through the following steps, the child restraint system is fastened by changing the seatbelt from ELR mode to ALR mode.

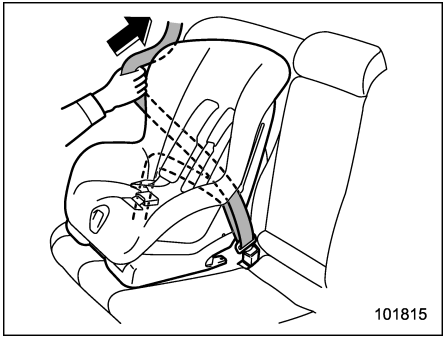



1. Remove the head restraint of the rear seating position where the child restraint system is to be installed.
2. Store the removed head restraint in the trunk (Sedan) or cargo area (Outback).
3. Place the child restraint system on the seat.




4. Run the lap and shoulder belt through or around the child restraint system following the instructions provided by its manufacturer.

5. Insert the tongue plate into the buckle until you hear a click.

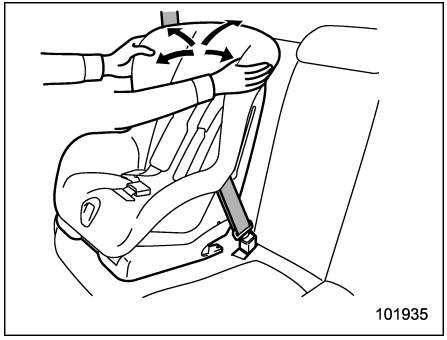



6. Take up the slack in the lap belt.

7. Pull out the seatbelt fully from the retractor to change the retractor over from the Emergency Locking Retractor (ELR) to the Automatic Locking Retractor (ALR) mode. Then, allow the belt to rewind into the retractor. As the belt is rewinding, clicks will be heard which indicate the retractor functions as ALR.

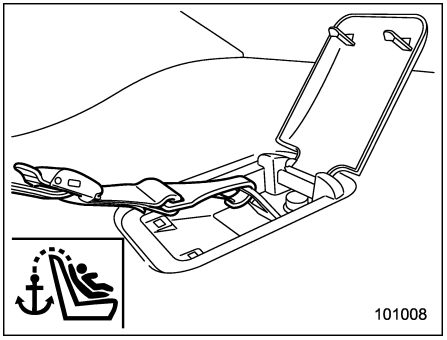
## NOTE

**For details about the ALR mode, refer to "Automatic Locking Retractor/Emergency Locking Retractor (ALR/ELR)" ☞1-17.**



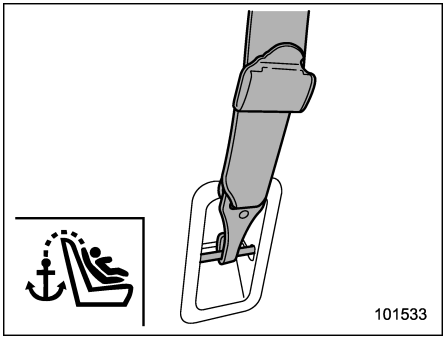

8. Before having a child sit in the child restraint system, try to move it back and forth and right and left to check that it is firmly secured in the center of the seat. Sometimes a child restraint can be more firmly secured by pushing it down into the seat cushion and then tightening the seatbelt.

9. Pull at the shoulder portion of the belt to confirm that it cannot be pulled out (ALR properly functioning).



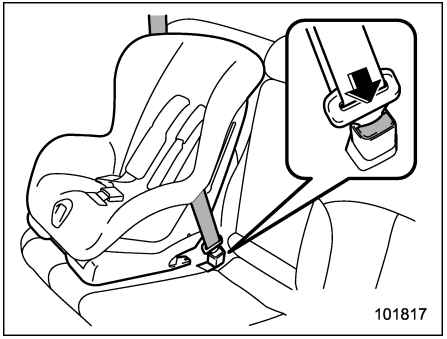

**Sedan**

– CONTINUED –




**Outback**

10. If the child restraint system requires a top tether, latch the hook onto the top tether anchorage and tighten the top tether. For additional instructions, refer to “Top tether anchorages” ☞1-42.

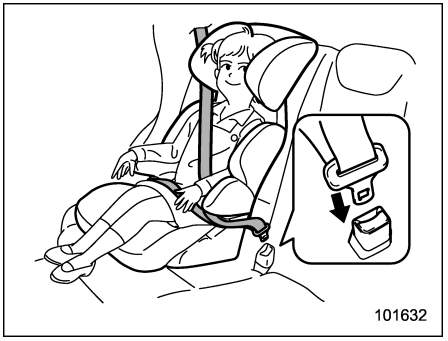



11. To remove the child restraint system, press the release button on the seatbelt buckle and allow the belt to retract completely. The belt will return to the ELR mode.

## NOTE

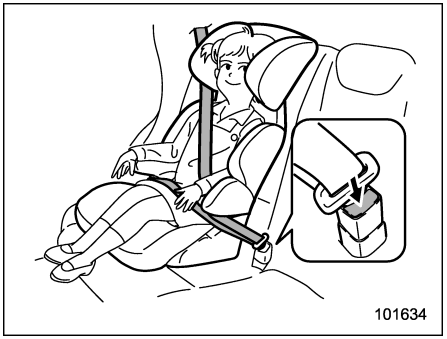
**When the child restraint system is no longer in use, remove it and restore the ELR mode of the retractor. That mode is restored by allowing the seatbelt to retract fully.**

## ■ Installing a booster seat




1. Place the booster seat in the rear seating position and sit the child on it. The child should sit well back on the booster seat.
2. Run the lap and shoulder belt through or around the booster seat and the child following the instructions provided by its manufacturer.
3. Insert the tongue plate into the buckle until you hear a click. Take care not to twist the seatbelt.

Make sure the shoulder belt is positioned across the center of child’s shoulder and that the lap belt is positioned as low as possible on the child’s hips.

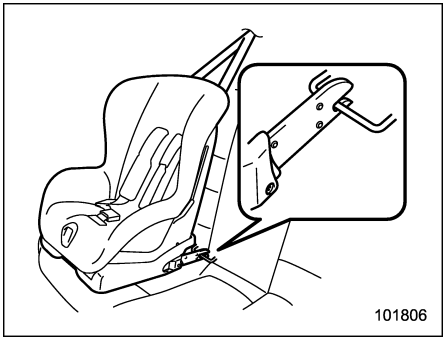



4. To remove the booster seat, press the release button on the seatbelt buckle and allow the belt to retract.

**⚠ WARNING**

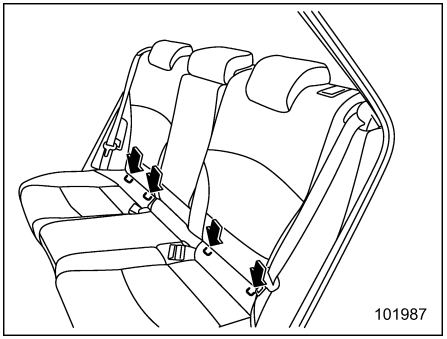
- **Never use a belt that is twisted or reversed. In an accident, this can increase the risk or severity of injury to the child.**
- **Never place the shoulder belt under the child's arm or behind the child's back. If an accident occurs, this can increase the risk or severity of injury to the child.**
- **The seatbelt should fit snugly in order to provide full restraint. Loose fitting belts are not as effective in preventing or reducing injury.**
- **Place the lap belt as low as possible on the child's hips. High-positioned lap belt will increase the risk of sliding under the lap belt and of the lap belt sliding up over the abdomen, and both can result in serious internal injury or death.**
- **Make sure the shoulder belt is positioned across the center of child's shoulder. Placing the shoulder belt over the neck may result in neck injury during sudden braking or in a collision.**

## ■ Installation of child restraint systems using ISOFIX anchor bars

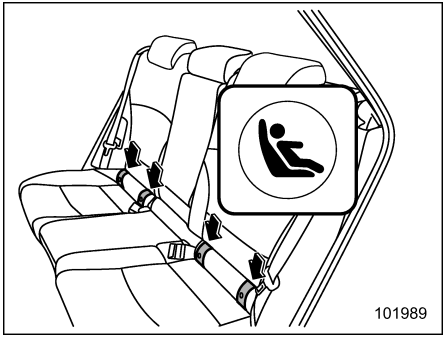



Your vehicle is equipped with ISOFIX anchor bars that allow an approved ISOFIX child restraint system to be installed on the rear seat without use of a seatbelt.

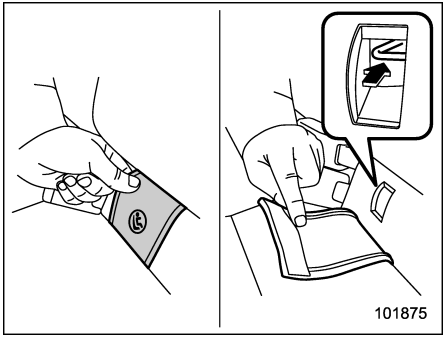
– CONTINUED –



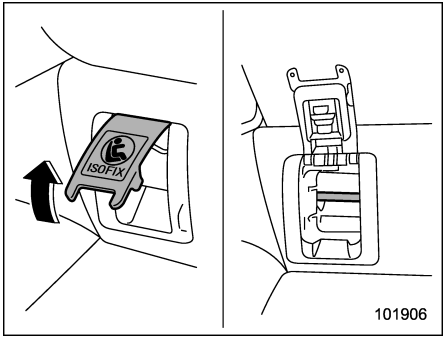

The ISOFIX anchor bars allow you to install a child restraint system only on the rear seat window-side seating positions. For each window-side seating position, two anchor bars are provided.




You will find the marks "" at the bottom of the rear seat seatbacks. These marks indicate the positions of the ISOFIX anchor bars.

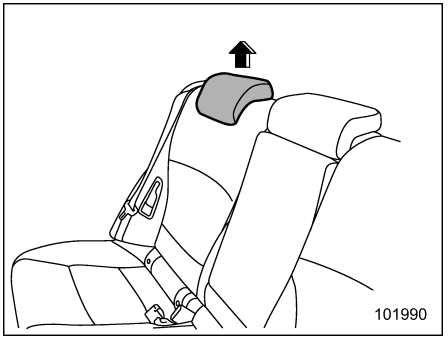



**Type A**




**Type B**

1. Open the covers.

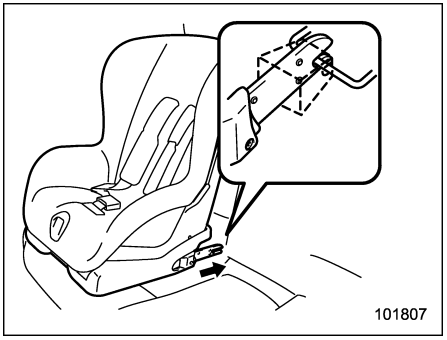



2. Remove the head restraint of the rear seating position where the child restraint system is to be installed.

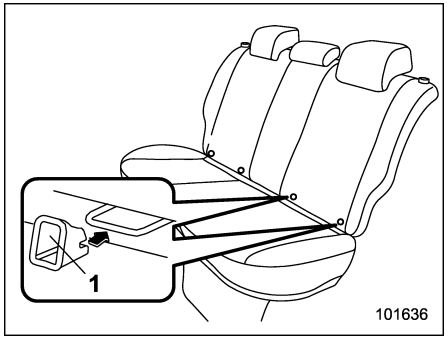
**CAUTION**

**Do not place the head restraint that has been removed in the passenger compartment to prevent it from being thrown around in the passenger compartment in a sudden stop or a sharp turn.**

3. Store the removed head restraint in the trunk (Sedan) or cargo area (Outback).




4. While following the instructions supplied by the child restraint system manufacturer, connect the connectors of the child restraint system to the anchor bars. When the connectors are fastened, make sure that the adjacent seatbelts are not caught.



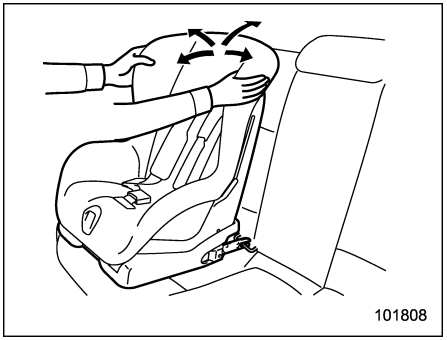

1) Inserting aid

## NOTE

**If your child restraint system is provided with inserting aids, clip them to the two ISOFIX anchor bars before connecting the child restraint system.**

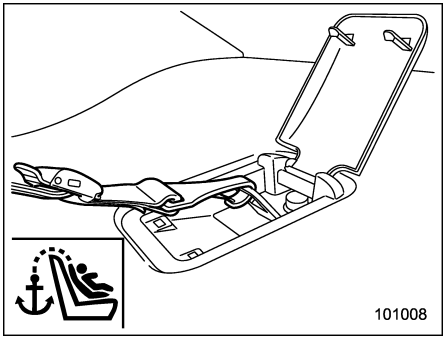
**Position the two connectors just in front of the two inserting aids. Then insert the two connectors into the inserting aids to connect the connectors to the anchor bars.**

**The inserting aids make it easier to fit the child restraint system with ISOFIX and avoid damage to the seat.**

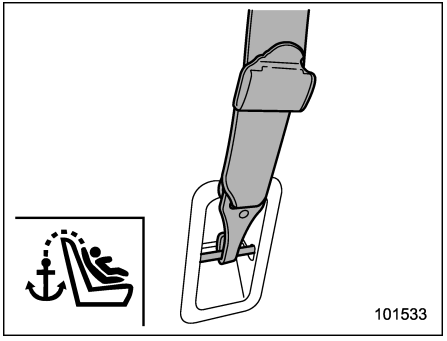



5. Before seating a child in the child restraint system, try to move it back and forth and right and left to verify that it is firmly secured in the center of the seat.

– CONTINUED –




**Sedan**




**Outback**

If the child restraint system requires a top tether, latch the hook onto the top tether anchorage and tighten the top tether. For additional instructions, refer to "Top tether anchorages" ☞1-42.

For further information, refer to the instruction manual supplied by the child restraint system manufacturer.

**⚠ CAUTION**

**When you install a child restraint system, follow the manufacturer's instructions supplied with it. After installing the child restraint system, check to ensure that it is held securely in position. If it is not held tight and secure, the danger of your child suffering personal injury in the event of an accident may be increased.**

## NOTE

**Before installing a child restraint system, ask the manufacturer of the system to confirm that it is one approved for your vehicle.**

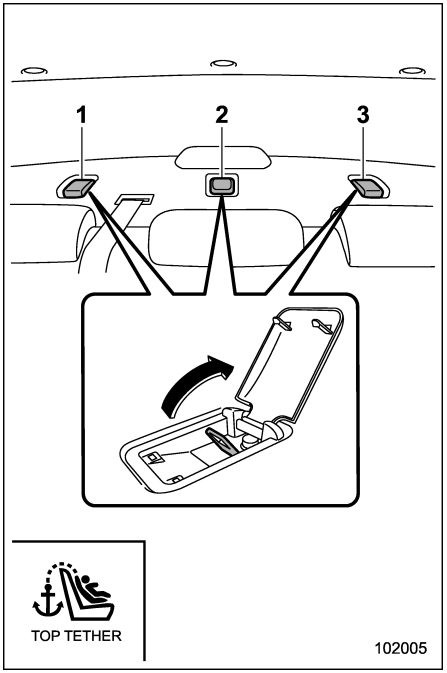
## ■ Top tether anchorages

Your vehicle is provided with two or three top tether anchorages so that a child restraint system having a top tether can be installed in the rear seat. When installing a child restraint system using top tether, proceed as follows, while observing the instructions by the child restraint system manufacturer.

Since a top tether can provide additional stability by offering another connection between a child restraint system and the vehicle, we recommend that you use a top tether whenever one is required or available.

▼ **Anchorage location**

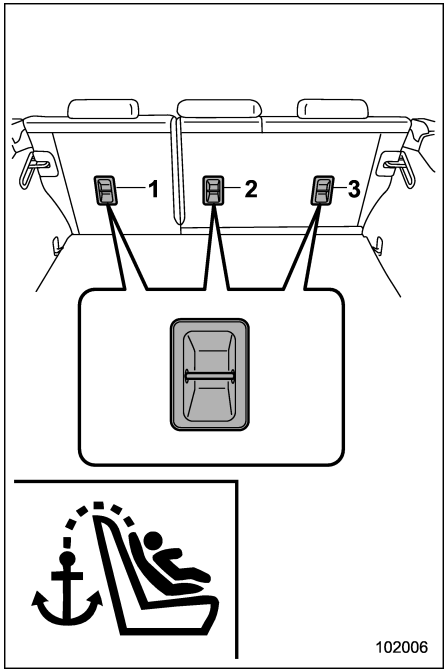
▽ **Sedan**




1) For right seat
2) For center seat (Australia models)
3) For left seat

There are two or three anchorages on the rear shelf behind the rear seat.

▽ **Outback**



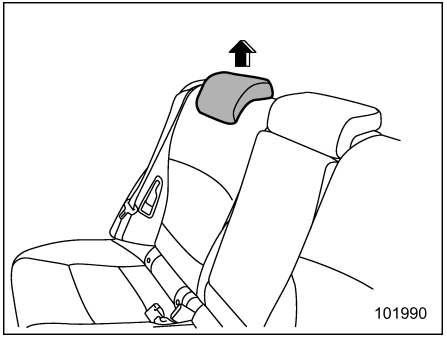

1) For left seat
2) For center seat (Australia models)
3) For right seat

There are two or three anchorages on the back side of the rear seatback.

▼ **To hook the top tether**

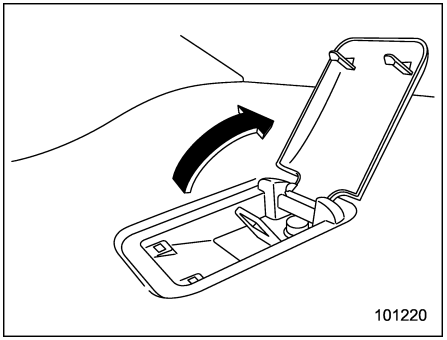
**⚠ CAUTION**

- **Always remove the head restraint when mounting a child restraint system with a top tether. Failure to do so may prevent the top tether from being fastened tightly.**
- **Do not place the head restraint that has been removed in the passenger compartment to prevent it from being thrown around in the passenger compartment in a sudden stop or a sharp turn.**



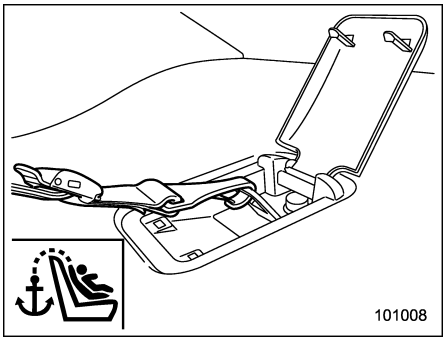

*– CONTINUED –*

1. Remove the head restraint at the window-side seating position where the child restraint system has been installed with the ISOFIX anchor bars or seatbelt; lift up the head restraint while pressing the release button.
2. Store the removed head restraint in the trunk (Sedan) or cargo area (Outback).

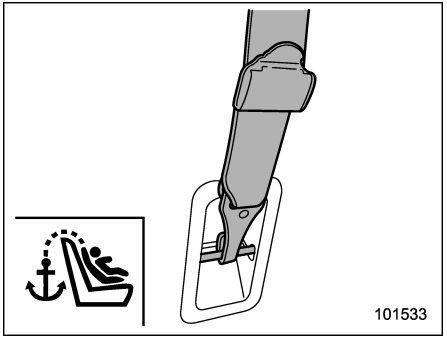



**Sedan**

3. For Sedan, open the cover for the appropriate upper anchorage.




**Sedan**




**Outback**

4. Attach the child restraint top tether hook to the appropriate upper anchorage.
5. Tighten the top tether securely.

We recommend that you contact your SUBARU dealer if you have any question regarding the installation of a child restraint system.

## *SRS airbag (Supplemental Restraint System airbag)

*SRS: This stands for supplemental restraint system. This name is used because the airbag system supplements the vehicle's seatbelts.

Your vehicle is equipped with a supplemental restraint system in addition to a lap/shoulder belt at each front seating position and each rear window-side seating position.

The supplemental restraint system (SRS) consists of the following airbags. The configurations are as follows:

- **Frontal airbags** for driver and front passenger
- **Knee airbag** for driver
- **Side airbags** for driver and front passenger
- **Curtain airbags** for driver, front passenger and window-side rear passengers

**These SRS airbags are designed only to be a supplement to the primary protection provided by the seatbelt.**

The system also controls front seatbelt pretensioners. For operation instructions and precautions concerning the seatbelt pretensioner, refer to "Seatbelt pretensioners" ☞1-24.

### ■ General precautions regarding SRS airbag system

**⚠ WARNING**

- **To obtain maximum protection in the event of an accident, the driver and all passengers in the vehicle should always wear seatbelts when the vehicle is moving. The SRS airbag is designed only to be a supplement to the primary protection provided by the seatbelt. It does not eliminate the need to fasten seatbelts. In combination with the seatbelts, it offers the best combined protection in case of a serious accident.**

  **Not wearing a seatbelt increases the chance of severe injury or death in a crash even when the vehicle has the SRS airbag.**

  **For instructions and precautions concerning the seatbelt system, refer to "Seatbelts" ☞1-15.**
- **The SRS side airbag and SRS curtain airbag are designed only to be a supplement to the primary protection provided by the seatbelt. They do not eliminate the need to fasten seatbelts. It is also important to wear your seatbelt to help avoid injuries that can result when an occupant is not seated in a proper upright position.**



100155

**⚠ WARNING**

**The SRS airbags deploy with considerable speed and force. Occupants who are out of proper position when the SRS airbag deploys could suffer very serious injuries. Because the SRS airbag needs enough space for deployment, the driver should always sit upright and well back in the seat as far from the steering wheel as practical while**

– CONTINUED –

**still maintaining full vehicle control and the front passenger should move the seat as far back as possible and sit upright and well back in the seat.**

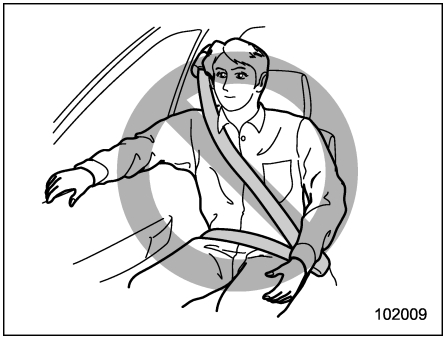



**⚠ WARNING**

- **Do not sit or lean unnecessarily close to either front door. The SRS side airbags are stored in both front seat seatbacks next to the door, and they provide protection by deploying rapidly (faster than the blink of an eye) in the event of a side impact collision. However, the force of SRS side airbag deployment may cause injuries if your head or other parts of the body are too close to the SRS side airbag.**
- **Do not sit or lean unnecessarily close to the front or rear door on either side. Also, do not put your head, arms or hands out of the window. The curtain airbags on both sides of the cabin are stored in the roof side (between the front pillar and a point over the rear seat), and they provide protection by deploying rapidly (faster than the blink of an eye) in the event of a side impact. However, the force of its deployment may cause injuries if your head is too close to it.**
- **Do not sit or lean unnecessarily close to the SRS airbag. Because the SRS airbag deploys with considerable speed – faster than the blink of an eye – and force to protect in high speed collisions, the force of an airbag can injure an occupant whose body is too close to SRS airbag.**

  **It is also important to wear your seatbelt to help avoid injuries that can result when the SRS airbag contacts an occupant not in proper position such as one thrown forward during pre-accident braking.**

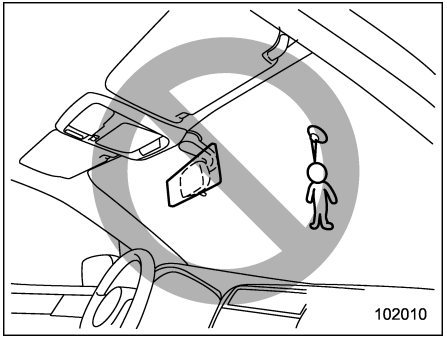
  **Even when properly positioned, there remains a possibility that an occupant may suffer minor injury such as abrasions and bruises to the face or arms because of the SRS airbag deployment force.**




**⚠ WARNING**

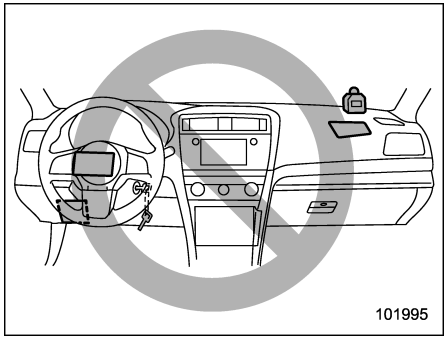
- **Do not rest your arm on either front door or its internal trim. You could be injured in the event of SRS side airbag deployment.**
- **Do not place any objects over or near the SRS airbag cover or between you and the SRS airbag.**

If the SRS airbag deploys, those objects could interfere with its proper operation and could be propelled inside the vehicle and cause injury.



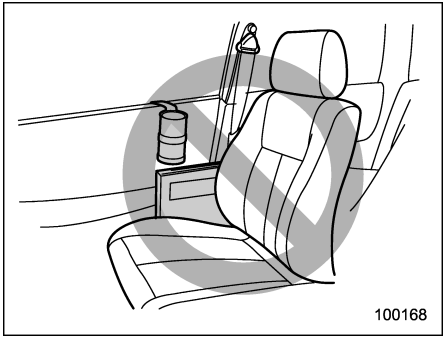

**⚠ WARNING**

Do not attach accessories to the windshield, or fit an extra-wide mirror over the rear view mirror. If the SRS airbag deploys, those objects could become projectiles that could seriously injure vehicle occupants.




**⚠ WARNING**

- Do not put any objects over the steering wheel pad and dashboard. If the SRS frontal airbag deploys, these objects could interfere with its proper operation and could be propelled inside the vehicle, causing injury.
- The key must not be attached to heavy, sharp or hard accessories, or another key. If the SRS knee airbag deploys, those objects could interfere with its proper operation and could be propelled inside the vehicle and cause injury.
- Do not put any objects under the driver's side of the instrument panel. If the SRS knee airbag deploys, those objects could interfere with its proper operation and could be propelled inside the vehicle and cause injury.



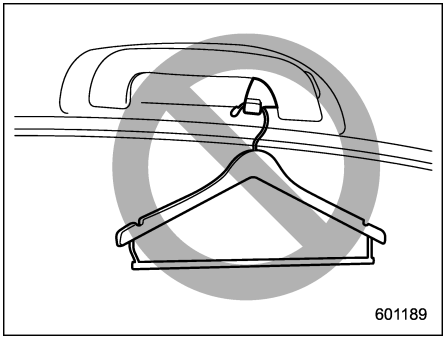

**⚠ WARNING**

- Do not attach accessories to the door trim or near either SRS side airbags and do not place objects near the SRS side airbags. In the event of SRS side airbag deployment, they could be propelled dangerously toward the vehicle's occupants and cause injuries.
- Do not attach a hands-free micro-

– CONTINUED –

**phone or any other accessory to a front pillar, a center pillar, a rear pillar, the windshield, a side window, an assist grip, or any other cabin surface that would be near a deploying SRS curtain airbag. A hands-free microphone or other accessory in such a location could be propelled through the cabin with great force by the curtain airbag, or it could prevent correct deployment of the curtain airbag. In either case, the result could be serious injuries.**

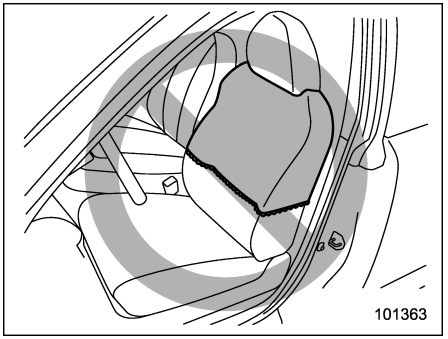
- **Never hang or place coat hangers or other hard or pointed objects near the side windows. If such items are present when the SRS curtain airbags deploy, they could be thrown through the passenger compartment and cause serious injuries. They could also prevent proper operation of the SRS curtain airbags.**




**⚠ WARNING**

**Do not place hangers or other hard objects on the coat hooks. If such items are hanging on the coat hooks during deployment of the SRS curtain airbags, they could cause serious injuries by coming off the coat hooks and being thrown through the cabin or by preventing deployment of the curtain airbags.**

**Before hanging clothing on the coat hooks, make sure there are no sharp objects in the pockets. Hang clothing directly on the coat hooks without using hangers.**




**⚠ WARNING**

**Do not put any kind of cover or clothes or other objects over either front seatback and do not attach labels or stickers to the front seat surface on or near the SRS side airbag. They could prevent proper deployment of the SRS side airbag, reducing protection available to the front seat's occupant.**


100082

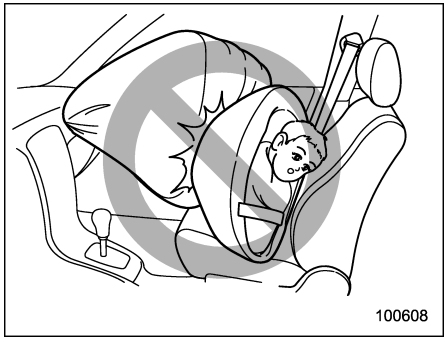
**WARNING**

- **Put children in the REAR seat properly restrained at all times in a child restraint device or in a seatbelt, whichever is appropriate for the child's age, height and weight. The SRS airbag deploys with considerable speed and force and can injure or even kill children, especially if they are not restrained or improperly restrained. Because children are lighter and weaker than adults, their risk of being injured from deployment is greater.**

  **Secure ALL types of child restraint devices (including forward facing child seats) in the REAR seats at all times.**

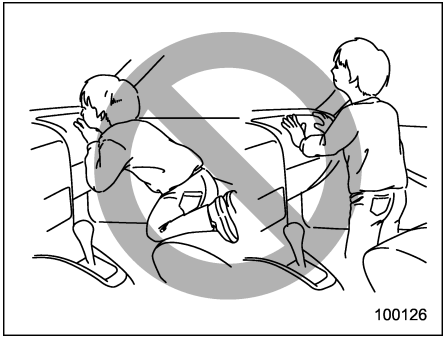
  **According to accident statistics, children are safer when properly restrained in the rear seating positions than in the front seating positions.**

  **For instructions and precautions concerning the child restraint system, refer to "Child restraint systems" ☞1-26.**


100608

**WARNING**

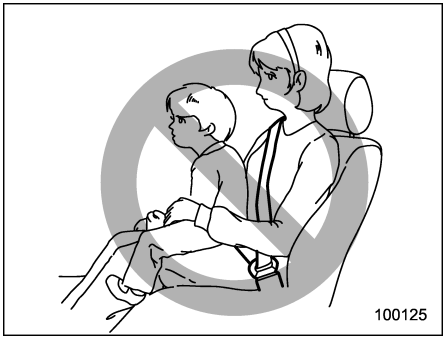
**NEVER INSTALL A REARWARD FACING CHILD SEAT IN THE FRONT SEAT. DOING SO RISKS SERIOUS INJURY OR DEATH TO THE CHILD BY PLACING THE CHILD'S HEAD TOO CLOSE TO THE SRS AIRBAG.**


100126

**WARNING**

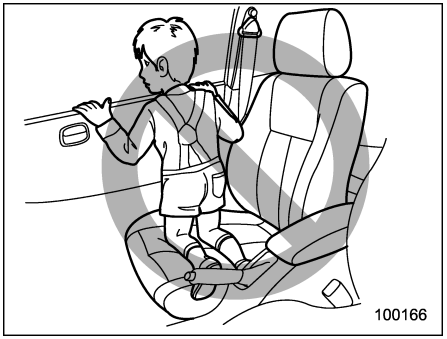
**Never allow a child to stand up or kneel on the front passenger's seat. The SRS airbag deploys with considerable force and can injure or even kill the child.**

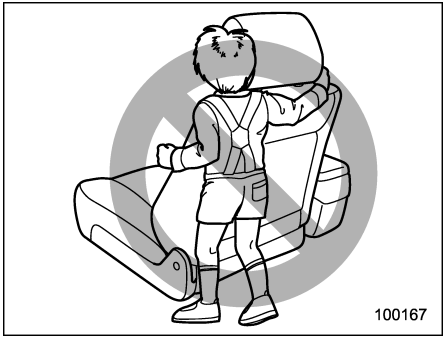
– CONTINUED –




**⚠ WARNING**

**Never hold a child on your lap or in your arms. The SRS airbag deploys with considerable force and can injure or even kill the child.**




**⚠ WARNING**

- **Never allow a child to do the following.**
  - **– Kneel on any passenger's seat facing the side window**
  - **– Wrap his/her arms around the front seat seatback**
  - **– Put his/her head, arms or other parts of the body out of the window**

  **In the event of an accident, the force of SRS side airbag and/or SRS curtain airbag deployment could injure the child seriously because his/her head, arms or other parts of the body are too close to the SRS side airbag and/or SRS curtain airbag.**
- **Since your vehicle is also equipped with a front passenger's SRS frontal airbag, children aged 12 and under should be placed in the rear seat anyway and should be properly restrained at all times.**

**⚠ CAUTION**

- **When the SRS airbag deploys, some smoke will be released. This smoke could cause breathing problems for people with a history of asthma or other breathing trouble. If you or your passengers have breathing pro-**

**blems after SRS airbag deploys, get fresh air promptly.**

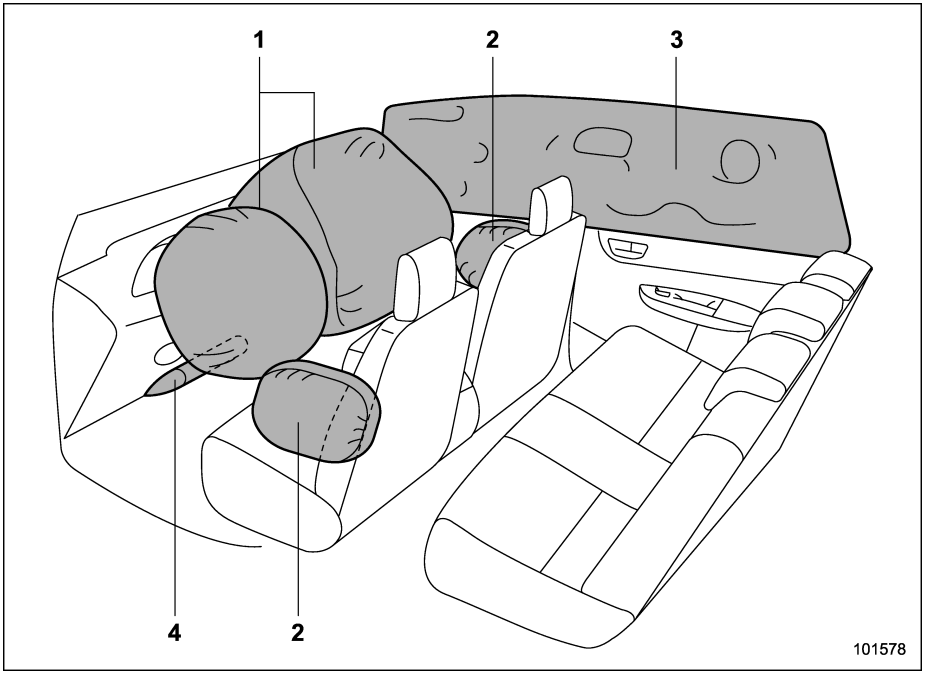
- **A deploying SRS airbag releases hot gas. Occupants could get burned if they come into direct contact with the hot gas.**

## NOTE

- **When you sell your vehicle, we urge you to explain to the buyer that it is equipped with SRS airbags by alerting the buyer to the applicable section in this Owner's Manual.**
- **If the SRS airbag deploys, fuel supply will be cut off to reduce the risk of fire caused by leaking fuel. For details about restarting of the engine, refer to "If your vehicle is involved in an accident" ☞9-34.**

– CONTINUED –

## ■ Components




1) SRS frontal airbag
2) SRS side airbag
3) SRS curtain airbag
4) SRS knee airbag

The SRS airbags are stowed in the following locations.

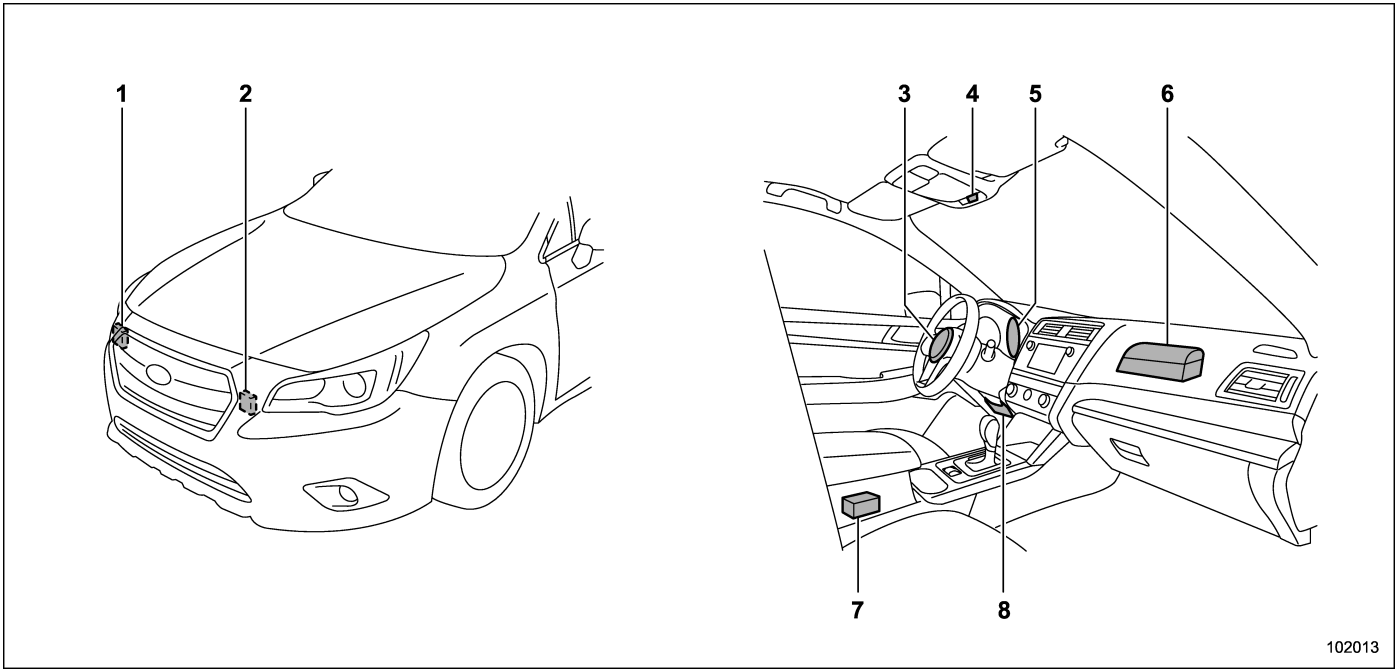
**Driver's SRS frontal airbag**: in the center portion of the steering wheel
An "SRS AIRBAG" mark is located on the steering pad.

**Front passenger's SRS frontal airbag**: near the top of the dashboard under an "SRS AIRBAG" mark

**SRS side airbag**: in the door side of each front seat seatback
An "SRS AIRBAG" mark is located on the trim cover on the door side of each front seat cushion.

**SRS curtain airbag**: in the roof side (between the front pillar and a point over the rear seat)
An "SRS AIRBAG" mark is located at the top of each center pillar.

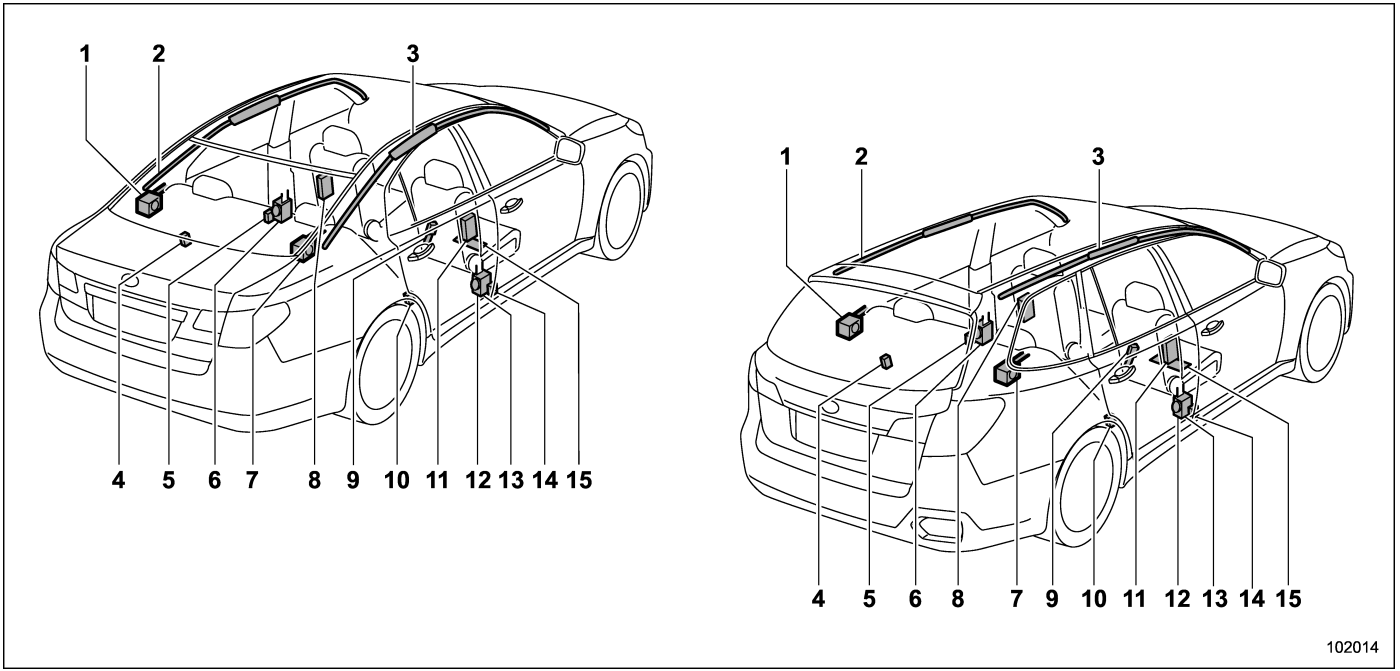
**SRS knee airbag**: under the steering column
An "SRS AIRBAG" mark is located on the lower cover.




**Left-hand drive models**

1) Front sub sensor (right-hand side)
2) Front sub sensor (left-hand side)
3) Frontal airbag module (driver's side)
4) Front passenger's frontal airbag ON and OFF indicator
5) SRS airbag system warning light
6) Frontal airbag module (front passenger's side)
7) Airbag control module (including impact sensor)
8) Knee airbag module

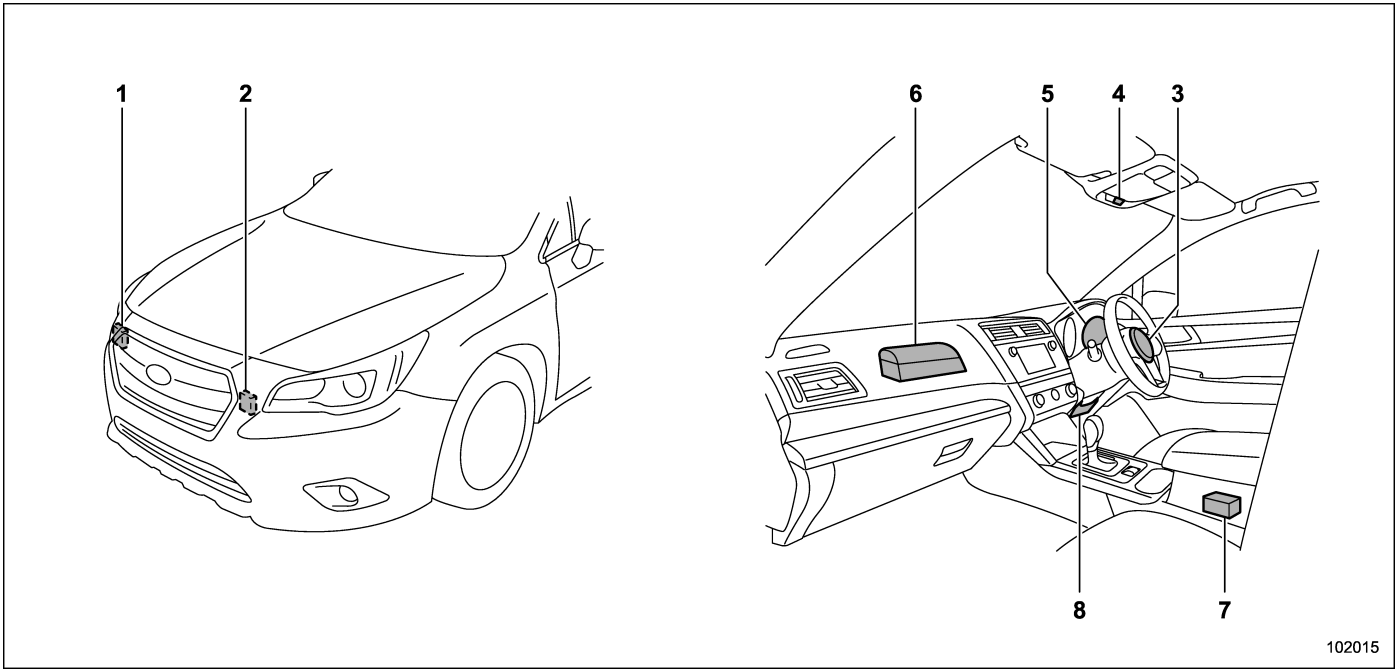
– CONTINUED –




**Left-hand drive models**

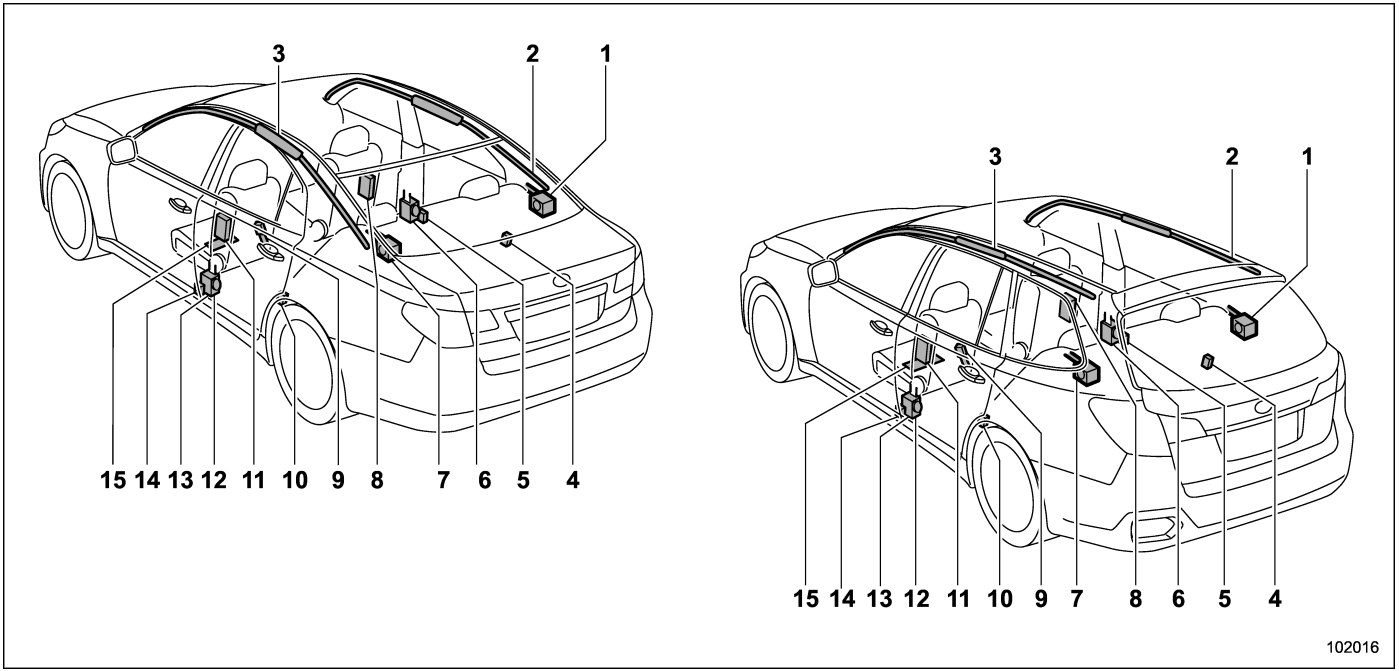
1) Seatbelt pretensioner (rear seat left-hand side)
2) Curtain airbag module (left-hand side)
3) Curtain airbag module (right-hand side)
4) Curtain airbag sensor (rear wheel house left-hand side)
5) Side airbag sensor (center pillar left-hand side)
6) Seatbelt pretensioner (front seat left-hand side)
7) Seatbelt pretensioner (rear seat right-hand side)
8) Side airbag module (left-hand side)
9) Seatbelt buckle switch (front passenger's side — if equipped)
10) Curtain airbag sensor (rear wheel house right-hand side)
11) Side airbag module (right-hand side)
12) Seatbelt pretensioner (front seat right-hand side)
13) Seatbelt tension sensor (front passenger's seat) (if equipped)
14) Side airbag sensor (center pillar right-hand side)
15) Front passenger's occupant detection system sensor and control module (if equipped)

– CONTINUED –




**Right-hand drive models**

1) Front sub sensor (right-hand side)
2) Front sub sensor (left-hand side)
3) Frontal airbag module (driver's side)
4) Front passenger's frontal airbag ON and OFF indicator
5) SRS airbag system warning light
6) Frontal airbag module (front passenger's side)
7) Airbag control module (including impact sensor)
8) Knee airbag module




**Right-hand drive models**

– CONTINUED –

1) Seatbelt pretensioner (rear seat right-hand side)
2) Curtain airbag module (right-hand side)
3) Curtain airbag module (left-hand side)
4) Curtain airbag sensor (rear wheel house right-hand side)
5) Side airbag sensor (center pillar right-hand side)
6) Seatbelt pretensioner (front seat right-hand side)
7) Seatbelt pretensioner (rear seat left-hand side)
8) Side airbag module (right-hand side)
9) Seatbelt buckle switch (front passenger's side — if equipped)
10) Curtain airbag sensor (rear wheel house left-hand side)
11) Side airbag module (left-hand side)
12) Seatbelt pretensioner (front seat left-hand side)
13) Seatbelt tension sensor (front passenger's seat) (if equipped)
14) Side airbag sensor (center pillar left-hand side)
15) Front passenger's occupant detection system sensor and control module (if equipped)

## ■ SRS airbags

**⚠ WARNING**

**Warning labels are located on both sides of the front passenger's sun visor. Carefully read the description in "Warning label" ☞1-29.**

For the locations of the SRS airbags, refer to "Components" ☞1-52.

In a moderate to severe frontal collision, the following components deploy.

- SRS frontal airbag for driver
- SRS frontal airbag for front passenger
- SRS knee airbag for driver
- SRS curtain airbag*1

*1: When an offset frontal collision that is severe enough to deploy the frontal airbag occurs

These components supplement the seatbelts by reducing the impact to the occupant's head, chest and knees.

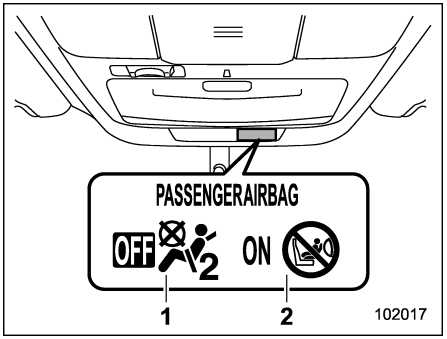
In a moderate to severe side impact collision, the SRS side airbag on the impacted side of the vehicle deploys between the occupant and the door panel and supplements the seatbelt by reducing the impact to the occupant's chest and waist. The SRS side airbag operates only for front seat occupants.

In a moderate to severe side impact collision, the SRS curtain airbag on the impacted side of the vehicle deploys between the occupant and the side window and supplements the seatbelt by reducing the impact to the occupant's head.

### ▼ Occupant detection system (if equipped)

The occupant detection system sensor is installed under the seat and monitors the total load on the front passenger's seat. The system has another sensor that monitors the tension of the front passenger's seatbelt. Using the total seat load and seatbelt tension data from the sensors, the occupant detection system determines whether the front passenger's SRS frontal airbag should be deployed or not.

The occupant detection system may not inflate the front passenger's SRS frontal airbag even when the driver's SRS frontal airbag deploys. This is normal.




1) Front passenger's frontal airbag OFF indicator
2) Front passenger's frontal airbag ON indicator

If the front passenger's frontal airbag ON and OFF indicators do not work properly even when the front passenger's seat is dry, do not allow anyone to sit on the front passenger's seat. We recommend that you have the occupant detection system checked by your SUBARU dealer.

**▼ Front passenger's SRS frontal airbag for models with occupant detection system**

**⚠ CAUTION**

**Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may prevent the front passenger's SRS frontal airbag from functioning correctly or cause the system to fail.**

- **Do not apply any strong impact to the front passenger's seat such as by kicking.**
- **Do not let rear passengers rest their feet between the front seatback and seat cushion.**
- **Do not spill liquid on the front passenger's seat. If liquid is spilled, wipe it off immediately.**
- **Do not remove or disassemble the front passenger's seat.**
- **Do not install any accessory (such as an audio amplifier) other than a genuine SUBARU accessory or an equivalent under the front passenger's seat.**
- **Do not place anything (shoes, umbrella, etc.) under the front passenger's seat.**
- **Do not use the front passenger's seat with the head restraint removed.**
- **Do not leave any articles on the front passenger's seat or the seatbelt tongue and buckle engaged when you leave your vehicle.**
- **Do not put sharp object(s) on the seat or pierce the seat upholstery.**
- **Do not place a magnet near the seatbelt buckle and the seatbelt retractor.**
- **For models with a manual seat, do not use front seats with their backward-forward position and seatback not being locked into place securely. If any of them are not locked securely, adjust them again. For adjusting procedure, refer to "Manual seat" ☞1-3.**

If the seatbelt buckle switch and/or front passenger's occupant detection system have failed, the SRS airbag system warning light will illuminate. We recommend that you have the system inspected by your SUBARU dealer immediately if the SRS airbag system warning light illuminates.

If your vehicle has sustained impact, this

– CONTINUED –

may affect the proper function of the front passenger's SRS frontal airbag system. We recommend that you have your vehicle inspected at your SUBARU dealer. Do not use the front passenger's seat while driving the vehicle to your SUBARU dealer or another service center.

**▼ Passenger's frontal airbag ON and OFF indicators (if equipped)**

Refer to "Front passenger's frontal airbag ON and OFF indicators" ☞3-15.

**▼ Conditions in which front passenger's SRS frontal airbag is not activated (models with occupant detection system)**

The front passenger's SRS frontal airbag will not be activated when any of the following conditions are met regarding the front passenger's seat:

- The seat is empty.
- The seat is equipped with an appropriate child restraint system and an infant is restrained in it. (See WARNING that follows.)
- The system is being checked after the ignition switch is turned to the "ON" position.
- The front passenger's occupant detection system is malfunctioning.

**⚠ WARNING**

**NEVER INSTALL A REARWARD FACING CHILD SEAT IN THE FRONT PASSENGER'S SEAT EVEN IF THE FRONT PASSENGER'S SRS FRONTAL AIRBAG IS DEACTIVATED. Be sure to install it in the REAR seat in a correct manner. Also, it is strongly recommended that any forward facing child seat or booster seat be installed in the REAR seat, and that even children who have outgrown a child restraint system be also seated in the REAR seat. This is because children sitting in the front passenger's seat may be killed or severely injured should the front passenger's SRS frontal airbag deploy. REAR seats are the safest place for children.**

**⚠ CAUTION**

**When the front passenger's seat is occupied by an infant in an appropriate child restraint system, observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may interfere with the proper operation of the occupant detection system, activating the front passenger's SRS frontal airbag even though that seat is occupied by the infant in the child restraint system.**

- **Do not place any article (including electronic devices) on the seat other than the infant in the child restraint system.**
- **Do not place more than one infant in the child restraint system.**
- **Do not install any accessory such as a table or TV onto the seatback.**
- **Do not store a heavy load in the seatback pocket.**
- **Do not allow the rear seat occupant to place his/her hands or legs on the front passenger's seatback, or allow him/her to pull the seatback.**

▽ **If the front passenger's frontal airbag ON indicator illuminates and the OFF indicator turns off even when an infant or a small child is in a child restraint system (including booster seat)**

1. Turn the ignition switch to the "LOCK"/"OFF" position.
2. Remove the child restraint system from the seat.
3. By referring to the child restraint manufacturer's recommendations as well as the child restraint system installation procedures in "Child restraint systems" ☞1-26, correctly install the child restraint system.
4. Turn the ignition switch to the "ON" position and make sure that the front passenger's frontal airbag ON indicator turns off and the OFF indicator illuminates.

If still the ON indicator remains illuminated while the OFF indicator turns off, take the following actions.

- Ensure that no article is placed on the seat other than the child restraint system and the child occupant.
- Ensure that there are no articles left in the seatback pocket.
- Ensure that the backward-forward position and seatback of front passenger's seat are locked into place securely by moving the seat back and forth (models with manual seat only).

If the ON indicator still remains illuminated while the OFF indicator turns off after taking relevant corrective actions described above, relocate the child restraint system to the rear seat. We recommend that you immediately contact your SUBARU dealer for an inspection.

## NOTE

**When a child who has outgrown a child restraint system or a small adult is seated in the front passenger's seat, the front passenger's SRS frontal airbag system may or may not activate the front passenger's SRS frontal airbag depending on the occupant's seating posture. Children should always wear a seatbelt when sitting in the seat irrespective of whether the airbag is deactivated or activated. If the front passenger's SRS frontal airbag is activated (the ON indicator remains illuminated while the OFF indicator turns off), take the following actions.**

- **Ensure that no article is placed on the seat other than the occupant.**
- **Ensure that there are no articles left in the seatback pocket.**

**If the ON indicator still remains illuminated while the OFF indicator turns off despite the fact that the actions noted above have been taken, seat the child/small adult in the rear seat. We recommend that you immediately contact your SUBARU dealer for an inspection. Even if the system has passed the dealer inspection, it is recommended that on subsequent trips the child/small adult always take the rear seat.**

Children who have outgrown a child restraint system should always wear the seatbelt irrespective of whether the airbag is deactivated or activated.

▼ **Conditions in which front passenger's SRS frontal airbag is activated (models with occupant detection system)**

The front passenger's SRS frontal airbag will be activated for deployment upon impact when either of the following conditions is met regarding the front passenger's seat.

- When the seat is occupied by an adult.
- When a heavy article is placed on the seat.

**⚠ CAUTION**

**When the front passenger's seat is occupied by an adult, observe the following precautions. Failure to do**

*– CONTINUED –*

**so may lessen the load on the front passenger's seat, deactivating the front passenger's SRS frontal airbag despite the fact that the seat is occupied by an adult. This may result in personal injury.**

- **Do not allow the rear seat occupant to lift the front passenger's seat cushion using his/her feet.**
- **Do not place any article under the front passenger's seat, or squeeze any article from behind and under the seat. This may lift the seat cushion.**
- **Do not squeeze any article between the front passenger's seat and side trim/pillar, door or center console box. This may lift the seat cushion.**

▽ **If the passenger's frontal airbag OFF indicator illuminates and the ON indicator turns off even when the front passenger's seat is occupied by an adult**

This can be caused by the adult incorrectly sitting in the front passenger's seat.

1. Turn the ignition switch to the "LOCK"/"OFF" position.
2. Ask the front passenger to set the seatback to the upright position, sit up straight in the center of the seat cushion, correctly fasten the seatbelt, position his/her legs out forward, and adjust the seat to the rearmost position.
3. Turn the ignition switch to the "ON" position.

If the OFF indicator remains illuminated while the ON indicator remains off, take the following actions.

1. Turn the ignition switch to the "LOCK"/"OFF" position.
2. Ensure that there is no article, book, shoe, or other object trapped under the seat, at the rear of the seat, or on the side of the seat.
3. For models with a manual seat, ensure that the backward-forward position and seatback of front passenger's seat are locked into place securely by moving the seat back and forth.
4. Turn the ignition switch to the "ON" position and wait 6 seconds to allow the system to complete self-checking. Following the system check, both indicators turn off for 2 seconds. Now, the ON indicator should illuminate while the OFF indicator remains off.

If the OFF indicator still remains illuminated while the ON indicator remains off, ask the occupant to move to the rear seat. We recommend that you immediately contact your SUBARU dealer for an inspection.

## ■ System operation

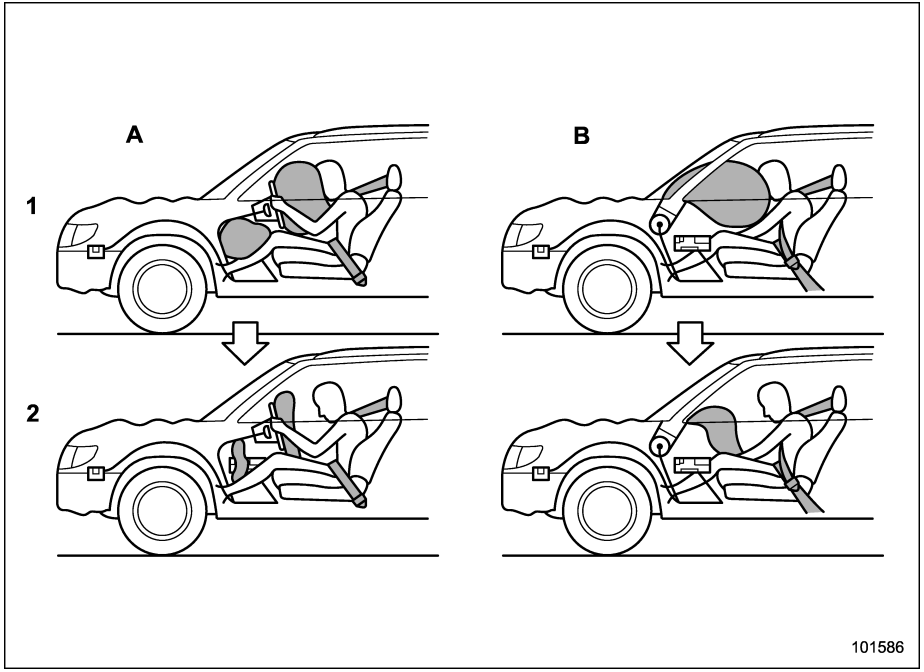
**⚠ CAUTION**

**Do not touch the SRS airbag system components with bare hands right after deployment. Doing so can cause burns because the components can be very hot as a result of deployment.**

The SRS airbags can function only when the ignition switch is in the "ON" position.

When the SRS airbag(s) deploy(s), a sudden, fairly loud inflation noise will be heard and some smoke will be released. These occurrences are a normal result of the deployment. This smoke does not indicate a fire in the vehicle.

### ▼ SRS frontal airbag operation




A) Driver's side
B) Passenger's side
1) SRS AIRBAGs deploy as soon as a collision occurs.
2) After deployment, SRS AIRBAGs start to deflate immediately so that the driver's vision is not obstructed.

If the following sensors detect a certain predetermined amount of force during a frontal collision, the control module sends signals to the frontal airbag modules instructing them to inflate the SRS frontal airbags.

- the front sub sensors located on both the right and left sides at the front of the vehicle
- the impact sensor in the airbag control module

Then both airbag modules produce gas, which instantly inflates driver's and passenger's SRS frontal airbags.

After deployment, the SRS airbags immediately start to deflate so that the driver's vision is not obstructed and the driver's ability to maintain control of the vehicle is not interfered. The time required from detecting impact to the deflation of the SRS airbag after deployment is shorter than the blink of an eye.

If the vehicle is equipped with the occupant detection system for the front passenger's seat, the SRS system detects whether the front passenger's seat is occupied by a passenger or not. If the seat is not occupied, the system does not inflate the front passenger's SRS airbag.

The SRS frontal airbag is designed as

– CONTINUED –

follows.

- to deploy in the event of an accident involving a moderate to severe frontal collision
- to function on a one-time-only basis

The SRS frontal airbag is not designed to deploy in the following cases:

- in most lesser frontal impacts*1
- in most side or rear impacts*2
- in most roll-over accidents*2

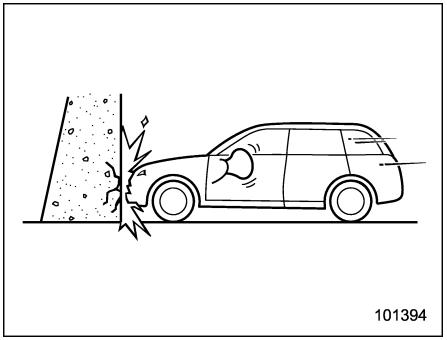
*1: Because the necessary protection can be achieved by the seatbelt alone.

*2: Because deployment of the SRS frontal airbag would not protect the occupant in those situations.

SRS airbag deployment depends on the level of force experienced in the passenger compartment during a collision. That level differs from one type of collision to another, and it may have no bearing on the visible damage done to the vehicle itself.

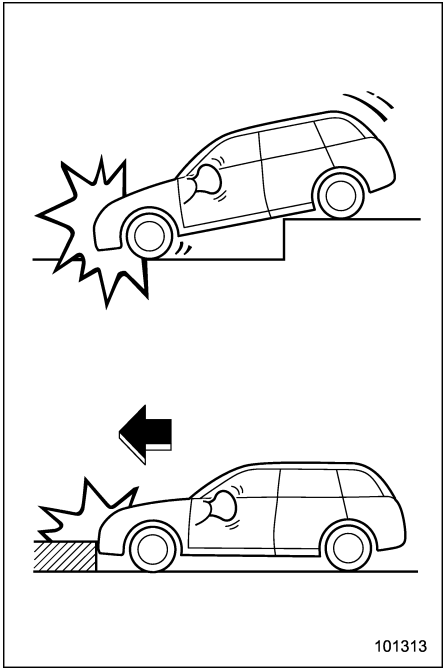
The SRS knee airbag on the driver's side will be inflated in combination with the driver's SRS frontal airbag.

### ▽ When will the SRS frontal airbag most likely deploy?




A head-on collision against a thick concrete wall at a vehicle speed of 20 to 30 km/h (12 to 19 mph) or higher activates the SRS frontal airbag. The SRS frontal airbag will also be activated when the vehicle is exposed to a frontal impact similar in fashion and magnitude to the collision described above.

### ▽ At what other times might the SRS frontal airbag deploy?

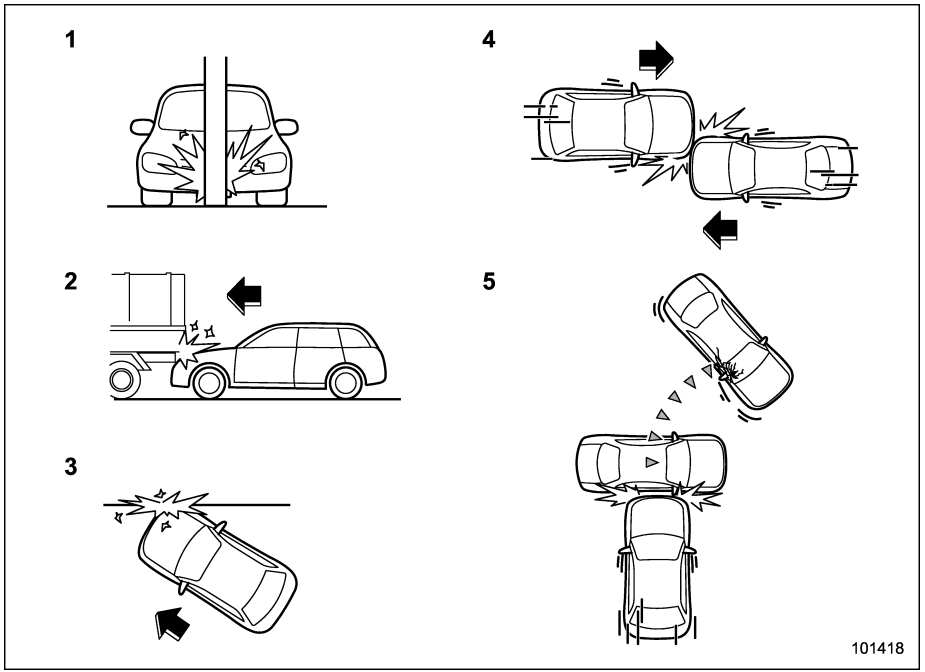



The SRS frontal airbag may be activated when the vehicle sustains a hard impact in the undercarriage area from the road surface (such as when the vehicle

plunges into a deep ditch, is severely impacted or knocked hard against an obstacle on the road such as a curb).

– CONTINUED –

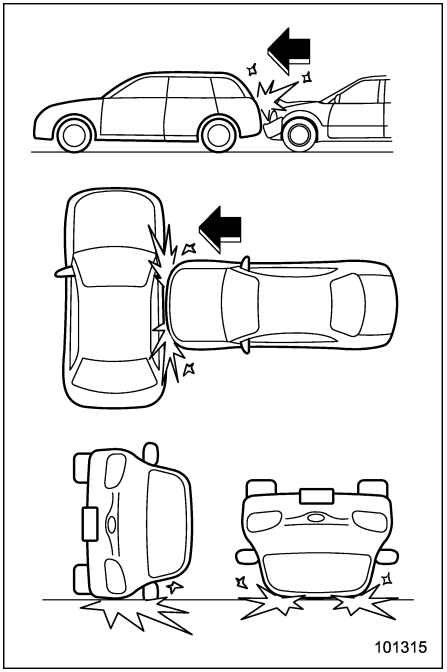
▽ **When is the SRS frontal airbag unlikely to deploy?**



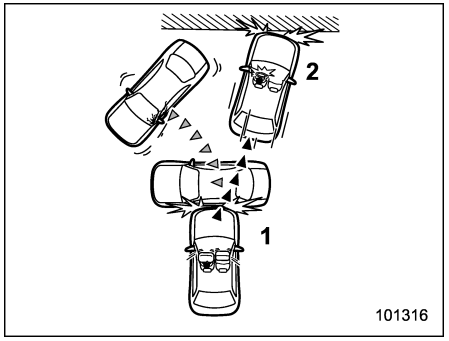

1) The vehicle strikes an object, such as a telephone pole or sign pole.
2) The vehicle slides under the load bed of a truck.
3) The vehicle sustains an oblique offset frontal impact.
4) The vehicle sustains an offset frontal collision.
5) The vehicle strikes an object that can move or deform, such as a parked vehicle.

There are many types of collisions which might not necessarily require SRS frontal airbag deployment. In the event of accidents like those illustrated, the SRS frontal airbag may not deploy depending on the level of accident forces involved.

### ▽ When will the SRS frontal airbag not deploy?




The SRS frontal airbag is not designed to deploy in most cases if the vehicle is struck from the side or from behind, or if it rolls onto its side or roof, or if it is involved in a low-speed frontal collision.

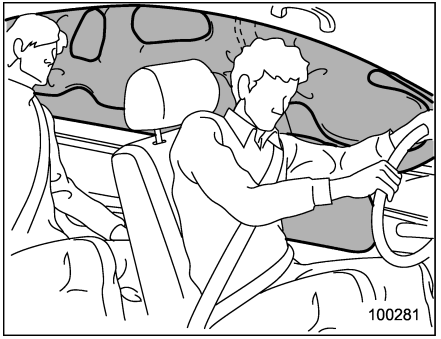



1) First impact
2) Second impact

In an accident where the vehicle is impacted more than once, the SRS frontal airbag deploys only once on the first impact.

Example: In the case of a double collision, first with another vehicle, then against a concrete wall in immediate succession, once the SRS frontal airbag is activated on the first impact, it will not be activated on the second.

### ▼ SRS side airbag and SRS curtain airbag operation




Your vehicle has the following airbags.

- Driver's SRS side airbag
- Front passenger's SRS side airbag
- SRS curtain airbag (right-hand side)
- SRS curtain airbag (left-hand side)

An impact sensor, which senses impact force, is located in each of the following locations.

- In the left and right center pillars
- In the left and right rear wheel houses
- In the airbag control module
- In the left and right of the front bumper

Depending on the impact that these impact sensors and the impact sensor in

– CONTINUED –

the airbag control module sense, the SRS side airbags and SRS curtain airbags deploy independently. Therefore, the airbags may not both deploy in the same accident. Also, the SRS side airbag and SRS curtain airbag deploy independently of the driver's and front passenger's SRS frontal airbag.

The table below shows the relationship between the impact sensor that has detected an impact and the airbags that deploy.

| The impact sensor that has detected an impact together with the impact sensor in the airbag control module | The airbags that deploy |
|---|---|
| One of the center pillar impact sensors | Both SRS side airbag and SRS curtain airbag |
| One of the rear wheel house impact sensors | SRS curtain airbag only |

## NOTE

**Even if a frontal collision occurs, both right and left SRS curtain airbags will deploy when the front sub sensor and the airbag control module determine that the impact results from an offset frontal collision.**

**The SRS curtain airbags are designed to deploy when the driver's SRS frontal airbag deploys or the driver's and passenger's SRS frontal airbags deploy in a frontal collision, and also when the system determines that the collision is an offset frontal collision.**

**The SRS curtain airbags are designed not to deploy in the following cases:**

- **In most frontal collisions when the SRS frontal airbags do not deploy**
- **In most frontal collisions that the system does not determine as an offset frontal collision**

After the deployment, the SRS side airbag immediately starts to deflate. The time required from detection of an impact to deflation of an SRS side airbag after deployment is shorter than the blink of an eye. The SRS curtain airbag remains inflated for a while following deployment then slowly deflates.

The SRS side airbag and SRS curtain airbag are designed as follows.

- to deploy in the event of an accident involving a moderate to severe side impact collision
- to function on a one-time-only basis.

The SRS side airbag and SRS curtain airbag are not designed to deploy in the following cases.

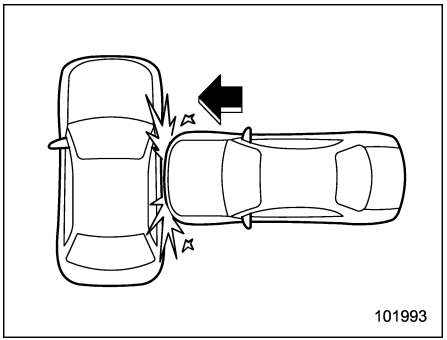
- in most lesser side impacts
- in most frontal or rear impacts (because the SRS side airbag and SRS curtain airbag deployment would not protect the occupant in those situations)

The SRS side airbag and SRS curtain airbag deployment depend on the level of force experienced in the passenger compartment during a side impact collision. That level differs from one type of collision to another, and it may have no bearing on the visible damage done to the vehicle itself.

## NOTE

**The SRS side airbag and SRS curtain airbag deploy even when no one occupies the seat on the side on which an impact is applied.**

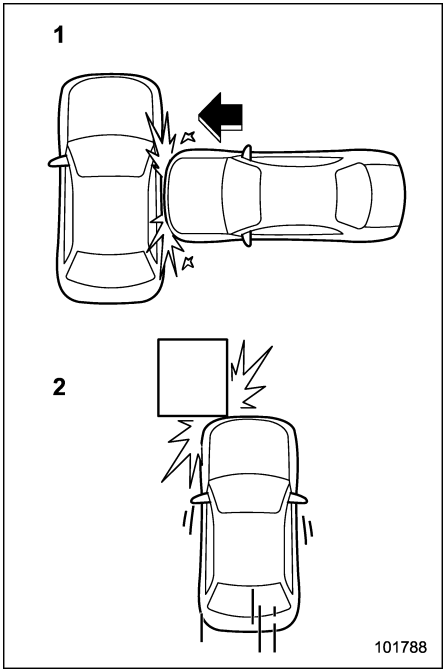
▽ **When will the SRS side airbag most likely deploy?**




A severe side impact near the front seat or rear seat activates the SRS side airbag.

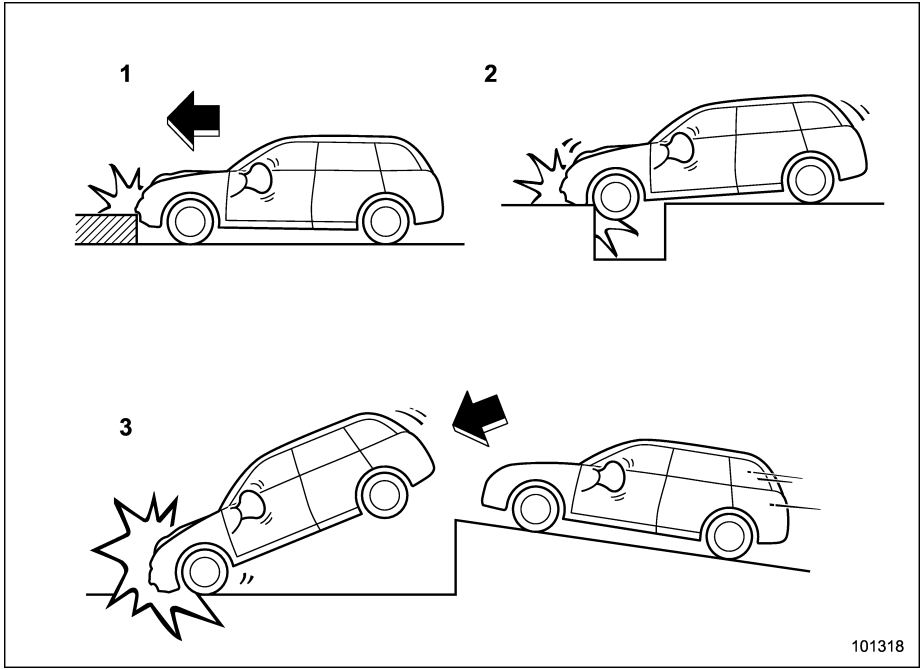
– CONTINUED –

### ▽ When will the SRS curtain airbag most likely deploy?




1) A severe side impact near the front seat or the rear seat.
2) An offset frontal collision that is severe enough to deploy the front airbag.

▽ **When will the SRS curtain airbag deploy?**

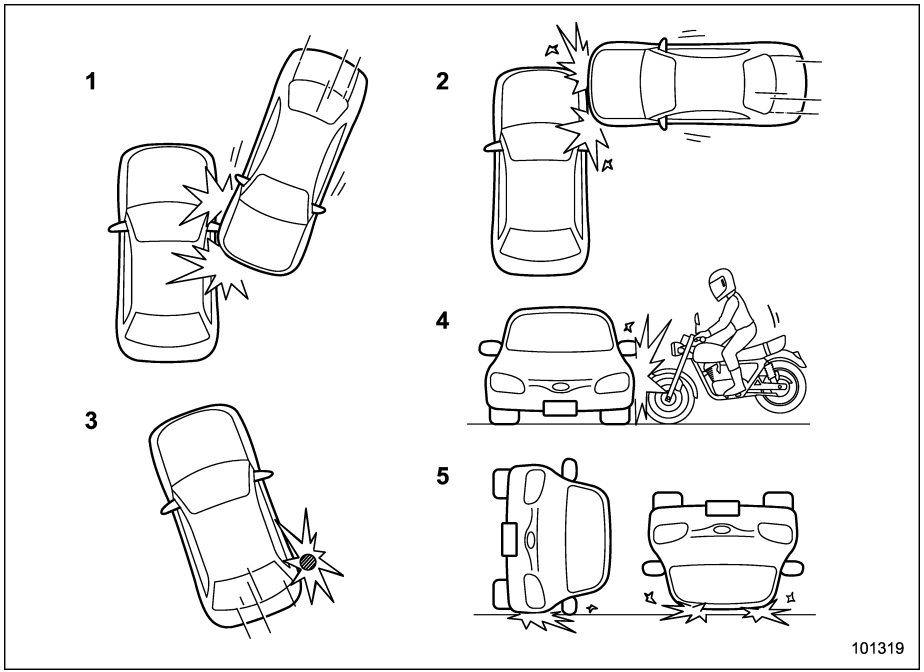



1) Hitting a curb, edge of pavement or hard surface
2) Falling into or jumping over a deep hole
3) Landing hard or vehicle falling

It is possible that the SRS side and curtain airbags will deploy if a serious impact occurs to the underside of your vehicle. Some examples are shown in the illustration.

– CONTINUED –

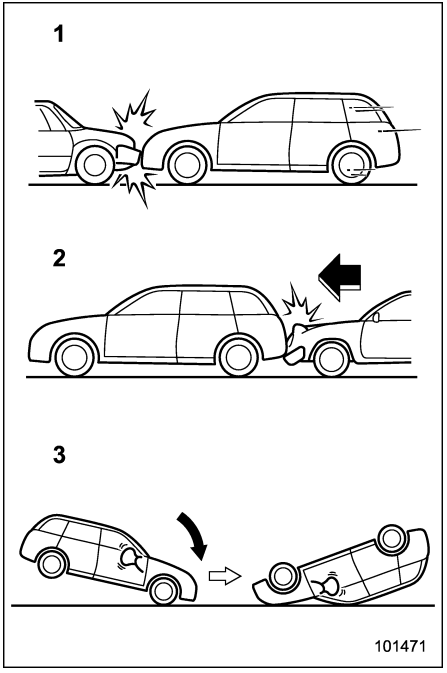
### ▽ When are the SRS side airbag and SRS curtain airbag unlikely to deploy?




1) The vehicle is involved in an oblique side-on impact.
2) The vehicle is involved in a side-on impact in an area outside the vicinity of the passenger compartment.
3) The vehicle strikes a telephone pole or similar object.
4) The vehicle is involved in a side-on impact from a motorcycle.
5) The vehicle rolls onto its side or the roof.

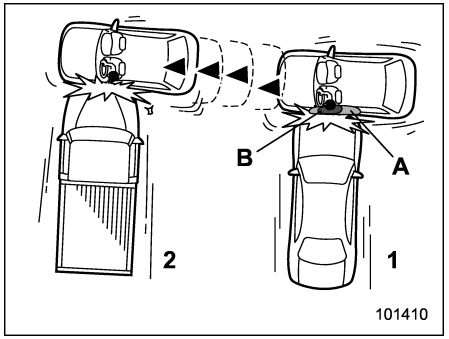
There are many types of collisions which might not necessarily require SRS side airbag and SRS curtain airbag deployment. In the event of accidents like those illustrated, the SRS side airbag and SRS curtain airbag may not deploy depending on the level of accident forces involved.

▽ **When will the SRS side airbag and SRS curtain airbag not deploy?**




1) The vehicle is involved in frontal collision with another vehicle (moving or stationary).
2) The vehicle is struck from behind.
3) The vehicle pitches end over end.

In the event of accidents like those illustrated, the SRS side airbag and SRS curtain airbag are not designed to deploy in most cases.

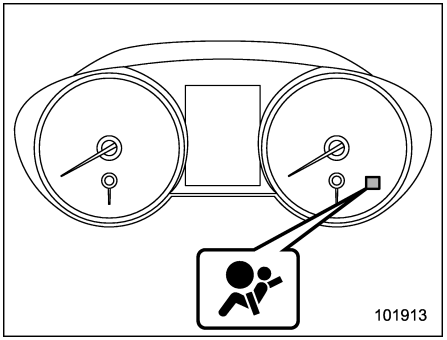



1) First impact
2) Second impact
A) SRS curtain airbag
B) SRS side airbag

In an accident where the vehicle is struck from the side more than once, the SRS side airbag and SRS curtain airbag deploy only once on the first impact.

Example: In the case of a double side impact collision, first with one vehicle and immediately followed by another from the same direction, if the SRS side airbag and SRS curtain airbag are activated on the first impact, they will not be activated on the second.

## ■ SRS airbag system monitor




**SRS airbag system warning light**

A diagnostic system continually monitors the readiness of the SRS airbag system (including front seatbelt pretensioners) while the vehicle is being driven. The SRS airbag system warning light will show normal system operation by illuminating for approximately 6 seconds when the ignition switch is turned to the “ON” position.

The following components are monitored by the indicator:

- Front sub sensor
  - Right-hand side

– CONTINUED –

– Left-hand side
- Airbag control module (including impact sensor)
- Frontal airbag module
  – Driver's side
  – Front passenger's side
- Knee airbag module (driver's side)
- Center pillar impact sensor
  – Right-hand side
  – Left-hand side
- Side airbag module
  – Driver's side
  – Front passenger's side
- Rear wheel house impact sensor
  – Right-hand side
  – Left-hand side
- Curtain airbag module
  – Right-hand side
  – Left-hand side
- Seatbelt pretensioner
  – Driver's side
  – Front passenger's side
  – Rear window-side
- Front passenger's occupant detection system sensor and control module (if equipped)
- Seatbelt tension sensor (front passenger's seat — if equipped)
- Seatbelt buckle switch (front passenger's side) (models with occupant detection system)
- All related wiring

**WARNING**

**If the warning light exhibits any of the following conditions, there may be a malfunction in the seatbelt pretensioners and/or SRS airbag system.**

- **Flashing or flickering of the warning light**
- **No illumination of the warning light when the ignition switch is first turned to the "ON" position**
- **Continuous illumination of the warning light**
- **Illumination of the warning light while driving**

**We recommend that you have the system checked immediately by your nearest SUBARU dealer. Unless checked and properly repaired, the seatbelt pretensioners and/or SRS airbags will operate improperly (e.g. SRS airbags may inflate in a very minor collision or not inflate in a severe collision), which may increase the risk of injury.**

## ■ SRS airbag system servicing

**WARNING**

- **When discarding an airbag module or scrapping the entire vehicle damaged by a collision, we recommend that you consult your SUBARU dealer.**
- **The SRS airbag has no user-serviceable parts. Do not use electrical test equipment on any circuit related to the SRS airbag system. For required servicing of the SRS airbag, we recommend that you consult your nearest SUBARU dealer. Tampering with or disconnecting the system's wiring could result in accidental inflation of the SRS airbag or could make the system inoperative, which may result in serious injury.**

**CAUTION**

**If you need any service or repair for your vehicle related to the following items, we recommend that you have the work performed by an authorized SUBARU dealer. The SRS airbag control module, impact sensors**

and airbag modules are stored in the following areas.

- Under the center console
- On both the right and left sides at the front of the vehicle
- Steering wheel and column and nearby areas
- Top of the dashboard on front passenger's side and nearby areas
- Each front seat and nearby area
- Inside each center pillar
- In each roof side (from the front pillar to a point over the rear seat)
- Between the rear seat cushion and rear wheel house on each side

In the event that the SRS airbag system is deployed, we recommend that you have the system replaced with genuine SUBARU parts at an authorized SUBARU dealer.

## NOTE

In the following cases, we recommend that you contact your SUBARU dealer as soon as possible.

- The front part of the vehicle was involved in an accident in which the SRS frontal airbags did not deploy.
- The pad of the steering wheel, the cover over the front passenger's frontal airbag, or either roof side (from the front pillar to a point over the rear seat) is scratched, cracked, or otherwise damaged.

In addition, if your vehicle is equipped with SRS side airbags and SRS curtain airbags, we recommend that you contact your SUBARU dealer as soon as possible in the following cases.

- The center pillar, rear wheel house or rear sub frame, or an area near these parts, was involved in an accident in which the SRS side airbag and SRS curtain airbag did not deploy.
- The fabric or leather of either front seatback is cut, frayed, or otherwise damaged.
- The rear part of the vehicle was involved in an accident.

## ■ Precautions against vehicle modification

**⚠ WARNING**

To avoid accidental activation of the system or rendering the system inoperative, which may result in serious injury, no modifications should be made to any components or wiring of the SRS airbag system.

This includes the following modifications.

- Installation of custom steering wheels
- Attachment of additional trim materials to the dashboard
- Installation of custom seats
- Replacement of seat fabric or leather
- Installation of additional fabric or leather on the front seat
- Attachment of a hands-free microphone or any other accessory to a front pillar, a center pillar, a rear pillar, the windshield, a side window, an assist grip, or any other cabin surface that would be near a deploying SRS curtain airbag.

– CONTINUED –

- **Installation of additional electrical/electronic equipment such as a mobile two-way radio on or near the SRS airbag system components and/or wiring is not advisable. This could interfere with proper operation of the SRS airbag system.**

**⚠ CAUTION**

**Do not perform any of the following modifications. Such modifications can interfere with proper operation of the SRS airbag system.**

- **Attachment of any equipment (bush bar, bullbar, winches, snow plow, skid/sump plate, etc.) to the front end other than genuine SUBARU accessory parts or parts that match the quality of genuine SUBARU accessory parts.**
- **Modification of the suspension system or front end structure.**
- **Installation of a tire of different size and construction from the tires specified on the vehicle placard attached to the driver's door pillar or specified for vehicle models in this Owner's Manual.**
- **Attachment of any equipment (side steps or side sill protectors, etc.) to the side body other than genuine SUBARU accessory parts specially designed for SRS side airbags, or parts that match the quality of genuine SUBARU accessory parts specially designed for SRS side airbags.**

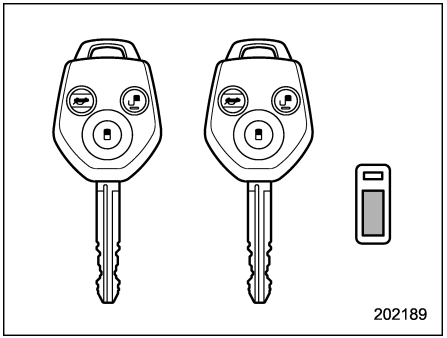
We recommend that you always consult your SUBARU dealer if you want to install any accessory parts on your vehicle.

Keys ..... 2-2
Key number plate ..... 2-2
Technical information of the radio wave regulation ..... 2-2
Immobilizer ..... 2-3
Immobilizer indicator light ..... 2-3
Key replacement ..... 2-3
Door locks ..... 2-4
Locking and unlocking from the outside with key ..... 2-4
Locking from the outside without key ..... 2-5
Locking and unlocking from the inside ..... 2-6
Battery drainage prevention function ..... 2-6
Power door locking switch ..... 2-7
Key lock-in prevention function (except models with double locking system) ..... 2-7
Keyless access with push-button start system (if equipped) ..... 2-8
Safety precautions ..... 2-8
Locking and unlocking with “keyless access” entry function ..... 2-12
Warning chimes and warning indicator ..... 2-16
Disabling keyless access function ..... 2-16
When access key does not operate properly ..... 2-18
Replacing battery of access key ..... 2-18
Technical information for Europe models ..... 2-18
PIN Code Access (models with “keyless access with push-button start system”) ..... 2-18
Registering a PIN code ..... 2-19
Unlocking ..... 2-20
Remote keyless entry system ..... 2-21
Locking and unlocking doors ..... 2-21
Opening trunk lid/unlocking rear gate ..... 2-23
Replacing battery ..... 2-23
Technical information ..... 2-23
Double locking system (if equipped) ..... 2-24
To set double locking system ..... 2-24
To cancel double locking system ..... 2-25
In an emergency ..... 2-25
If a battery goes dead ..... 2-25
To reset double locking system ..... 2-25
Function disabling unlocking with the power door locking switch (Australia models) ..... 2-26
Child safety locks ..... 2-26
Windows ..... 2-27
Power window operation by driver ..... 2-27
Power window operation by passengers ..... 2-29
Initialization of power window ..... 2-31
Trunk lid (Sedan) ..... 2-31
To open and close the trunk lid from outside ..... 2-31
To open the trunk lid from inside ..... 2-32
Rear gate (Outback) ..... 2-32
Manual rear gate (if equipped) ..... 2-32
Power rear gate (if equipped) ..... 2-33
Sunroof (if equipped) ..... 2-39
Sunroof switches ..... 2-40
Sun shade ..... 2-41

## Keys

### NOTE

**For models with “keyless access with push-button start system”, refer to “Keyless access with push-button start system” ☞2-8.**




Your vehicle has two or three keys and a key number plate.

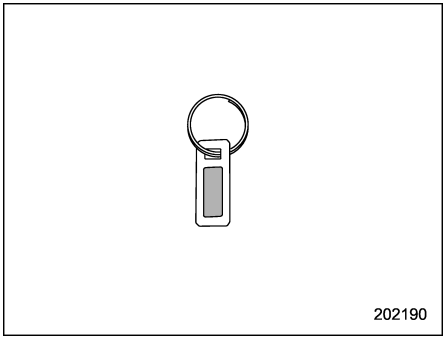
All keys provided for your vehicle fit all locks on your vehicle.

- Ignition switch
- Driver’s door

**⚠ CAUTION**

**Do not attach a large key holder or key case to either key. If it bangs against your knees while you are driving, it could turn the ignition switch from the “ON” position to the “ACC” or “LOCK” position, thereby stopping the engine.**

### ■ Key number plate




The key number is stamped on the key number plate attached to the key set. Write down the key number and keep it in another safe place, not in the vehicle. This number is needed to make a replacement key if you lose your key or lock it inside the vehicle.

For information on making replacement keys, refer to “Key replacement” ☞2-3.

### ■ Technical information of the radio wave regulation

These devices comply with the essential requirements and provisions such as the Radio and Telecommunications Terminal Equipment Directive 1999/5/EC.

Requirements and provisions differ depending on the country.

See chapter 13 to confirm the information relevant to each country (e.g., a copy of the original Declaration of Conformity and the CE marking are required for the EU).

## Immobilizer

The immobilizer system is designed to prevent an unauthorized person from starting the engine. Only keys registered with your vehicle's immobilizer system can be used to operate your vehicle. This system, however, is not a 100% anti-theft guarantee.

**For models with "keyless access with push-button start system":**
When carrying an unregistered access key, if you press the push-button ignition switch, the switch will not turn to the "ON" position and the engine will not start.

**For models without "keyless access with push-button start system":**
Even if an unregistered key fits into the ignition switch and can be turned to the "START" position, the engine will automatically stop after several seconds.

If the engine does not start, perform either of the following procedures.

- Perform the procedure described in "Starting engine" ☞9-30 (models with "keyless access with push-button start system").
- Pull out the key once before trying again (models without "keyless access with push-button start system"). Refer to "Ignition switch (models without push-button start system)" ☞3-3.

**⚠ CAUTION**

- **Do not place the key under direct sunlight or anywhere it may become hot.**
- **Do not get the key wet. If the key gets wet, wipe it dry with a cloth immediately.**
- **Do not modify or remove the system. If modified or removed, the proper operation of the system cannot be guaranteed.**

### NOTE

- **To protect your vehicle from theft, please pay close attention to the following security precautions:**
  - **– Never leave your vehicle unattended with its keys inside.**
  - **– Before leaving your vehicle, close all windows and sunroof, and lock the doors and rear gate.**
  - **– Do not leave spare keys or any record of your key number in the vehicle.**
- **The vehicle has a maintenance-free type immobilizer system.**

### ■ Immobilizer indicator light

Refer to "Immobilizer indicator light" ☞3-30.

### ■ Key replacement

Your key number plate will be required if you ever need a replacement key made. Any new key must be registered for use with your vehicle's immobilizer system before it can be used. The maximum number of keys that can be registered for use with one vehicle is as follows.

- Four (models without "keyless access with push-button start system")
- Seven (models with "keyless access with push-button start system")

One key that has already been registered is required in order to register a new key.

If you lose a key, the lost key's ID code still remains in the memory of the vehicle's immobilizer system. For security reasons, the lost key's ID code should be erased from the memory. To erase the lost key's ID code, all keys that will be used are required.

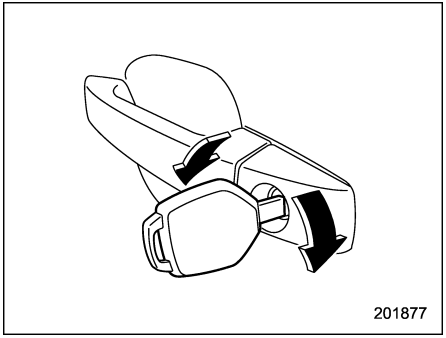
For details about new key registration and erasing the lost key's ID code, we recommend that you contact your

– CONTINUED –

SUBARU dealer.

## Door locks

### ■ Locking and unlocking from the outside with key




**▼ Models without double locking system**

To lock the driver's door from the outside with the key, turn the key toward the front. To unlock the door, turn the key toward the rear. Pull the outside door handle to open an unlocked door.

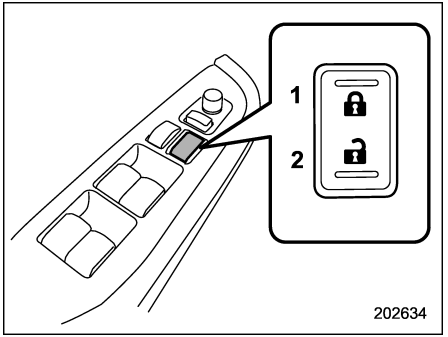
### NOTE

**Only the driver's door can be locked from the outside using the key.**

**To lock the doors including the rear gate (Outback), refer to the following procedure.**

**1. Remove the key from the ignition switch (models without keyless access with push-button start system) or turn off the ignition switch (models with keyless access with push-button start system).**

**2. Close the doors including the rear gate (Outback) except for the driver's door.**




1) Lock
2) Unlock

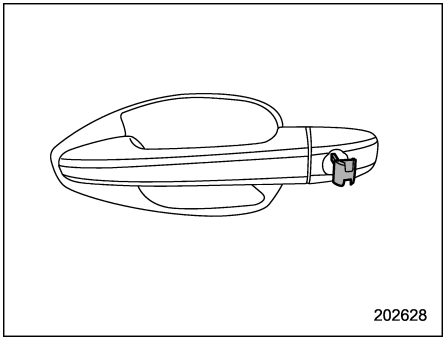
**3. Push the lock side of the power door locking switch that is located on the driver's door.**

**4. Close the driver's door and insert the key. Turn the key forward to lock the driver's door.**

▼ **Models with double locking system**

To lock the doors and the rear gate (Outback) from the outside with the key, turn the key toward the front. To unlock the doors and the rear gate (Outback), turn the key toward the rear. Pull the outside door handle to open an unlocked door.

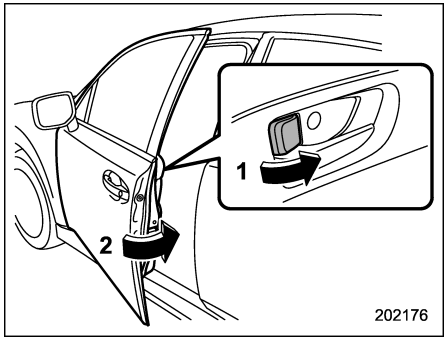
▼ **Models with "keyless access with push-button start system"**




## NOTE

**The mechanical key is directional. If the key cannot be inserted, change the direction that the grooved side is facing and insert it again.**

## ■ Locking from the outside without key




1) Rotate the lock lever forward.
2) Close the door while holding the handle pulled.

To lock the front door from the outside without the key, rotate the lock lever forward and hold the outside door handle pulled while closing the door.

To lock the rear door from the outside without the key, rotate the lock lever forward and close the door.

Always make sure that all doors and the rear gate (Outback) are locked before leaving your vehicle.

## NOTE

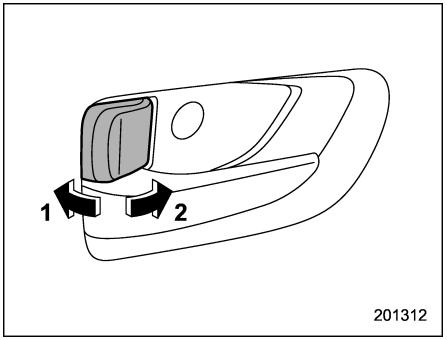
**Make sure that you do not leave the key inside the vehicle when locking the doors from the outside without the key.**

▼ **Models with double locking system**

It is not possible to place the lock lever on the driver's door in the locking position while the driver's door is open. The door lock levers function only when the driver's door is securely closed and the double locking system is not set.

*– CONTINUED –*

## ■ Locking and unlocking from the inside




1) Unlock
2) Lock

To lock the door from the inside, rotate the lock lever forward. To unlock the door from the inside, rotate the lock lever rearward.

The red mark on the lock lever appears when the door is unlocked.

Pull the inside door handle to open an unlocked door.

Always make sure that all doors and the rear gate (Outback) are closed before starting to drive.

### ▼ Models with double locking system

If the double locking system is activated, the door will not be unlocked even when you move the door lock lever rearward.

## ■ Battery drainage prevention function

If a door or the rear gate (Outback) is not completely closed, the interior lights will remain illuminated as a result. However, several lights are automatically turned off by the battery drainage prevention function to prevent the battery from going dead. The following interior lights are affected by this function.

| Item | Switch position | Automatically turning off |
|---|---|---|
| Map lights | DOOR | Approximately 20 minutes later |
| Dome light | DOOR | Approximately 20 minutes later |
| Ignition switch light | — | Approximately 20 minutes later |
| Door step lights | — | None* |
| Cargo area light | DOOR | Approximately 20 minutes later |

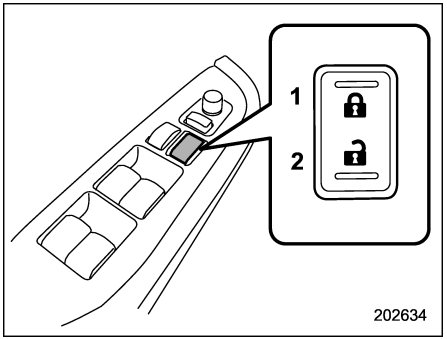
*: The door step lights are not affected by the battery drainage prevention function, so the lights do not turn off automatically. To turn off the lights, it is necessary that each door and the rear gate (Outback) are completely closed.

The operational/non-operational setting of this function can be changed by a SUBARU dealer. We recommend that you contact the nearest SUBARU dealer if you would like to change the setting.

## NOTE

**● The factory setting (default setting) for this function is set as “operational”.**
**● When leaving the vehicle, please make sure that all doors and the rear gate are completely closed.**
**● For models with the push-button ignition switch, the battery drainage prevention function does not operate while the ignition switch is in the “ACC” or “ON” position.**
**● For models without the push-button ignition switch, the battery drainage prevention function does not operate while the key is in the ignition switch.**

## Power door locking switch




1) Lock
2) Unlock

All doors and the rear gate (Outback) can be locked and unlocked by the power door locking switch located at the driver's side door.

To lock the doors including the rear gate, press the front side of the switch.

To unlock the doors including the rear gate, press the rear side of the switch.

### NOTE

**• For models with the double locking system, pressing the rear side of the power door locking switch has no effect when the double locking system is activated.**

**• For Australia models, after locking all doors and the rear gate (Outback) using the keyless access function or remote keyless entry system, pushing the unlock position of the power door locking switch has no effect.**

### ■ Key lock-in prevention function (except models with double locking system)

This function prevents the doors from being locked under the following conditions.

• The key is still in the ignition switch (models without "keyless access with push-button start system")

• The ignition switch is in the "ON" position (models with "keyless access with push-button start system")

This function's operational/non-operational setting can be changed by a SUBARU dealer. We recommend that you contact a SUBARU dealer for details.

### NOTE

**When leaving the vehicle, make sure that you are holding the key before locking the doors.**

#### ▼ Behavior with key lock-in prevention function operational

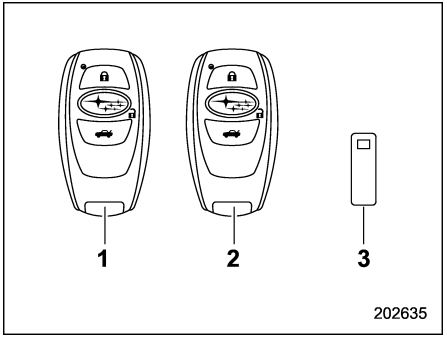
With the driver's door open, the doors are automatically kept unlocked even if the front side of the power door locking switch is pressed.

#### ▼ Behavior with key lock-in prevention function non-operational

• If the lock lever is turned to the front (lock) position with the driver's door open and the driver's door is then closed, the driver's door is locked.

• If the spare key is used to lock the driver's door from the outside of the vehicle, the door is locked.

## Keyless access with push-button start system (if equipped)




1) Access key (main)
2) Access key (sub)
3) Key number plate

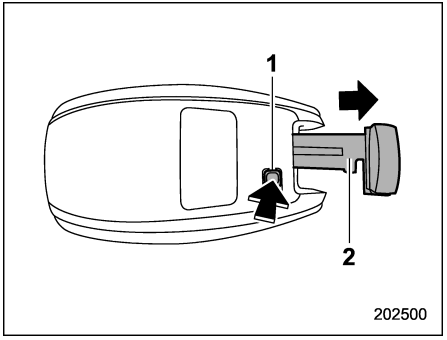
The vehicle has two or three access keys and a key number plate. For details about the key number plate, refer to “Key number plate” ☞2-2.

The keyless access with push-button start system allows you to perform the following functions when you are carrying the access key.

- Locking and unlocking of the doors and rear gate
- Opening the trunk
- Starting and stopping the engine

Locking and unlocking by the remote keyless entry system can also be controlled with the buttons on the access key. For the engine starting procedure, refer to “Starting and stopping engine (models with push-button start system)” ☞7-10.

A mechanical key is attached to each access key. The mechanical key is used for locking and unlocking the driver’s door.




1) Release button
2) Mechanical key

While pressing the release button of the access key, take out the mechanical key.

### ■ Safety precautions

**⚠ WARNING**

**If you wear an implanted pacemaker or an implanted defibrillator, stay at least 22 cm (8.7 in) away from the transmitting antennas installed on the vehicle.**

**The radio waves from the transmitting antennas on the vehicle could adversely affect the operation of implanted pacemakers and implanted defibrillators.**

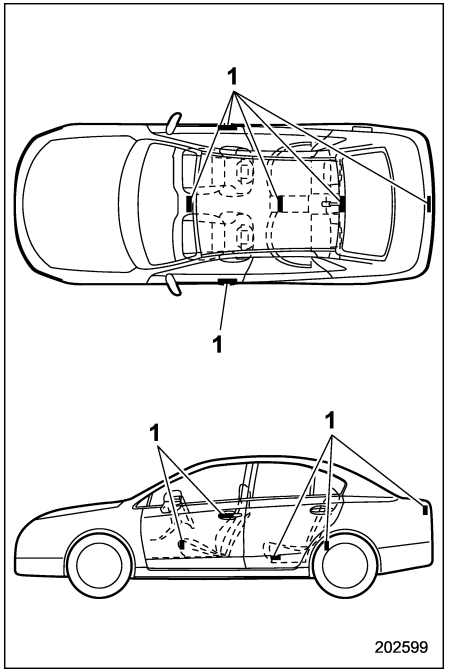
**If you wear electronic medical equipment other than an implanted pacemaker or an implanted defibrillator, before using the keyless access with push-button start system, refer to “Radio waves used for the keyless access with push-button start system” mentioned later, and contact the electronic medical equipment manufacturer for more information. The radio waves from the transmitting antennas on the vehicle could adversely affect the operation of the electronic medical equipment.**

**“Radio waves used for the keyless access with push-button start sys-**

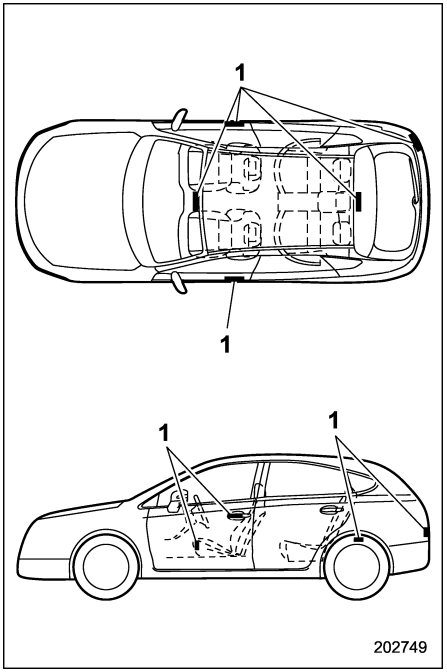
**tem”**

- **The keyless access with push-button start system uses radio waves of the following frequency* in addition to the radio waves used for the remote keyless entry system. The radio waves are periodically output from the antennas installed on the vehicle as shown in the following illustrations.**

  *** Radio frequency: 134 kHz**




**Sedan**
1) Antenna




**Outback**
1) Antenna

– CONTINUED –

**⚠ CAUTION**

- **Never leave or store the access key inside the vehicle (e.g., on the instrumental panel, inside the glove box, on the seat, in the door pocket, inside the trunk or at the corner of the cargo area) or within 2 m (6.6 ft) around the vehicle (e.g., in the garage). The access key may be locked inside the vehicle, or the battery may discharge rapidly. Note that the push-button ignition switch may not turn on in some cases depending on the location of the access key.**
- **The access key contains electronic components. Observe the following precautions to prevent malfunctions.**
  - **Although you can replace the battery of the access key yourself, it is recommended that the battery be replaced by a SUBARU dealer to avoid the risk of damage at the time of replacement.**
  - **Do not get the access key wet. If the access key gets wet, wipe it off immediately and let it dry completely.**
  - **Do not apply strong impacts to the access key.**
  - **Keep the access key away from magnetic sources.**
  - **Never leave the access key in direct sunlight or anywhere that may become hot, such as on the dashboard. It may damage the battery or cause circuit malfunctions.**
  - **Do not wash the access key in an ultrasonic washer.**
  - **Do not leave the access key in humid or dusty locations. Doing so may cause malfunctions.**
  - **Do not leave the access key near personal computers or home electric appliances. Doing so may cause the access key to malfunction, resulting in battery discharge.**
- **If the access key is dropped, the integrated mechanical key inside may become loose. Be careful not to lose the mechanical key.**
- **When you carry the access key on an airplane, do not press the button of the access key while in the airplane. When any button of the access key is pressed, radio waves are sent and may affect the operation of the airplane. When you carry the access key in a bag on an airplane, take measures to prevent the buttons of the access key from being pressed.**

## NOTE

- **The operational/non-operational setting for the keyless access function can be changed. For the setting procedure, refer to "Disabling keyless access function" ☞2-16. The setting can also be changed by a SUBARU dealer. For more details, we recommend that you contact a SUBARU dealer.**
- **For detailed information about the operation method for the push-button ignition switch while the keyless access function is switched to the non-operational mode, refer to "Access key – if access key does not operate properly" ☞9-29.**
- **The keyless access with push-button start system uses weak radio waves. The status of the access key and environmental conditions may interfere with the communication between the access key and the vehicle under the following conditions, and it**

may not be possible to lock or unlock the doors or start the engine.
– When operating near a facility where strong radio waves are transmitted, such as a broadcast station and power transmission lines
– When products that transmit radio waves are used, such as an access key or a remote transmitter key of another vehicle
– When carrying more than one access key
– When the access key is placed near wireless communication equipment such as a cell phone
– When the access key is placed near a metallic object
– When metallic accessories are attached to the access key
– When carrying the access key with electronic appliances such as a laptop computer
– When the battery of the access key is discharged

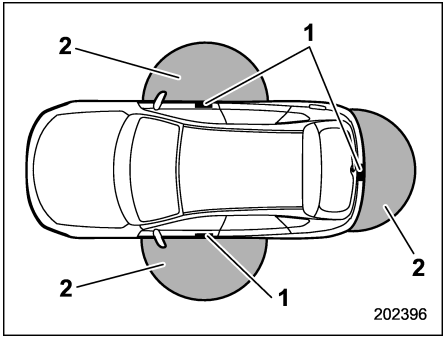
- The access key is always communicating with the vehicle and is continuously using the battery. Although the life of the battery varies depending on the operating conditions, it is approximately 1 to 2 years. If the battery becomes fully discharged, replace it with a new one.
- If an access key is lost, it is recommended that the access key be reregistered. For reregistration of an access key, we recommend that you contact a SUBARU dealer.
- For a spare access key, we recommend that you contact a SUBARU dealer.
- Up to 7 access keys can be registered for one vehicle.
- Carefully store the key number plate supplied with the access key. It is necessary for vehicle repair and additional registration of access keys.
- Do not leave the access key in the storage spaces inside the vehicle, such as the door pocket, dashboard, inside the trunk and the corner of the cargo area. Vibrations may damage the key or turn on the switch, possibly resulting in a lockout.
- After the vehicle battery is discharged or replaced, initialization of the steering lock system may be required to start the engine. In this case, perform the following procedure to initialize the steering lock.
  (1) Turn the push-button ignition switch to the “OFF” position. For details, refer to “Switching power” ☞3-6.
  (2) Open and close the driver’s door.
  (3) Wait for approximately 10 seconds.

When the steering is locked, the initialization is completed.

– CONTINUED –

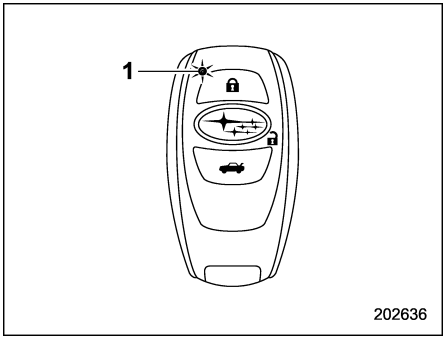
## ■ Locking and unlocking with “keyless access” entry function

### ▼ Operating ranges




1) Antenna
2) Operating range

- The operating ranges of the door and rear gate locking/unlocking functions are approximately 40 to 80 cm (16 to 32 in) from the respective door handles and the rear gate ornament.
- The operating range of the trunk opening function is approximately 40 to 80 cm (16 to 32 in) from the trunk opener button.




1) LED indicator

When the access key is within either of the operating ranges of the front doors, the LED indicator on the access key flashes. When the keyless access functions are disabled, the LED indicator does not flash unless a button on the access key is pressed.

#### ▽ Operating range tips

- Locking by using the keyless access function can be operated only by the door lock sensor in the operating range in which the access key is detected.
- Unlocking by using the keyless access function can be operated only by the door handle in the operating range in which the access key is detected.
- If the access key is placed too close to the vehicle body, the keyless access function may not operate properly. If it does not operate properly, repeat the operation from further away.
- If the access key is placed near the ground or in an elevated location from the ground, even if it is in the indicated operating range, the keyless access function may not operate properly.
- When the access key is within the operating range, it is possible for anyone, even someone who is not carrying the access key, to operate the keyless access function. Note that locking and unlocking can be operated only by the door handle, door lock sensor, rear gate opener button or rear lock button in the operating range in which the access key is detected.
- The keyless access function may not operate properly depending on the status of the access key and the radio wave conditions around the vehicle. In such a case, perform the procedure described in “Locking and unlocking” ☞9-29.
- It is not possible to lock the doors and rear gate using the keyless access function when the access key is inside the vehicle. However, depending on the status of the access key and the environmental conditions, the access key may be locked inside the vehicle. Before locking, make sure that you have the access key.

● When the battery of the access key is discharged, or when operating it in a location with strong radio waves or noise (e.g., near a radio tower, power plant, broadcast station, large display, airport, electrical sign board or an area where wireless equipment is used), or while talking on a cell phone, the operating ranges may be reduced, or the keyless access function may not operate.
In such a case, perform the procedure described in “Locking and unlocking” ☞9-29.

● When an access key is in the operating range, if the door handle becomes wet due to exposure to a significant amount of water when the vehicle is washed or during heavy rain, the doors may be locked or unlocked.

### ▼ How to use keyless access functions

#### ▽ Keyless access function tips

● When you lock the doors and rear gate using the keyless access function, turn the push-button ignition switch off. It is not possible to lock the doors and rear gate using the keyless access function when the push-button ignition switch is on the “ACC” or “ON” position. For details about turning off the push-button ignition switch, refer to “Switching power” ☞3-6.

● If the door handle is gripped with a gloved hand, the door lock may not be released.

● When performing the locking procedure too quickly, locking may not have been completed. After locking the doors, it is recommended to pull the REAR door handles to confirm that the doors have been locked.

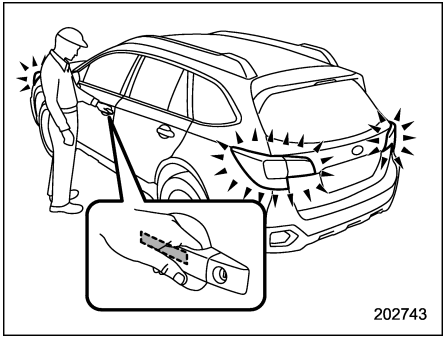
● It is not possible to lock the doors when one of the doors is open. Close all of the doors including the rear gate and lock the doors.

● Within 3 seconds after locking the doors and the rear gate by using the keyless access function, it is not possible to unlock doors and/or the rear gate (Outback) by using the keyless access function.

● If any of the doors or the rear gate is open, the doors and the rear gate cannot be locked.

● When locking, be sure to carry the access key to prevent locking the access key in the vehicle.

#### ▽ Unlocking




Carry the access key, and grip the door handle.

**Models without double locking system:**
All doors and the rear gate (Outback) will be unlocked. Also, the hazard warning flashers will flash twice.

**Models with double locking system:**

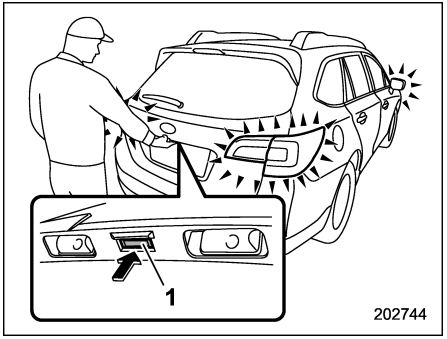
● When gripping the driver’s door handle: Only the driver’s door will be unlocked.

● When gripping the front passenger’s door handle: All doors and the rear gate (Outback) will be unlocked.

Also, the hazard warning flashers will flash twice.

– CONTINUED –

### ▽ Opening rear gate (Outback)



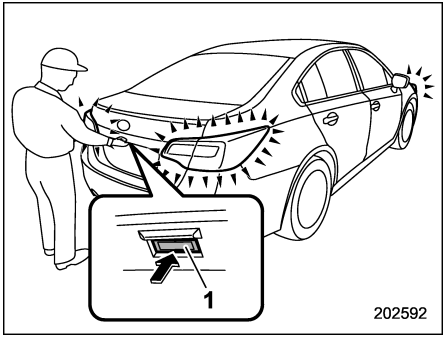

1) Rear gate opener button

Carry the access key, and press the rear gate opener button.

**Models without double locking system:**
The rear gate and all doors will be unlocked, and the rear gate will be opened. Also, the hazard warning flashers will flash twice.

**Models with double locking system:**
Only the rear gate will be unlocked and opened. Also, the hazard warning flashers will flash twice.

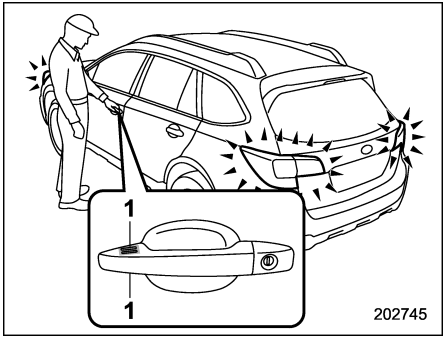
### ▽ Opening trunk (Sedan)




1) Trunk opener button

Carry the access key, and press the trunk opener button. The trunk will open.
The hazard warning flashers will flash twice.

### ▽ Locking with the door lock sensor



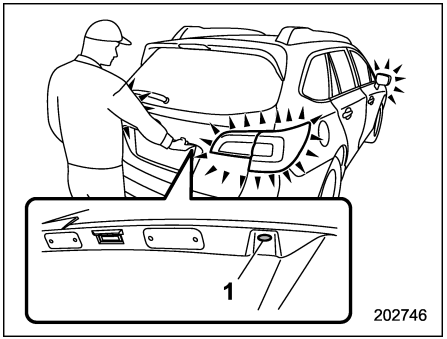

1) Door lock sensor

Carry the access key, close all doors including the rear gate and touch the door lock sensor on the door handle. All doors including the rear gate will be locked. Also, the hazard warning flashers will flash once.

## NOTE

**While any of the doors, rear gate or trunk is open, even if you touch the door lock sensor, they cannot be locked. At this time, the hazard warning flashers operate 5 times to notify that any of them is open.**

▽ **Locking with the rear lock button (Outback)**




1) Rear lock button

Carry the access key, close all doors including the rear gate and press the rear lock button. The rear gate and all doors will be locked. Also, the hazard warning flashers will flash once.

▼ **Door unlock selection function**

The door unlock selection function makes it possible to unlock the driver's door without unlocking any other doors.

The operational/non-operational setting for this function can be changed by a SUBARU dealer.

**Operational:** Only the door for which the door handle is gripped will be unlocked.

**Non-operational:** All doors and the rear gate are unlocked.

The factory setting (default setting) is set as follows:

- models with double locking system: "operational"
- models without double locking system: "non-operational"

For further details, we recommend that you consult a SUBARU dealer.

▼ **Power saving function**

The keyless access function will be disabled in the following cases to protect the access key battery and the vehicle battery.

**Case 1:** When the keyless access function and the remote keyless entry system have not been used for 2 weeks or longer while the push-button ignition switch has been off

**Case 2:** When the access key has been left in the operating range for 10 minutes or longer while all doors are locked

▽ **Recovery from power saving mode**

When one of the following is operated, the keyless access function will be recovered.

**Case 1:**

- Unlock the doors by gripping the driver's door handle.
- Lock the doors by touching the door lock sensor on the driver's door handle.
- Lock or unlock the doors using the remote keyless entry system.
- For models with double locking system, lock the doors using the mechanical key that is built into the access key.
- Open a door and then close it, or close a door and then open it.
- Lock or unlock the doors by operating the power door locking switch that is located in the switch cluster on the driver's door.
- Turn the push-button ignition switch to the "ON" position.

**Case 2:**

- Unlock the doors by gripping the door handle.
- Unlock the doors by pressing the rear gate opener button.
- Lock the doors by touching the door lock sensor.

– CONTINUED –

- Lock or unlock the doors using the remote keyless entry system.
- Lock or unlock the doors using the power door locking switch.
- Open either of the front doors.
- Lock or unlock the doors using the mechanical key (models with double locking system).

**▼ Automatic locking (except models with double locking system)**

If any of the doors or the rear gate was not opened within 30 seconds after unlocking, they will be automatically locked again.

The function's operational/non-operational setting and the time until automatic locking takes place can be changed by a SUBARU dealer. For more details, we recommend that you contact a SUBARU dealer.

## ■ Warning chimes and warning indicator

The keyless access with push-button start system sounds a warning chime and flashes the access key warning indicator on the combination meter in order to minimize improper operations and help protect your vehicle from theft.

For details, refer to "Warning chimes and warning indicator of the keyless access with push-button start system" ☞3-25.

## ■ Disabling keyless access function

**⚠ WARNING**

**If you wear an implanted pacemaker or an implanted defibrillator, operate the driver's door to disable the keyless access function. Otherwise, the operation of an implanted pacemaker or implanted defibrillator may be affected by the radio waves from the transmitter antenna.**

When the vehicle is not going to be used for a long time, or when you choose not to use the keyless access function, the keyless access function can be disabled.

### NOTE

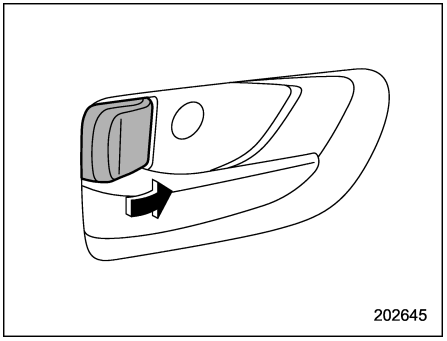
- **The locking and unlocking function by the remote keyless entry system is not disabled.**
- **The setting can also be changed at SUBARU dealers. For more details, we recommend that you contact a SUBARU dealer.**
- **To start the engine while the functions are disabled, perform the procedure described in "Starting engine" ☞9-30.**
- **We recommend that you disable the keyless access functions under the following conditions.**
  - **– When the vehicle is not going to be used for an extended period of time**
  - **– When the keyless access functions are not going to be used**

### ▼ Disabling functions

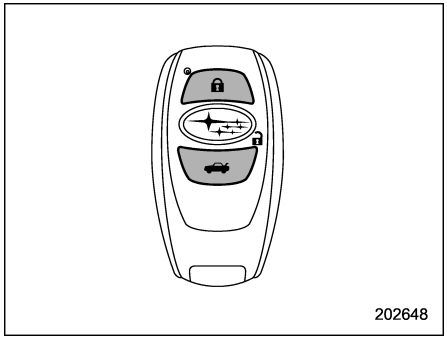
#### ▽ By operating the access key

If you have registered a PIN code for PIN Code Access, you can disable the keyless access function by operating the access key. For details about registering a PIN code, refer to “Registering a PIN code” ☞2-19.

1. Open the driver’s door.




2. Rotate the lock lever forward.

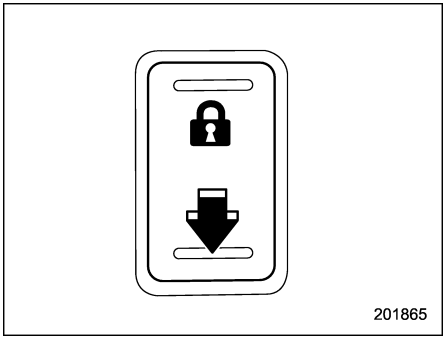



3. Press and hold the “🔒” button and “🚗” button on the access key simultaneously for more than 5 seconds.

A chirp sound will be heard, and the function will be disabled.

#### ▽ By operating the driver’s door

1. Sit in the driver’s seat, and close the door.




2. Push the rear side (unlock side) of the power door locking switch.
3. Within 5 seconds after step 2 is performed, open the driver’s door.
4. Within 5 seconds after step 3 is performed, push the rear side (unlock side) of the power door locking switch twice while the door is open.
5. Within 10 seconds after step 4 is performed, close and open the driver’s door twice.
6. Within 10 seconds after step 5 is performed, push the rear side (unlock side) of the power door locking switch twice while the door is open.
7. Within 10 seconds after step 6 is performed, close and open the driver’s door once.

– CONTINUED –

8. Within 5 seconds after step 7 is performed, close the door. A chirp sound will be heard, and the functions are disabled.

## NOTE

**In steps 4 and 6, press the power door locking switch firmly. If the switch is not pressed firmly, the functions may not be disabled.**

**▼ Enabling functions**

When the procedure to disable the functions is performed again, a chirp sound will be heard, and the functions are enabled.

### ■ When access key does not operate properly

Refer to “Access key – if access key does not operate properly” ☞9-29.

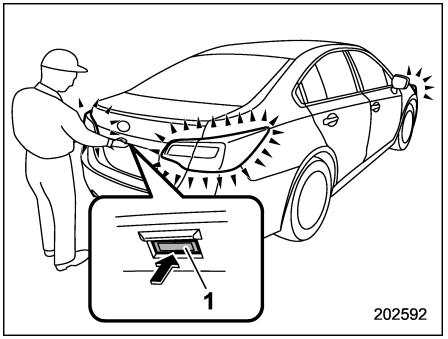
### ■ Replacing battery of access key

Refer to “Replacing battery of access key” ☞11-61.

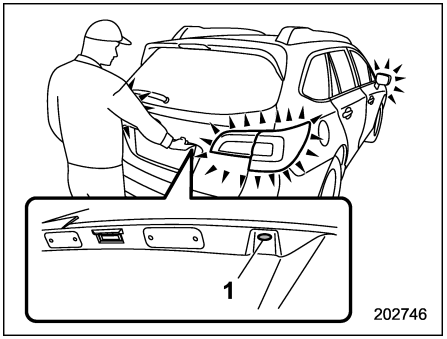
### ■ Technical information for Europe models

- This device complies with the essential requirements of the Radio and Telecommunications Terminal Equipment Directive 1999/5/EC. A copy of the original Declaration of Conformity and the CE marking are found in chapter 13.
- Hereby, DENSO CORPORATION declares that this 14AHB is in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1999/5/EC.

## PIN Code Access (models with “keyless access with push-button start system”)




1) Trunk opener button (Sedan)




1) Rear lock button (Outback)

While all doors (for Outback, including the rear gate) are locked, you can unlock the doors (including rear gate) without a key by performing the following procedure.

- Sedan: press the trunk opener button
- Outback: press the rear lock button

## NOTE

**PIN Code Access will be helpful if the key is accidentally left in the vehicle. It is recommended that a 5-digit security code (PIN code) is registered.**

## ■ Registering a PIN code

### ▼ Preparation

1. Turn off the ignition switch.
2. Close all doors (including trunk/rear gate).
3. Press and hold the "🔒" button on the access key. Then all doors (including rear gate) will be locked.
4. Keep the "🔒" button pressed, and press the following button within 5 seconds after step 3.
   - Sedan: the trunk opener button
   - Outback: the rear lock button
5. Press and hold the above button for more than 5 seconds. Then a chirp will sound.
6. Release the "🔒" button and trunk opener button/rear lock button.
7. Press the "🔓" button on the access key while the chirp sounds.

Then the chirp will stop and the preparation is complete.

## NOTE

**If you do not press the "🔓" button on the access key, the chirp will sound for 30 seconds. In this case, the preparation for registering a PIN code does not complete even if the chirp stops.**

### ▼ Registration

For example, to register "32468" as the PIN code, perform the following procedure.

**Sedan:**

1. Press the trunk opener button three times.
2. After a buzzer (ding) sounds once, press the trunk opener button twice.
3. After a buzzer (ding) sounds once, press the trunk opener button four times.
4. After a buzzer (ding) sounds once, press the trunk opener button six times.
5. After a buzzer (ding) sounds once, press the trunk opener button eight times.
6. Perform steps 1 to 5 again within approximately 30 seconds after the buzzer starts sounding intermittently.
7. All doors will be unlocked and locked. Then the PIN code will be registered.

**Outback:**

1. Press the rear lock button three times.
2. After a buzzer (ding) sounds once, press the rear lock button twice.
3. After a buzzer (ding) sounds once, press the rear lock button four times.
4. After a buzzer (ding) sounds once, press the rear lock button six times.
5. After a buzzer (ding) sounds once, press the rear lock button eight times.

– CONTINUED –

6. Perform steps 1 to 5 again within approximately 30 seconds after the buzzer starts sounding intermittently.
7. All doors (including rear gate) will be unlocked and locked. Then the PIN code will be registered.

## NOTE

**• Press the trunk opener button/rear lock button ten times to enter "0".**
**• Change the PIN code frequently to protect your vehicle from theft.**
**• If you have lent your vehicle to another person, confirm that the PIN code has not been changed or deleted. If the PIN code has been changed or deleted, reregister a new PIN code.**
**• If you make an error during the registration procedure, press the "🔒" or "🚗" button on the access key. Then, start over from the procedure described in "Preparation".**
**• To protect your vehicle from theft, you cannot register a string of the same five numbers together, such as "00000", nor "12345" as a PIN code.**
**• Do not register your vehicle license plate number or simple numbers such as "11122" or "12121" as a PIN code. Doing so will increase the risk of vehicle theft.**
**• When you try to register "22222", the registered PIN code will be deleted. You cannot unlock the doors by PIN Code Access until a new code is registered.**
**• After registering a new PIN code, make sure that you can unlock the doors using the PIN code.**
**• The PIN code cannot be deleted while the keyless access function is disabled by operating the access key.**
**• Reregister the PIN code in the following case.**
**– when you forget the PIN code**
**– when you want to change the PIN code**

## ■ Unlocking

Perform steps 1 to 5 described in "Registration".

## NOTE

**• You cannot unlock by PIN Code Access in the following cases.**
**– when the access key is within the operating ranges**
**– when the ignition switch is in the "ACC" or "ON" position**
**• If you make an operation error during the unlocking procedure, start over with the unlocking procedure after waiting for 5 seconds or longer.**
**• To protect your vehicle from theft, a buzzer will sound if incorrect PIN codes are entered five times continuously. If this occurs, you cannot unlock the doors by PIN Code Access for 5 minutes.**

## Remote keyless entry system

The remote transmitter can be used within a distance of approximately 1.0 m (3.2 ft) of the vehicle. It can be used for the following purposes:

- to lock or unlock all of the doors
- to lock or unlock the rear gate (Outback)
- to open the trunk lid (Sedan)
- to open or close the rear gate (models with power rear gate)

The system's operable distance will be shorter in areas near a facility or electronic equipment emitting strong radio waves such as a power plant, broadcast station, TV tower, or remote controller of home electronic appliances.

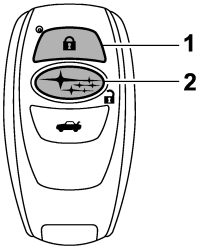
**⚠ CAUTION**

- **When you carry the remote transmitter on an airplane, do not press the button of the remote transmitter while in the airplane. When any button of the remote transmitter is pressed, radio waves are sent and may affect the operation of the airplane. When you carry the remote transmitter in a bag on an airplane, take measures to prevent the buttons of the remote transmitter from being pressed.**
- **Do not expose the transmitter to shocks.**
- **Do not take the transmitter apart.**
- **Do not get the transmitter wet. If it gets wet, wipe it dry with a cloth immediately.**

### NOTE

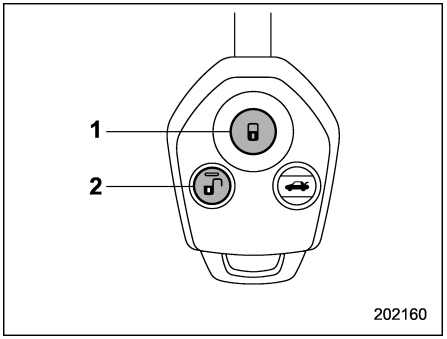
- **Before leaving the vehicle, make sure that the doors are locked.**
- **If any of the doors or the rear gate is open, this function does not operate.**
- **For models with "keyless access with push-button start system", when the lock button on the access key is pressed while the access key is placed too close to the vehicle body, unlocking by the keyless access functions may not work. In such a case, the functions will recover by unlocking using the remote keyless entry system.**

### ■ Locking and unlocking doors




**Access key**
1) Lock button
2) Unlock button

– CONTINUED –




**Transmitter**
1) Lock button
2) Unlock button

### ▼ Unlocking

Press the unlock button on the access key/transmitter near the vehicle.

**Models without double locking system:**
All doors and the rear gate (Outback) will be unlocked. Also, the hazard warning flashers will flash twice.

**Models with double locking system:**

1. Only the driver's door will be unlocked. Also, the hazard warning flashers will flash twice.
2. If you press the unlock button again within 5 seconds of unlocking the driver's door, all of the other doors and the rear gate will be unlocked.

### ▼ Locking

Pressing the lock button locks all doors and the rear gate (Outback). When leaving the vehicle, pull the door handle to make sure that the doors have been locked.

## NOTE

**• The remote keyless entry system does not operate when the key is inserted in the ignition switch or when any of the doors or the rear gate is not fully closed.**
**• If any of the doors (or the rear gate/ trunk lid) is not fully closed, the hazard warning flashers will flash five times to alert you that the doors (or the rear gate/trunk lid) are not properly closed.**
**• For models with "keyless access with push-button start system", the front door will be unlocked if you grip the front door handle while an access key is in the operating range. Pull the REAR door handle to make sure that the doors have been locked.**

### ▼ Door unlock selection function

The door unlock selection function makes it possible to unlock the driver's door without unlocking any other doors.

#### ▽ Unlocking doors with the door unlock selection function

The operational/non-operational setting for this function can be changed by a SUBARU dealer.

**Operational:** Only the driver's door will be unlocked.

**Non-operational:** All doors and the rear gate are unlocked.

The factory setting (default setting) is set as follows:

- models with double locking system: "operational"
- models without double locking system: "non-operational"

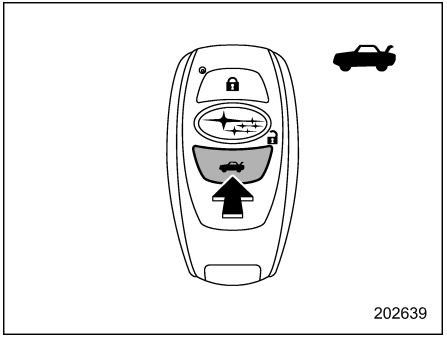
For further details, we recommend that you consult a SUBARU dealer.

### ▼ Automatic locking (except models with double locking system)

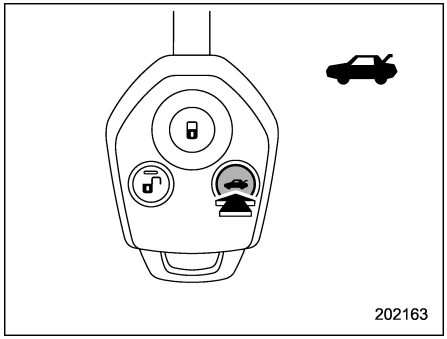
Even if the unlock button is pressed, all of the doors and the rear gate (Outback) will be automatically locked again 30 seconds later unless any one of the four doors or the rear gate is opened during that period.

The automatic locking function's operational/non-operational setting and the setting for the locking time period (the time period after which locking takes place) can be changed by a SUBARU dealer. We recommend that you contact the nearest SUBARU dealer for details.

## ■ Opening trunk lid/unlocking rear gate




**Access key**




**Transmitter**

**Sedan:**

Press and hold the "🚗" button to open the trunk lid. At this time, the hazard warning lights flash twice.

**Outback:**

Press the "🚗" button to unlock the rear gate. Also, the hazard warning flashers will flash twice.

For models with power rear gate, press and hold the "🚗" button to open/close the rear gate.

## ■ Replacing battery

Refer to "Replacing battery of transmitter" ☞11-62.

## ■ Technical information

For models without "keyless access with push-button start system", the trade, model and supplier's names of this device are as follows.

- Equipment's trade name: SUBARU
- Equipment's model name: TF001
- Supplier's name: Calsonic Kansei

**For Europe:**

This device complies with the essential requirements of the Radio and Telecommunications Terminal Equipment Directive 1999/5/EC. A copy of the original Declaration of Conformity and the CE marking are found in the chapter 13.

## Double locking system (if equipped)

The double locking system is an anti-theft system. It operates when the doors are locked using the key or remote transmitter. While this system is operating, the power door locking switch and door lock levers inside the cabin cannot be used to unlock the doors.

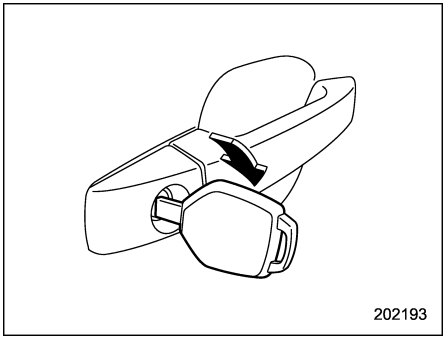
**⚠ WARNING**

**Never set the double locking system while passengers are inside the vehicle. With the system set, people in the vehicle would not be able to open the doors from the inside. The result could be serious injuries or death.**

### ■ To set double locking system

#### ▼ Setting system using key

1. Remove the key from the ignition switch (models without “keyless access with push-button start system”)/turn the push-button ignition switch to the “OFF” position (models with “keyless access with push-button start system”) and have all occupants get out of the vehicle.
2. Close all of the doors and the rear gate (Outback) securely.




3. Insert the key into the key cylinder of the driver’s door, then turn it in the locking direction to set the double locking system. All of the doors and the rear gate (Outback) will be locked.

#### ▼ Setting system using remote transmitter

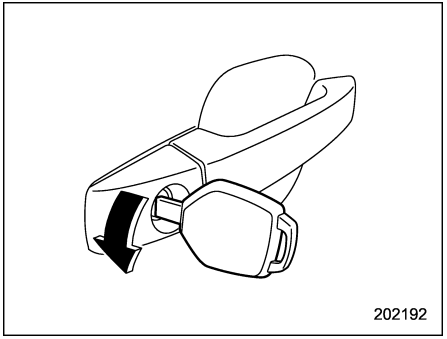
1. Remove the key from the ignition switch (models without “keyless access with push-button start system”)/turn the push-button ignition switch to the “OFF” position (models with “keyless access with push-button start system”) and have all occupants get out of the vehicle.
2. Close all of the doors and the rear gate (Outback) securely.
3. Press the “🔒” button on the access key or “🔒” button on the transmitter. The hazard warning flashers will flash once and the double locking system will be set. All of the doors and the rear gate (Outback) will be locked.

### NOTE

**For models with the keyless access function, it is possible to set the double locking system by touching the door lock sensor.**

## ■ To cancel double locking system

### ▼ Canceling system using key




Insert the key into the key cylinder of the driver's door, then turn it in the unlocking direction to cancel the double locking system. All of the doors and the rear gate (Outback) will be unlocked.

### ▼ Canceling system using remote transmitter

Press the "🔒" button on the access key or "🔓" button on the transmitter. The hazard warning flashers will flash twice and the double locking system will be canceled. The driver's door will be unlocked.

### NOTE

**For models with the keyless access function, it is possible to cancel the double locking system by gripping the door handle.**

## ■ In an emergency

If you become trapped inside the vehicle owing to an accident or some other unexpected circumstance, unlock the doors using one of the following methods:

- Remove the key from the ignition switch, then press the "🔓" button on the transmitter (models without keyless access function).
- Turn the push-button ignition switch off, then press the "🔒" button on the access key (models with keyless access function).
- Set the ignition switch to the "ON" position and open the driver's window. Insert the key into the key cylinder of the driver's door and turn it in the unlocking direction.
- Break one of the windows and climb out through the window opening.

## ■ If a battery goes dead

If the double locking system cannot be canceled because the vehicle battery or transmitter battery has gone dead or because of a blown fuse or other electrical problem, insert the key into the key cylinder of the driver's door and turn it in the unlocking direction.

## ■ To reset double locking system

The double locking system must be reset when the vehicle battery has been temporarily disconnected for replacement or charging. To reset the system, turn the key once in the unlocking direction or press the "🔒" button on the access key or "🔓" button on the transmitter. The double locking system will then operate normally.

### NOTE

**For models with the keyless access function, it is possible to reset the double locking system by gripping the door handle.**

## Function disabling unlocking with the power door locking switch (Australia models)

**⚠ WARNING**

**Never lock the doors using the remote keyless entry system while passengers are inside the vehicle. Doing so activates the function that disables unlocking with the power door locking switch and so people in the vehicle would not be able to open the doors from the inside. This could result in serious injury or death.**

Australia models are fitted with an anti-theft function that disables door unlocking with the power door locking switch. This function is activated in the following situations, disabling the doors from being unlocked using the power door locking switch.

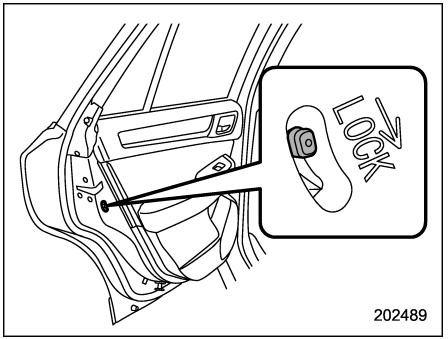
- The doors are locked using the remote keyless entry system. Refer to "Locking and unlocking doors" ☞2-21.
- The automatic locking function is in operation. Refer to "Automatic locking (except models with double locking system)" ☞2-22.

This function is canceled when the doors are unlocked using the remote keyless entry system or the ignition switch is turned to "ON".

### NOTE

- **Even while this function is activated, doors can be unlocked using their lock levers, refer to "Locking and unlocking from the inside" ☞2-6.**
- **This function is not activated when the doors are locked using the key or power door locking switch.**

## Child safety locks




Each rear door has a child safety lock. When the child safety lock lever is in the "LOCK" position, the door cannot be opened from inside. The door can only be opened from the outside.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Always turn the child safety locks to the "LOCK" position when children sit on the rear seat. Serious injury could result if a child accidentally opens the door and falls out.**

## Windows

**⚠ WARNING**

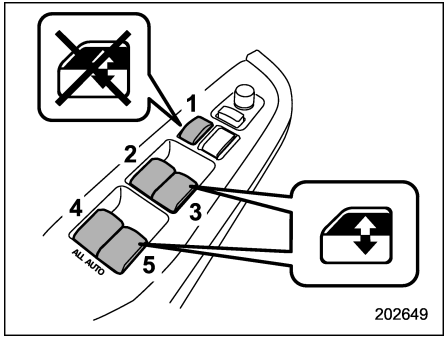
**To avoid serious personal injury caused by accidental, child's mischief, or improper operation, the driver is responsible for obeying the following instructions without exception.**

- **When operating the power windows, be extremely careful to prevent anyone's fingers, arms, neck, head or other objects from being caught in the window.**
- **Always lock the passengers' windows using the lock switch when children are riding in the vehicle.**
- **When leaving the vehicle, always carry the key for safety and never allow an unattended child to remain in the vehicle. Failure to follow this procedure could result in injury to a child operating the power window.**

The power windows operate only when the ignition switch is in the "ON" position.

### ■ Power window operation by driver

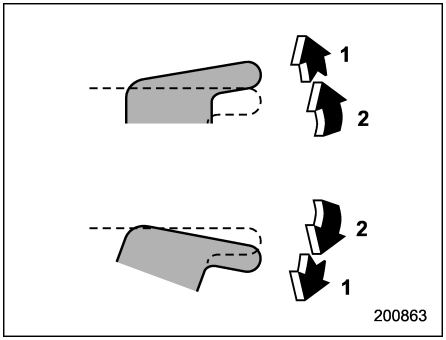
#### ▼ Driver's side power window switches




1) Lock switch
2) For driver's window
3) For front passenger's window
4) For rear left window
5) For rear right window

All door windows can be controlled by the power window switch cluster at the driver side door.

#### ▼ Operating the driver's window




1) Automatically open/close
2) Open/close

**To open:**

Press the switch down lightly and hold it. The window will open as long as the switch is held.

This switch also has a one-touch auto down function that allows the window to be opened fully without holding the switch.

Press the switch down until it clicks and release it, and the window will fully open. To stop the window halfway, pull the switch up lightly.

**To close:**

Pull the switch up lightly and hold it. The window will close as long as the switch is held.

*– CONTINUED –*

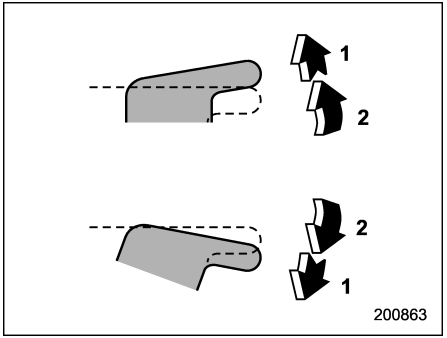
This switch also has a one-touch auto up function that allows the window to be closed fully without holding the switch.

Pull the switch up until it clicks and release it, and the window will fully close. To stop the window halfway, press the switch down lightly.

## NOTE

**If the vehicle's battery is disconnected due to situations such as battery or fuse replacement, the one-touch auto up/down function will be deactivated. Initialize the power window to reactivate the one-touch auto up/down function. Refer to "Initialization of power window" ☞2-31.**

**▼ Operating the passenger's window**




1) Automatically open/close (if equipped)
2) Open/close

**To open:**

Push the switch down lightly and hold it. The window will open as long as the switch is held.

For some models, this switch also has a one-touch auto down feature that allows the window to be opened fully without holding the switch.

Push the switch down until it clicks and release it, and the window will fully open. To stop the window halfway, pull the switch up lightly.

**To close:**

Pull the switch up lightly and hold it. The window will close as long as the switch is held.

For some models, this switch also has a one-touch auto up feature that allows the window to be closed fully without holding the switch.

Pull the switch up until it clicks and release it, and the window will fully close. To stop the window halfway, push the switch down lightly.

## NOTE

**For models with the one-touch auto up/down feature, if the vehicle's battery is disconnected due to situations such as battery or fuse replacement, the one-touch auto up/down function will be deactivated. Initialize the power window to reactivate the one-touch auto up/down function. Refer to "Initialization of power window" ☞2-31.**

**▼ Anti-entrapment function**

**⚠ CAUTION**

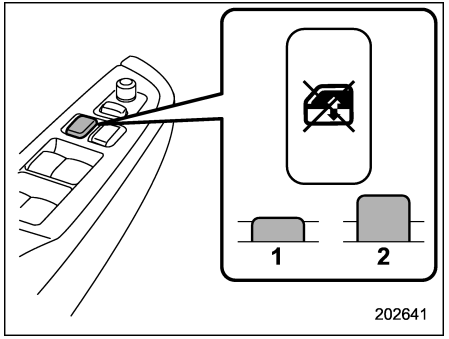
- **Never attempt to test this function using fingers, hands or other parts of your body.**
- **The anti-entrapment function may not operate properly if some object gets trapped just before the window fully closes.**

## NOTE

**• If a window detects an impact similar to that caused by trapping an object (for example, when the vehicle encounters a deep pothole), the anti-entrapment function may operate.**
**• The window cannot be operated for a few seconds after the anti-entrapment function operates.**
**• If the vehicle's battery is disconnected due to situations such as battery or fuse replacement, the anti-entrapment function is deactivated. Initialize the power window to reactivate the anti-entrapment function. Refer to "Initialization of power window" ☞2-31.**

While closing with the one-touch auto up function, if the window senses a substantial enough object trapped between the window and the window frame, it automatically moves down slightly and stops.

### ▼ Locking the passengers' windows



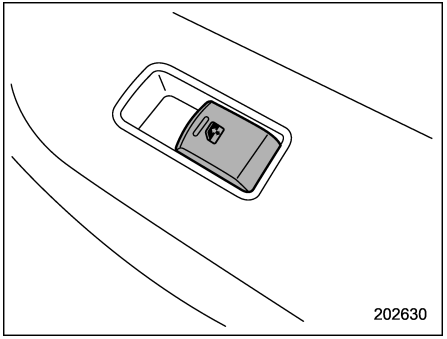

1) Lock
2) Unlock

Press the lock switch. When the lock switch is in the lock position, the passengers' windows cannot be opened or closed.

Press the switch again to cancel the passengers' window locking.

## ■ Power window operation by passengers

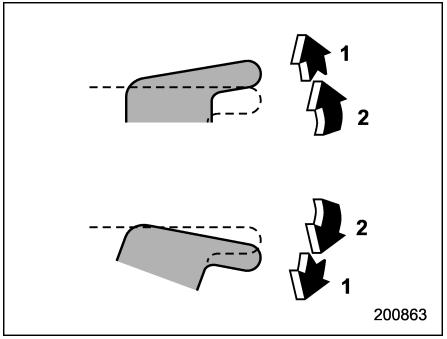
### ▼ Passenger's side power window switches




Each passenger window can be controlled by the power window switch located on the door.

– CONTINUED –

▼ **Operating the window**




1) Automatically open/close (if equipped)
2) Open/close

**To open:**

Push the switch down lightly and hold it. The window will open as long as the switch is held.

For some models, this switch also has a one-touch auto down feature that allows the window to be opened fully without holding the switch.

Push the switch down until it clicks and release it, and the window will fully open. To stop the window halfway, pull the switch up lightly.

**To close:**

Pull the switch up lightly and hold it. The window will close as long as the switch is held.

For some models, this switch also has a one-touch auto up feature that allows the window to be closed fully without holding the switch.

Pull the switch up until it clicks and release it, and the window will fully close. To stop the window halfway, push the switch down lightly.

## NOTE

**For models with the one-touch auto up/down feature, if the vehicle's battery is disconnected due to situations such as battery or fuse replacement, the one-touch auto up/down function will be deactivated. Initialize the power window to reactivate the one-touch auto up/down function. Refer to "Initialization of power window" ☞2-31.**

▼ **Anti-entrapment function (models with the one-touch auto up/down feature)**

**⚠ CAUTION**

- **Never attempt to test this function using fingers, hands or other parts of your body.**
- **The anti-entrapment function may not operate properly if some object gets trapped just before the window fully closes.**

## NOTE

- **If a window detects an impact similar to that caused by trapping an object (for example, when the vehicle encounters a deep pothole), the anti-entrapment function may operate.**
- **The window cannot be operated for a few seconds after the anti-entrapment function operates.**
- **If the vehicle's battery is disconnected due to situations such as battery or fuse replacement, the anti-entrapment function is deactivated. Initialize the power window to reactivate the anti-entrapment function. Refer to "Initialization of power window" ☞2-31.**

While closing with the one-touch auto up feature, if the window senses a substantial enough object trapped between the window and the window frame, it automatically moves down slightly and stops.

### ■ Initialization of power window

If the vehicle's battery is disconnected due to situations such as battery or fuse replacement, the following functions are deactivated.

- One-touch auto up/down function
- Anti-entrapment function

Initialize the power window in the following procedure to reactivate such functions. Perform the following procedure for each of the doors that have the one-touch auto up/down function.

1. Close the door.
2. Turn the ignition switch to the "ON" position.
3. Open the window of the door that you have closed in step 1 halfway by pushing down the power window switch.
4. Pull up the power window switch of the door that you have closed in step 1 and close the window completely. Continue pulling up the switch for approximately 1 second after the window is closed completely.

## Trunk lid (Sedan)

**⚠ WARNING**

- **To prevent dangerous exhaust gas from entering the vehicle, always keep the trunk lid closed while driving.**
- **Help prevent young children from locking themselves in the trunk. On hot or sunny days, the temperature in the trunk could quickly become high enough to cause death or serious heat-related injuries including brain damage to anyone locked inside, particularly for small children.**
- **When leaving the vehicle, close all windows and lock all doors. Also make certain that the trunk is closed.**

### ■ To open and close the trunk lid from outside

The trunk lid can be opened using the keyless access function or remote keyless entry system. For details, refer to the following section.

- For models with "keyless access with push-button start system", refer to "Opening trunk (Sedan)" ☞2-14 or "Opening trunk lid/unlocking rear gate" ☞2-23.
- For models without "keyless access with push-button start system", refer to "Opening trunk lid/unlocking rear gate" ☞2-23.

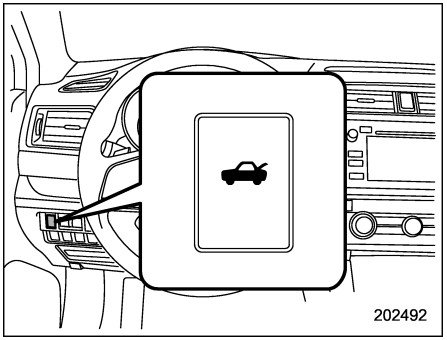
To close the trunk lid, lightly press the trunk lid down until the latch engages.

**NOTE**

**Do not leave your valuables in the trunk when you leave your vehicle.**

– CONTINUED –

### ■ To open the trunk lid from inside




Press and hold the trunk lid opener switch for more than 1 second.

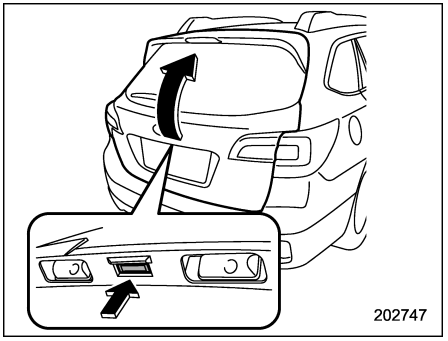
## Rear gate (Outback)

### ■ Manual rear gate (if equipped)

The rear gate can be locked and unlocked using any of the following systems.

- Power door locking switch: Refer to “Power door locking switch” ☞2-7.
- Keyless access with the push-button start system (if equipped): Refer to “Keyless access with push-button start system” ☞2-8.
- Remote keyless entry system: Refer to “Remote keyless entry system” ☞2-21.
- Locking and unlocking from the outside with the key (models with double locking system): Refer to “Locking and unlocking from the outside with key” ☞2-4.

**To open:**



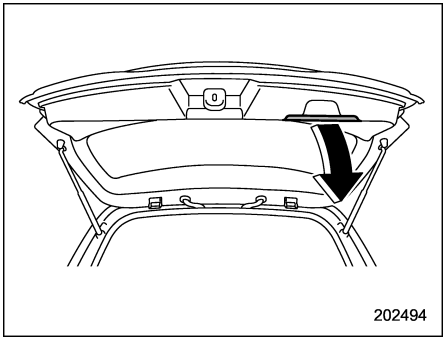

**Rear gate opener button**

1. Unlock the rear gate.
2. Press and hold the rear gate opener button. The rear gate will open slightly.
3. Hold the rear gate and lift it up slowly.

### NOTE

**If the rear gate cannot be opened due to a discharged vehicle battery, a malfunction in the door locking/unlocking system or other causes, you can unlock it by manually operating the rear gate lock release lever. For the procedure, refer to “Rear gate (Outback) – if the rear gate cannot be opened” ☞9-31.**

**To close:**




Lower the rear gate slowly and push down firmly until the latch engages.

The rear gate can be lowered easily if you pull it down holding the handle.

**⚠ WARNING**

- **To prevent dangerous exhaust gas from entering the vehicle, always keep the rear gate closed while driving.**
- **Do not attempt to shut the rear gate while holding the recessed grip. Also do not close the rear gate by pulling the handle from inside the cargo space. There is a danger of your hand being caught and injured.**

**⚠ CAUTION**

- **Do not jam a plastic bag in or place cellophane tape on the rear gate stays or scratch the stays while loading or unloading cargo. That could cause leakage of gas from the stays, which may result in their inability to hold the rear gate open.**
- **Be careful not to hit your head or face on the rear gate when opening or closing the rear gate and when loading or unloading cargo.**

## ■ Power rear gate (if equipped)

**⚠ WARNING**

- **When opening the rear gate, make sure there are no people around it. If the rear gate, by any chance, should hit a part of the body, this may result in an injury.**
- **When closing the rear gate, be extremely careful to prevent anyone's fingers, arms, neck, head or other objects from being caught in the rear gate. Otherwise, serious personal injury may be caused by entrapment.**
- **If either of the operating conditions has not been satisfied while operating the power rear gate, an electronic chirp will sound and the power rear gate will be deactivated. In this case, the rear gate may stop opening or closing suddenly. Be careful to prevent anyone's body or any objects from being hit against the rear gate or being caught in the rear gate.**
- **After opening the rear gate on a slope by using the power rear gate feature, the rear gate may close. Make sure that the rear gate has stopped completely after opening it.**
- **When leaving the vehicle, always carry the key for safety and never allow an unattended child to remain in the vehicle. Failure to**

– CONTINUED –

**follow this procedure could result in injury to a child operating the power rear gate.**

- **The driver should be aware of and pay careful attention to his/her responsibilities.**
- **The power rear gate button should only be used to open and close the rear gate when the area around the rear gate is clearly visible and when you have checked that there is no danger of people being caught in the gate.**

**⚠ CAUTION**

- **When closing the rear gate after opening it, make sure to use the power rear gate. If you close the rear gate manually with extra force, the power rear gate may be damaged.**
- **Do not install any accessories other than genuine SUBARU parts or an equivalent on the rear gate. If the weight of rear gate increases excessively, the rear gate stay cannot support the rear gate sufficiently when opening the rear gate. Also, the power rear gate may not function properly or may malfunction.**
- **Do not touch the driving rod. Doing so may result in injury or damage.**

The power rear gate operates only when all of the following conditions are satisfied.

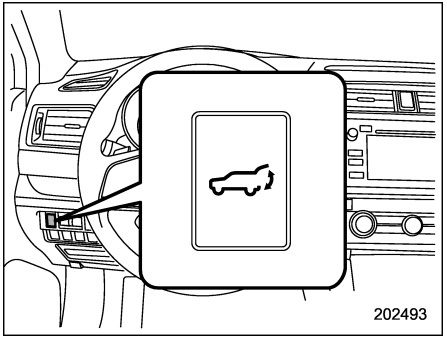
- The vehicle is stopped completely.
- The outside temperature is within a range from −30°C to 60°C (from −22°F to 140°F).
- The ignition switch is in the “LOCK”/“OFF” or “ACC” position. Or, the ignition switch is in the “ON” position and the parking brake is applied (MT models)/the select lever is in the “P” position (CVT models).

We recommend using the power rear gate function in most circumstances instead of manual operation.

## NOTE

- **If the power rear gate button is pressed repeatedly while the power rear gate is operating, the system may ignore the button operation in order to avoid being damaged. Do not press the button unnecessarily.**
- **It is not possible to stop the rear gate temporarily while opening between the completely closed position and approximately 30 cm (12 in) open. If you press one of the power rear gate buttons briefly during this range, the rear gate will be closed.**
- **If the vehicle starts to move while the power rear gate is operating, the system sounds a buzzer and closes the rear gate automatically. At this time, if the system detects jamming, it will deactivate the power rear gate and the rear gate will not be closed. If this occurs, close the rear gate via regular procedures.**
- **If you try to open the rear gate using the power rear gate function immediately after closing the rear gate using the power rear gate function, an electronic chirp will sound and the rear gate will not open. Wait for a while before trying to open the rear gate via the power rear gate function.**

▼ **Operation by the button on the instrument panel**




**Power rear gate button**

**To open the rear gate:**

Press and hold the power rear gate button when the rear gate is closed. Then the hazard warning flashers will flash twice. The rear gate will open automatically.

**To stop the rear gate midway:**

Briefly press the power rear gate button while the rear gate is being opened. Then the hazard warning flashers will flash twice. If the button is pressed and held again, the rear gate will close. If the button is briefly pressed while the gate is closed, the rear gate can be opened.

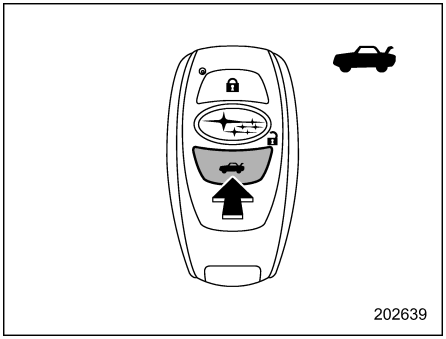
**To close the rear gate:**

Press and hold the power rear gate button. Then the hazard warning flashers will flash twice. If the button is briefly pressed again, the rear gate will open.

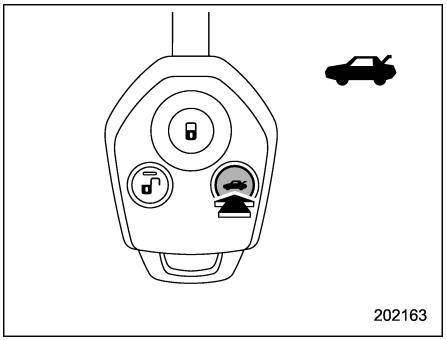
## NOTE

**If the rear gate cannot be opened/closed by performing the operation described above, a short electronic chirp will sound three times.**

▼ **Operation by the button on the access key/transmitter**




**Power rear gate button (models with access key)**




**Power rear gate button (models with transmitter)**

**To open the rear gate:**

Press and hold the power rear gate button when the rear gate is closed. Then the hazard warning flashers will flash four times. The rear gate will open automatically.

**To stop the rear gate midway:**

Briefly press the power rear gate button while the rear gate is being opened. Then the hazard warning flashers will flash twice. If the button is pressed again, the rear gate will close. If the button is briefly pressed while the gate is closed, the rear gate can be opened.

*– CONTINUED –*

**To close the rear gate:**

Press and hold the power rear gate button. Then the hazard warning flashers will flash twice. If the button is briefly pressed again, the rear gate will open.

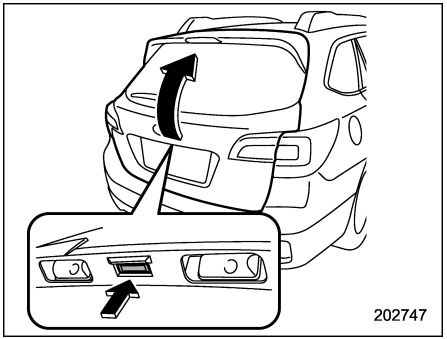
## NOTE

**• The rear gate remains unlocked even after closing it. Always lock the rear gate when leaving the vehicle.**

**• If the rear gate cannot be opened/closed by performing the operation described above, a short electronic chirp will sound three times (beep, beep, beep).**

### ▼ Operation by the buttons on the rear gate

**To open the rear gate:**




**Rear gate opener button**

1. For models with “keyless access with push-button start system”, carry the access key. For models without “keyless access with push-button start system”, unlock the rear gate.
2. Briefly press the rear gate opener button when the rear gate is closed.

Then the hazard warning flashers will flash twice. The rear gate will open automatically.

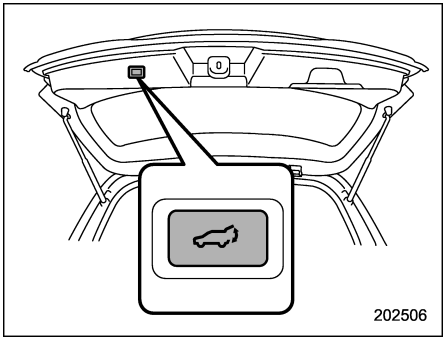
**To stop the rear gate midway:**

Briefly press either of the following buttons while the rear gate is being opened.

- rear gate opener button
- power rear gate button on the inside edge of the rear gate

Then the hazard warning flashers will flash twice. If the button is pressed again, the rear gate will close. If the button is briefly pressed while the gate is closed, the rear gate can be opened.

**To close the rear gate:**




**Power rear gate button on the inside edge of the rear gate**

Briefly press the rear gate opener button/power rear gate button on the inside edge of the rear gate. Then the hazard warning flashers will flash twice. If the button is

briefly pressed again, the rear gate will open.

## NOTE

**• The rear gate remains unlocked even after closing it. Always lock the rear gate when leaving the vehicle.**
**• If the rear gate cannot be opened/closed by performing the operation described above, a short electronic chirp will sound three times (beep, beep, beep).**

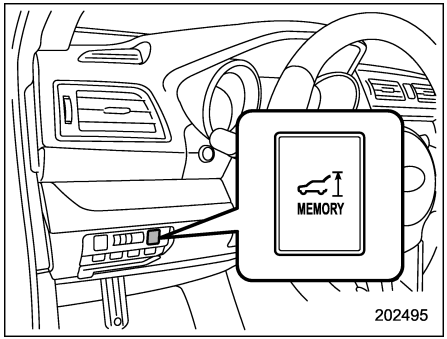
### ▼ Manual operation

## NOTE

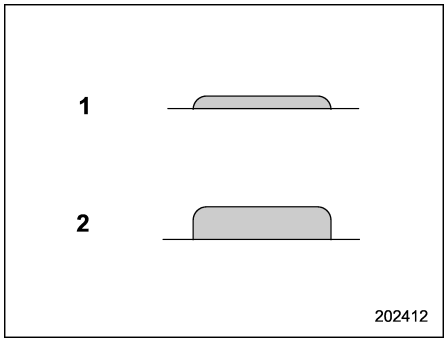
**Using the power rear gate operation is recommended. Manual operation will require physical effort.**

The power rear gate can open and close manually. Refer to “Manual rear gate” ☞2-32.

### ▼ Memory function




**Memory switch**



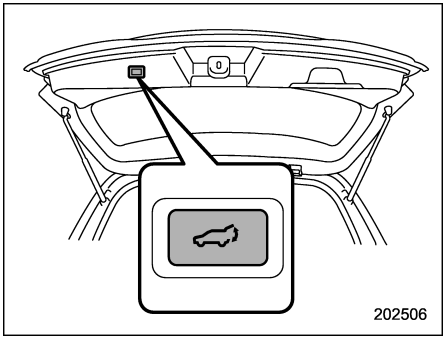

**Memory switch status**
1) ON status
2) OFF status

Your desired rear gate height can be registered.

**Registration of the rear gate height:**

To register the rear gate height, perform the following procedures while the ignition switch is in the “LOCK”/“OFF” position.

1. Open the rear gate by using the power rear gate function.
2. With the rear gate at the desired height, stop it by using the power rear gate function.
3. Press the memory switch to select the “ON” status.




**Power rear gate button on the inside edge of the rear gate**

4. With the rear gate at the desired height, press and hold the power rear gate button on the inside edge of the rear gate until an electronic chirp is heard and

– CONTINUED –

the hazard warning flashers flash three times. The electronic chirp and the flashing hazard warning flashers confirm the selected rear gate height has been registered.

## NOTE

**• To change the registered height, press the memory switch to select the "OFF" status and perform the registering procedure again.**
**• It is possible to register the height from approximately 30 cm (12 in) or more from the completely closed position.**

**Retrieval of the rear gate height:**
To open the rear gate and stop it at the registered height, perform the following procedure.
1. Press the memory switch to select the ON status.
2. Press and hold any of the power rear gate switches.

Even if any of the power rear gate switches are pressed and held while the memory switch is in the OFF status, you can stop it at the registered height by pressing the memory switch to select the ON status before the rear gate reaches the registered height.

## NOTE

**The rear gate will open to the position that is stored in the memory function even if the rear gate is opened by the reverse function.**

**▼ Reverse function**

### ⚠ WARNING

- **Do not let parts of your body get caught when operating the reverse function. If the reverse function does not operate for some reason, this may lead to serious injury or accidents.**
- **The reverse function may not operate if foreign objects are caught in the rear gate just before it closes completely. Be careful not to catch your fingers and other body parts.**
- **The reverse function may not operate depending on the object shape and the manner in which it was caught. Be careful not to catch your fingers and other body parts.**

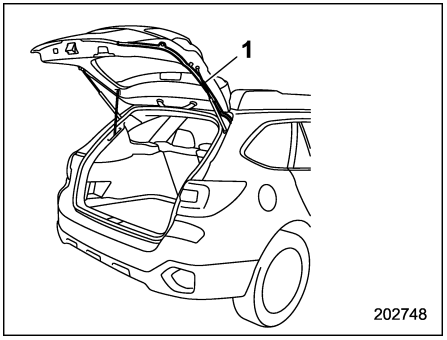
### ⚠ CAUTION

- **If the reverse function is operated 3 times consecutively, automatic opening and closing of the power rear gate function will be canceled and the rear gate will stop opening or closing suddenly. Whether the rear gate opens or closes depends on the rear gate height when automatic operation is ceased. Be careful that the rear gate does not hit anyone's head or face, etc. and that fingers and baggage, etc. are not caught in it.**
- **Take care not to damage the touch sensors. Otherwise, the reverse function may cease to operate.**

If, while opening or closing using power rear gate, the rear gate catches persons or baggage or hits an obstacle, an electronic chirp will sound 3 times and the rear gate will operate as follows.

**When opening the rear gate:** The rear gate will automatically close.

**When closing the rear gate:** The rear gate will automatically open.




1) Touch sensor

Touch sensors are attached on the left and right edges of the rear gate. If the touch sensors detect fingers, baggage, etc. while closing by the power rear gate function, an electronic chirp will sounds 3 times and the rear gate will open automatically.

## NOTE

**When the rear gate is opened using the reverse function, it will be opened fully or to the height registered in the memory function.**

**▼ Rear gate drop prevention function**

If, while fully opened via the power rear gate function, the rear gate is lowered by the weight of snow and such, an electronic chirp will sound and the rear gate drop prevention function will apply braking to the rear gate so that it prevents a rapid closure of the rear gate.

## NOTE

- **If there is snow on the rear gate, only use the power rear gate function after removing the snow.**
- **If you close the rear gate manually just after the rear gate is fully opened using the power rear gate function, the rear gate drop prevention function will detect a rapid closure of the rear gate and apply braking to the rear gate. In this case, this is not a malfunction.**

# Sunroof (if equipped)

**⚠ WARNING**

**Never let anyone's hands, arms, head or any objects protrude from the sunroof. A person could be seriously injured if any of the following conditions occur.**

- **The vehicle stops suddenly.**
- **The vehicle turns sharply.**
- **The vehicle is involved in an accident.**
- **Body parts protruding from the vehicle are struck by outside objects.**

**To avoid serious personal injury caused by accidental, child's mischief, or improper operation, the driver is responsible for obeying the following instructions without exception.**

- **Before closing the sunroof, make sure that no one's hands, arms, head or other objects will be accidentally caught in the sunroof.**
- **When leaving the vehicle, always carry the key for safety and never**

– CONTINUED –

**allow an unattended child to remain in the vehicle. Failure to follow this procedure could result in injury to a child operating the sunroof.**

- **Never try to check the anti-entrapment function by deliberately placing part of your body in the sunroof.**

**⚠ CAUTION**

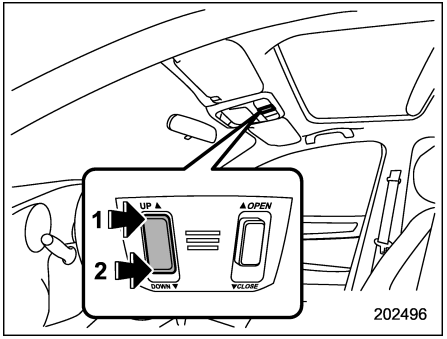
- **Do not sit on the edge of the open sunroof.**
- **Do not operate the sunroof if falling snow or extremely cold conditions have caused it to freeze shut.**
- **The anti-entrapment function does not operate when the sunroof is being tilted down. Be sure to confirm safety before tilting the sunroof down.**

The sunroof operates only when the ignition switch is in the "ON" position.

## ■ Sunroof switches

The sunroof has both tilting and sliding functions.

### ▼ Tilting sunroof




**"UP/DOWN" switch**
1) Raise
2) Lower

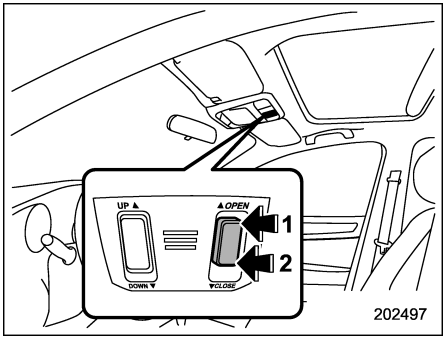
The raising function will operate when the sunroof is fully closed. The lowering function will only operate when the sunroof is raised.

Press the "UP" side of the "UP/DOWN" switch to raise the sunroof.

Press the "DOWN" side of the "UP/DOWN" switch to lower the sunroof.

Release the switch after the sunroof has been raised or has been lowered completely. Pressing the switch continuously may cause damage to the sunroof.

### ▼ Sliding sunroof




**"OPEN/CLOSE" switch**
1) Open
2) Close

Press the rear side of the "OPEN/CLOSE" switch to open the sunroof. The sun shade will also be opened together with the sunroof. The sunroof will stop at a position approximately 7 cm (2.8 in) away from the fully opened position. Press the switch again to open the sunroof completely.

Press the front side of the "OPEN/CLOSE" switch to close the sunroof.

To stop the sunroof at a selected mid-way position while opening or closing it, momentarily press the front side or rear side

of the switch.

After washing the vehicle or after it rains, wipe away water on the roof prior to opening the sunroof to prevent drops of water from falling into the passenger compartment.

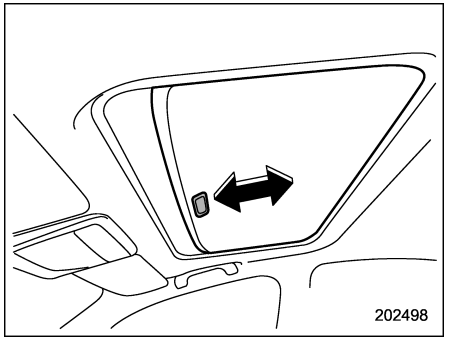
▼ **Anti-entrapment function**

When the sunroof senses a substantial enough object trapped between its glass and the vehicle's roof during closure, it automatically moves back to the fully open position and stops there. The anti-entrapment function may also be activated by a strong shock on the sunroof even when there is nothing trapped.

**⚠ CAUTION**

**Never attempt to test this function using fingers, hands or other parts of your body.**

## ■ Sun shade




The sun shade can be slid forward or backward by hand while the sunroof is closed.

If the sunroof is opened, the sun shade also moves back.

Ignition switch (models without push-button start system) ..... 3-3
LOCK ..... 3-3
ACC ..... 3-4
ON ..... 3-4
START ..... 3-4
Key reminder chime (if equipped) ..... 3-4
Ignition switch light ..... 3-4
Push-button ignition switch (models with push-button start system) ..... 3-5
Safety precautions ..... 3-5
Operating range for push-button start system ..... 3-5
Switching power ..... 3-6
When access key does not operate properly ..... 3-7
Hazard warning flasher ..... 3-8
Meters and gauges ..... 3-8
Combination meter illumination ..... 3-8
Canceling the function for meter/gauge needle movement upon turning on the ignition switch ..... 3-8
Speedometer ..... 3-8
Odometer ..... 3-9
Double trip meter ..... 3-9
Tachometer ..... 3-10
Fuel gauge ..... 3-10
Temperature gauge ..... 3-11
ECO gauge ..... 3-12
Warning and indicator lights ..... 3-12
Seatbelt warning light and chime ..... 3-13
Rear seatbelt indicator light (if equipped) ..... 3-14
SRS airbag system warning light ..... 3-15
Front passenger's frontal airbag ON and OFF indicators (if equipped) ..... 3-15
Malfunction indicator light (Check Engine light) ..... 3-16
Charge warning light ..... 3-16
Oil pressure warning light ..... 3-17
Engine low oil level warning indicator ..... 3-17
AT OIL TEMP warning light (CVT models) ..... 3-17
Low tire pressure warning light (if equipped) ..... 3-18
ABS warning light ..... 3-19
Vehicle Dynamics Control warning light/Vehicle Dynamics Control operation indicator light ..... 3-20
Vehicle Dynamics Control OFF indicator light ..... 3-21
Brake system warning light (red) ..... 3-21
Electronic parking brake warning light (yellow) ..... 3-22
Electronic parking brake indicator light ..... 3-23
Hill Holder indicator light ..... 3-23
Power steering warning light ..... 3-23
Fuel filter warning indicator (diesel engine models) ..... 3-24
Low fuel warning light ..... 3-24
Windshield washer fluid warning light ..... 3-24
Door open indicator light ..... 3-24
All-Wheel Drive warning light (CVT models) ..... 3-25
Automatic headlight beam leveler warning light (models with LED headlights) ..... 3-25
LED headlight warning light (models with LED headlights) ..... 3-25
Warning chimes and warning indicator of the keyless access with push-button start system (if equipped) ..... 3-25

Immobilizer indicator light ..... 3-30
SI-DRIVE indicator light (petrol engine models)..... 3-31
Select lever/gear position indicator ..... 3-31
Turn signal indicator lights ..... 3-32
High beam indicator light ..... 3-32
Cruise control indicator ..... 3-32
Cruise control set indicator ..... 3-32
Headlight indicator light ..... 3-33
Front fog light indicator light ..... 3-33
Rear fog light indicator light (if equipped) ..... 3-33
X-mode indicator (if equipped)..... 3-33
Hill descent control indicator (if equipped)..... 3-33
Preheating indicator light (diesel engine models)..... 3-33
Diesel particulate filter warning indicator (diesel engine models) ..... 3-33
Over-rev warning light (yellow) (MT diesel engine models)..... 3-34
Auto Start Stop warning indicator/Auto Start Stop OFF indicator (yellow) (if equipped) ..... 3-34
Auto Start Stop indicator (green) (if equipped)..... 3-35

**Information display ..... 3-35**
Clock ..... 3-35
Climate control mode indicators ..... 3-36
Outside temperature indicator ..... 3-36

**Multi information display ..... 3-37**
Basic operation ..... 3-38
Welcome screen and Good-bye screen ..... 3-38
Warning screen ..... 3-38
Basic screens ..... 3-39
Menu screens ..... 3-42

**Light control switch..... 3-47**
Headlights ..... 3-47
High/low beam change (dimmer) ..... 3-49
Headlight flasher ..... 3-50
Daytime running light system (if equipped)..... 3-50

**Turn signal lever ..... 3-50**
One-touch lane changer ..... 3-51

**Illumination brightness control..... 3-51**
Auto dimmer cancel function ..... 3-51

**Headlight beam leveler (if equipped) ..... 3-52**
Automatic headlight beam leveler (models with LED headlights) ..... 3-52
Manual headlight beam leveler (models without LED headlights, if equipped) ..... 3-52

**Fog light switch ..... 3-55**
Front fog light switch..... 3-55
Rear fog light switch (if equipped)..... 3-56

**Wiper and washer..... 3-57**
Windshield wiper and washer switches ..... 3-59
Rear window wiper and washer switch (Outback) ..... 3-62

**Defogger and deicer..... 3-63**

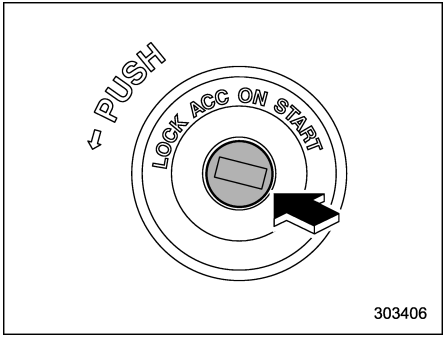
**Headlight washer (if equipped)..... 3-65**

**Mirrors ..... 3-66**
Inside mirror..... 3-66
Outside mirrors ..... 3-66

**Tilt/telescopic steering wheel ..... 3-68**

**Horn..... 3-68**

## Ignition switch (models without push-button start system)




The ignition switch has four positions: LOCK, ACC, ON and START.

**⚠ WARNING**

- **Never turn the ignition switch to "LOCK" while the vehicle is being driven or towed because that will lock the steering wheel, preventing steering control. And when the engine is turned off, it takes a much greater effort than usual to steer.**
- **Before leaving the vehicle, always remove the key from the ignition switch for safety and never allow an unattended child to remain in the vehicle. Failure to follow this procedure could result in injury to a child or others. Children could operate the power windows or other controls or even make the vehicle move.**

**⚠ CAUTION**

**Do not attach a large key holder or key case to either key. If it bangs against your knees while you are driving, it could turn the ignition switch from the "ON" position to the "ACC" or "LOCK" position, thereby stopping the engine.**

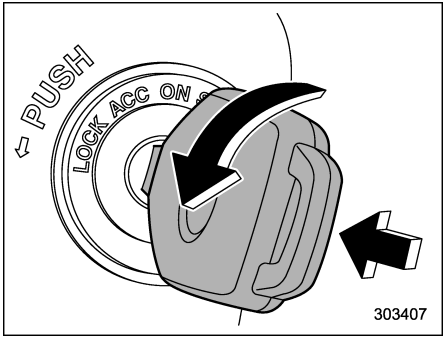
### NOTE

**• Keep the ignition switch in the "LOCK" position when the engine is not running.**
**• Using electrical accessories for a long time with the ignition switch in the "ON" or "ACC" position can cause the battery to go dead.**
**• If the ignition switch will not move from the "LOCK" position to the "ACC" position, turn the steering wheel slightly to the left and right as you turn the ignition switch.**

### ■ LOCK

The key can only be inserted or removed in this position. The ignition switch will lock the steering wheel when you remove the key.

If turning the key is difficult, turn the steering wheel slightly to the right and left as you turn the key.




The key can be turned from the "ACC" position to the "LOCK" position only when the key is pushed in while turning it (all models) and the select lever is in the "P" position (CVT models).

– CONTINUED –

## ■ ACC

In this position the electrical accessories (audio, accessory power outlet, etc.) can be used.

## ■ ON

This is the normal operating position after the engine is started.

## ■ START

The engine is started in this position. The starter cranks the engine to start it. When the key is released (after the engine has started), the key automatically returns to the “ON” position.

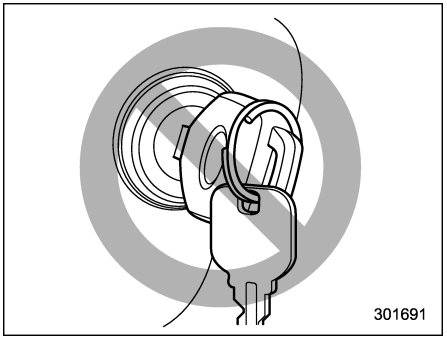
**⚠ CAUTION**

**Do not turn the ignition switch to the “START” position while the engine is running.**

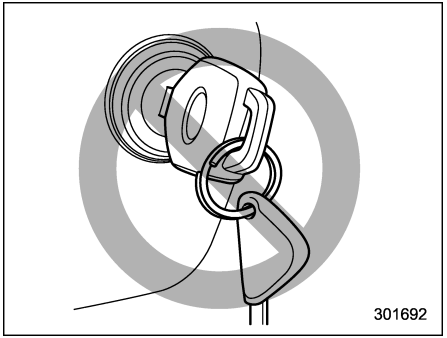
As your vehicle is equipped with an immobilizer system, if you fail to start your engine with your registered key, pull out the key once, (at this time, the immobilizer indicator light blinks) and then insert the key in the ignition switch and turn it to the “START” position and again try to start your engine.

## NOTE

**The engine may not start in the following cases.**




- **The key grip is touching another key or a metallic key holder.**




- **The key is near another key that contains an immobilizer transponder.**
- **The key is near or touching another transmitter.**

## ■ Key reminder chime (if equipped)

The reminder chime sounds when the driver’s door is opened and the ignition switch is in the “LOCK” or “ACC” position.

The chime stops under the following conditions.

- when the ignition switch is turned to the “ON” position
- when the key is removed from the ignition switch
- when the driver’s door is closed

## ■ Ignition switch light

For easy access to the ignition switch in the dark, the ignition switch light illuminates when driver’s door is opened or when the driver’s door is unlocked using the remote keyless entry transmitter.

The light remains illuminated for approximately 30 seconds and gradually turns off under the following conditions.

- when the driver’s door is closed
- when the doors are unlocked using the remote keyless entry transmitter

The light gradually turns off under the following conditions.

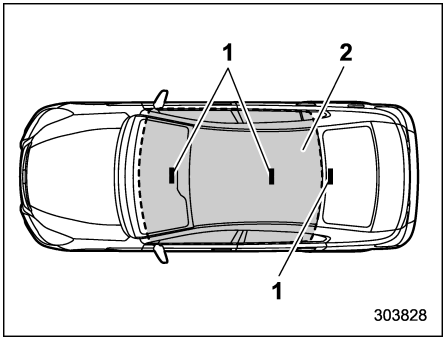
- when the ignition switch is turned to the “ON” position
- when the doors are locked using the remote keyless entry transmitter

## Push-button ignition switch (models with push-button start system)

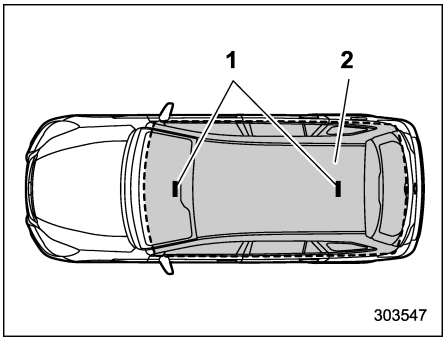
### ■ Safety precautions

Refer to “Safety precautions” ☞2-8.

### ■ Operating range for push-button start system




**Sedan**
1) Antenna
2) Operating range




**Outback**
1) Antenna
2) Operating range

### NOTE

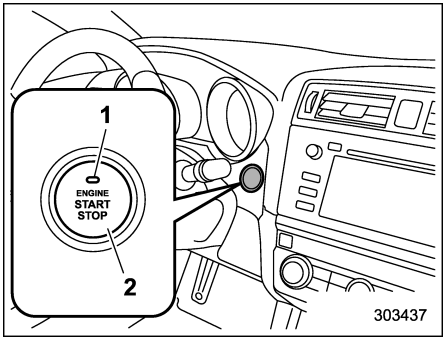
**- If the access key is not detected within the operating range of the antennas inside the vehicle, the push-button ignition switch and the engine start cannot be operated.**
**- Even when the access key is outside the vehicle, if it is placed too close to the glass, it may be possible to switch the power or to start the engine.**
**- Do not leave the access key in the following places. It may become impossible to operate the push-button ignition switch and the engine start.**
**– On the instrument panel**

– CONTINUED –

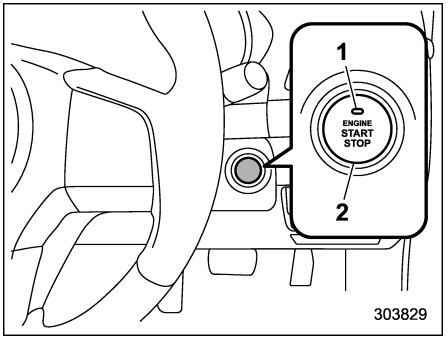
**– On the floor**
**– Inside the glove box**
**– Inside the door trim pocket**
**– On the rear seat**
**– On the rear shelf (Sedan)**
**– Inside the trunk (Sedan)**
**– At the corner of the cargo area (Outback)**

**• When operating the push-button ignition switch or starting the engine, if the access key battery is discharged, perform the procedure described in "Access key – if access key does not operate properly" ☞9-29. In such a case, replace the battery immediately. Refer to "Replacing battery of access key" ☞11-61.**

## ■ Switching power




**Left-hand drive models**
1) Operation indicator
2) Push-button ignition switch




**Right-hand drive models**
1) Operation indicator
2) Push-button ignition switch

The power is switched every time the push-button ignition switch is pressed.

1. Carry the access key, and sit in the driver's seat.
2. Shift the shift lever into neutral (MT models) or the select lever into the "P" position (CVT models).
3. Press the push-button ignition switch without depressing the clutch pedal (MT models) or the brake pedal (CVT models). Every time the button is pressed, the power is switched in the sequence of "OFF", "ACC", "ON" and "OFF". When the engine is stopped and the push-button ignition switch is in "ACC" or "ON", the operation indicator on the push-button

ignition switch illuminates in orange.

| Power status | Indicator color | Operation |
|---|---|---|
| OFF | Turned off | Power is turned off. |
| ACC | Orange | The following systems can be used: audio and accessory power outlet. |
| ON | Orange (while engine is stopped) | All electrical systems can be used. |
| | Turned off (while engine is running) | |

**⚠ CAUTION**

- **When the push-button ignition switch is left in "ON" or "ACC" for a long time, it may result in vehicle battery discharge.**
- **Do not spill drinks or other liquids on the push-button ignition switch. It may cause a malfunction.**
- **Do not touch the push-button ignition switch with a hand soiled with oil or other contaminants. It may cause a malfunction.**
- **If the push-button ignition switch does not operate smoothly, stop the operation. We recommend that you contact a SUBARU dealer immediately.**
- **If the push-button ignition switch does not illuminate even when the instrument panel illumination is turned on, we recommend that you have the vehicle inspected at a SUBARU dealer.**
- **If the vehicle was left in the hot sun for a long time, the surface of the push-button ignition switch may get hot. Be careful not to burn yourself.**

## NOTE

**• In CVT models, the push-button ignition switch cannot be switched to "OFF" when the select lever is in a position other than "P".**
**• When operating the push-button ignition switch, firmly press it all the way.**
**• If the push-button ignition switch is pressed quickly, the power may not turn on or off.**
**• If the indicator light on the push-button ignition switch flashes in green when the push-button ignition switch is pressed, steering is locked. When this occurs, press the push-button ignition switch while turning the steering wheel left and right.**

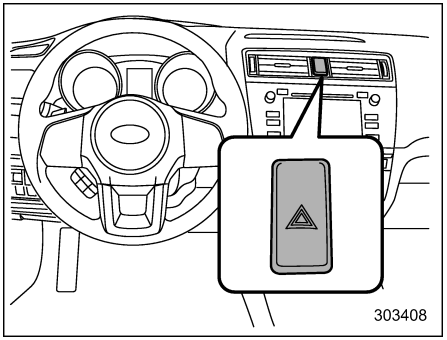
### ▼ Battery drainage prevention function

When the push-button ignition switch is left in "ACC" or "ON" for approximately 1 hour, the push-button ignition switch will be automatically switched to "OFF" to prevent the battery from going dead. (In CVT models, this function is activated when the select lever is in the "P" position.)

## ■ When access key does not operate properly

Refer to "Access key – if access key does not operate properly" ☞9-29.

## Hazard warning flasher




The hazard warning flasher is used to warn other drivers when you have to park your vehicle under emergency conditions. The hazard warning flasher works with the ignition switch in any position.

To turn on the hazard warning flasher, press the hazard warning button on the instrument panel. To turn off the flasher, press the button again.

### NOTE

**When the hazard warning flasher is on, the turn signals do not work.**

## Meters and gauges

### NOTE

**Liquid crystal displays are used in some of the meters and gauges on the combination meter. You will find their indications hard to see if you wear polarized glasses.**

### ■ Combination meter illumination

When the ignition switch is turned to the “ON” position, the various parts of the combination meter are illuminated in the following sequence.

1. Warning lights, indicator lights, meter needles, gauge needles and liquid crystal display illuminate.
2. Meter and gauge indications each show MAX position.
3. Meter and gauge indications each show MIN position.
4. Dials and indicators in meters and gauges light up.
5. Regular illumination (for driving) begins.

### NOTE

**This sequence of operations may not take place if you quickly turn the ignition switch to start the engine. This is not a malfunction.**

### ■ Canceling the function for meter/gauge needle movement upon turning on the ignition switch

It is possible to activate or deactivate the movement of the meter needles and gauge needles that takes place when the ignition switch is turned to the “ON” position. For details, perform the procedures described in “Gauge Initial Movement” ☞3-45.

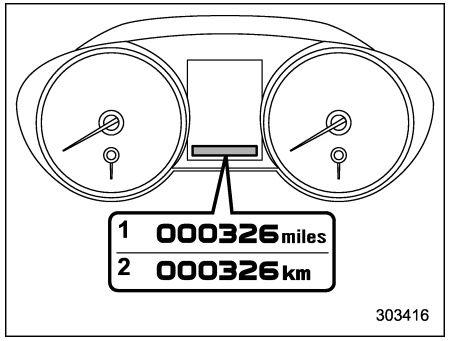
### ■ Speedometer

The speedometer shows the vehicle speed.

**▼ Speed warning chime (if equipped)**

When the speed is over approximately 120 km/h (75 mph), a chime sounds.

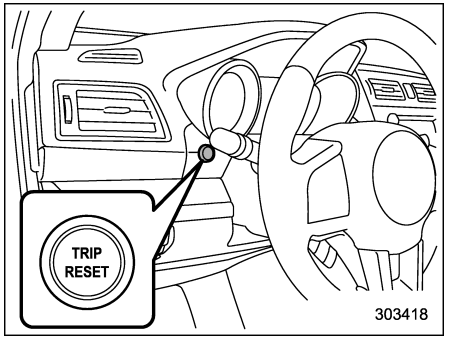
## ■ Odometer




1) U.K. models
2) Except U.K. models

This meter displays the odometer when the ignition switch is in the “ON” position.

The odometer shows the total distance that the vehicle has been driven.

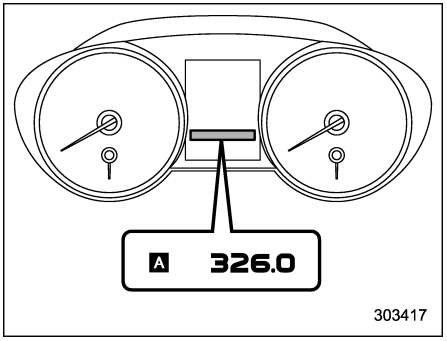



**Trip reset switch**

If you press the trip reset switch when the ignition switch is in the “LOCK”/“OFF” or “ACC” position, the odometer/trip meter will light up. If you do not press the trip reset switch within 10 seconds of illumination of the odometer/trip meter, the odometer/trip meter will turn off.

Also, if you open and close the driver’s door within 10 seconds of illumination of the odometer/trip meter, the odometer/trip meter will turn off.

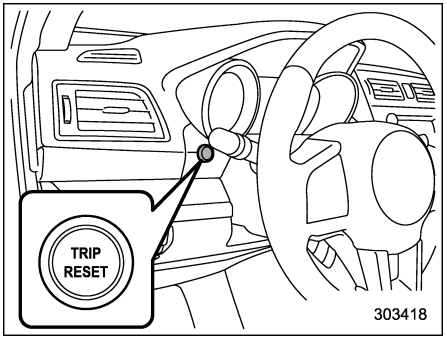
## ■ Double trip meter




This meter displays the two trip meters when the ignition switch is in the “ON” position.

The trip meter shows the distance that the vehicle has been driven since you last set it to zero.

– CONTINUED –

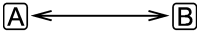



**Trip reset switch**

If you press the trip reset switch when the ignition switch is in the “LOCK”/“OFF” or “ACC” position, the odometer/trip meter will light up. It is possible to switch between the A trip meter and B trip meter indications while the odometer/trip meter is lit up. If you do not press the trip reset switch within 10 seconds of illumination of the odometer/trip meter, the odometer/trip meter will turn off.

Also, if you open and close the driver’s door within 10 seconds of illumination of the odometer/trip meter, the odometer/trip meter will turn off.

The display can be switched as shown in the following illustration by pressing the trip reset switch.




To set the trip meter to zero, select the A trip or B trip meter by pressing the trip reset switch and keep the switch pressed for more than 2 seconds.

**⚠ CAUTION**

**To ensure safety, do not attempt to change the function of the indicator during driving, as an accident could result.**

## NOTE

**If the connection between the combination meter and battery is broken for any reason such as vehicle maintenance or fuse replacement, the data recorded on the trip meter will be lost.**

## ■ Tachometer

The tachometer shows the engine speed in thousands of revolutions per minute.

**⚠ CAUTION**

**Do not operate the engine with the pointer of the tachometer in the red zone. In this range, fuel injection will be cut by the engine control module to protect the engine from overrevving. The engine will resume running normally after the engine speed is reduced below the red zone.**

## NOTE

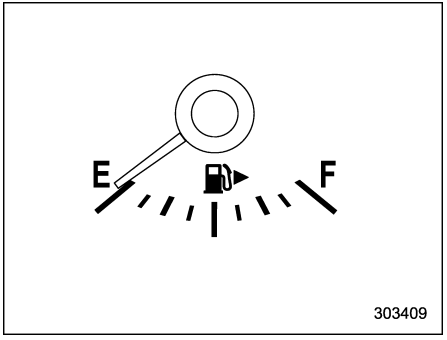
**To protect the engine/transmission while the select lever is in the “P” or “N” position (CVT models) or the shift lever is in the neutral position (MT models), the engine is controlled so that the engine speed may not become too high even if the accelerator pedal is depressed hard.**

## ■ Fuel gauge

**⚠ CAUTION**

**For diesel engine models, fill the tank with diesel fuel. For details**

**about diesel fuel, refer to "Fuel requirements for diesel engine models" ☞7-3.**




The fuel gauge shows the approximate amount of fuel remaining in the tank.

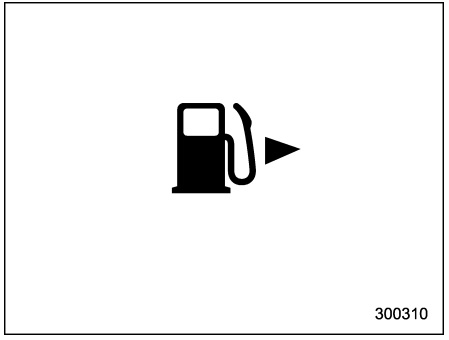
When the ignition switch is in the "LOCK"/"OFF" or "ACC" position, the fuel gauge shows "E" even if the fuel tank contains fuel.

The gauge may move slightly during braking, turning or acceleration due to fuel level movement in the tank.

If you press the trip reset switch while the ignition switch is in the "LOCK"/"OFF" or "ACC" position, the fuel gauge's dial will light up and the needle will indicate the amount of fuel remaining in the tank.

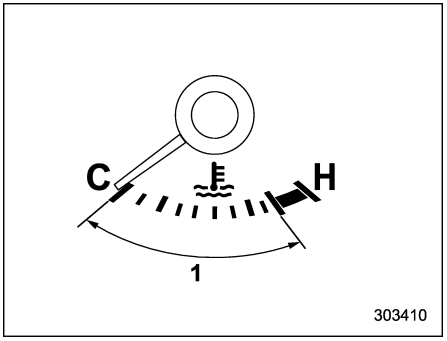
If, while the fuel gauge needle is indicating the amount of fuel remaining in the tank, you (a) do not press the trip reset switch for 10 seconds or (b) open and close the driver's door, the fuel gauge needle will drop to the "E" position and the dial and needle will turn off.

## NOTE




**You will see the "⛽▶" sign in the fuel gauge.**
**This indicates that the fuel filler door (lid) is located on the right side of the vehicle.**

## ■ Temperature gauge




1) Normal operating range

The temperature gauge shows engine coolant temperature when the ignition switch is in the "ON" position.

The coolant temperature will vary in accordance with the outside temperature and driving conditions.

We recommend that you drive moderately until the pointer of the temperature gauge reaches near the middle of the range. Engine operation is optimum with the engine coolant at this temperature range. Avoid high revving operation when the engine is not warmed up enough.

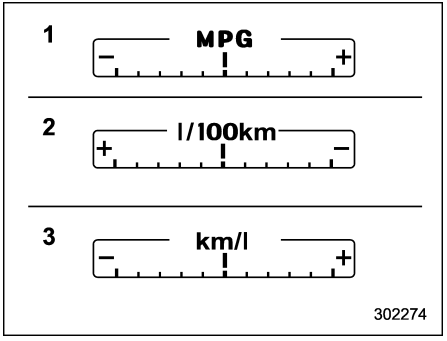
– CONTINUED –

**⚠ CAUTION**

**If the pointer exceeds the normal operating range, safely stop the vehicle as soon as possible.**

**Refer to "Engine overheating" ☞9-24.**

## ■ ECO gauge




The ECO gauge shows the difference between the current rate of fuel consumption and the average rate of fuel consumption since the trip meter was last reset.

The ECO gauge indicates the current fuel efficiency as shown in the following chart.

| Displayed unit | Needle position | |
|---|---|---|
| | "+" side | "-" side |
| MPG | Better | Poorer |
| km/l | | |
| l/100km | Poorer | Better |

### NOTE

**• The ECO gauge shows only an approximate indication.**

**• After resetting the trip meter, the average rate of fuel consumption is not shown until driving 1 km (0.6 mile). Before that time, the ECO gauge does not operate.**

## Warning and indicator lights

Several of the warning and indicator lights illuminate momentarily and then turn off when the ignition switch is initially turned to the "ON" position. This permits checking the operation of the bulbs.

Apply the parking brake and turn the ignition switch to the "ON" position. For the system check, the following lights illuminate and turn off after several seconds or after the engine has started.

: Seatbelt warning light
(The seatbelt warning light turns off only when the driver fastens the seatbelt.)

: Front passenger's seatbelt warning light (if equipped)
(The seatbelt warning light turns off only when the front seat passenger fastens the seatbelt.)

AWD: All-Wheel Drive warning light (CVT models)

: Power steering warning light

: SRS airbag system warning light

: Malfunction indicator light (Check Engine light)

: Charge warning light

: Oil pressure warning light

: Engine low oil level warning indicator

AT OIL TEMP: AT OIL TEMP warning light (CVT models)

(ABS): ABS warning light

(!): Brake system warning light (red)

(!): Electronic parking brake warning light (yellow)

: Hill Holder indicator light

: Low fuel warning light

(!): Low tire pressure warning light (if equipped)

: Vehicle Dynamics Control warning light/Vehicle Dynamics Control operation indicator light

OFF: Vehicle Dynamics Control OFF indicator light

: Preheating indicator light (diesel engine models)

: Hill descent control indicator (if equipped)

If any lights fail to illuminate, it indicates a burned-out bulb or a malfunction of the corresponding system.

We recommend that you consult your authorized SUBARU dealer for repair.

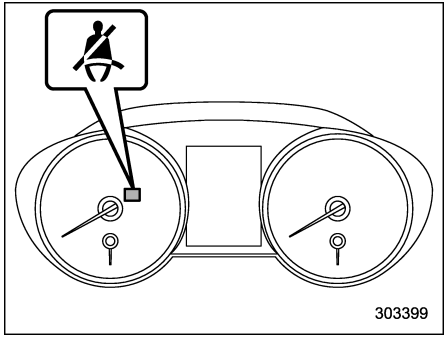
## ■ Seatbelt warning light and chime

### NOTE

**If your seatbelt warning device does not operate as described below, it may be out of order. We recommend that you have the device inspected and, if necessary, repaired by the nearest SUBARU dealer.**

#### ▼ Seatbelt warning for driver's seat

Your vehicle is equipped with a seatbelt warning device for the driver's seat.




**Driver's warning light**

This device causes the seatbelt warning light on the combination meter to illuminate when the ignition switch is turned to "ON" to remind the driver to wear the seatbelt.

If the vehicle is driven at a speed no higher than approximately 20 km/h (12.5 mph) with the driver's seatbelt not fastened, the warning light will illuminate continuously.

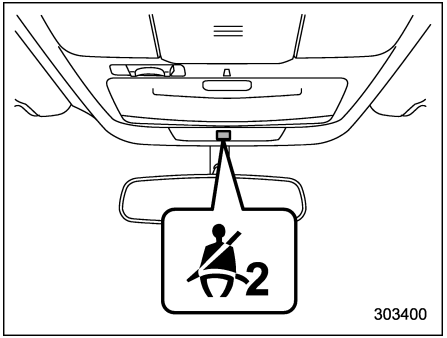
If the vehicle subsequently reaches a speed of approximately 20 km/h (12.5 mph) with the driver's seatbelt not fastened, the warning light will start a repeated cycle consisting of 5 seconds of flashing followed by 1 second of steady illumination. At the same time, a buzzer will start a repeated cycle consisting of sounding for 5 seconds followed by a 1-second pause. If the seatbelt is fastened at this time, the warning light will turn off and the buzzer will stop sounding immediately.

This condition will continue for approximately 108 seconds. If the driver's seatbelt is still not fastened when the 108-second period has elapsed, the warning light will stop flashing and the buzzer will stop sounding. The warning light, however, will remain illuminated continuously unless the seatbelt is fastened.

– CONTINUED –

### ▼ Seatbelt warning for front passenger's seat (if equipped)

Your vehicle is equipped with a seatbelt warning device for the front passenger's seat.




**Front passenger's warning light**

With the ignition switch turned to the "ON" position, this device reminds the front passenger to fasten his/her seatbelt by illuminating a warning light as shown in the illustration.

If the vehicle is driven at a speed no higher than approximately 20 km/h (12.5 mph) with the front passenger's seatbelt not fastened, the warning light(s) corresponding to the unfastened seatbelt(s) will illuminate continuously.

If the vehicle subsequently reaches a speed of approximately 20 km/h (12.5 mph) with the front passenger's seatbelt not fastened, the warning light(s) will start a repeated cycle consisting of 5 seconds of flashing followed by 1 second of steady illumination.

At the same time, a buzzer will start a repeated cycle consisting of sounding for 5 seconds followed by a 1-second pause. If either the driver's or front passenger's unfastened seatbelts is fastened at this time, the warning light corresponding to that seatbelt will immediately turn off but the buzzer will continue operating unless the remaining seatbelt is fastened.

## NOTE

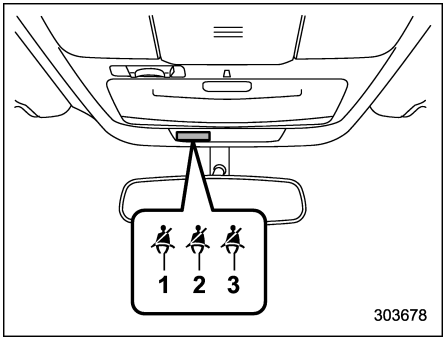
**• If the driver's and front passenger's seatbelts are not fastened simultaneously (if one seatbelt is fastened significantly earlier or later than the other), the buzzer may sound longer (10 seconds maximum).**

**• The occupant detection system of the front passenger's seat detects if the seat is occupied by a passenger. However, if there is an object on the seat, the seatbelt warning system may be activated even the seat is not occupied.**

**• If you use a cushion on the front passenger's seat, there is the possibility that the occupant detection system cannot detect the passenger.**

If the driver's seatbelt and/or the front passenger's seatbelt is still not fastened when the 108-second period has elapsed, the warning light(s) will stop flashing and the buzzer will stop sounding. The warning light(s), however, will remain illuminated continuously unless the corresponding seatbelt(s) is fastened.

## ■ Rear seatbelt indicator light (if equipped)




1) Rear seat (left position)
2) Rear seat (center position)
3) Rear seat (right position)

This indicator light illuminates to show only the seating positions in which seatbelts have not been fastened.

## ■ SRS airbag system warning light

**WARNING**

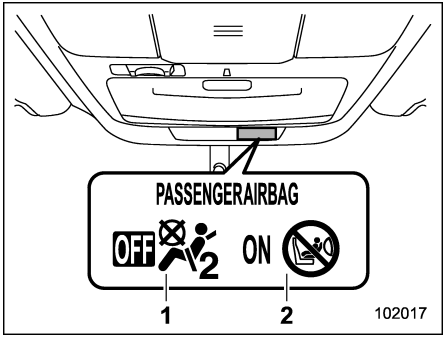
**If the warning light exhibits any of the following conditions, there may be a malfunction in the seatbelt pretensioners and/or SRS airbag system.**

- **Flashing or flickering of the warning light**
- **No illumination of the warning light when the ignition switch is first turned to the "ON" position**
- **Continuous illumination of the warning light**
- **Illumination of the warning light while driving**

**We recommend that you have the system checked immediately by your nearest SUBARU dealer. Unless checked and properly repaired, the seatbelt pretensioners and/or SRS airbags will operate improperly (e.g. SRS airbags may inflate in a very minor collision or not inflate in a severe collision), which may increase the risk of injury.**

For details about the components monitored by the warning light, refer to "SRS airbag system monitor" ☞1-73.

## ■ Front passenger's frontal airbag ON and OFF indicators (if equipped)




1) Front passenger's frontal airbag OFF indicator
2) Front passenger's frontal airbag ON indicator

The front passenger's frontal airbag ON and OFF indicators show you the status of the front passenger's SRS frontal airbag.

The indicators are located as shown in the illustration.

When the ignition switch is turned to the "ON" position, both the ON and OFF indicators illuminate for 6 seconds during which time the system is checked. Following the system check, both indicators turn off for 2 seconds. After that, one of the indicators illuminates depending on the status of the front passenger's SRS frontal airbag determined by the frontal airbag system monitoring.

If the front passenger's SRS frontal airbag is activated, the passenger's frontal airbag ON indicator will illuminate while the OFF indicator will remain off.

If the front passenger's SRS frontal airbag is deactivated, the passenger's frontal airbag ON indicator will remain off while the OFF indicator will illuminate.

With the ignition switch turned to the "ON" position, if both the ON and OFF indicators remain illuminated or off simultaneously even after the system check period, the system is malfunctioning. We recommend that you contact your SUBARU dealer immediately for an inspection.

– CONTINUED –

## ■ Malfunction indicator light (Check Engine light)



### ▼ Models equipped with OBD system

Vehicles sold in Europe are equipped with an enhanced on-board diagnostics system called OBD that monitors the performance of the vehicle's emission control system.

Vehicles sold in some countries outside Europe may be equipped with the OBD system. We recommend that you ask your SUBARU dealer to ascertain whether your vehicle has the OBD system.

The OBD system helps to protect the environment by ensuring that emissions are at acceptable levels for the life of the vehicle.

If the malfunction indicator light illuminates steadily or blinks while the engine is running, it may indicate that there is a problem or potential problem somewhere in the emission control system and that service is required. The OBD system also assists your service technician in properly diagnosing any malfunction.

**⚠ CAUTION**

**If the malfunction indicator light illuminates while you are driving, we recommend that you have your vehicle checked/repaired by your SUBARU dealer as soon as possible. Continued vehicle operation without having the emission control system checked and repaired as necessary could cause serious damage, which may not be covered by your vehicle's warranty.**

#### ▽ If the light illuminates steadily

If the light illuminates steadily while driving or does not turn off after the engine starts, an emission control system malfunction has been detected.

We recommend that you have your vehicle checked by an authorized SUBARU dealer immediately.

#### ▽ If the light is blinking

If the light is blinking while driving, an engine misfire condition has been detected which may damage the emission control system.

To prevent serious damage to the emission control system, observe the following items.

- Reduce vehicle speed.
- Avoid hard acceleration.
- Avoid steep uphill grades.
- Reduce the amount of cargo, if possible.
- Stop towing a trailer as soon as possible.

The malfunction indicator light may stop blinking and illuminate steadily after several driving trips. We recommend that you have your vehicle checked by an authorized SUBARU dealer immediately.

### ▼ Models NOT equipped with OBD system

If the malfunction indicator light illuminates when the engine is running, it may indicate that there is a problem somewhere in the engine control system.

If the light illuminates while driving or does not turn off after the engine starts, we recommend that you contact your nearest SUBARU dealer immediately.

## ■ Charge warning light




If this light illuminates when the engine is running, it may indicate that the charging system is not working properly.

If the light illuminates while driving or does not turn off after the engine starts, stop the

engine at the first safe opportunity and check the alternator belt. If the belt is loose, broken or if the belt is in good condition but the light remains illuminated, we recommend that you contact your nearest SUBARU dealer immediately.

## ■ Oil pressure warning light



If this light illuminates when the engine is running, it may indicate that the engine oil pressure is low and the lubricating system is not working properly.

If the light illuminates while driving or does not turn off after the engine starts, stop the engine at the first safe opportunity and check the engine oil level. If the oil level is low, add oil immediately. If the engine oil is at the proper level but the light remains illuminated, we recommend that you contact your nearest SUBARU dealer immediately.

**⚠ CAUTION**

**Do not operate the engine with the oil pressure warning light on. This may cause serious engine damage.**

## ■ Engine low oil level warning indicator



This indicator appears when the engine oil level decreases to the lower limit.

If the engine low oil level warning indicator appears while driving, park the vehicle at a safe and level location, and then check the engine oil level. When the engine oil level is not within the normal range, refill with engine oil if necessary. Refer to “Engine oil” ☞11-16.

If the warning light does not disappear after refilling with engine oil or the warning indicator appears even though the engine oil level is within the normal range, we recommend that you have the system checked by a SUBARU dealer.

### NOTE

**• After replacing or adding the engine oil, if the engine oil level is within the normal range when restarting the engine on a level surface, the warning indicator will be off.**

**• The warning indicator may appear temporarily in the following conditions because a low oil level may be detected as a result of significant oil movement in the engine.**

**– when the vehicle is considerably inclined on an uphill or steep slope**

**– when the vehicle has continuously accelerated and decelerated**

**– when the vehicle is continuously turned**

**– when the vehicle is driven on a road that alternates continuously between uphill and downhill**

## ■ AT OIL TEMP warning light (CVT models)

AT OIL TEMP

If this light illuminates when the engine is running, it may indicate that the transmission fluid temperature is too hot.

If the light illuminates while driving, immediately stop the vehicle in a safe place and let the engine idle until the warning light turns off.

### ▼ Transmission control system warning

If the “AT OIL TEMP” warning light flashes after the engine has started, it may indicate that the transmission control system is not working properly. We recommend that you contact your nearest SUBARU dealer for service immediately.

– CONTINUED –

## ■ Low tire pressure warning light (if equipped)



When the ignition switch is turned to the “ON” position, the low tire pressure warning light will illuminate for approximately 2 seconds to check that the tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS) is functioning properly. If the system functions normally and the tire pressure of all four wheels is appropriate for the selected TPMS mode, the warning light will turn off. The TPMS mode should be changed according to the specified pressure shown on the tire inflation pressure label. For how to change a mode and information about the mode to be selected, refer to “TPMS mode setting” ☞7-44.

Each tire, including the spare (if provided), should be checked monthly when cold and inflated to the inflation pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label. (If your vehicle has tires of a different size than the size indicated on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label, you should determine the proper tire inflation pressure for those tires.)

As an added safety feature, your vehicle has been equipped with a tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS) that illuminates a low tire pressure telltale when one or more of your tires is significantly underinflated. Accordingly, when the low tire pressure telltale illuminates, you should stop and check your tires as soon as possible, and inflate them to the proper pressure. Driving on a significantly underinflated tire causes the tire to overheat and can lead to tire failure. Under-inflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tire tread life, and may affect the vehicle’s handling and stopping ability.

Please note that the TPMS is not a substitute for proper tire maintenance, and it is the driver’s responsibility to maintain correct tire pressure, even if under-inflation has not reached the level to trigger illumination of the TPMS low tire pressure telltale.

Your vehicle has also been equipped with a TPMS malfunction indicator to indicate when the system is not operating properly. The TPMS malfunction indicator is combined with the low tire pressure telltale. When the system detects a malfunction, the telltale will flash for approximately one minute and then remain continuously illuminated. This sequence will continue upon subsequent vehicle start-ups as long as the malfunction exists. When the malfunction indicator is illuminated, the system may not be able to detect or signal low tire pressure as intended. TPMS malfunctions may occur for a variety of reasons, including the installation of replacement or alternate tires or wheels on the vehicle that prevent the TPMS from functioning properly. Always check the TPMS malfunction telltale after replacing one or more tires or wheels on your vehicle to ensure that the replacement or alternate tires and wheels allow the TPMS to continue to function properly.

Should the warning light illuminate steadily after blinking for approximately one minute, we recommend that you have the system inspected by your nearest SUBARU dealer as soon as possible.

**⚠ WARNING**

**If this light does not illuminate briefly after the ignition switch is turned ON or the light illuminates steadily after blinking for approximately one minute, we recommend that you have your Tire Pressure Monitoring System checked at a SUBARU dealer as soon as possible.**

**If this light illuminates while driving, never brake suddenly and keep driving straight ahead while gradu-**

ally reducing speed. Then slowly pull off the road to a safe place. Otherwise an accident involving serious vehicle damage and serious personal injury could occur.

If this light still illuminates while driving after adjusting the tire pressure, a tire may have significant damage and a fast leak that causes the tire to lose air rapidly. If you have a flat tire, replace it with a spare tire as soon as possible.

When a spare tire is mounted or a wheel rim is replaced without the original pressure sensor/transmitter being transferred, the Low tire pressure warning light will illuminate steadily after blinking for approximately one minute. This indicates the TPMS is unable to monitor all four road wheels. We recommend that you contact your SUBARU dealer as soon as possible for tire and sensor replacement and/or system resetting.

If the light illuminates steadily after blinking for approximately one minute, we recommend that you promptly contact a SUBARU dealer to have the system inspected.

**CAUTION**

The tire pressure monitoring system is NOT a substitute for manually checking tire pressure. The tire pressure should be checked periodically (at least monthly) using a tire gauge. Change the TPMS mode according to the specified pressure shown on the tire inflation pressure label. After any change to tire pressure(s), the tire pressure monitoring system will not re-check tire inflation pressures until the vehicle is first driven more than 40 km/h (25 mph). After adjusting the tire pressures, increase the vehicle speed to at least 40 km/h (25 mph) to start the TPMS re-checking of the tire inflation pressures. If the tire pressures are now above the severe low pressure threshold, the low tire pressure warning light should turn off a few minutes later. Therefore, be sure to install the specified size for the front and rear tires.

## ■ ABS warning light

**CAUTION**

- If any of the following conditions occur, we recommend that you have the ABS system repaired at the first available opportunity by your SUBARU dealer.
  - The warning light does not illuminate when the ignition switch is turned to the “ON” position.
  - The warning light illuminates when the ignition switch is turned to the “ON” position, but it does not turn off even when the vehicle speed exceeds approximately 12 km/h (8 mph).
  - The warning light illuminates during driving.
  - The warning light flashes.
- When the warning light is on (and brake system warning light is off), the ABS function shuts down; however, the conventional brake system continues to operate normally.
- When the warning light is flashing, the ABS system may be

– CONTINUED –

**malfunctioning. However, the conventional brake system continues to operate normally.**

The ABS warning light illuminates together with the brake system warning light if the EBD system malfunctions. For further details of the EBD system malfunction warning, refer to "Electronic Brake Force Distribution (EBD) system warning" ☞3-22.

## NOTE

**If the warning light behavior is as shown in the following, the ABS system may be considered normal.**

- **The warning light illuminates right after the engine is started but turns off immediately, remaining off.**
- **The warning light remains illuminated after the engine has been started, but it turns off when the vehicle speed reaches approximately 12 km/h (8 mph).**
- **The warning light illuminates during driving, but it turns off immediately and remains off.**

When driving with an insufficient battery voltage such as when the engine is jump started, the ABS warning light may illuminate. This is due to the low battery voltage and does not indicate a malfunction. When the battery becomes fully charged, the light will turn off.

## ■ Vehicle Dynamics Control warning light/ Vehicle Dynamics Control operation indicator light



### ▼ Vehicle Dynamics Control warning light

**⚠ CAUTION**

**The Vehicle Dynamics Control system provides its ABS control through the electrical circuit of the ABS system. Accordingly, if the ABS is inoperative, the Vehicle Dynamics Control system becomes unable to provide ABS control. As a result, the Vehicle Dynamics Control system becomes inoperative, causing the warning light to illuminate. Although both the Vehicle Dynamics Control and ABS systems are inoperative in this case, the ordinary functions of the brake system are still available. You will be safe while driving in this condition, but drive carefully and we recommend that you have your vehicle checked at a SUBARU dealer as soon as possible.**

## NOTE

- **If the electrical circuit of the Vehicle Dynamics Control system itself malfunctions, the warning light only illuminates. At this time, the ABS (Anti-lock Brake System) remains fully operational.**
- **The warning light illuminates when the electronic control system of the ABS/Vehicle Dynamics Control system malfunctions.**

The Vehicle Dynamics Control system is probably inoperative under any of the following conditions. We recommend that you have your vehicle checked at a SUBARU dealer immediately.

- The warning light does not illuminate when the ignition switch is turned to the "ON" position.
- The warning light illuminates while the vehicle is running.

## NOTE

**If the warning light behavior is as described in the following examples, the Vehicle Dynamics Control system may be considered normal.**

- **The warning light illuminates right after the engine is started but turns off**

**immediately and remains off.**
**• The warning light illuminates after the engine has started and turns off while the vehicle is subsequently being driven.**
**• The warning light illuminates during driving but turns off immediately and remains off.**

**▼ Vehicle Dynamics Control operation indicator light**

The indicator light flashes during activation of the skid suppression function and during activation of the traction control function.

## NOTE

**• The light may remain illuminated for a short period of time after the engine has been started, especially in cold weather. This does not indicate the existence of a problem. The light should turn off as soon as the engine has warmed up.**
**• The indicator light illuminates when the engine has developed a malfunction and the malfunction indicator light/ CHECK ENGINE warning light is on.**

The Vehicle Dynamics Control system is probably malfunctioning under the following condition. We recommend that you have your vehicle checked at a SUBARU dealer as soon as possible.

• The light does not turn off even after the lapse of several minutes (the engine has warmed up) after the engine has started.

## ■ Vehicle Dynamics Control OFF indicator light




The light illuminates when the Vehicle Dynamics Control OFF switch is pressed to deactivate the Vehicle Dynamics Control system.

The Vehicle Dynamics Control system is probably malfunctioning under any of the following conditions. We recommend that you have your vehicle checked at a SUBARU dealer immediately.

• The light does not illuminate when the ignition switch is turned to the “ON” position.
• The light does not turn off even after a period of approximately 2 seconds after the ignition switch has been turned to the “ON” position.

## ■ Brake system warning light (red)



**⚠ WARNING**

- **Driving with the brake system warning light on is dangerous. This indicates your brake system may not be working properly. If the light remains illuminated, we recommend that you have the brakes inspected by a SUBARU dealer immediately.**
- **If at all in doubt about whether the brakes are operating properly, do not drive the vehicle. We recommend that you have your vehicle towed to the nearest SUBARU dealer for repair.**

This light has the following functions:

**▼ Brake fluid level warning**

The light illuminates when the brake fluid level has dropped to near the “MIN” level of the brake fluid reservoir with the ignition switch in the “ON” position and with the parking brake released.

If the light should illuminate while driving (with the parking brake released and with the ignition switch positioned in “ON”), it could be an indication of leaking of brake

– CONTINUED –

fluid or worn brake pads. If this occurs, immediately stop the vehicle at the nearest safe place and check the brake fluid level. For details, refer to “Brake fluid” ☞11-28. If the fluid level is below the “MIN” mark in the reservoir, do not drive the vehicle. We recommend that you have the vehicle towed to the nearest SUBARU dealer for repair. For details, refer to “Towing” ☞9-24.

**▼ Electronic Brake Force Distribution (EBD) system warning**

The brake system warning light also illuminates if a malfunction occurs in the EBD system. In that event, it illuminates together with the ABS warning light.

The EBD system may be malfunctioning if the brake system warning light and ABS warning light illuminate simultaneously during driving.

Even if the EBD system fails, the conventional braking system will still function. However, the rear wheels will be more prone to locking when the brakes are applied harder than usual and the vehicle’s motion may therefore become somewhat harder to control.

If the brake system warning light and ABS warning light illuminate simultaneously, take the following steps:

1. Stop the vehicle in the nearest safe, flat place.
2. Shut down the engine, apply the parking brake, and then restart it.
3. Release the parking brake.

- Even if both warning lights turn off, the EBD system may be malfunctioning.

We recommend that you drive carefully to the nearest SUBARU dealer and have the system inspected.

- If both warning lights illuminate again and remain illuminated after the engine has been restarted, shut down the engine again, apply the parking brake, and check the brake fluid level. For details, refer to “Brake fluid” ☞11-28.
  - – Even if the brake fluid level is not below the “MIN” mark, the EBD system may be malfunctioning. We recommend that you drive carefully to the nearest SUBARU dealer and have the system inspected.
  - – If the brake fluid level is below the “MIN” mark, DO NOT drive the vehicle. Instead, we recommend that you have the vehicle towed to the nearest SUBARU dealer for repair. For details, refer to “Towing” ☞9-24.

## ■ Electronic parking brake warning light (yellow)



This light illuminates when the electronic parking brake system is malfunctioning.

**⚠ WARNING**

**When the electronic parking brake warning light illuminates, immediately stop the vehicle in a safe location and we recommend that you contact your SUBARU dealer.**

### NOTE

**- If the warning light behaves as described in the following conditions, the electronic parking brake system is operating normally.**
  - **– The warning light remains illuminated after the engine is started, but it turns off after the electronic parking brake is released, and the indicator light remains off.**
  - **– The warning light illuminates during driving, but it turns off and remains off.**

**- If you start the engine while operating the electronic parking brake switch, the electronic parking brake warning light may illuminate. In this case,**

**restart the engine and then operate the electronic parking brake switch. If the warning light turns off, the system may be considered normal.**

## ■ Electronic parking brake indicator light



This light illuminates while the electronic parking brake is applied. If you operate the electronic parking brake switch while the electronic parking brake cannot be operated, this light flashes for approximately 10 seconds. When the electronic parking brake system is malfunctioning, this light may flash.

**⚠ WARNING**

- **When the electronic parking brake indicator light continues to flash, the electronic parking brake system may malfunction (excluding when the vehicle was stopped on a steep up/downhill slope, or when the electric parking brake was applied at high brake temperature). Immediately stop the vehicle in a safe location and we recommend that you contact your SUBARU dealer.**
- **When the electronic parking brake indicator light does not turn off even if you release the electronic parking brake while the engine is running, immediately stop the vehicle in a safe location, we recommend that you contact your SUBARU dealer and have the electronic parking brake system inspected.**

## ■ Hill Holder indicator light



**⚠ WARNING**

**If the Hill Holder indicator light does not illuminate even when the Hill Holder switch is pressed to activate the Hill Holder function, the electronic parking brake system may be malfunctioning. Immediately stop the vehicle in a safe location. We recommend that you contact your SUBARU dealer immediately.**

The light illuminates when the Hill Holder switch is pressed to activate the Hill Holder function. For details about the Hill Holder function, refer to "Hill Holder function" ☞7-38.

## ■ Power steering warning light



While the engine is running, this warning light illuminates when a malfunction has been detected in the electric power steering system.

**⚠ CAUTION**

**When the power steering warning light is illuminated, there may be more resistance when the steering wheel is operated. We recommend that you drive carefully to the nearest SUBARU dealer and have the vehicle inspected immediately.**

### NOTE

**If the steering wheel is operated in the following ways, the power steering control system may temporarily limit the power assist in order to prevent the system components, such as the control computer and drive motor, from overheating.**

- **The steering wheel is operated frequently and turned sharply while the vehicle is maneuvered at extremely low speeds, such as while frequently turning the steering wheel during parallel parking.**

– CONTINUED –

**• The steering wheel remains in the fully turned position for a long period of time.**

**At this time, there will be more resistance when steering. However this is not a malfunction. Normal steering force will be restored after the steering wheel is not operated for a while and the power steering control system has an opportunity to cool down. However, if the power steering is operated in a non-standard way which causes power assist limitation to occur too frequently, this may result in a malfunction of the power steering control system.**

## ■ Fuel filter warning indicator (diesel engine models)



This warning indicator appears when the amount of accumulated water in the fuel filter has reached the specified level. If this warning indicator appears, we recommend that you have your vehicle checked at a SUBARU dealer as soon as possible.

**⚠ CAUTION**

**Never drive the vehicle when the warning indicator is on. Continuing to drive while water has accumulated in the fuel filter will damage the fuel injection pump.**

## ■ Low fuel warning light



The low fuel warning light illuminates when the tank is nearly empty, at approximately 9.0 liters (2.3 US gal, 1.9 Imp gal). It only operates when the ignition switch is in the “ON” position. When this light illuminates, fill the fuel tank immediately.

### NOTE

**This light does not turn off unless the tank is replenished up to an internal fuel quantity of approximately 15 liters (4.0 US gal, 3.3 Imp gal).**

**⚠ CAUTION**

**Promptly put fuel in the tank whenever the low fuel warning light illuminates. Engine misfires as a result of an empty tank could cause damage to the engine.**

## ■ Windshield washer fluid warning light



This light illuminates when the fluid level in the windshield washer fluid tank decreases to the lower limit (approximately 1.0 liter, 1.1 US qt, 0.9 Imp qt).

## ■ Door open indicator light



When any of the doors, the rear gate (Outback) or the trunk lid (Sedan) is not fully closed, the door open indicator light illuminates. This function is effective even if the ignition switch is in the “LOCK”/“OFF” or “ACC” position (all models) or the key is removed from the ignition switch (models without “keyless access with push-button start system”).

The open door is indicated by the corresponding part of the door open warning light.

Always make sure this light is out before you start to drive.

## ■ All-Wheel Drive warning light (CVT models) AWD

**⚠ CAUTION**

**Continuing to drive with the AWD warning light flashing can damage the powertrain. If the AWD warning light starts to flash, promptly park in a safe place and check whether the tires have differing diameters and whether any of the tires has an excessively low inflation pressure.**

### NOTE

**If the temporary spare tire is used, the AWD warning light may flash. Use of the temporary spare tire should therefore be limited to the minimum time necessary. Replace the temporary spare tire with a conventional tire as soon as possible.**

This light flashes if the vehicle is driven with tires of different diameters fitted on its wheels or with the air pressure excessively low in any of its tires.

## ■ Automatic headlight beam leveler warning light (models with LED headlights)

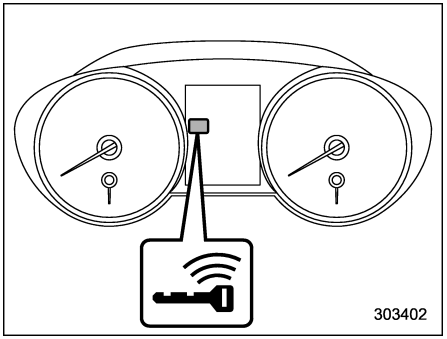
This light illuminates when the automatic headlight beam leveler does not operate normally.

If this light illuminates while driving or does not turn off approximately 3 seconds after turning the ignition switch to the “ON” position, we recommend that you have your vehicle inspected at your SUBARU dealer.

## ■ LED headlight warning light (models with LED headlights)

This light illuminates if the LED headlights malfunction. We recommend that you have your vehicle inspected at a SUBARU dealer as soon as possible.

## ■ Warning chimes and warning indicator of the keyless access with push-button start system (if equipped)




**Access key warning indicator**

The keyless access with push-button start system sounds a warning chime and the access key warning indicator appears on the combination meter in order to minimize improper operations and help protect your vehicle from theft.

When the warning chime sounds and/or the warning indicator appears, take the appropriate action.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Never drive the vehicle if the indicator on the push-button ignition**

*– CONTINUED –*

**switch is flashing in green when starting the engine. This indicates the status that the steering wheel is not released and could result in an accident involving serious injury or death.**

**⚠ CAUTION**

- **When starting the engine again after the operation indicator on the push-button ignition switch flashes in green, if the operation indicator is still flashing in green, there could be a steering lock malfunction. We recommend that you contact your SUBARU dealer as soon as possible.**
- **When the operation indicator on the push-button ignition switch flashes in orange, we recommend that you contact a SUBARU dealer immediately.**

## NOTE

- **When doors are not locked because the access key is left inside the trunk, you cannot open the trunk lid by pushing the trunk opener button on the trunk lid. Press the trunk lid opener switch for approximately 1 second to open the trunk lid. Refer to "To open the trunk lid from inside" ☞2-32.**
- **Do not leave the access key inside the trunk. Depending on the status of the access key and situation, the trunk lockout protect function may not operate. Make sure that you carry the access key, and close the trunk lid.**
- **Even when the access key is within the operating ranges inside the vehicle, the access key warning for engine start may be provided depending on the status of the access key and the environmental conditions.**
- **When the access key is taken out of the vehicle through an open window, the access key takeout warning or passenger access key takeout warning will not be provided.**

**▼ List of warnings**

**⚠ CAUTION**

**When any of the following warnings occur even if the access key warning indicator does not appear, take the appropriate action.**

| Inside warning chime | Outside warning chime | Access key warning indicator on meter | Operation indicator on push-button ignition switch | Status | Action |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Ding, ding ... (intermittent) | — | — | — | The driver's door was opened while the push-button ignition switch is "ACC" (in CVT models, when the select lever is in the "P" position). | Switch the push-button ignition switch to "OFF", or close the driver's door.<br>*When exiting the vehicle, be sure to switch the push-button ignition switch to "OFF". |
| | | | | The push-button ignition switch was switched to "OFF" while the driver's door is open. | Close the driver's door. |
| Ding | Short beep (2 seconds) | — | — | **Lockout warning:**<br>An attempt was made to lock all doors while the access key is left inside the vehicle. | Take out the access key from the vehicle, and lock the doors.<br>*The doors cannot be locked while the access key is inside the vehicle.<br>*A chirp sound will be heard, and all doors will be unlocked. |
| — | Short beep (2 seconds) | — | — | **Trunk lockout warning:**<br>The trunk was closed with the access key in it while all doors are locked (or during the automatic lock time period) (Sedan). | Take out the access key from the trunk, and close the trunk.<br>*By pressing the trunk opener button after this warning chime sounds, the trunk can be unlocked. |
| | | | | **Access key lock-in warning:**<br>The door lock sensor was touched while the push-button ignition switch is "OFF" and the access key is inside the vehicle. | Take out the access key from the vehicle, and lock the doors.<br>*If the access key is inside the vehicle, the doors cannot be locked. |
| Ding | Long beep (60 seconds max.) | — | — | **Power warning:**<br>The door lock sensor was touched while carrying the access key and the push-button ignition switch is in a position other than "OFF" (in CVT models, when the select lever is in the "P" position). | Return the access key inside the vehicle, or switch the push-button ignition switch to "OFF".<br>*If the push-button ignition switch is not switched to "OFF", the doors cannot be locked. |

***– CONTINUED –***

| Inside warning chime | Outside warning chime | Access key warning indicator on meter | Operation indicator on push-button ignition switch | Status | Action |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Ding, ding ... (7 seconds) | — |  (Flashes 1 sec. intermittent) | — | **Access key warning:** The vehicle was driven while the access key is not inside the vehicle. | Carry the access key, and drive the vehicle. |
| Ding | — |  (Flashes 1 sec. intermittent) | — | **Access key warning for engine start:** The push-button ignition switch was pressed while the access key is not inside the vehicle. | Carry the access key, and press the push-button ignition switch. |
| Ding | Beep, beep, beep (3 times) |  (Flashes 1 sec. intermittent) | — | **Access key takeout warning:** The driver exited the vehicle with the access key and closed the driver's door while the push-button ignition switch is in a position other than "OFF" (in CVT models, when the select lever is in the "P" position). | Switch the push-button ignition switch to "OFF", and get out of the vehicle. |
| Ding | Beep, beep, beep (3 times) |  (Flashes 1 sec. intermittent) | — | **Passenger access key takeout warning:** A fellow passenger exited the vehicle with the access key and closed a door other than the driver's door while the push-button ignition switch is in a position other than "OFF". | Return the access key to inside the vehicle, or switch the push-button ignition switch to "OFF". |
| Long beep (continuous) | Long beep (continuous) |  (Flashes 1 sec. intermittent) | — | **Access key takeout without P position warning (CVT models):** The driver exited the vehicle with the access key and closed the driver's door while the push-button ignition switch is in a position other than "OFF" and the select lever is in a position other than the "P" position. | Shift the select lever to the "P" position, switch the push-button ignition switch to "OFF" and exit the vehicle. |

| Inside warning chime | Outside warning chime | Access key warning indicator on meter | Operation indicator on push-button ignition switch | Status | Action |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Long beep (continuous) | — | — | — | **Select lever position warning:** The driver's door was opened while the push-button ignition switch is in a position other than "OFF" and the select lever is in a position other than the "P" position. | Shift the select lever to the "P" position, switch the push-button ignition switch to "OFF" and exit the vehicle. |
| Ding | — | — | — | The battery of the access key is low. | Replace the battery of the access key. |
| Ding | — | — | Flashes in green (15 seconds max.) | **Steering lock warning:** The engine start procedure was performed, but the steering is still locked. | While turning the steering wheel right and left lightly, depress the brake pedal and press the push-button ignition switch. |
| Ding | — | — | Flashes in orange (15 seconds max.) | **System malfunction warning:** A malfunction was detected in the power system or steering lock. | We recommend that you contact a SUBARU dealer immediately and have the vehicle inspected. |

***– CONTINUED –***

## ■ Immobilizer indicator light 

This light begins flashing under any of the following conditions.

**For models with "keyless access with push-button start system":**

- Immediately after the push-button ignition switch is turned to the "OFF" position.
- Immediately after the driver's door is opened or closed when all of the following conditions are met.
  - The push-button ignition switch is in the "ON" or "ACC" position.
  - The access key is outside the vehicle.
  - The engine is not running.

In the event that the push-button ignition switch is pressed to turn it on or to start the engine carrying an unauthorized key (for example, the key is unregistered or the ID code does not match), the power is not switched to "ON" and the immobilizer indicator light continues blinking.

**For models without "keyless access with push-button start system":**

- Approximately 60 seconds after the ignition switch is turned from the "ON" position to the "ACC" or "LOCK" position.
- Immediately after the key is pulled out.

If the indicator light does not blink in the above conditions, it may indicate that immobilizer system may be malfunctioning. We recommend that you contact your nearest SUBARU dealer immediately.

In the event that an unauthorized key (for example, an unauthorized duplicate) is used to start the engine, the immobilizer indicator light illuminates. For details about the immobilizer system, refer to "Immobilizer" ☞2-3.

### NOTE

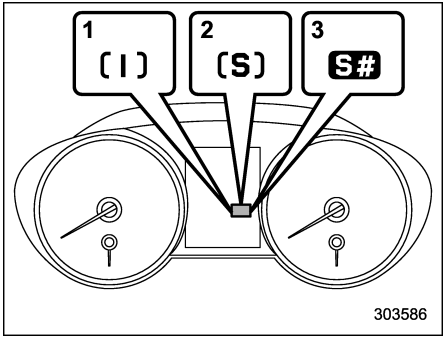
**• The immobilizer indicator light remains off in the following conditions. It means that the matching of the ID code is completed and the immobilizer system is deactivated, and it does not indicate a malfunction.**

**Models with "keyless access with push-button start system":**
**– while the engine is running**
**– the push-button ignition switch has been turned to the "ON" or "ACC" position and the driver's door has not been opened or closed**

**Models without "keyless access with push-button start system":**
**– while the engine is running**
**– for approximately 60 seconds after the ignition switch is turned from the "ON" position to the "ACC" or "LOCK" position**
**– when the ignition switch is in the "ON" position**

**• Even if a malfunction occurs, such as the immobilizer indicator light flashes irregularly, it will not affect the functionality of the immobilizer system.**

## ■ SI-DRIVE indicator light (petrol engine models)



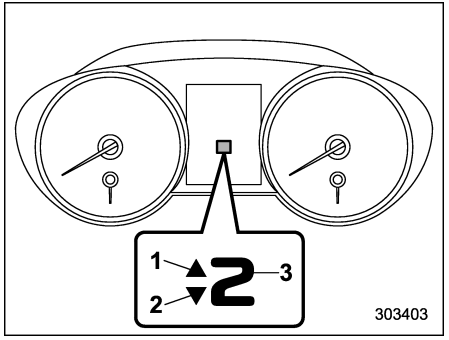

1) Intelligent (I) mode
2) Sport (S) mode
3) Sport Sharp (S#) mode (3.6 L models)

This light indicates the current SI-DRIVE mode.

For details of SI-DRIVE mode, refer to “SI-DRIVE (petrol engine models)” ☞7-22.

## ■ Select lever/gear position indicator

### ▼ CVT models




1) Upshift indicator
2) Downshift indicator
3) Select lever/gear position indicator

The select lever position is displayed on the combination meter. Also, when the manual mode is selected, the gear position indicator (which shows the current gear selection) and the upshift/downshift indicator light up. Refer to “Selection of manual mode” ☞7-20.

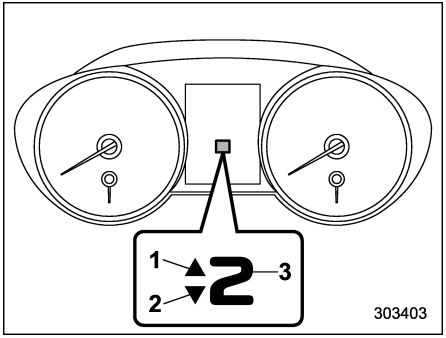
#### ▽ Gear shift indicator (if equipped)

When shifting up is recommended for good fuel economy, the upshift indicator blinks. When shifting down is recommended, the downshift indicator blinks.

### NOTE

**• The gear shift indicator cannot be deactivated.**
**• Usually, the gear shift indicator is guideline for driving more fuel-efficiency and it also may operate to prevent a possible engine stall at low engine speed.**
**• Also, the gear shift indicator operates to prevent engine damage at high engine speed.**

### ▼ MT models




1) Upshift indicator
2) Downshift indicator
3) Gear position indicator

The current gear selection is displayed on

– CONTINUED –

the gear position indicator.

While the diesel particulate filter warning light illuminates, the upshift indicator informs the driver about the best upshift timing for regeneration of the diesel particulate filter. Refer to “Diesel particulate filter warning indicator (diesel engine models)” ☞3-33.

The gear position indicator and upshift indicator can be activated or deactivated. Refer to “Gear Position Indicator Settings (MT models)” ☞3-45.

## NOTE

**It is not possible to change the setting of the gear position indicator/upshift indicator when the ignition switch is in the “ON” position. Change the setting when the ignition switch is in the “LOCK”/“OFF” or “ACC” position.**

**▽ Gear shift indicator (if equipped)**

When shifting up is recommended for good fuel economy, the upshift indicator blinks. When shifting down is recommended, the downshift indicator blinks.

## NOTE

- **The gear shift indicator cannot be deactivated.**
- **Usually, the gear shift indicator is guideline for driving more fuel-efficiency and it also may operate to prevent a possible engine stall at low engine speed.**
- **Also, the gear shift indicator operates to prevent engine damage at high engine speed.**

## ■ Turn signal indicator lights

These lights show the operation of the turn signal or lane change signal.

If the indicator lights do not blink or blink rapidly, the turn signal bulb may be burned out. Replace the bulb as soon as possible. Refer to “Front turn signal light” ☞11-51 or “Rear combination lights” ☞11-53.

## ■ High beam indicator light

This light shows that the headlights are in the high beam mode.

This indicator light also illuminates when the headlight flasher is operated.

## ■ Cruise control indicator

This indicator appears when the cruise control main button is pressed to activate the cruise control function.

**⚠ CAUTION**

**If the malfunction indicator light (Check Engine light) illuminates, the cruise control indicator flashes at the same time. At this time, do not drive at high speed. We recommend that you have your vehicle inspected at a SUBARU dealer as soon as possible.**

## NOTE

**If this indicator does not appear even when you press the cruise control main button, the cruise control system may not operate properly. We recommend that you have your vehicle checked by your nearest SUBARU dealer.**

## ■ Cruise control set indicator

This indicator appears when vehicle speed has been set to use the cruise control function.

## ■ Headlight indicator light

This indicator light illuminates under the following conditions.

- When the light switch is in the "≡D◁≡" or "≡D" position (except Australia models)
- When the light switch is in the "O" or "≡D" position (Australia models)
- When the light switch is in the "AUTO" position and the headlights illuminate automatically (models with auto on/off headlights)

## ■ Front fog light indicator light

This indicator light illuminates while the front fog lights are illuminated.

## ■ Rear fog light indicator light (if equipped)

This indicator light illuminates while the rear fog light is illuminated.

## ■ X-mode indicator (if equipped)

This indicator appears while the X-mode is activated. It will disappear when the X-mode is deactivated.

## ■ Hill descent control indicator (if equipped)

This indicator appears while the hill descent control function is in standby. It will flash while the hill descent control function is operating. It will disappear when the hill descent control function is not available.

## ■ Preheating indicator light (diesel engine models)

The preheating indicator light illuminates when the ignition switch is turned to the "ON" position and turns off after the engine has sufficiently preheated (a few seconds later).

### NOTE

**• When the weather is cold outside, the preheating indicator light remains illuminated a little longer than usual.**

**• For models without push-button start system, start the engine after the preheating indicator light has turned off.**

**• For models with push-button start system, the engine will not start until the preheating indicator light has turned off.**

## ■ Diesel particulate filter warning indicator (diesel engine models)

### ▼ When diesel particulate filter warning indicator appears

The diesel particulate filter warning indicator appears when the filter is not able to automatically burn the soot and the accumulated particulate matter exceeds the specified limit.

When the diesel particulate filter warning indicator appears, drive the vehicle under the following conditions after the engine has been warmed up completely.

- Engine speed (MT models only): 1,800 to 2,500 rpm
- Vehicle speed: 60 km/h (37 mph) or faster is preferred.
- Driving time for burn treatment: 15 minutes or more

### NOTE

**• Do not accelerate rapidly.**

**• For MT models with the gear shift indicator, accelerate the vehicle according to the upshift timing shown in the gear shift indicator. During regeneration of the diesel particulate filter, the gear shift indicator will prompt the driver to accelerate to the engine speed**

– CONTINUED –

**necessary for regeneration. For details about the gear shift indicator, refer to "Gear shift indicator (except Australia models)" ☞7-15.**

**• For MT models, if it is difficult to maintain all these conditions, maintaining at least the specified engine speed will have some effect for burning soot.**

Driving under these conditions will increase the inside temperature of the filter and burn the accumulated soot to eliminate it. The warning indicator disappears when the soot is eliminated.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Even if the diesel particulate filter warning indicator appears, continuing to drive does not damage the engine and diesel particulate filter immediately. Safely drive the vehicle according to all road laws and the traffic conditions. Otherwise, it may cause an accident or traffic violation.**

## NOTE

**While the soot is burning in the diesel particulate filter, the driveability, engine revolutions, engine sound and smell of emission gas may change.**

**▼ When diesel particulate filter warning indicator flashes**

When the diesel particulate filter warning indicator flashes, we recommend that you consult the nearest SUBARU dealer for an immediate inspection.

**⚠ CAUTION**

**If you continue to drive the vehicle while the diesel particulate filter warning indicator is on, the warning indicator will begin to flash. In this case, we recommend that you consult the nearest SUBARU dealer for an immediate inspection. Otherwise, the engine and diesel particulate filter may be damaged.**

## ■ Over-rev warning light (yellow) (MT diesel engine models)

If engine over-revving is likely to occur, a buzzer will sound and the over-rev warning light on the combination meter will flash in yellow. For more details, refer to "Over-rev warning" ☞7-16.

## ■ Auto Start Stop warning indicator/Auto Start Stop OFF indicator (yellow) (if equipped)

**▼ Auto Start Stop warning indicator**

**⚠ CAUTION**

- **If the Auto Start Stop warning indicator is flashing, there may be a malfunction in the Auto Start Stop system. We recommend that you have your vehicle inspected at a SUBARU authorized dealer as soon as possible.**
- **If the Auto Start Stop warning indicator appears at any time other than in the following cases, and will not disappear even if the Auto Start Stop OFF switch is pushed and held, we recommend that you have your vehicle inspected at a SUBARU dealer as soon as possible.**

The Auto Start Stop warning indicator will appear in yellow if the engine hood is opened when the engine has been temporarily stopped by the Auto Start Stop system.

In this case, to ensure safety, the engine will not be automatically restarted, even if the brake pedal is released. Use normal operation to restart the engine.

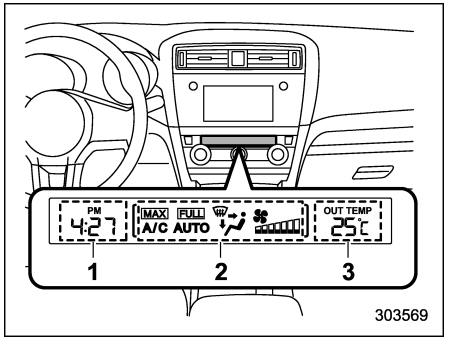
▼ **Auto Start Stop OFF indicator**

This indicator will appear in yellow when the Auto Start Stop OFF switch is pressed to prevent the Auto Start Stop system from operating. It will disappear when the Auto Start Stop OFF switch is pressed once more to enable operation of the Auto Start Stop system.

## ■ Auto Start Stop indicator (green) (if equipped)

This indicator appears in green when the engine has been temporarily stopped by the Auto Start Stop system. It will disappear when the engine is restarted.

## Information display

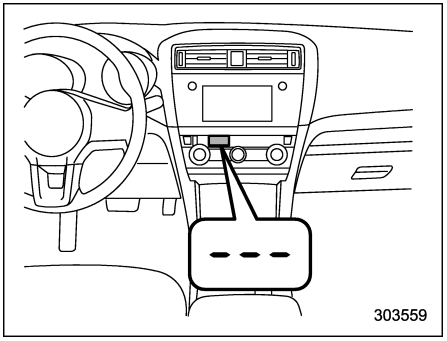



1) Clock
2) Climate control mode indicators
3) Outside temperature indicator

With the ignition switch in the “ON” position, the following items are shown on the information display.

- Clock
- Climate control mode indicators
- Outside temperature indicator

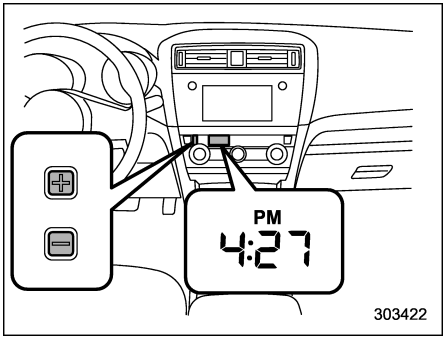
## ■ Clock




### NOTE

**Your SUBARU dealer can change the settings of activating/deactivating the automatic adjustment of the clock by the GPS (Global Positioning System) (for models with the genuine SUBARU navigation system). While the automatic adjustment is activated, you cannot adjust the time shown on the clock manually. If you press the “+” button or “-” button, the “---” indication will be displayed to inform you that you cannot adjust it manually. We recommend that you contact your SUBARU dealer for details.**

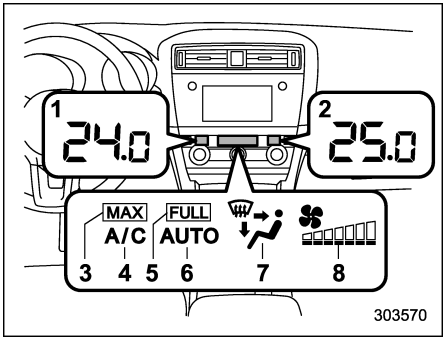
– CONTINUED –




The clock shows the time while the ignition switch is in the “ACC” or “ON” position.

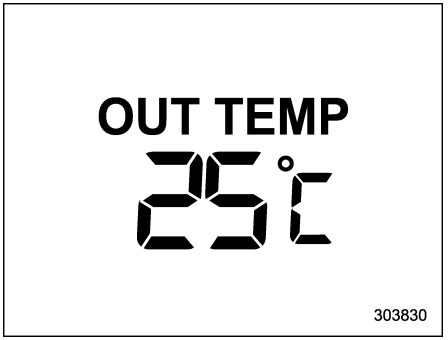
To adjust the time shown by the clock, press the “+” button or the “−” button. If you press the “+” button, the indicated time will change in one-minute increments. If you press the “−” button, the indicated time will change in one-minute decrements. If you keep the button pressed, the rate at which the indicated time changes will speed up.

## ■ Climate control mode indicators




1) Set temperature indicator (left-hand side)
2) Set temperature indicator (right-hand side)
3) Maximum air conditioner ON indicator
4) Air conditioner ON indicator
5) FULL AUTO indicator
6) AUTO indicator
7) Airflow mode indicator
8) Fan speed indicator

## ■ Outside temperature indicator




The outside temperature indicator shows the outside temperature in a range from −30 to 50°C (−22 to 122°F).

The indicator can give a false reading under any of the following conditions:

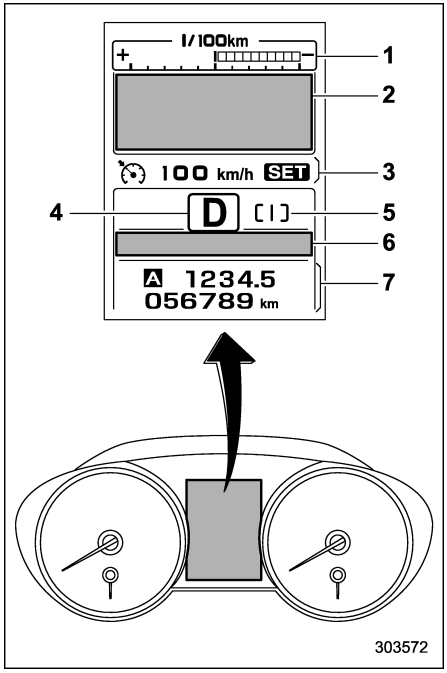
- When there is too much sun.
- During idling; while running at low speeds in a traffic jam; when the engine is restarted immediately following a shutdown.
- When the actual outside temperature falls outside the specified indicator range.

## Multi information display

**WARNING**

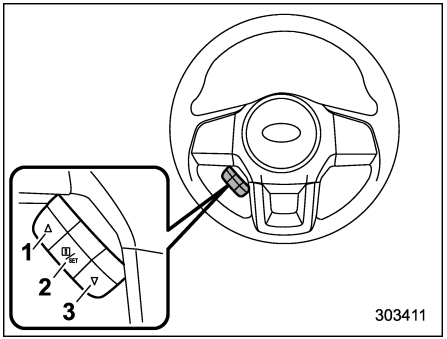
**Always pay adequate attention to safe driving when operating the multi information display while the vehicle is in motion. When operation of the multi information display interferes with your ability to concentrate on driving, stop the vehicle before performing operations on the screen. Also, do not concentrate on the display while driving. Doing so may cause you to look away from the road and could result in an accident.**

Various information will be shown on the multi information display. Also, a warning message will appear on the display if a malfunction, etc. is detected. In addition, several settings for the displayed content can be performed.




**Multi information display**

1) ECO gauge (refer to “ECO gauge” ☞3-12.)
2) Basic screen (refer to “Basic screens” ☞3-39.)
3) Cruise control information display
4) Select lever/gear position indicator (refer to “Select lever/gear position indicator” ☞3-31.)
5) SI-DRIVE indicator (refer to “SI-DRIVE indicator light (petrol engine models)” ☞3-31.)
6) Warning and indicator screen (refer to “Warning screen” ☞3-38.)
7) Odometer (refer to “Odometer” ☞3-9.)/ double trip meter (refer to “Double trip meter” ☞3-9.)




**Control switch**

1) Up (select)
2) Set (enter)
3) Down (select)

## NOTE

**When the vehicle is in motion, certain functions and selections may not be available.**

– CONTINUED –

## ■ Basic operation

By operating "▲" or "▼" of the control switch, the screens and selection items can be switched. When the "i/SET" switch is pulled toward you, the item can be selected and set.

If there are some useful messages, such as vehicle information, warning information, etc., they will interrupt the current screen, and appear on the display accompanied by a beep. If such a screen is displayed, take proper action according to the message shown on the screen.

The warning screen will return to the original screen after a few seconds. While the "i" information reminder is on the display, it may be possible to display the warning screen again. To recall the message marked with "i" on the display, pull the "i/SET" switch on the steering wheel toward you.

## ■ Welcome screen and Good-bye screen

When the driver's door is opened and closed after unlocking the door, the welcome screen will appear on the multi information display for approximately 20 seconds.

When the ignition switch is turned to the "LOCK"/"OFF" position, the multi information display gradually turns off (Good-bye screen).

### NOTE

**• The basic screen will be shown when the ignition switch is turned to the "ON" position while the welcome screen is displayed.**

**• Once the welcome screen appears, it takes a certain period of time to display it again.**

**• If the ignition switch is operated after unlocking the driver's door, the welcome screen will not appear even when the driver's door is opened and closed.**

**• The welcome screen will disappear when you lock the driver's door by using the remote keyless entry system (all models) or the keyless access function (if equipped) while the welcome screen is displayed.**

**• If any of the doors (including the rear gate) is opened while the welcome screen is displayed, the door ajar warning will appear.**

**• The welcome screen can be set to on or off. For details, refer to "Welcome Screen" ☞3-45.**

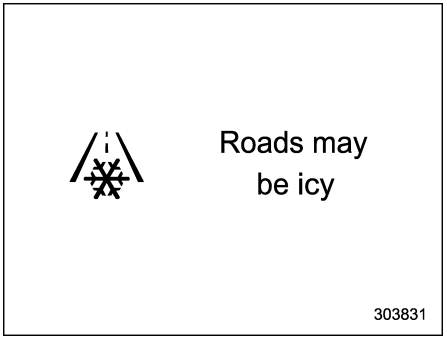
**• The Good-bye screen can be set to on or off. For details, refer to "Good-bye Screen" ☞3-45.**

## ■ Warning screen




**Example of warning**

If there is a warning message or a maintenance notification, it will appear for approximately 5 seconds. Take the appropriate actions based on the messages indicated.




**Icy road surface warning screen**

When the outside temperature becomes 3°C (37°F) or less, the icy road surface warning screen interrupts to inform the driver that the road surface may be frozen.

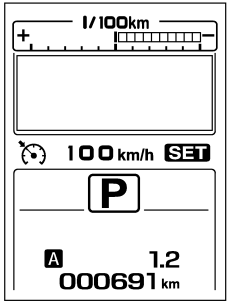
## NOTE

**• The outside temperature indicator shows the temperature around the sensor. Therefore, the temperature indication may differ from the actual outside air temperature.**
**• The icy road surface warning screen should be treated only as a guide. Be sure to check the condition of the road surface before driving.**
**• Once the icy road surface warning screen appears, it will not disappear unless the outside temperature has increased to 5°C (41°F) or higher.**

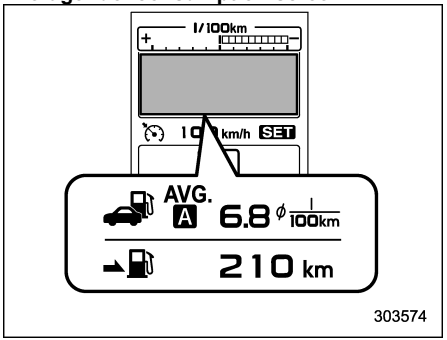
## ■ Basic screens

By operating the "▲" or "▼" switch on the steering wheel, you can change the screen that is always displayed.

**Default screen:**



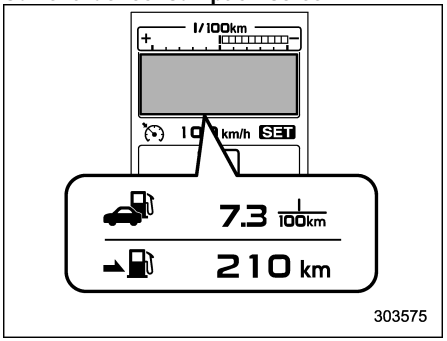

**Average fuel consumption screen:**




: Fuel consumption
: Driving range on remaining fuel
This screen displays the average rate of fuel consumption since the trip meter was last reset.

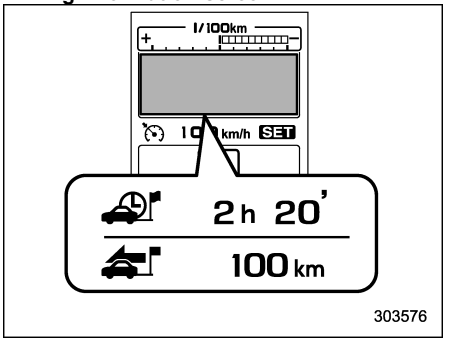
– CONTINUED –

**Current fuel consumption screen:**



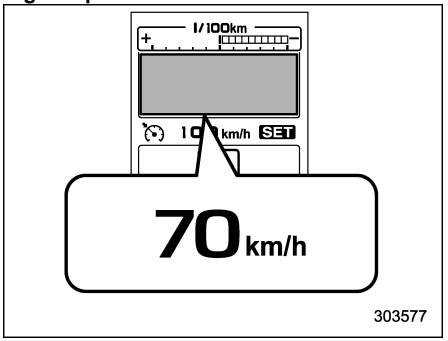

: Fuel consumption
: Driving range on remaining fuel
This screen displays the rate of fuel consumption at the present moment.

**Driving information screen:**



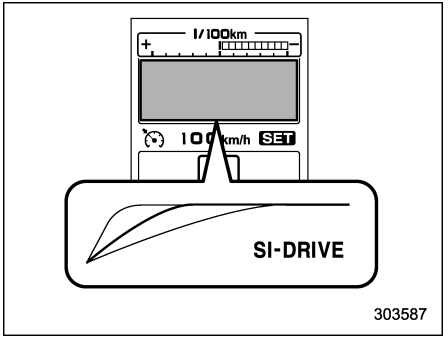

: Journey time
: Journey distance
This screen displays the journey time (the time that has elapsed since the ignition switch was turned to the "ON" position) and journey distance (the distance that has been driven since the ignition switch was turned to the "ON" position).

**Digital speed screen:**



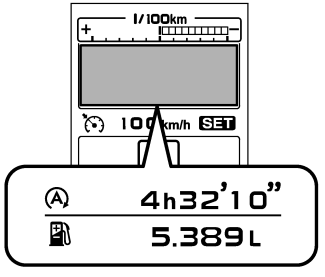

This screen displays the current vehicle speed.

**SI-DRIVE mode screen:**




This screen indicates the current SI-DRIVE mode with its throttle angle.

**Auto Start Stop screen (if equipped):**




Ⓐ: The total amount of time that the engine was stopped by means of the Auto Start Stop system

⛽: The total amount of fuel saved due to the engine being stopped by the Auto Start Stop system

The indicated values are calculated from the most recent reset of the currently displayed trip meter to the current time. The indication ranges are as follows.

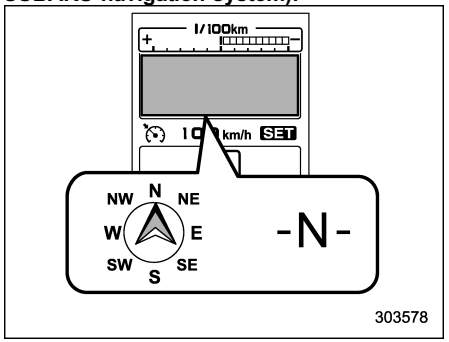
- Total amount of time: from 00'00" to 9999h59'59"
- Total amount of fuel saved: from 0 ml to 9999.999 L

## NOTE

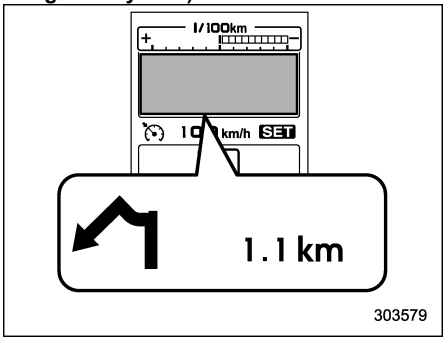
**• When the trip meter is reset, the corresponding accumulated time and the amount of fuel saving are also reset.**

**• The time spent with the engine stopped by means of the Auto Start Stop system is also added to the journey time.**

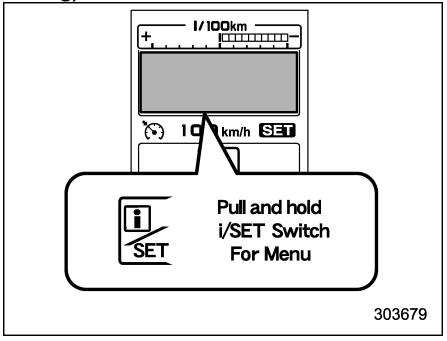
**Multi Media Link screen (while not selecting the destination) (models with genuine SUBARU navigation system):**




**Multi Media Link screen (while selecting the destination) (models with genuine SUBARU navigation system):**




**Menu screen entering screen (except while driving):**




While this screen is selected, pull the "i/SET" switch to enter the menu screen.

– CONTINUED –

## ■ Menu screens

Pull and hold the "[i]/SET" switch to enter the menu screens when all of the following conditions are satisfied.

- The vehicle has been completely stopped.
- The select lever is in the "P" position (CVT models).
- The menu screen entering screen is selected.

By operating the "▲" or "▼" switch on the steering wheel, you can select the menu. Pull the "[i]/SET" switch to enter the selected menu.

### NOTE

**If you enter the "Go Back" menu, the system will return to the previous screen.**

The menu list is as follows.

| First menu | Second menu | Third menu | Settings |
|---|---|---|---|
| Screen Settings | Welcome Screen | — | • ON (with sound)<br>• ON (without sound)<br>• OFF |
| | Good-bye Screen | — | ON/OFF |
| | Gauge Initial Movement | — | ON/OFF |
| | Gear Position Indicator Settings (MT models) | — | ON/OFF |
| | Units (U.K. models) | — | • Km, km/h, Liter<br>• miles, MPH, Gallon |
| | Languages | — | The selectable languages will differ depending on the models. |
| Combination Meter Illumination (if equipped) | Meter Ring Illumination | — | ON/OFF |
| | SI-DRIVE Indication | — | ON/OFF |
| | Manual Mode Indication | — | ON/OFF |
| | Illumination Color Selection | — | No. 1 to No. 10 |
| EyeSight (models with EyeSight system) | Warning Volume | — | Max/Mid/Min |
| | Lead Vehicle Acquisition Sound | — | ON/OFF |
| | Lead Vehicle Moving Monitor Function | — | ON/OFF |
| | Vehicle Icon | — | ON/OFF |

– CONTINUED –

| First menu | Second menu | Third menu | Settings |
|---|---|---|---|
| Vehicle Setting | Keyless Entry System | Audible Signal | ON/OFF |
| | | Hazard Warning Flasher | ON/OFF |
| | | Security Relocking | 20 seconds – 60 seconds, OFF |
| | | Driver Door Unlock | Driver Door Only/All |
| | | Rear Gate/Trunk Unlock | Rear Gate/Trunk Only/All |
| | Defogger | — | 15 minutes/Continuous |
| | Interior Light | — | 10 seconds – 30 seconds, OFF |
| Default Settings | OK To Reset? | — | Yes/No |

### ▼ Screen Settings

After entering the “Screen Settings” menu, select one of the following menus.

#### ▽ Welcome Screen

The welcome screen can be activated or deactivated. Select “On (with Sound)” to activate the screen and sound. Select “On (without Sound)” to activate the screen and deactivate the sound. Select “Off” to deactivate the screen.

#### ▽ Good-bye Screen

The Good-bye screen can be activated or deactivated. Select “On” to activate the screen. Select “Off” to deactivate the screen.

#### ▽ Gauge Initial Movement

The movement of the meter needles and gauge needles that occurs when the ignition switch is turned to the “ON” position can be activated or deactivated. Select “On” to activate. Select “Off” to deactivate.

#### ▽ Gear Position Indicator Settings (MT models)

The gear position indicator light can be activated or deactivated. Select “On” to activate. Select “Off” to deactivate.

#### ▽ Units (U.K. models)

You can select the displayed units of the distance, vehicle speed and volume. Operate the “▲” or “▼” switch on the steering wheel to display the preferred units. Then pull the “i/SET” switch to select the displayed units.

#### ▽ Languages

Operate the “▲” or “▼” switch on the steering wheel to display the preferred language. Then pull the “i/SET” switch to select the displayed language.

### ▼ Combination Meter Illumination (if equipped)

After entering the “Combination Meter Illumination” menu, select the following menu.

#### ▽ Meter Ring Illumination

The illumination of the combination meter rings can be activated or deactivated. Select “On” to activate the illumination. Select “Off” to deactivate the illumination.

#### ▽ SI-DRIVE Indication

You can activate or deactivate the indication of the SI-DRIVE mode. Select “On” to activate the indication. Select “Off” to deactivate the indication.

#### ▽ Manual Mode Indication

You can activate or deactivate the gear position indicator. Select “On” to activate the indication. Select “Off” to deactivate the indication.

#### ▽ Illumination Color Selection

You can change the illumination color of the combination meter. Select the preferred color (No. 1 to No. 10).

### ▼ EyeSight (models with EyeSight system)

## NOTE

**For models with the EyeSight system, refer to the Owner’s Manual supplement for the EyeSight system.**

After entering the “EyeSight” menu, select one of the following menus.

#### ▽ Warning Volume

The volume of the warning buzzer that sounds when the EyeSight system is in use can be set in 3 stages (“Max”, “Mid” and “Min”).

#### ▽ Lead Vehicle Acquisition Sound

When adaptive cruise control is used, the buzzer that sounds under any of the following conditions can be activated or deactivated.

- A vehicle is detected in front

– CONTINUED –

- Detection is not possible

Select “On” to activate the buzzer. Select “Off” to deactivate the buzzer.

▽ **Lead Vehicle Moving Monitor Function**

When adaptive cruise control is used, the buzzer that sounds if a vehicle in front has started can be activated or deactivated. Select “On” to activate the buzzer. Select “Off” to deactivate the buzzer.

▽ **Vehicle Icon**

The vehicle icon indication can be activated or deactivated. Select “On” to activate. Select “Off” to deactivate.

▼ **Vehicle Setting**

After entering the “Vehicle Setting” menu, select one of the following menus.

▽ **Keyless Entry System**

You can change some of the settings of the remote keyless entry system (all models) and keyless access with push-button start system (if equipped).

After entering the “Keyless Entry System” menu, select one of the following menus.

- **Audible Signal:**

The audible signal can be activated or deactivated. Select “On” to activate. Select “Off” to deactivate.

- **Hazard Warning Flasher:**

The hazard warning flasher operation can be activated or deactivated. Select “On” to activate. Select “Off” to deactivate.

- **Security Relocking:**

The automatic locking operation period can be set or customized. Select the preferred seconds to customize the operation period. Select “Off” to deactivate the operation.

- **Driver Door Unlock:**

The door unlock selection function for the driver’s door can be activated or deactivated. Select “On” to activate. Select “Off” to deactivate.

- **Rear Gate/Trunk Unlock:**

The door unlock selection function for the rear gate/trunk can be activated or deactivated. Select “On” to activate. Select “Off” to deactivate.

▽ **Defogger**

The defogger and deicer system can be set for the continuous operation mode or automatic shut-off mode. Select “Continuous” to select the continuous operation mode. Select “15 minutes” to select the automatic shut-off mode.

▽ **Interior Light**

The setting for the period of time in which the interior lights remain on (OFF delay timer) after closing the doors and/or the rear gate can be set or customized. Select the preferred seconds to customize the operation period. Select “Off” to deactivate the OFF delay timer.

▽ **Auto Light Sensor**

The operational sensitivity of the auto on/off headlights can be set. You can select “Max”, “Mid”, “Low” or “Min”.

▼ **Default Settings**

Select “Yes” to use the menu screen to restore customized settings to the factory default settings. Select “No” to return to the previous screen without restoring to the factory default settings.

## Light control switch

**⚠ CAUTION**

- **Use of any lights for a long period of time while the engine is not running can cause the battery to discharge.**
- **Before leaving the vehicle, make sure that the light control switch is in the off position. If the vehicle is left unattended for a long time with the light control switch set to a position other than the off position, the battery may be discharged.**

**Models with "keyless access with push-button start system":**

The light control switch operates when the push-button ignition switch is in the "ACC" or "ON" position.

Regardless of the position of the light control switch, the illuminated lights are turned off when the push-button ignition switch is turned off.

**Models without "keyless access with push-button start system":**

The light control switch operates when the key is inserted in the ignition switch.

Regardless of the position of the light control switch, the illuminated lights are turned off when the key is removed from the ignition switch.

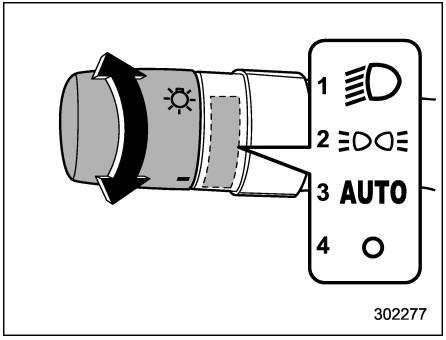
### NOTE

**The light control switch can be operated (except auto on/off headlights), even under the following conditions.**

- **when the key is not inserted into the ignition switch (models without "keyless access with push-button start system")**
- **when the push-button ignition switch is turned off (models with "keyless access with push-button start system")**

**If the driver's door is opened while the headlights are illuminated under such conditions, a chirp sound will inform the driver that the lights are illuminated.**

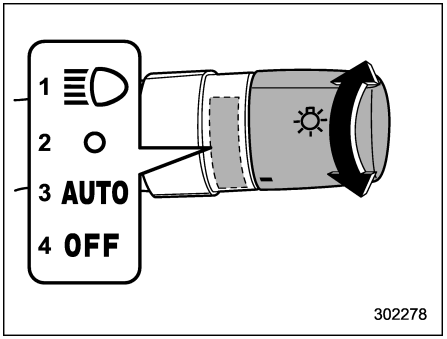
### ■ Headlights




**Except Australia models**

1) Second position
2) First position
3) Auto position (if equipped)
4) Off position

– CONTINUED –




**Australia models**
1) Second position
2) First position
3) Auto position (if equipped)
4) Off position

To turn on the headlights, turn the knob on the end of the turn signal lever.

**Second position:**
Headlights, front position lights, instrument panel illumination, tail lights and license plate lights are on.

**First position:**
Front position lights, instrument panel illumination, tail lights and license plate lights are on.

**Auto position (if equipped):**
When the ignition switch is in the "ON" position, the headlights, front position lights, instrument panel illumination, tail lights and license plate lights are **automatically on or off** depending on the level of the ambient light.

In this position, the headlight will automatically turn on when the windshield wipers operate nine times or more. The headlight will automatically turn off when the wiper stops.

The amount of wiper operation is counted after the wiper is activated, with wiper movement within 10 seconds after activation. The amount of wiper operation is reset if the wiper operation is stopped for over 10 seconds. The operational/non-operational setting of the linked wiper operation and headlight illumination can be changed by your SUBARU dealer. For details, we recommend that you contact your SUBARU dealer.

**Off position:**
The headlights are all off.

## NOTE

**• The sensitivity of the auto on/off headlights can be changed by your SUBARU dealer. We recommend that you contact your SUBARU dealer for details.**
**• If the vehicle passes through a tunnel with its headlights illuminated in the linked operation with the wipers, the headlights will continue to be illuminated for approximately 20 seconds even after coming out from the tunnel. If the light control switch is set to a position other than "AUTO", the headlights will turn on or off in accordance with the corresponding position of the light control switch.**

### ▼ Headlight off delay setting

The headlight off delay function turns on the headlights, etc. for smooth exiting from the vehicle at night or in a dark place.

## NOTE

**The factory setting (default setting) of the operation duration of the headlights and the exterior lights is 30 seconds. This setting can be changed to OFF (no operation), 30 seconds, 60 seconds, or 90 seconds at SUBARU dealers. For more details, we recommend that you contact a SUBARU dealer.**

When the ignition switch is turned off and the light control switch is in the "AUTO" (if equipped) or "OFF" position, if you pull the turn signal lever toward you, the headlight low beams and some exterior lights will illuminate.

The headlights and exterior lights will turn

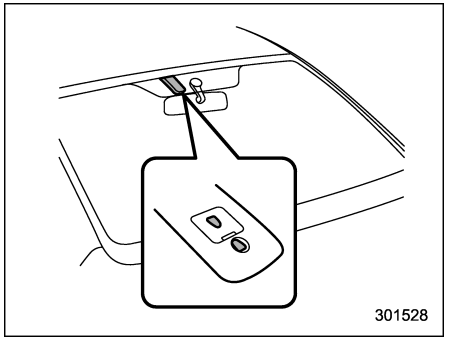
off when any of the following conditions occur.

- 30 seconds have passed since the driver's door was closed.
- You press the lock button on the access key/transmitter two times successively.
- You touch the door lock sensor on the door handle two times successively (models with "keyless access with push-button start system").

## NOTE

- **While the headlight off delay function is operating, if you perform any of the following operation, the headlights and exterior lights will turn off.**
  - **– Turn the ignition switch to the "ON" position.**
  - **– Pull the turn signal lever toward you.**
  - **– Set the light control switch to a position other than the "AUTO" or "OFF" position.**
- **If the driver's door is not opened and closed, these lights will turn off in 3 minutes.**

### ▼ Sensor of the auto on/off headlights (if equipped)

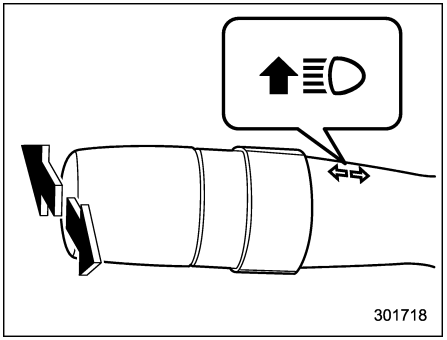



The sensor is on the windshield glass as shown in the illustration.

**⚠ CAUTION**

**If any object is attached on or near the sensor, the sensor may not detect the level of the ambient light correctly and the auto on/off headlights may not operate properly.**

## ■ High/low beam change (dimmer)

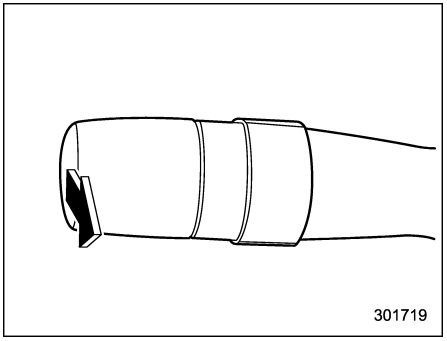



To change from low beam to high beam, push the turn signal lever forward. When the headlights are on high beam, the high beam indicator light "≡D" on the combination meter also illuminates.

To switch back to low beam, pull the lever back to the center position.

– CONTINUED –

## ■ Headlight flasher




**⚠ CAUTION**

**Do not hold the lever in the flashing position for more than just a few seconds.**

To flash the headlights, pull the lever toward you and then release it. The high beam will remain on for as long as you hold the lever. The headlight flasher works even though the light switch is in the off position.

When the headlights are on high beam, the high beam indicator light "≣D" on the combination meter also illuminates.

## ■ Daytime running light system (if equipped)

**⚠ WARNING**

**The light switch must always be turned to the "≣D" position when it is dark outside.**

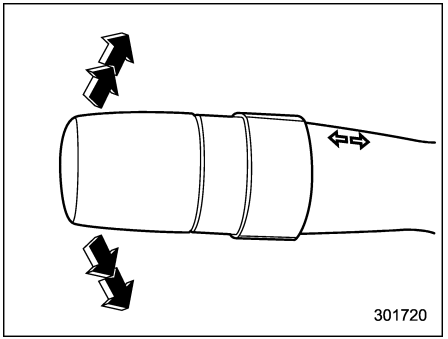
The daytime running light will automatically illuminate at reduced brightness when the following conditions are fulfilled.

- The engine is running.
- The light control switch is in the "AUTO" (if equipped) or off position.

### NOTE

- **If the parking brake is applied when you start the engine, the daytime running light will illuminate when the parking brake is released.**
- **When the headlight switch is in the "≣DOG≣" or "≣D" position, the daytime running light system is deactivated.**
- **For models with the auto on/off headlights, while the headlight switch is in the "AUTO" position and the headlights turn on automatically, the daytime running light is deactivated.**

## Turn signal lever




To activate the right turn signal, push the turn signal lever up. To activate the left turn signal, push the turn signal lever down. When the turn is finished, the lever will return automatically. If the lever does not return after cornering, return the lever to the neutral position by hand.

To signal a lane change, push the turn signal lever up or down slightly and hold it during the lane change. The turn signal indicator lights will flash in the direction of the turn or lane change. The lever will return automatically to the neutral position when you release it.

## NOTE

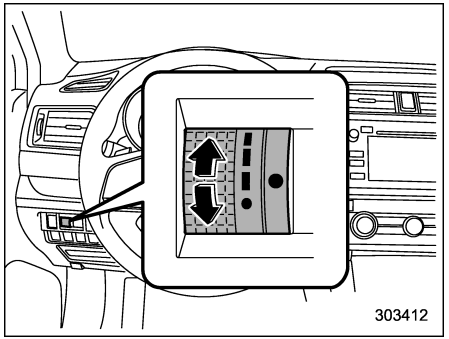
**For models with a turn signal lever equipped on the right side of the steering wheel, the pushing direction of the turn signal lever is the opposite of that described here.**

### ■ One-touch lane changer

To flash the turn signal and turn signal indicator light three times, push the turn signal lever up or down slightly and immediately release it.

The operational/non-operational setting of the one-touch lane changer's can be changed by a SUBARU dealer. We recommend that you contact the nearest SUBARU dealer for details.

## Illumination brightness control




The illumination brightness of the clock display, audio, air conditioner, multi function display and meter/gauge dims under the following conditions.

- when the light switch is in the "≡DC≡" or "≡D" position (except Australia models)
- when the light switch is in the "O" or "≡D" position (Australia models)
- when the light switch is in the "AUTO" position and the headlights illuminate automatically (models with auto on/off headlights)

You can adjust the illumination brightness for better visibility.

To brighten, turn the control dial upward.

To darken, turn the control dial downward.

## NOTE

- **When the control dial is turned fully upward, the illumination brightness becomes the maximum and the automatic dimming function does not work at all.**
- **The brightness setting is not canceled even when the ignition switch is turned to the "LOCK"/"OFF" position.**

### ■ Auto dimmer cancel function

When the ambient light is bright, the illumination brightness is set to the maximum regardless of the position of the control dial. In this case, you cannot adjust the illumination brightness by using the control dial. When the ambient light is dark, you can dim the illumination brightness as described above.

The operational/non-operational setting and sensitivity of the auto dimmer cancel function can be changed by your SUBARU dealer. We recommend that you contact your SUBARU dealer for details.

## Headlight beam leveler (if equipped)

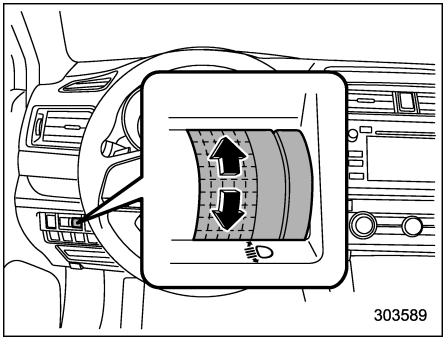
### ■ Automatic headlight beam leveler (models with LED headlights)

The LED headlights generate more light than conventional halogen headlights.

Therefore a driver of an oncoming vehicle may experience too much glare when your headlight beam height adjustment is high due to the vehicle carrying heavy load.

The automatic headlight beam leveler adjusts the headlight beam height automatically and optimally according to the load being carried by the vehicle.

### ■ Manual headlight beam leveler (models without LED headlights, if equipped)




Adjust the headlight beam level with the following dial positions according to the number of passengers and load condition.

**Sedan:**

| Dial position | Number of front seat occupants | Number of rear seat occupants | Load in the luggage compartment area | Trailer towing |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 0 | 1 or 2 | 0 | No load | No |
| 1 | 2 | 3 | No load | No |
| 2 | 1 | 0 | Full load* | No |
| | 2 | 3 | Full load* | No |
| | 2 | 3 | Full load* | Yes |
| 3 | 1 | 0 | Full load* | Yes |
| 4 | Not applicable | Not applicable | Not applicable | Not applicable |
| 5 | Not applicable | Not applicable | Not applicable | Not applicable |

*: Up to the maximum permissible weight

– CONTINUED –

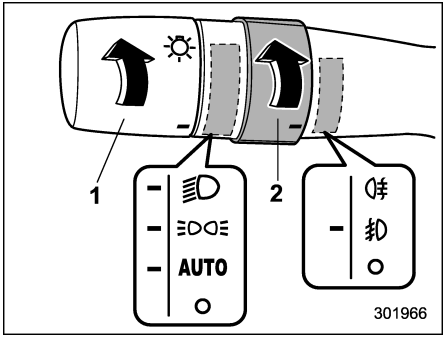
**Outback:**

| Dial position | Number of front seat occupants | Number of rear seat occupants | Load in the luggage compartment area | Trailer towing |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 0 | 1 or 2 | 0 | No load | No |
| 1 | 2 | 3 | No load | No |
| | 2 | 3 | Full load* | No |
| 2 | 2 | 3 | Full load* | Yes |
| | 1 | 0 | Full load* | No |
| 3 | 1 | 0 | Full load* | Yes |
| 4 | Not applicable | Not applicable | Not applicable | Not applicable |
| 5 | Not applicable | Not applicable | Not applicable | Not applicable |

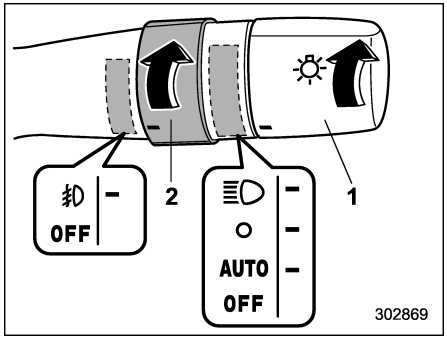
*: Up to the maximum permissible weight

## Fog light switch

### ■ Front fog light switch




**Front fog light operating condition (except Australia models)**
1) Headlight switch
2) Fog light switch



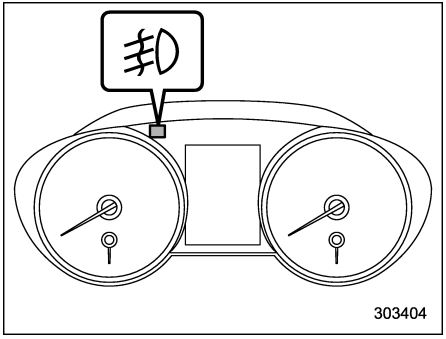

**Front fog light operating condition (Australia models)**
1) Headlight switch
2) Fog light switch

The front fog lights will turn on when the fog light switch is placed in the "⫤D" position while the headlights are in either of the following conditions.

- when the headlight switch is in the "≡DC≡" or "≡D" position (except Australia models)
- when the headlight switch is in the "O" or "≡D" position (Australia models)
- for models with the auto on/off headlights, while the headlight switch is in the "AUTO" position and the headlights turn on automatically

To turn off the front fog lights, turn the switch back down to the following positions.

- "O" position (except Australia models)
- "OFF" position (Australia models)

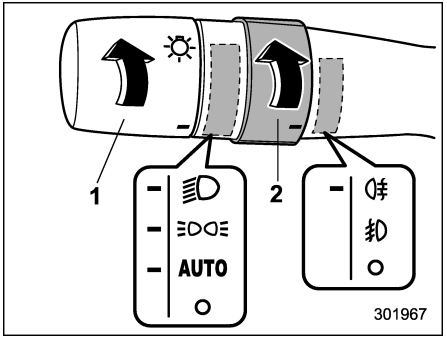



**Indicator light**

The indicator light on the combination meter will illuminate when the front fog lights are illuminated.

– CONTINUED –

## ■ Rear fog light switch (if equipped)



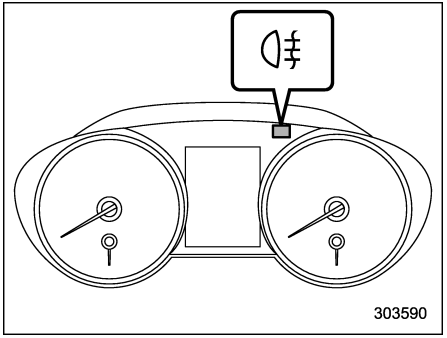

**Rear fog light operating condition**
1) Headlight switch
2) Fog light switch

The rear fog light will turn on when the fog light switch is turned to the "⫤D" position while the headlights are in either of the following conditions.

- while the headlight switch is in the "≡D" position
- for models with the auto on/off headlights, while the headlight switch is in the "AUTO" position and the headlights turn on automatically

The switch will return to the "⫤D" position when released.

To turn off the rear fog light, either turn the switch upward back to the "⫤D" position or turn it downward to the "O" position.




**Indicator light**

The indicator light on the combination meter will illuminate when the rear fog light is illuminated.

### NOTE

**To prevent switching off the rear fog light from being forgotten, the rear fog light circuit is designed so that it turns off whenever one of the following operations is performed.**

- **The headlight switch is set to either the "≡DOE" or "O" position.**
- **The headlight switch is set to the "AUTO" position and the headlights turn off (models with auto on/off headlights).**
- **The key is removed from the ignition switch (models without the "keyless access with push-button start system").**
- **The push-button ignition switch is turned off (models with the "keyless access with push-button start system").**

**However, this does not mean that the rear fog light illuminates when the headlight switch is set to the "≡D" position or the ignition switch is turned to the "ON" position again. So, if you want to turn the rear fog light on again, turn the fog light switch to the "⫤D" position.**

## Wiper and washer

**⚠ WARNING**

**In freezing weather, do not use the windshield washer until the windshield is sufficiently warmed by the defroster.**

**Otherwise the washer fluid can freeze on the windshield, blocking your view.**

**⚠ CAUTION**

- **Do not operate the washer continuously for more than 10 seconds, or when the washer fluid tank is empty. This may cause overheating of the washer motor. Check the washer fluid level frequently, such as at fuel stops.**
- **Do not operate the wipers when the windshield or rear window is dry. This may scratch the glass, damage the wiper blades and might cause the wiper motor to fail. Before operating the wiper on a dry windshield or rear window, always use the windshield washer.**
- **In freezing weather, be sure that the wiper blades are not frozen to the windshield or rear window before switching on the wipers. Attempting to operate the wiper with the blades frozen to the window glass could cause not only the wiper blades to be damaged but also might cause the wiper motor to fail. If the wiper blades are frozen to the window glass, be sure to operate the defroster, windshield wiper deicer (if equipped) or rear window defogger before turning on the wiper.**
- **If the wipers stop during operation because of ice or some other obstruction on the window, this might cause the wiper motor to fail even if the wiper switch is turned off. If this occurs, promptly stop the vehicle in a safe place, turn the ignition switch to the "LOCK"/"OFF" position and clean the window glass to allow proper wiper operation.**
- **Use clean water if windshield washer fluid is unavailable. In areas where water freezes in winter, use SUBARU Windshield Washer Fluid or the equivalent. Refer to "Windshield washer fluid" ☞11-41.**

  **Also, when driving the vehicle when there are freezing temperatures, use non-freezing type wiper blades.**
- **Do not clean the wiper blades with fuel or a solvent, such as paint thinner or benzine. This will cause deterioration of the wiper blades.**

**⚠ CAUTION**

**For models with automatic rain sensing windshield wipers:**

- **When the wiper switch is in the "AUTO" position, do not touch the windshield near the rain sensor and do not place a wet cloth on the windshield near the rain sensor. Doing so may result in unexpected wiper operation and cause injury.**
- **When washing the vehicle, make sure that the wiper is turned off. Otherwise, the wipers may operate unexpectedly and cause injury.**

– CONTINUED –

- When having your vehicle washed in an automatic car wash, make sure that the wiper is turned off. Otherwise, the wipers may be damaged because they may operate unexpectedly and car wash brushes could become tangled around them.

## NOTE

- The windshield wiper motor is protected against overloads by a circuit breaker. If the motor operates continuously under an unusually heavy load, the circuit breaker may trip to stop the motor temporarily. If this happens, park your vehicle in a safe place, turn off the wiper switch, and wait for approximately 10 minutes. The circuit breaker will reset itself, and the wipers will again operate normally.
- Clean your wiper blades and window glass periodically with a washer solution to prevent streaking, and to remove accumulations of road salt or road film. Operate the windshield washer for at least 1 second so that washer solution will be sprinkled all over the windshield or rear window.
- Grease, wax, insects or other material on the windshield or the wiper blade results in jerky wiper operation and streaking on the glass. If you cannot remove those streaks after operating the washer or if the wiper operation is jerky, clean the outer surface of the windshield or rear window and the wiper blades using a sponge or soft cloth with a neutral detergent or mild abrasive cleaner. After cleaning, rinse the window glass and wiper blades with clean water. The glass is clean if no beads form on the glass when you rinse with water.
- If you cannot eliminate the streaking even after following this procedure, replace the wiper blades with new ones. For replacement instructions, refer to "Replacement of wiper blades" ☞11-42.

## NOTE

For models with automatic rain sensing windshield wipers:

- When the wiper switch is turned to the "AUTO" position while the ignition switch is in the "ON" position, the wipers will operate once. This indicates that the wiper switch is in the "AUTO" position.
- When the wiper switch is in the "AUTO" position, the following situations may occur.
  – The wipers may operate if the rain sensor or the windshield is vibrated or objects such as, insects, dirt, mud, etc. are covering them. Turn off the wiper unless it is raining or snowing.
  – The wipers do not operate if the rain sensor does not detect rain or snow.
  – The wipers may not operate properly even in the rain if the rain sensor does not detect the amount of raindrops because of the water-repellent coating on the windshield, or dirt or ice on the upper half of the windshield.
  – The rain sensor may malfunction if the wiper intermittent operation does not vary depending on the amount of rainfall. If necessary, turn the wiper switch to any position except for the "AUTO" position. In this case, the automatic rain sensing wiper system may malfunction. We recommend that you contact your SUBARU dealer and have the system inspected as soon as possible.
  – The wipers may not operate with the wiper switch in the "AUTO" position if the ambient temperature is less than −15°C (5°F). When this happens, push the wiper control

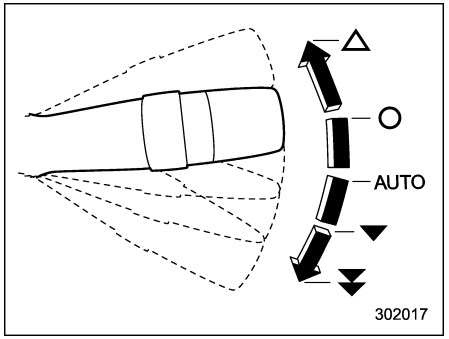
**lever down to the low speed position or high speed position, although the wipers will switch to the automatic operation with the wiper switch in the "AUTO" position if the ambient temperature returns to more than −10°C (14°F).**

**– The wipers may not operate if the temperature around the rain sensor is more than 80°C (176°F) because the system cannot detect the amount of raindrops under these temperatures.**

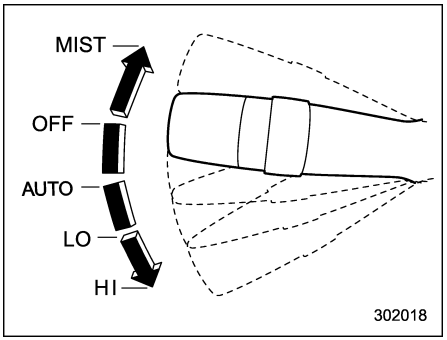
## ■ Windshield wiper and washer switches

The wiper operates only when the ignition switch is in the "ON" position.

### ▼ Windshield wipers (models with automatic rain sensing windshield wipers)




**Except Australia models**




**Australia models**

△ / MIST: Mist (for a single wipe)
○ / OFF: Off
AUTO / AUTO: Automatic operation
▼ / LO: Low speed
▼▼ / HI: High speed

To turn the wipers on, push the wiper control lever down. With the wiper switch in the "AUTO" position, the wipers operate automatically when the rain sensor detects falling rain. The wiper timing is automatically adjusted depending on the amount of rain.

To turn the wipers off, return the lever to the "OFF"/"○" position.

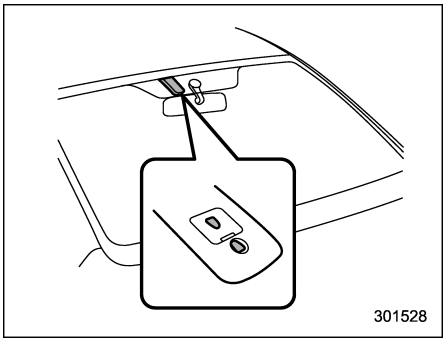
For a single wipe of the wipers, push the lever up. The wipers operate until you release the lever.

– CONTINUED –

## NOTE

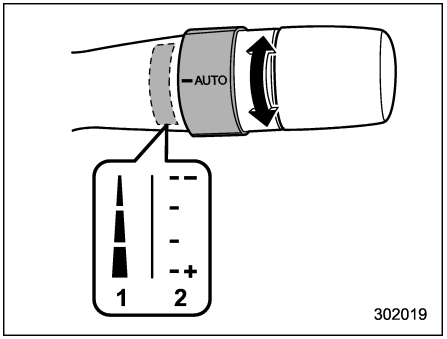
**• The automatic adjusting mode of the wiper timing can be changed from the rain-sensing mode to the vehicle speed interlocking mode. The setting can be changed by a SUBARU dealer. For more details, we recommend that you contact a SUBARU dealer.**
**• While the intermittent wiper is in operation, if the vehicle is started, the wiper will operate once. The operational/non-operational setting of this function can be changed by your SUBARU dealer. For details, we recommend that you contact your SUBARU dealer.**

▽ **Rain sensor**




The rain sensor is on the windshield glass.

▽ **Sensor sensitivity control**



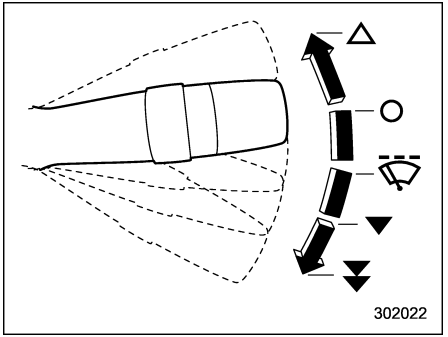

1) Except Australia models
2) Australia models

Turn the dial to adjust the sensitivity of the rain sensor for wiper control. Turn the dial downward to increase the sensitivity. Turn the dial upward to decrease the sensitivity.

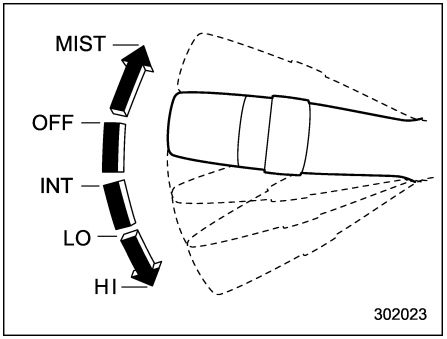
## NOTE

**When the wiper control lever is in the "AUTO" position, if you turn the dial downward, the wipers will operate once to inform you that the sensor sensitivity has been increased.**

▼ **Windshield wipers (models without automatic rain sensing windshield wipers)**




**Except Australia models**



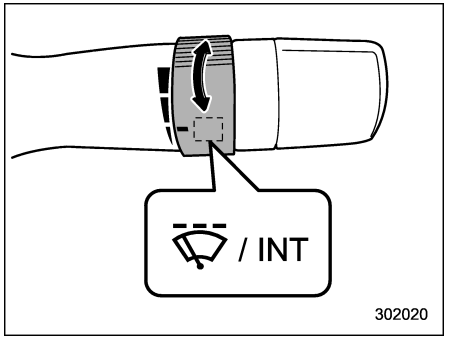

**Australia models**
△ / MIST: Mist (for a single wipe)
O / OFF: Off
/ INT: Intermittent
▼ / LO: Low speed
▼▼ / HI: High speed

To turn the wipers on, push the wiper control lever down.

To turn the wipers off, return the lever to the "O"/"OFF" position.

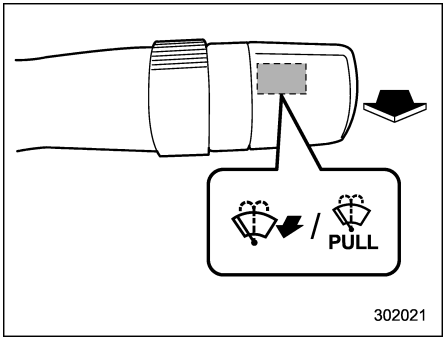
For a single wipe of the wipers, push the lever up. The wipers operate until you release the lever.

### ▽ Wiper intermittent time control



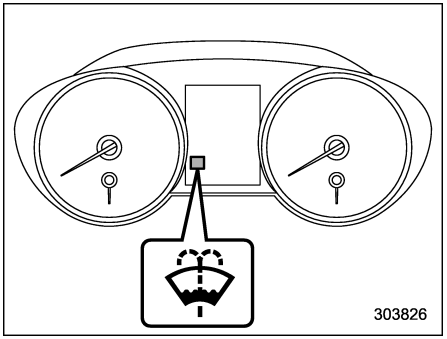

When the wiper switch is in the "/"INT" position, turn the dial to adjust the operating interval of the wiper. The operating interval can be adjusted in several steps from the shortest interval to the longest.

### ▼ Windshield washer




To wash the windshield, pull the wiper control lever toward you. The washer fluid sprays until you release the lever. The wipers operate while you pull the lever.

– CONTINUED –




**Windshield washer fluid warning indicator**

## NOTE

**The windshield washer fluid warning indicator appears when the washer fluid level in the tank has dropped to the lower limit. If the warning indicator appears, refill the tank with fluid. For the tank refilling method, refer to "Windshield washer fluid" ☞11-41.**

## NOTE

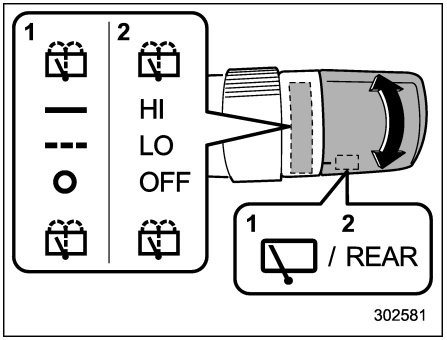
**If your vehicle is equipped with a headlight washer, pulling the wiper control lever for more than 1 second also causes the headlight washer to operate under the following conditions.**

- **when the light switch is in the "≡D" position (except Australia models)**
- **when the light switch is in the "≡D" position (Australia models)**
- **when the light switch is in the "AUTO" position and the headlights illuminate automatically (models with auto on/off headlights)**

**For further details, refer to "Headlight washer" ☞3-65.**

## ■ Rear window wiper and washer switch (Outback)

The wiper operates only when the ignition switch is in the "ON" position.




1) Except Australia models
2) Australia models

: Washer (accompanied by wiper operation)
▬ / HI: Continuous
▬ ▬ / LO: Intermittent
O / OFF: Off

: Washer (accompanied by wiper operation)

### ▼ Rear wiper

To turn the rear wiper on, turn the knob switch upward.

To turn the wiper off, return the knob switch to the "O"/"OFF" position.

With the switch turned to the "▬ ▬"/"LO" position, the rear wiper will operate intermittently at intervals corresponding to the vehicle speed. In this position, when you move the select lever to the "R" position (CVT models) or the shift lever to the reverse position (MT models), the rear wiper will switch to continuous operation. When you move the select lever/shift lever from the "R" (reverse) position to another position, the rear wiper will return to intermittent operation.

## NOTE

- **Even if the rear wiper switch is in the off position, while the shift lever/select lever is in the "R" position with the windshield wiper operating continuously, the rear wiper will operate intermittently (reverse gear interlocked rear wiper).**
- **If a cargo carrier or other object that disturbs rear wiper operation is attached, the rear wipers may be damaged when they operate. In cases like**

**this, set the reverse gear interlocked rear wiper to "non-operational". For more details, we recommend that you contact a SUBARU dealer.**

**▼ Washer**

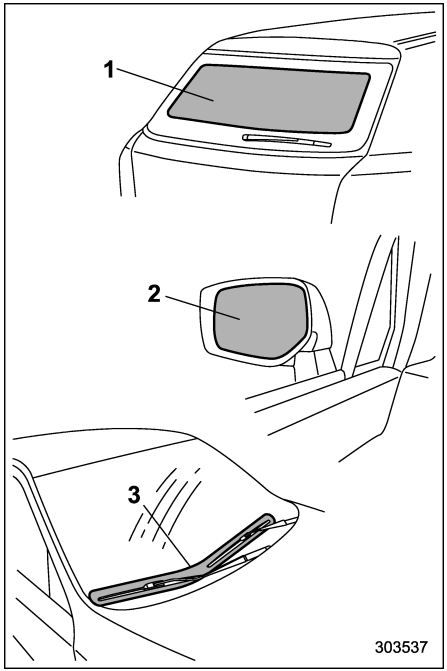
To wash the rear window while the rear wiper is operating, turn the knob switch upward to the "" position. The washer fluid sprays until you release the knob.

To wash the rear window when the rear wiper is not in use, turn the knob switch downward to the "" position. The washer fluid sprays and the wiper operates until you release the knob.

## NOTE

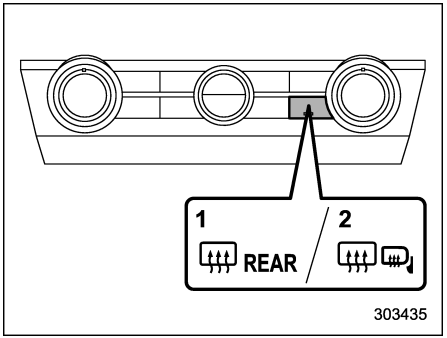
**When the amount of washer fluid is getting low, the rear washer fluid will first be stopped. This means that the amount of washer fluid is low, and it should be added immediately.**

## Defogger and deicer



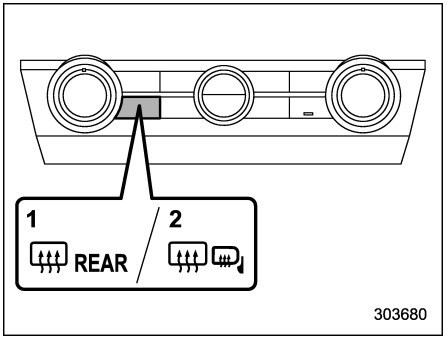

1) Rear window defogger
2) Outside mirror defogger (if equipped)
3) Windshield wiper deicer (if equipped)

The defogger and deicer system is activated only when the ignition switch is in the "ON" position.




**Control switch (left-hand drive models)**
1) Models without outside mirror defogger
2) Models with outside mirror defogger

– CONTINUED –




**Control switch (right-hand drive models)**
1) Models without outside mirror defogger
2) Models with outside mirror defogger

To activate the defogger and deicer system, press the control switch. The rear window defogger, outside mirror defogger and windshield wiper deicer are activated simultaneously. The indicator light on the control switch illuminates while the defogger and deicer system is activated.

To turn them off, press the control switch again. They also turn off when the ignition switch is turned to the “ACC” or “LOCK”/“OFF” position.

The defogger and deicer system will automatically shut off after approximately 15 minutes. If the rear window and outside mirrors have been cleared and the windshield wiper blades have been deiced completely before that time, press the control switch to turn them off. If defrosting, defogging or deicing is not complete, you have to press the control switch to turn them on again.

It is possible to set the defogger and deicer system for the continuous operation mode by a SUBARU dealer. We recommend that you contact your SUBARU dealer for details.

**⚠ CAUTION**

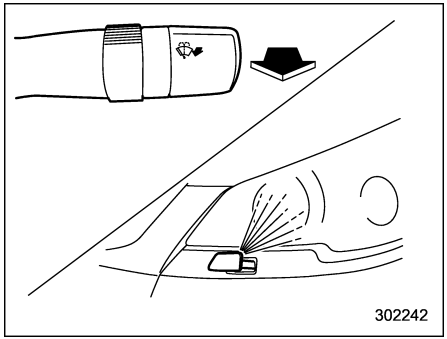
- **To prevent the battery from being discharged, do not operate the defogger and deicer system continuously for any longer than necessary.**
- **Do not use sharp instruments or window cleaner containing abrasives to clean the inner surface of the rear window. They may damage the conductors printed on the window.**

## NOTE

- **Turn on the defogger and deicer system if the wipers are frozen to the windshield.**
- **If the windshield is covered with snow, remove the snow so that the windshield wiper deicer works effectively.**
- **When the outside temperature becomes 5°C (41°F) or higher, the windshield wiper deicer stops operating.**
- **While the defogger and deicer system is in the continuous operation mode, if the vehicle speed remains at 15 km/h (9 mph) or lower for 15 minutes, the windshield wiper deicer automatically stops operating, though the rear window defogger and outside mirror defogger maintain continuous operation in this condition.**
- **For models with the SI-DRIVE system, while the defogger and deicer system is in the continuous operation mode, if the vehicle is driven in the Intelligent (I) mode for 15 minutes, the windshield wiper deicer automatically stops operating for greater fuel efficiency. This operation occurs even if the vehicle has been driven at 15 km/h (9 mph) or more. At this time, the rear window defogger and outside mirror defogger maintain continuous operation though the windshield wiper deicer has stopped operating.**
- **While the defogger and deicer system is in the continuous operation mode, if the battery voltage drops below the permissible level, continu-**

**ous operation of the defogger and deicer system is canceled and the system stops operating.**

## Headlight washer (if equipped)




If you pull the wiper control lever toward you and hold it for more than 1 second with the ignition switch in the "ON" position, the headlight washer operates together with the windshield washer in the following conditions.

- when the light switch is in the "≡D" position (except Australia models)
- when the light switch is in the "≡D" position (Australia models)
- when the light switch is in the "AUTO" position and the headlights illuminate automatically (models with auto on/off headlights)

The windshield washer stops spraying washer fluid as soon as you release the wiper control lever. The headlight washer sprays the washer fluid for approximately 1 second and then stops automatically.

**⚠ CAUTION**

- **Do not operate the washer if the washer fluid tank is empty. This may cause overheating of the washer motor. Check washer fluid level frequently, such as at fuel stops.**
- **Do not use a strong cleaning agent as a windshield washer fluid. This may cause cracking of the headlight lenses.**
- **We recommend that you wash the headlight lenses with water frequently when you have used high-concentrated windshield washer fluid in cold weather.**

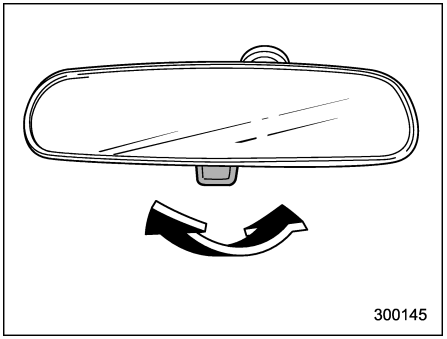
### NOTE

- **When the area around the nozzle cover of the headlight washer is frozen, remove the ice before using.**
- **When the headlights are very dirty, perform the operation repeatedly.**

## Mirrors

Always check that the inside and outside mirrors are properly adjusted before you start driving.

### ■ Inside mirror




The inside mirror has a day and night position. Pull the tab at the bottom of the mirror toward you for the night position. Push it away for the day position. The night position reduces glare from headlights.

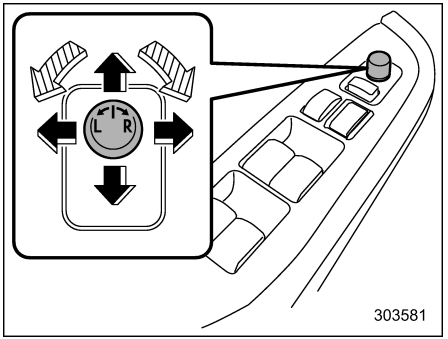
### ■ Outside mirrors

▼ **Convex mirror**

**⚠ WARNING**

**Objects look smaller in a convex mirror and farther away than when viewed in a flat mirror. Do not use the convex mirror to judge the distance of vehicles behind you when changing lanes. Use the inside mirror (or glance backwards) to determine the actual size and distance of objects that you view in convex mirror.**

▼ **Remote control mirror switch**




: Select side to adjust

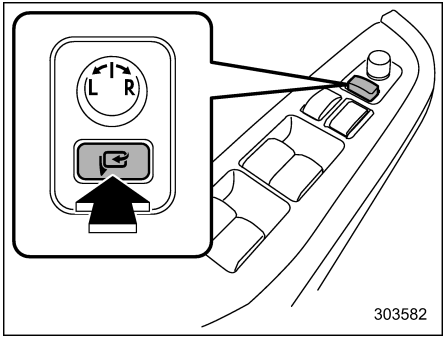
: Direction control

The remote control mirrors operate only when the ignition switch is in the “ON” or “ACC” position.

1. Turn the control switch to the side that you want to adjust. “L” is for the left mirror, “R” is for the right mirror.
2. Move the control switch in the direction you want to move the mirror.
3. Return the control switch to the neutral position to prevent unintentional operation.

The mirrors can also be adjusted manually.

▼ **Power folding mirror switch (if equipped)**




The power folding mirror switch operates only when the ignition switch is in the “ON” or “ACC” position.

To fold the outside mirrors, press the power folding mirror switch. To unfold the mirrors, press the switch again.

## NOTE

**• If the outside mirrors have been operated (folded or unfolded) manually, when you turn the ignition switch from the “LOCK”/“OFF” position to the “ACC” or “ON” position, the outside mirrors may be adjusted automatically depending on the status of the power folding mirror switch.**

**• If the outside mirrors have been manually folded slightly forward of the regularly unfolded position, when you turn the ignition switch from the “LOCK”/“OFF” position to the “ACC” or “ON” position, the outside mirrors may automatically fold further forward depending on the status of the power folding mirror switch. When this happens, press the power folding mirror switch. By doing so, the outside mirrors which have been folded to the furthest forward position will extend to the regularly unfolded position and then fold rearward in the usual way. In order to unfold the outside mirrors, press the switch again.**

**• When you unfold the outside mirrors manually, the mirrors may become wobbly. Be sure to unfold the mirrors by operating the switch. If the outside mirrors are still wobbly, fold the mirrors again and then unfold them by operating the switch again.**

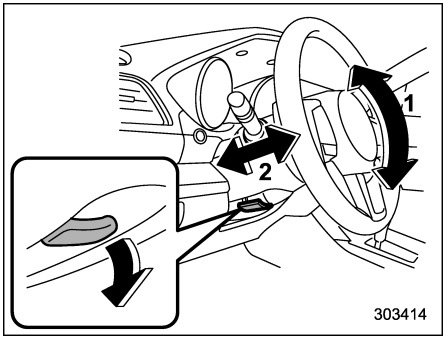
**• When the temperature is low, the outside mirrors may stop during operation. Push the switch again. When the outside mirrors do not work by operating the switch, move the outside mirrors several times manually. This makes it possible to operate them by switch operation.**

**• When you operate the power folding mirror switch continuously, it may not work. This is not a malfunction. Operate after waiting for a short period of time.**

## Tilt/telescopic steering wheel

**⚠ WARNING**

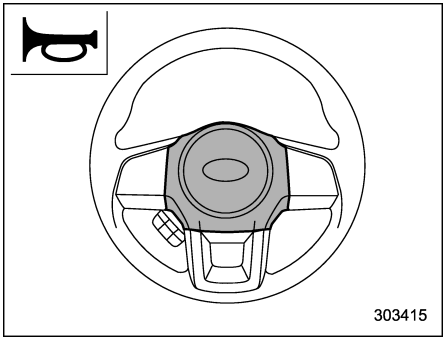
- **Do not adjust the steering wheel tilt/telescopic position while driving. This may cause loss of vehicle control and result in personal injury.**
- **If the lever cannot be raised to the fixed position, adjust the steering wheel again. It is dangerous to drive without locking the steering wheel. This may cause loss of vehicle control and result in personal injury.**




1) Tilt adjustment
2) Telescopic adjustment

1. Adjust the seat position. Refer to "Front seats" ☞1-2.
2. Pull the tilt/telescopic lock lever down.
3. Move the steering wheel to the desired level.
4. Pull the lever up to lock the steering wheel in place.
5. Make sure that the steering wheel is securely locked by moving it up and down, and forward and backward.

## Horn

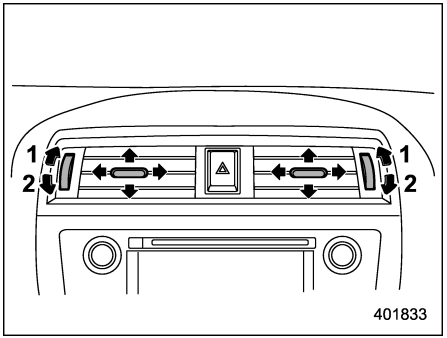



To sound the horn, push the horn pad.

Ventilator control ..... 4-2
Center ventilators ..... 4-2
Side ventilators ..... 4-2
Rear ventilators (if equipped) ..... 4-2
Climate control panel ..... 4-3
Automatic climate control system ..... 4-4
Temperature sensors ..... 4-4
Manual climate control ..... 4-5
Airflow mode selection ..... 4-5
Temperature control ..... 4-6
Fan speed control ..... 4-7
Air conditioner control ..... 4-7
Air inlet selection ..... 4-7
Defrosting ..... 4-7
Operating tips for heater and air conditioner ..... 4-8
Cleaning ventilation grille ..... 4-8
Efficient cooling after parking in direct sunlight ..... 4-8
Lubrication oil circulation in the refrigerant circuit ..... 4-8
Checking air conditioning system before summer season ..... 4-8
Cooling and dehumidifying in high humidity and low temperature weather conditions ..... 4-8
Air conditioner compressor shut-off when engine is heavily loaded ..... 4-8
Refrigerant for your climate control system ..... 4-9
Air filtration system ..... 4-9
Replacing an air filter ..... 4-10

## Ventilator control

### ■ Center ventilators



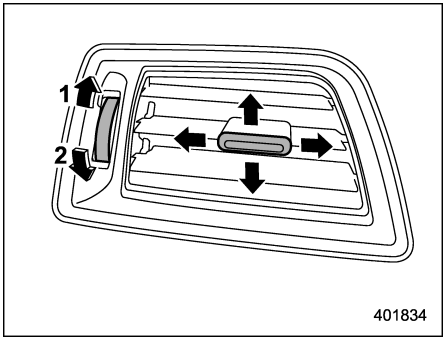

1) Open
2) Close

Move the tab to adjust the flow direction.

To open the ventilator, turn the center grille open/close wheel to the "≋" position.

To close it, turn the wheel to the "⊠" position.

### ■ Side ventilators



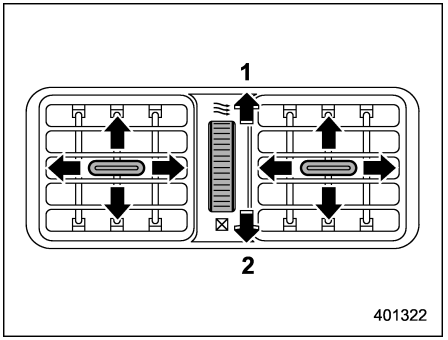

1) Open
2) Close

Move the tab to adjust the flow direction.

To open the ventilator, turn the side grille open/close wheel upward to the "≋" position.

To close it, turn the wheel downward to the "⊠" position.

### ■ Rear ventilators (if equipped)



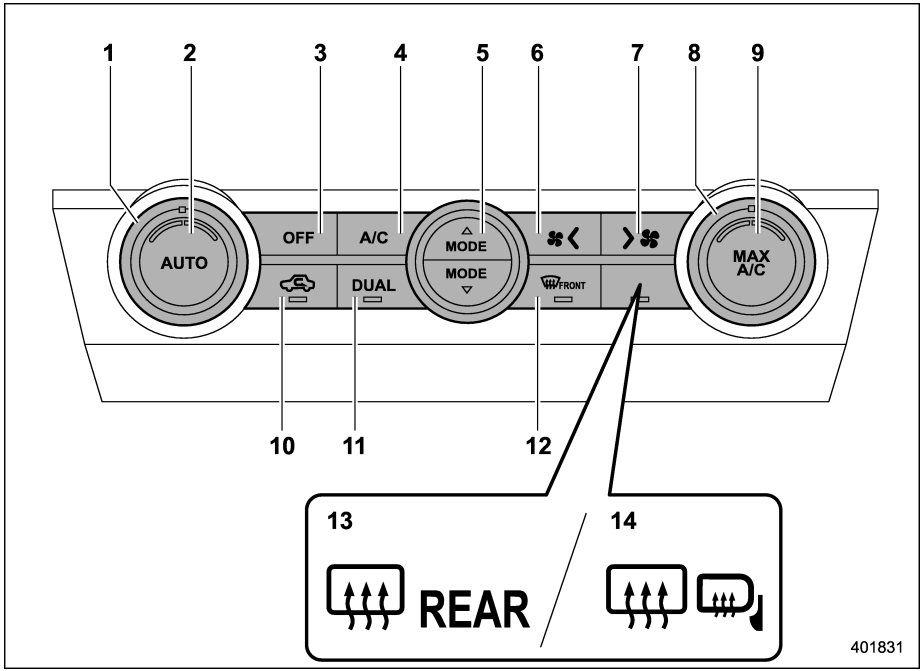

1) Open
2) Close

Move the tab to adjust the flow direction.

To open the ventilator, turn the rear grille open/close wheel upward to the "≋" position.

To close it, turn the wheel downward to the "⊠" position.

## Climate control panel




### NOTE

**For right-hand drive models, some of the button positions are different from the illustration.**

1) Temperature control dial (Refer to “Temperature control” ☞4-6.)
2) “AUTO” button (Refer to “Automatic climate control system” ☞4-4.)
3) “OFF” button (Refer to “Automatic climate control system” ☞4-4.)
4) “A/C” button (Refer to “Air conditioner control” ☞4-7.)
5) Airflow mode selection button (Refer to “Airflow mode selection” ☞4-5.)
6) Fan speed control button (for decreasing the fan speed) (Refer to “Fan speed control” ☞4-7.)
7) Fan speed control button (for increasing the fan speed) (Refer to “Fan speed control” ☞4-7.)
8) Temperature control dial (Refer to “Temperature control” ☞4-6.)
9) “MAX A/C” button (Refer to “MAX A/C mode” ☞4-6.)
10) Air inlet selection button (Refer to “Air inlet selection” ☞4-7.)
11) “DUAL” button (Refer to “Automatic climate control system” ☞4-4 and ““DUAL” mode” ☞4-6.)
12) Defroster button (Refer to “Airflow mode selection” ☞4-5 and “Defrosting” ☞4-7.)
13) Rear window defogger button (models without outside mirror defogger) (Refer to “Defogger and deicer” ☞3-63.)
14) Rear window and outside mirror defogger button (models with outside mirror defogger) (Refer to “Defogger and deicer” ☞3-63.)

## Automatic climate control system

### NOTE

**• Operate the automatic climate control system when the engine is running.**
**• The blower fan rotates at a low speed when the engine coolant temperature is low.**
**• For efficient defogging or dehumidifying in cold weather, press the "A/C" button.**

When the automatic climate control mode is selected, the following items are automatically controlled.

- Outlet air temperature
- Fan speed
- Airflow distribution
- Air inlet control
- Air conditioner compressor operation

To activate this mode, perform the following procedure.

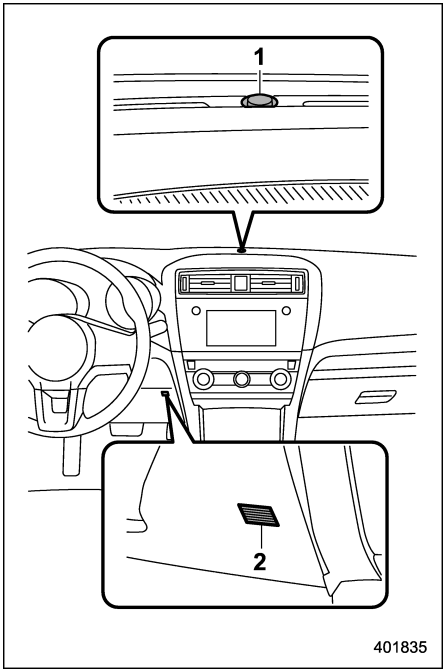
1. Set the preferred temperature using the temperature control button.
2. Press the "AUTO" button. The FULL AUTO mode is selected and the "FULL AUTO" indicator light on the display illuminates.

### NOTE

**If you operate any of the buttons on the control panel other than the "OFF" button, rear window defogger button and temperature control buttons during FULL AUTO mode operation, the "FULL" indicator light on the control panel will turn off and the "AUTO" indicator light will remain illuminated. You can then manually control the system as desired. To change the system back to the FULL AUTO mode, press the "AUTO" button.**

To turn off the climate control system, press the "OFF" button. The air inlet selection is then automatically switched to the outside air mode.

### ■ Temperature sensors




1) Solar sensor
2) Interior air temperature sensor

The automatic climate control system employs several sensors. These sensors are delicate. If they are not treated

properly and become damaged, the system may not be able to control the interior temperature correctly. To avoid damaging the sensors, observe the following precautions:

– Do not subject the sensors to impact.
– Keep water away from the sensors.
– Do not cover the sensors.

The sensors are located as follows:

– Solar sensor: beside the windshield defroster grille.
– Interior air temperature sensor: next to the steering column.
– Outside temperature sensor: behind the front grille.

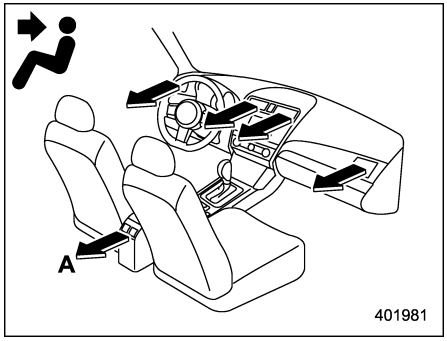
## Manual climate control

### ■ Airflow mode selection

Select the preferred airflow mode by performing the following procedure.

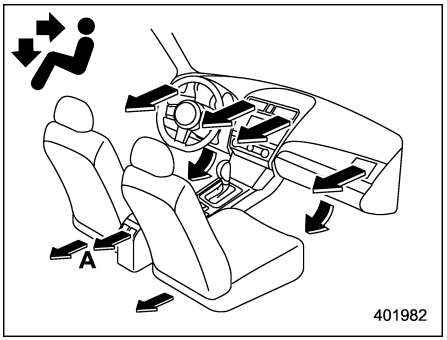
- Press the airflow mode selection button to select a mode other than the defrost mode
- Press the defroster button to select the defrost mode

Airflow modes are as follows.



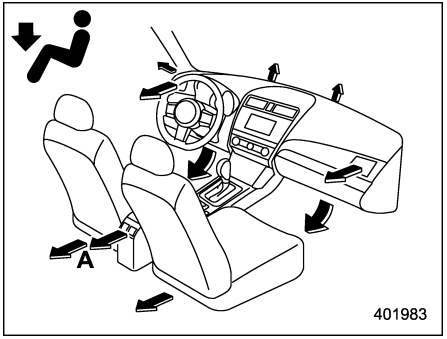

A) Models with rear ventilators

(Ventilation): Instrument panel outlets




A) Models with rear ventilators

(Bi-level): Instrument panel outlets and the foot outlets

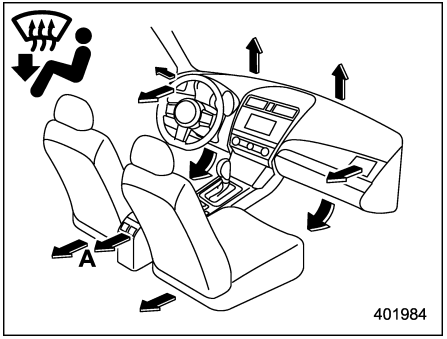



A) Models with rear ventilators

(Heat): Foot outlets, both side outlets of

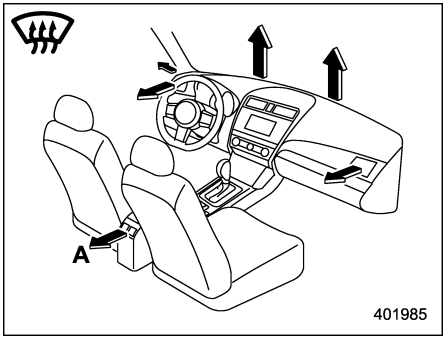
– CONTINUED –

the instrument panel and some through windshield defroster outlets (A small amount of air flows to the windshield and both side windows to prevent fogging.)




A) Models with rear ventilators

(Heat-def): Windshield defroster outlets, foot outlets and both side outlets of the instrument panel




A) Models with rear ventilators

(Defrost): Windshield defroster outlets and both side outlets of the instrument panel

## NOTE

**The illustrations shown are for left-hand models. For right-hand models, the locations are opposite to those in the illustrations.**

## ■ Temperature control

Turn the temperature control dial over a range from the blue side (cool) to red side (warm) to regulate the temperature of airflow from the air outlets.

### ▼ MAX A/C mode

Press the “MAX A/C” button to select the MAX A/C mode.

When this mode is selected, some of the settings will be changed as follows.

- The temperature setting will be changed to the maximum cooling mode.
- The fan speed setting will be changed to the maximum speed.
- The airflow mode setting will be changed to the “ ” (ventilation) mode.
- The air inlet selection mode will be changed to the ON position (recirculation).
- The air conditioner will turn on.

While the MAX A/C mode is selected, pressing the “MAX A/C” button again returns the system to the setting that had been selected before the MAX A/C mode is selected.

### ▼ “DUAL” mode

You can change the setting of the driver’s side and front passenger’s side temperature independently by selecting the “DUAL” mode.

You can select the “DUAL” mode by performing either of the following procedures.

- Press the “DUAL” button
- Turn the passenger’s side temperature control dial

The “DUAL” mode can be canceled by pressing the “DUAL” button.

**When the "DUAL" mode is selected:**

Turn the driver's side dial to set the driver's side temperature. Turn the front passenger's side dial to set the front passenger's side temperature.

**When the "DUAL" mode is canceled:**

Set the desired temperature by turning the driver's side dial.

## ■ Fan speed control

The fan operates only when the ignition switch is in the "ON" position. Select the preferred fan speed by pressing the fan speed control buttons.

## ■ Air conditioner control

The air conditioner operates only when the engine is running.

Press the air conditioner button while the fan is in operation to turn on the air conditioner. When the air conditioner is on, "A/C" indicator light illuminates.

To turn off the air conditioner, press the button again. The indicator light will turn off.

### NOTE

**For efficient defogging or dehumidifying in cold weather, turn on the air conditioner. However, if the ambient temperature decreases to approximately 0°C (32°F), the air conditioner and dehumidification system may not work properly.**

## ■ Air inlet selection

Select the air inlet by pressing the air inlet selection button.

**ON position (recirculation)**: Interior air is recirculated inside the vehicle. Press the air inlet selection button to the ON position for fast cooling with the air conditioner or when driving on a dusty road. When the ON position is selected, the indicator light on the air inlet selection button illuminates.

**OFF position (outside air)**: Outside air is drawn into the passenger compartment. Press the air inlet selection button to the OFF position when the interior has cooled to a comfortable temperature and the road is no longer dusty. The indicator light will turn off.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Continued operation in the ON position may fog up the windows. Switch to the OFF position as soon as the outside dusty condition clears.**

# Defrosting

Select the desired "  " mode or "" mode to defrost or dehumidify the windshield and front door windows by performing the following procedures.

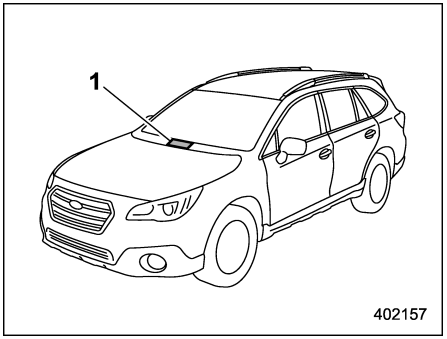
- Press the airflow mode selection button to select the "" mode.
- Press the defroster button to select the "" mode.

### NOTE

- **When the "" mode or "" mode is selected, the air conditioner compressor automatically operates to more quickly defog the windshield. At the same time, the air inlet selection is automatically set to the outside air mode. For details, refer to "Airflow mode selection" ☞4-5.**
- **If the defroster button is pressed while the "" mode is selected, it will change to the previous mode before selecting the "" mode.**

## Operating tips for heater and air conditioner

### ■ Cleaning ventilation grille




1) Front ventilator inlet grille

Always keep the front ventilation inlet grille free of snow, leaves, or other obstructions to ensure efficient heating and defrosting. Since the condenser is located in front of the radiator, this area should be kept clean because cooling performance is impaired by any accumulation of insects and leaves on the condenser.

### ■ Efficient cooling after parking in direct sunlight

After parking in direct sunlight, drive with the windows open for a few minutes to allow outside air to circulate into the heated interior. This results in quicker cooling by the air conditioner. Keep the windows closed during the operation of the air conditioner for maximum cooling efficiency.

### ■ Lubrication oil circulation in the refrigerant circuit

Operate the air conditioner compressor at a low engine speed (at idle or low driving speeds) a few minutes each month during the off-season to circulate its oil.

### ■ Checking air conditioning system before summer season

Check the air conditioner unit for refrigerant leaks, hose conditions, and proper operation each spring. We recommend that you have the air conditioning system checked by your SUBARU dealer.

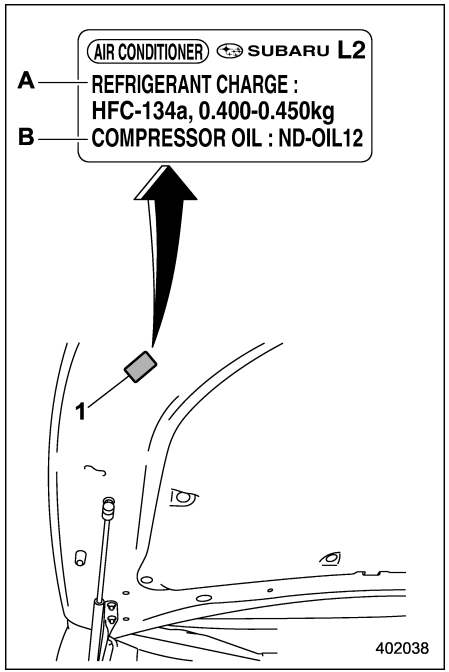
### ■ Cooling and dehumidifying in high humidity and low temperature weather conditions

Under certain weather conditions (high relative humidity, low temperatures, etc.) a small amount of water vapor emission from the air outlets may be noticed. This condition is normal and does not indicate any problem with the air conditioning system.

### ■ Air conditioner compressor shut-off when engine is heavily loaded

To improve acceleration and fuel consumption, the air conditioner compressor is designed to temporarily shut off during air conditioner operation whenever the accelerator is fully depressed such as during rapid acceleration or when driving on a steep upgrade.

## ■ Refrigerant for your climate control system




**Example of the air conditioner label**
1) Air conditioner label
A) REFRIGERANT CHARGE
B) COMPRESSOR OIL

Your air conditioner uses ozone friendly refrigerant HFO-1234yf or HFC134a. Therefore, the method for adding, changing or checking the refrigerant is different from the method for CFC12 (freon). Also, the methods for adding, changing or checking HFO-1234yf and HFC134a refrigerant are different. Before adding, changing or checking the refrigerant, check the air conditioner label in the location shown in the illustration to confirm which type of refrigerant is used in your vehicle. We recommend that you consult your SUBARU dealer for service. Repairs needed as a result of using the wrong refrigerant are not covered under the warranty.

## Air filtration system

Replace the filter element according to the maintenance schedule. Refer to “Maintenance schedule” ☞11-3. The schedule should be followed to maintain the filter’s dust collection ability. Under extremely dusty conditions, the filter should be replaced more frequently. It is recommended that you have your filter checked or replaced by your SUBARU dealer. For replacement, we recommend that you use only a genuine SUBARU air filter kit.

**⚠ CAUTION**

**We recommend that you contact your SUBARU dealer if the following occurs, even if it is not yet time to change the filter.**

- **Reduction of the airflow through the vents.**
- **Windshield gets easily fogged or misted.**

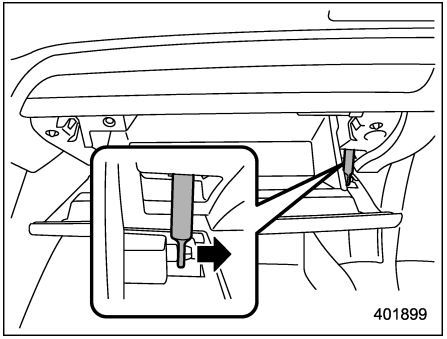
### NOTE

**The filter can influence the air conditioning, heating and defroster performance if not properly maintained.**

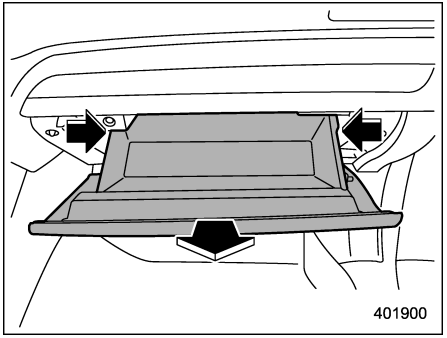
– CONTINUED –

## ■ Replacing an air filter

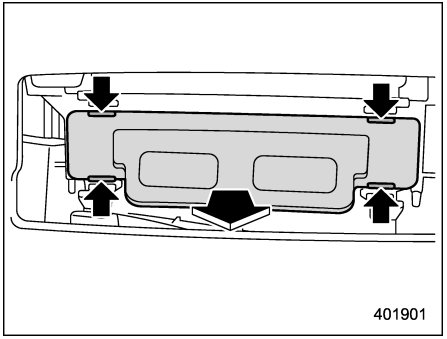
1. Remove the glove box.
   (1) Open the glove box.



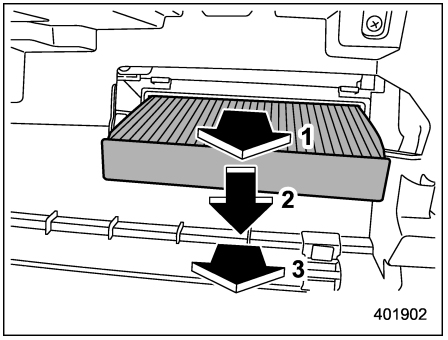

   (2) Remove the damper shaft from the glove box.




   (3) Pull out the glove box.

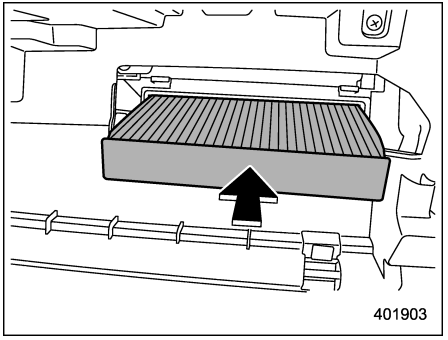



2. Remove the cover of the air filter.




   1) Pull the air filter approximately 10 cm (3.9 inches) first.
   2) Gently push the near side of the air filter down.
   3) Pull out the air filter.

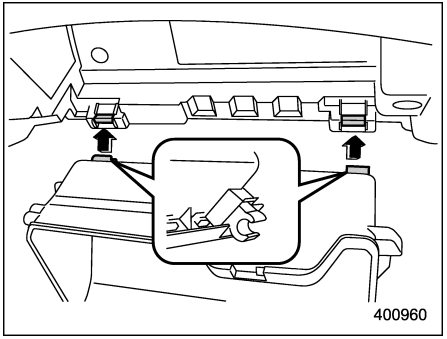
3. Remove the air filter.



4. Replace the air filter element with a new one.
5. Reinstall the cover of the air filter.

**⚠ CAUTION**

**The arrow mark on the filter must point UP.**




6. Reinstall the glove box, and connect the damper shaft.
7. Close the glove box.

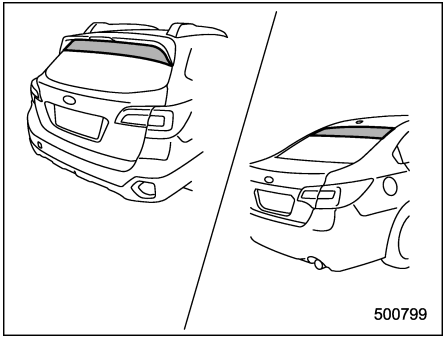
Antenna system ..... 5-2
Printed antenna ..... 5-2
FM reception ..... 5-2
Installation of accessories ..... 5-2
Audio set ..... 5-3
Type A audio set (for Europe) ..... 5-4
Type B audio set (except for Europe) ..... 5-5
Type C audio set (for Australia) ..... 5-6
Basic information before use ..... 5-7
Initial screen ..... 5-7
Loading and unloading a disc ..... 5-8
Connecting and disconnecting a USB memory/ portable device ..... 5-8
Touch screen gestures ..... 5-9
Touch screen operation ..... 5-10
Entering letters and numbers/list screen operation ..... 5-10
Screen adjustment ..... 5-12
Other settings ..... 5-13
Basic operation ..... 5-16
Some basics ..... 5-16
Audio/visual remote controls ..... 5-23
Steering switches ..... 5-23
Tips for operating the audio/visual system ..... 5-25
Operating information ..... 5-25
Useful information ..... 5-32
STARLINK (for Europe) ..... 5-32
Radio operation ..... 5-34
AM/FM radio ..... 5-34
Media operation ..... 5-44
CD ..... 5-44
USB memory ..... 5-49
iPod ..... 5-54
Bluetooth audio ..... 5-61
AUX ..... 5-68
Bluetooth® settings ..... 5-74
Registering/connecting Bluetooth® device ..... 5-74
Setting Bluetooth details ..... 5-77
Phone operation (Hands-free system for cellular phones) ..... 5-80
Quick reference ..... 5-80
Some basics ..... 5-82
Calling on the Bluetooth phone ..... 5-85
Receiving on the Bluetooth phone ..... 5-92
Talking on the Bluetooth phone ..... 5-93
Setup ..... 5-95
Phone settings ..... 5-95
What to do if ..... 5-97
Troubleshooting ..... 5-97
Voice command system operation ..... 5-101
Voice command system ..... 5-101
Command list ..... 5-104
Appendix ..... 5-107
Certification ..... 5-107
Certification for UAE models ..... 5-107
Certification for Paraguay models ..... 5-108

## Antenna system

### ■ Printed antenna

**⚠ CAUTION**

**Do not use sharp instruments or window cleaner containing abrasives to clean the inner surface of the window on which the antenna is printed. Doing so may damage the antenna printed on the window.**




The antenna is printed on the inner surface of the rear window glass.

#### NOTE

**Antenna performance will deteriorate significantly if you apply tinting film or any other material over the antenna portion of the rear window/windshield glass.**

### ■ FM reception

Although FM is normally static free, reception can be affected by the surrounding area, atmospheric conditions, station strength and transmitter distance. Buildings or other obstructions may cause momentary static, flutter or station interference. If reception continues to be unsatisfactory, switch to a stronger station.

## Installation of accessories

We recommend that you always consult your SUBARU dealer before installing a citizen band radio or other transmitting device in your vehicle. Such devices may cause the electronic control system to malfunction if they are incorrectly installed or if they are not suited for the vehicle.

## Audio set

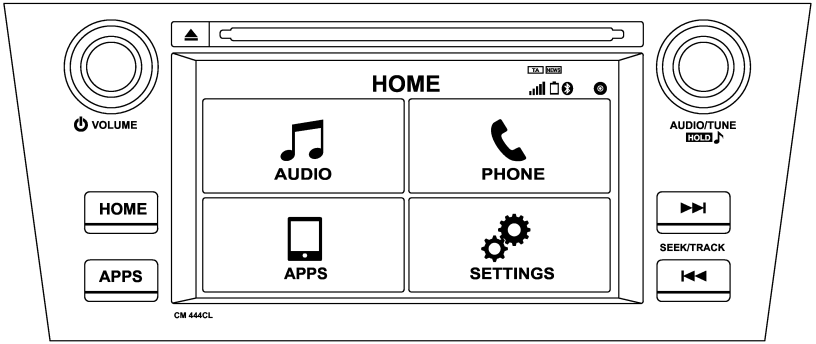
Your SUBARU may be equipped with one of the following audio sets. See the pages indicated in this section for operating details.

### NOTE

- **If a cell phone is placed near the audio set, it may cause the audio set to emit noise when a phone call is received. This noise does not indicate an audio set malfunction. Note that a cell phone should be placed as far as possible from the audio set.**
- **Some functions may not be available depending on the market and specifications of your vehicle.**
- **The images shown in this Owner's Manual are sample images. The actual images may vary depending on the market and specifications of your vehicle.**

– CONTINUED –

## ■ Type A audio set (for Europe)



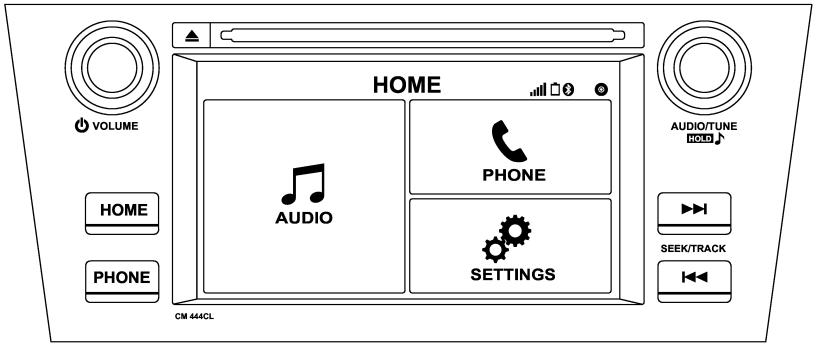

S01635

The audio set will operate only when the ignition switch is in the “ACC” or “ON” position.

**For regional specification**

The illustration on the left is a typical example for left-hand drive models. For right-hand drive models, some of the switch locations are the opposite of those shown in the illustration.

## ■ Type B audio set (except for Europe)




S01636

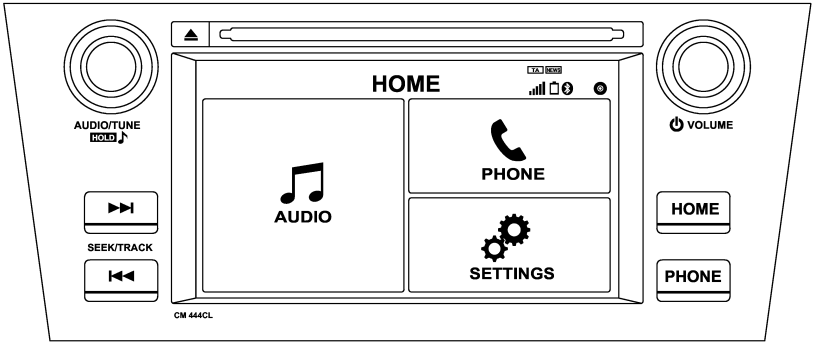
The audio set will operate only when the ignition switch is in the “ACC” or “ON” position.

**For regional specification**

The illustration on the left is a typical example for left-hand drive models. For right-hand drive models, some of the switch locations are the opposite of those shown in the illustration.

***– CONTINUED –***

## ■ Type C audio set (for Australia)




S01637

The audio set will operate only when the ignition switch is in the “ACC” or “ON” position.

# Basic information before use

## ■ Initial screen

### ▼ Initial screen (for Europe)

1. When the ignition switch is in the “ACC” or “ON” position, the initial screen will be displayed and the system will begin operating.




S01276

- When using the STARLINK function, the display screen may be different from the screen above.
- After a few seconds, the “Caution (Caution)” screen will be displayed.
- After about 5 seconds, the “Caution (Caution)” screen automatically switches to the next screen.

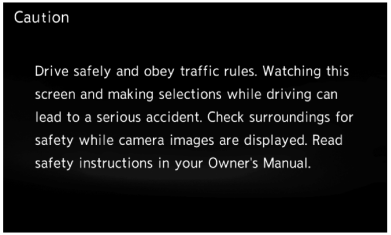
### ▼ Initial screen (except for Europe)

1. When the ignition switch is in the “ACC” or “ON” position, the initial screen will be displayed and the system will begin operating.




S01479

- After a few seconds, the “Caution (Caution)” screen will be displayed.
- After about 5 seconds, the “Caution (Caution)” screen automatically switches to the next screen.




S01277

**⚠ WARNING**

**When the vehicle is stopped with the engine running, always apply the parking brake for safety.**

– CONTINUED –

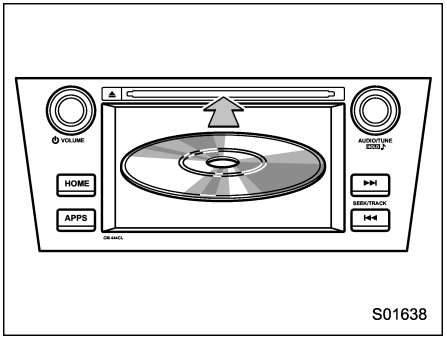
## ■ Loading and unloading a disc

### ▼ Loading a disc

**⚠ CAUTION**

**Never try to disassemble the audio kit or lubricate any part of the CD player. Do not insert anything other than a disc into the slot.**

1. Insert a disc into the disc slot.



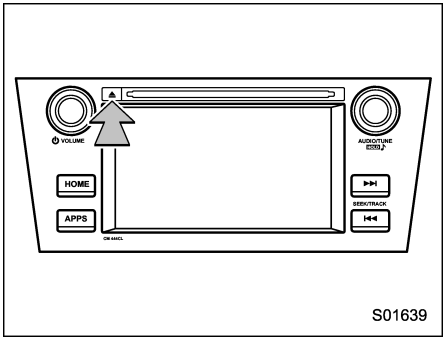

- After insertion, the disc is automatically loaded.

**NOTE**

- **For compatible discs, refer to "CD player and disc" ☞5-26.**
- **When inserting a disc, gently insert it with the label facing up.**

### ▼ Unloading a disc

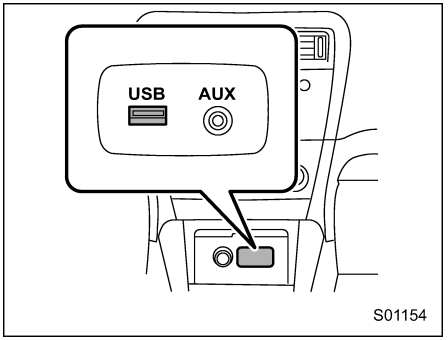
1. Press ⏏ and remove the disc.




## ■ Connecting and disconnecting a USB memory/portable device

### ▼ Connecting a device

1. Open the cover and connect a device.




- Turn on the power of the device when it is not turned on.

**NOTE**

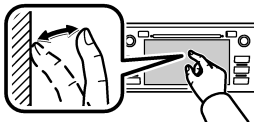
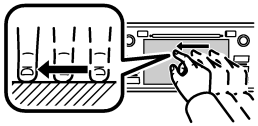
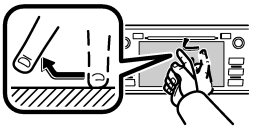
- **This unit does not support commercially available USB hubs.**
- **This device has a USB port for USB memory/portable device.**
- **For compatible USB memory devices, refer to "USB memory device" ☞5-28.**
- **For compatible iPod models, refer to**

**“iPod” ☞5-28.**

**• If a USB hub is plugged in, only the most recently connected USB device will be recognized.**

## ■ Touch screen gestures

Operations are performed by touching the touch screen directly with your finger.

| Operation method | Outline | Main use |
|---|---|---|
|  | **Touch**<br>Quickly touch and release once. | Changing and selecting various settings |
|  | **Drag***<br>Touch the screen with your finger, and move the screen to the desired position. | Scrolling the lists |
|  | **Flick***<br>Quickly move the screen by flicking with your finger. | Scrolling the main screen page |

*: The above operations may not be performed on all screens.

***– CONTINUED –***

## NOTE

**There may be a delayed response to flick operation that are performed at high altitudes.**

## ■ Touch screen operation

This system is operated mainly by the buttons on the screen. (These are referred to as screen buttons in this manual.)

- When a screen button is touched, a beep sounds. (You can set the beep sound.) Refer to "Other settings" ☞5-13.

**⚠ CAUTION**

- **To prevent damaging the screen, touch the screen buttons with your finger lightly.**
- **Do not use objects other than your finger to touch the screen.**
- **Wipe off fingerprints using a glass cleaning cloth. Do not use chemical cleaners to clean the screen, as they may damage the touch screen.**

## NOTE

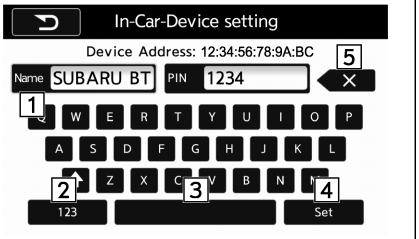
- **If the system does not respond to touching a screen button, move your finger away from the screen and touch it again.**
- **Grayed-out screen buttons cannot be operated.**
- **The displayed image may become darker and moving images may be slightly distorted when the screen is cold.**
- **In extremely cold conditions, the screen may not be displayed correctly. Also, the screen keys may be less responsive than usual when pressed.**
- **When you look at the screen through polarized material such as polarized sunglasses, the screen may be dark and hard to see. If so, look at the screen from different angles, adjust the screen settings on the "Display Settings (Display Settings)" screen or take off your sunglasses.**

## ■ Entering letters and numbers/list screen operation

### ▼ Entering letters and numbers

When entering the Bluetooth device name or PIN-code, or the phone number, letters and numbers can be entered via the screen.

In-Car-Device setting




S01148

| No. | Function |
|---|---|
| 1 | Enter the desired characters (alphabet key mode). |
| 2 | Display the number keys (change to number key mode). |
| 3 | Enter a space. |
| 4 | Determine the characters/numbers entered into the window. |
| 5 | Delete a character/number entered into the window. |

Dialpad



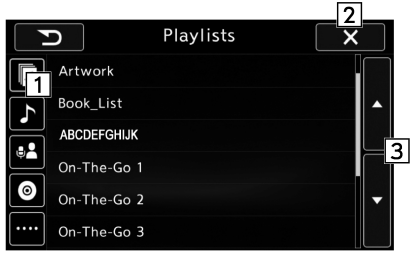

| No. | Function |
|---|---|
| 1 | Enter the desired numbers. |
| 2 | Delete a number entered into the window. |

## ▼ List screen

Two types of list are available on this device.

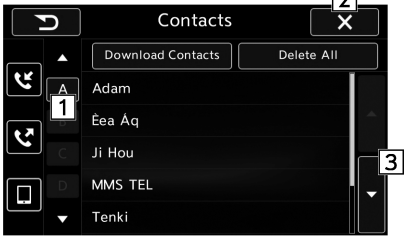
- Multimedia playlists
- Contacts list

Multimedia playlists (Example: iPod playlist)




| No. | Function |
|---|---|
| 1 | Graphic tab: Select a category that wants to play back. |
| 2 | Return to the playback display of each mode. |
| 3 | Select to skip to the next or previous page. |

Contacts list (Example: phone book)




| No. | Function |
|---|---|
| 1 | Alphabet button: Jump to list entries that begin with the same letter. |
| 2 | Select to return to the Phone menu (top screen). |
| 3 | Select to skip to the next or previous page. |

– CONTINUED –

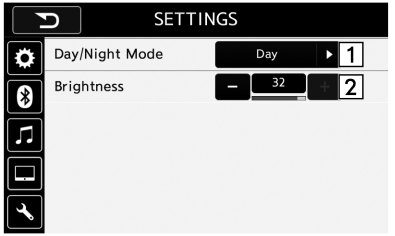
## ■ Screen adjustment

The contrast and brightness of the screen display and the image of the camera display can be adjusted.

1. Select HOME.
2. Select SETTINGS (SETTINGS).
3. Select the items to be set.

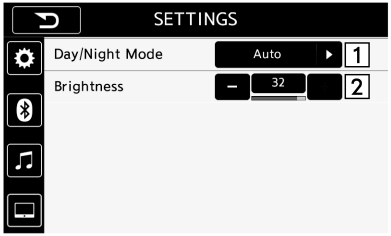
In setting display, the Day/Night Mode and the Brightness can be changed.

SETTINGS display (for Europe)




S01157

SETTINGS display (except for Europe)




S01640

| No. | Function |
|---|---|
| 1 | Select “Day/Night Mode”. “Auto”, “Day”, or “Night” can be selected on the pop-up screen. When “Auto” is selected, the screen changes to day or night mode depending on the position of the headlight switch. |
| 2 | Select “Brightness”. Press “+” or “-” to adjust the brightness. |

## NOTE

**• When the screen is viewed through polarized sunglasses, a rainbow pattern may appear on the screen due to optical characteristics of the screen. If this is disruptive, please operate the screen without polarized sunglasses.**

**• If the screen is set to “Day” mode with the headlight switch turned on, this condition is memorized even with the engine turned off.**

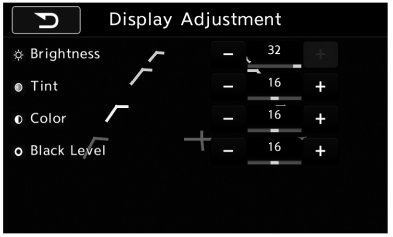
In Camera display, the brightness, tint, color, and black level of the screen can be adjusted.

1. Set the selector lever in the R range.
2. Touch the items to be set after the rear camera monitor is displayed.

## NOTE

**The Camera display can be accessed when the rear camera monitor is displayed.**

Camera display




S01158

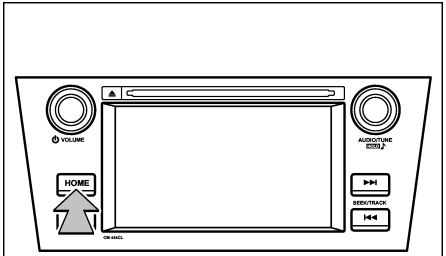
**⚠ WARNING**

**When adjusting the camera display screen, make sure to depress the brake pedal fully to stop the vehicle from moving. Failure to do so may lead to a serious accident.**

## Other settings

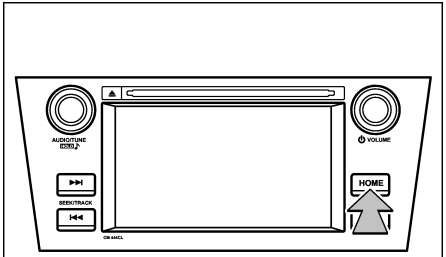
1. Select HOME.

For LHD models:




S01641

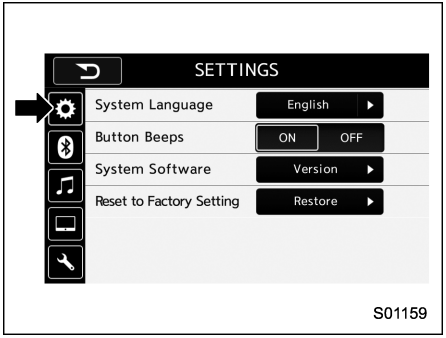
For RHD models:




S01642

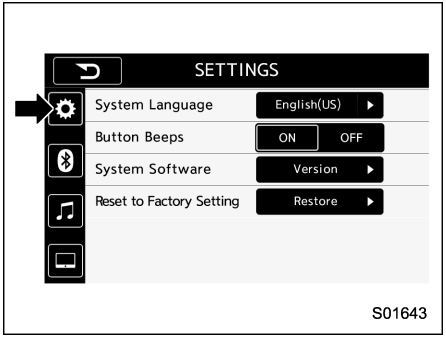
2. Select SETTINGS (SETTINGS).
3. Select the items to be set.

Gear wheel symbol tab (for Europe)




S01159

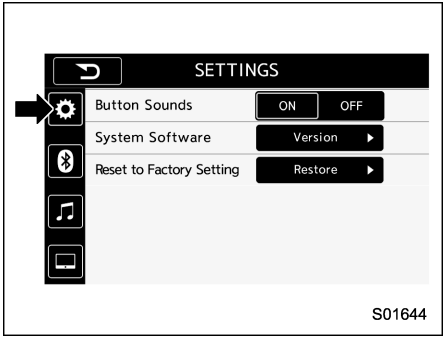
Gear wheel symbol tab (except for Europe)




S01643

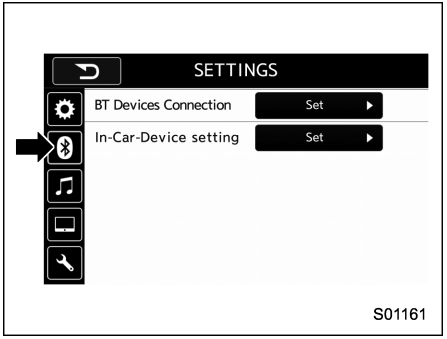
– CONTINUED –

Gear wheel symbol tab (for Australia)

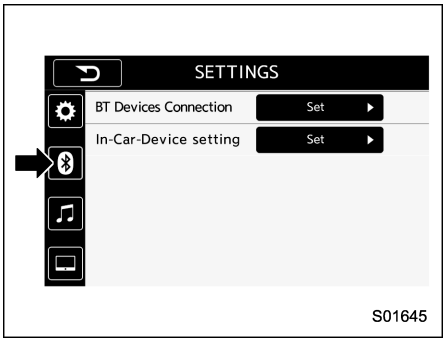



| Item | Function |
|---|---|
| System Language (except for Australia) | Select to change the language. |
| Button Beeps | Select to set the sound beeps on/off. |
| System Software | Select to update software versions. This menu is not used in usual operation. |
| Reset to Factory Setting | Select to reset the device to factory settings. This menu is not used in usual operation.<br>When reset to factory setting, turn ignition off and on again. |

Bluetooth symbol tab (for Europe)

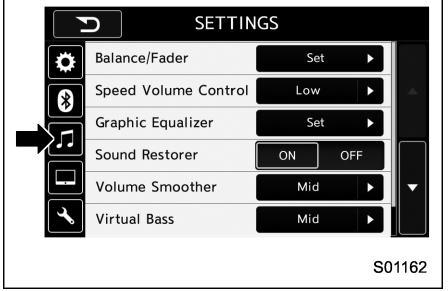



Bluetooth symbol tab (except for Europe)

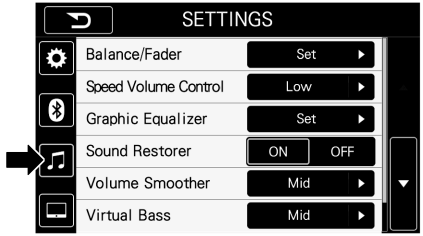



| Item | Function |
|---|---|
| BT Devices Connection | Select to pair/connect the Bluetooth devices. |
| In-Car-Device setting | Select to enter the Bluetooth device name or PIN-code. |

Note symbol tab (for Europe)



Note symbol tab (except for Europe)



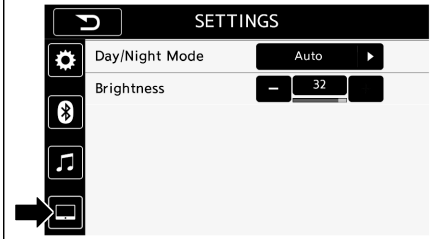

| Item | Function |
|---|---|
| Balance/ Fader | Select to adjust speaker volume balance (right/left and front/rear). |
| Speed Volume Control | Select to adjust speaker volume coupled to vehicle speed. |
| Graphic Equalizer | Select to adjust sound quality in each frequency band. |
| Sound Restorer | Select to add high-pitched tone to the compressed audio file. |
| Volume Smoother | Select to adjust volume difference between audio sources. |
| Virtual Bass | Select to add harmonic tone so that low-pitched tone is strengthened. |

| Item | Function |
|---|---|
| Vocal Image Control | Select to pick-up vocal sound signal from the sound data, and adjust it to right/left or front/rear. |

Monitor symbol tab (for Europe)



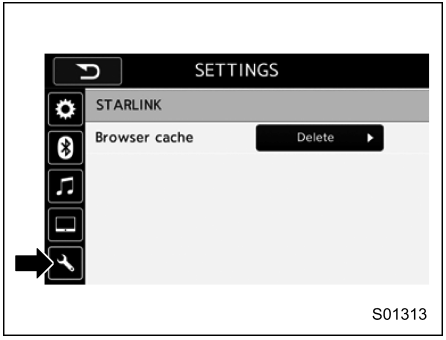

Monitor symbol tab (except for Europe)




| Item | Function |
|---|---|
| Day/Night Mode | Select “Day/Night Mode”. “Auto”, “Day”, or “Night” can be selected on the pop-up screen. When “Auto” is selected, the screen changes to day or night mode depending on the position of the headlight switch. |
| Brightness | Select “Brightness”. |

– CONTINUED –

Spanner symbol tab (for Europe)




| Item | Function |
|---|---|
| Browser cache | Select to initialize cache files that the browser stores. |

# Basic operation

## ■ Some basics

This section describes some of the basic features of the audio/visual system. Some information may not pertain to your system.

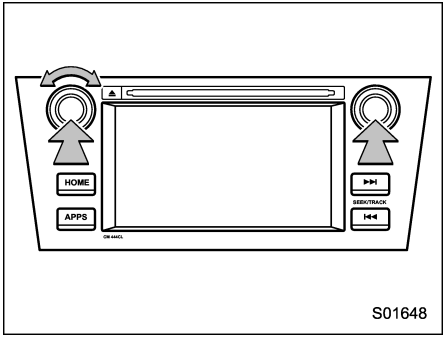
Your audio/visual system works when the ignition switch is turned to the “ACC” or “ON” position.

**⚠ CAUTION**

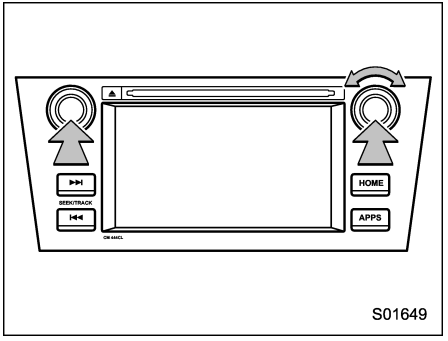
**To prevent the battery from being discharged, do not leave the audio/visual system on longer than necessary when the engine is not running.**

### ▼ Turning the system on and off

For LHD models:




For RHD models:




**“POWER/VOLUME”** knob: Press to turn the audio/visual system on and off. When the system turns on, the last mode is

displayed. Press and hold the knob approx. 1.5 seconds or more, turn the display to off.

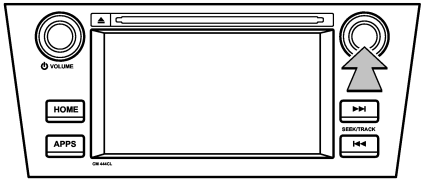
Turn this knob to adjust the volume.

**"AUDIO/TUNE"** knob: Press to display screen buttons for the audio/visual system.

### ▼ Selecting an audio source

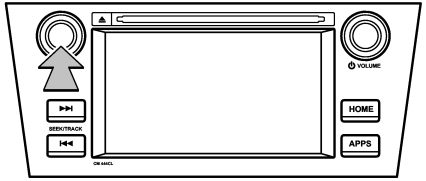
1. Press the "AUDIO/TUNE" knob.

For LHD models:



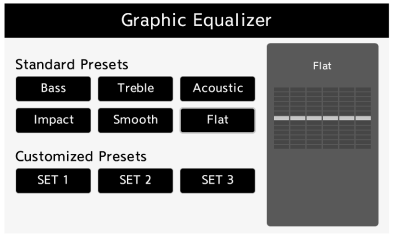

S01650

For RHD models:




S01651

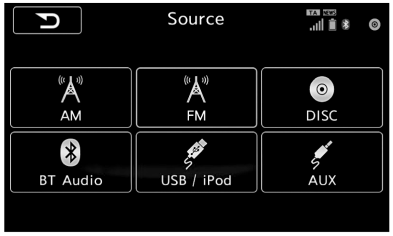
- If the audio control screen appears, select Source (Source) on the audio screen or press the **"AUDIO/TUNE"** knob again.
- Press the "AUDIO/TUNE" knob during lists are displayed, the audio play back screen appears. Press and hold the "AUDIO/TUNE" knob approx. 1.5 seconds or more, the graphic equalizer screen is displayed.




S01652

2. Select the desired source.

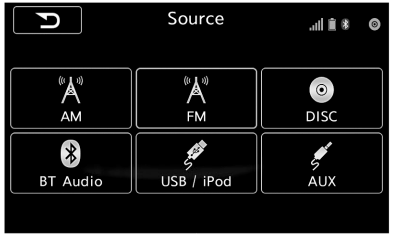
Source select display (for Europe, Australia)




S01654

– CONTINUED –

Source select display (except for Europe)




### ▼ Audio settings

1. Select HOME.
2. Select SETTINGS (SETTINGS).
3. Select the note symbol tab.
4. Select the desired item to be adjusted.

Setting ranges

| Item | Step | Default |
|---|---|---|
| Audio volume | 0-40 | 15 |
| Balance | L9-R9 | 0 (Center) |
| Fader | F9-R9 | 0 (Center) |
| Vocal Image Control | Left/Right: R9-L9<br>Front/Rear: R9-F9 | LHD: Left/Right: R3<br>RHD: Left/Right: L3 |
| Speed Volume Control | OFF, Low, High | Low |
| Graphic Equalizer, SET1-3 | −6-+6 | 0 (Flat) |
| Sound Restorer | ON, OFF | ON |
| Volume Smoother | OFF, Low, Mid, High | Mid |
| Virtual Bass | OFF, Low, Mid, High | Mid |

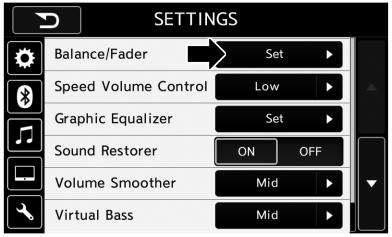
### ▽ "Balance/Fader"

A good balance of the left and right stereo channels and of the front and rear sound levels is important for good quality audio program listening.

Keep in mind that when listening to a stereo recording or broadcast, changing the right/left balance will increase the volume of 1 group of sounds while decreasing the volume of another.

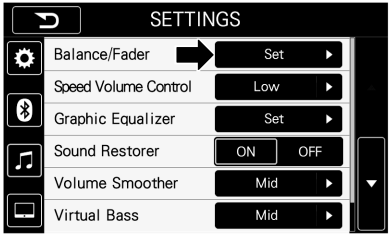
1. Touch the "Set" button of the Balance/Fader function.

For Europe:



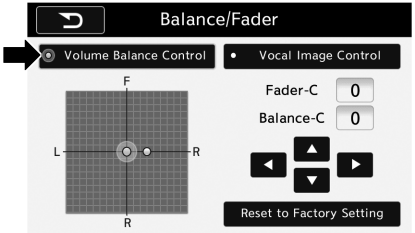

S01168

Except for Europe:



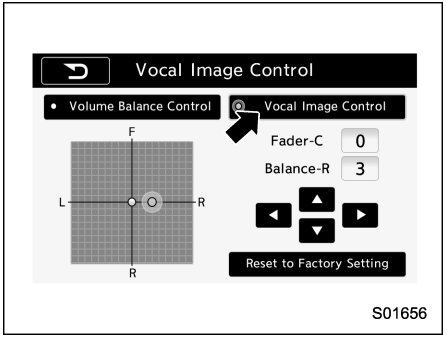

S01655

2. Select the "Volume Balance Control" menu.




S01169

3. Adjust the balance by pressing " ◀ " or " ▶ " button.
4. Adjust the fader by pressing " ▲ " or " ▼ " button.
5. Select the "Vocal Image Control" menu.




S01656

6. Adjust the balance by pressing " ◀ " or " ▶ " button.
7. Adjust the fader by pressing " ▲ " or " ▼ " button.

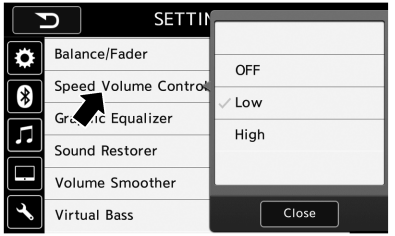
### ▽ "Speed Volume Control"

The system adjusts to the optimum volume and tone quality according to vehicle speed to compensate for increased vehicle noise.

1. Touch the right side button of the Speed Volume Control function, and select "OFF", "Low", or "High" menu. "High" comes to have a bigger effect.

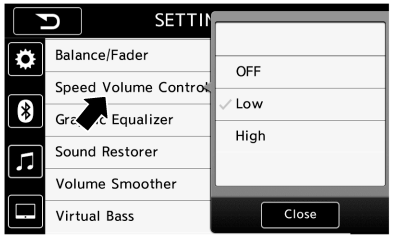
– CONTINUED –

For Europe:




S01171

Except for Europe:



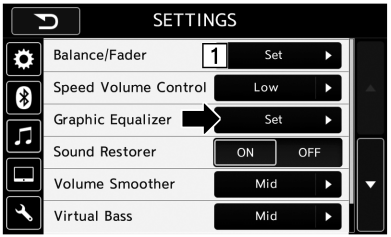

S01657

2. When select “OFF”, speed volume control function is cancelled.

▽ **“Graphic Equalizer”**

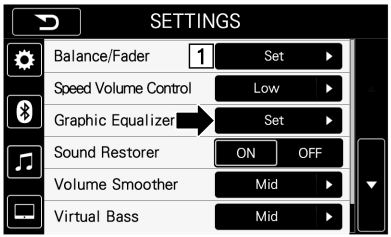
1. Touch the “Set” button of the Graphic Equalizer function.

For Europe:




S01172

Except for Europe:



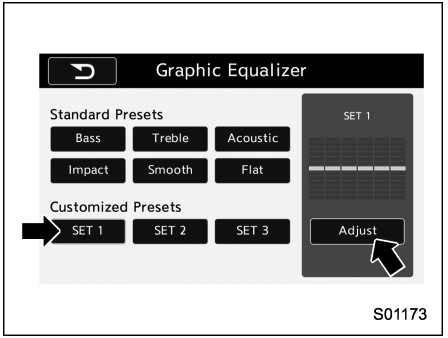

S01658

2. In this mode, 6 preset equalizer patterns and 3 customized patterns are available.

6 preset patterns: “Bass”, “Treble”, “Acoustic”, “Impact”, “Smooth”, “Flat”

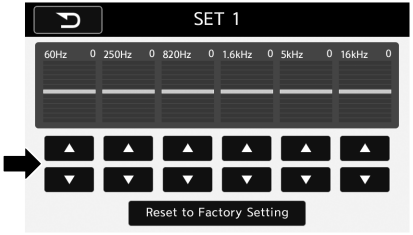
3 customized patterns: “SET 1” - “SET 3”

3. When customizing the equalizer pattern, press one of SET button and then press “Adjust” button.




S01173

4. Adjust the level of each frequency band by pressing “ ▲ ” or “ ▼ ” button.

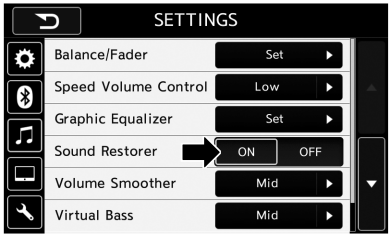



S01176

### ▽ "Sound Restorer"

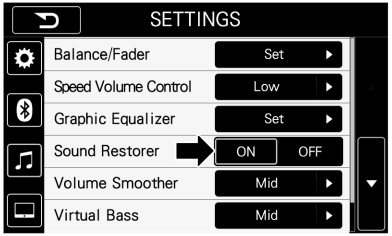
Select "ON" or "OFF" by the right side button of the Sound Restorer function.

For Europe:




S01177

Except for Europe:

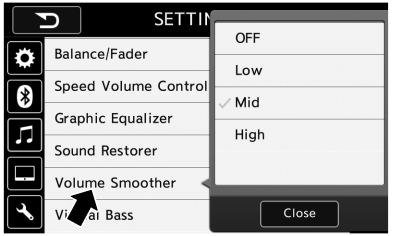



S01659

### ▽ "Volume Smoother"

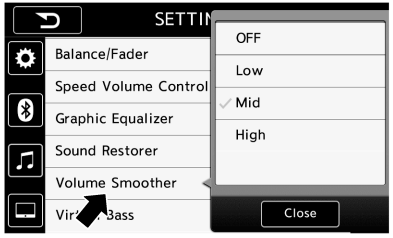
1. Touch the right side button of the Volume Smoother function, and select "OFF", "Low", "Mid" or "High" menu. "High" comes to have a bigger effect.

For Europe:




S01178

Except for Europe:




S01660

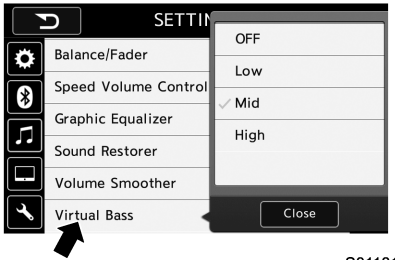
2. When select "OFF", volume smoother function is cancelled.

– CONTINUED –

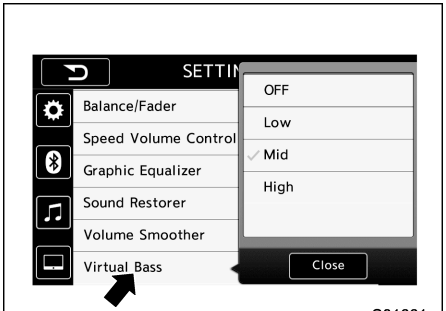
▽ **“Virtual Bass”**

1. Touch the right side button of the Virtual Bass function, and select “OFF”, “Low”, “Mid” or “High” menu. “High” comes to have a bigger effect.

For Europe:



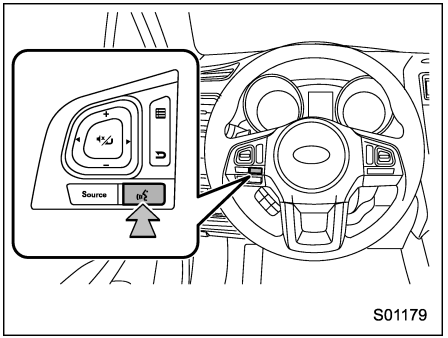

Except for Europe:




2. When select “OFF”, virtual bass function is cancelled.

▼ **Voice command system**

1. Press this switch to operate the voice command system.

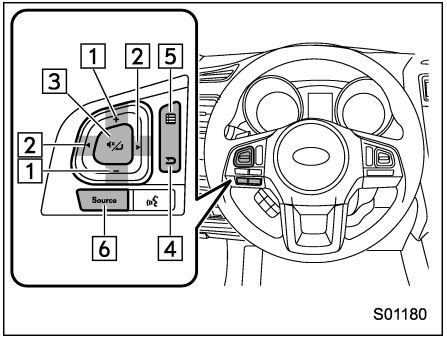



- The voice command system and its list of commands can be operated. Refer to “Voice command system operation” ☞5-101.

# Audio/visual remote controls

## ■ Steering switches

Some parts of the audio/visual system can be adjusted using the switches on the steering wheel.




| No. | Switch |
|---|---|
| 1 | “+/−” switch |
| 2 | “< >” switch |
| 3 | Mute/Enter switch |
| 4 | Back switch |
| 5 | List switch |
| 6 | “Source” switch |

“+/-” switch

| Mode | Operation | Function |
|---|---|---|
| Except list screen | Press | Volume up/down |
| | Press and hold | Volume up/down continuously |
| List screen | Press | Move cursor up/down |

“< >” switch

| Mode | Operation | Function |
|---|---|---|
| AM/FM Radio | Press | Preset channel up/down |
| | Press and hold | Seek up/down continuously while the switch is being pressed |
| Audio CD, MP3/WMA/AAC disc, USB, iPod, BT audio | Press | Select a track/file |
| | Press and hold | Fast forward/rewind |
| List screen | Press | Move cursor left/right |

Mute/Enter switch

| Mode | Operation | Function |
|---|---|---|
| Except list screen | Press | Audio ON/OFF |
| List screen | Press | Select cursor entry |

– CONTINUED –

Back switch

| Mode | Operation | Function |
|---|---|---|
| All (except STARLINK) (for Europe) | Press | Return to the previous screen |
| All | Press and hold | Return to the HOME screen |

List switch

| Mode | Operation | Function |
|---|---|---|
| All (except STARLINK) (for Europe) | Press | Show list screen |

“Source” switch

| Mode | Operation | Function |
|---|---|---|
| All | Press | Change audio modes |

## NOTE (for Europe)

**In the STARLINK mode, some operation may be done on the screen depend on the selected APPS.**

# Tips for operating the audio/visual system

## ■ Operating information

**⚠ CAUTION**

- **To avoid damage to the audio/visual system:**
  - **– Be careful not to spill beverages over the audio/visual system.**
  - **– Do not put anything other than an appropriate disc into the disc slot.**

### NOTE

**The use of a cellular phone inside or near the vehicle may cause a noise from the speakers of the audio/visual system which you are listening to. However, this does not indicate a malfunction.**

#### ▼ Radio

Usually, a problem with radio reception does not mean there is a problem with the radio — it is just the normal result of conditions outside the vehicle.

For example, nearby buildings and terrain can interfere with FM reception. Power lines or phone wires can interfere with AM signals. And of course, radio signals have a limited range. The farther the vehicle is from a station, the weaker its signal will be. In addition, reception conditions change constantly as the vehicle moves.

Here, some common reception problems that probably do not indicate a problem with the radio are described.

##### ▽ FM

Fading and drifting stations: Generally, the effective range of FM is about 40 km (25 miles). Once outside this range, you may notice fading and drifting, which increase with the distance from the radio transmitter. They are often accompanied by distortion.

Multi-path: FM signals are reflective, making it possible for 2 signals to reach the vehicle's antenna at the same time. If this happens, the signals will cancel each other out, causing a momentary flutter or loss of reception.

Static and fluttering: These occur when signals are blocked by buildings, trees or other large objects. Increasing the bass level may reduce static and fluttering.

Station swapping: If the FM signal being listened to is interrupted or weakened, and there is another strong station nearby on the FM band, the radio may tune in the second station until the original signal can be picked up again.

##### ▽ AM

Fading: AM broadcasts are reflected by the upper atmosphere — especially at night. These reflected signals can interfere with those received directly from the radio station, causing the radio station to sound alternately strong and weak.

Station interference: When a reflected signal and a signal received directly from a radio station are very nearly the same frequency, they can interfere with each other, making it difficult to hear the broadcast.

Static: AM is easily affected by external sources of electrical noise, such as high tension power lines, lightening or electrical motors. This results in static.

– CONTINUED –

### ▼ CD player and disc

- This CD player is intended for use with 12 cm (4.7 in) discs only.
- Extremely high temperatures can keep the CD player from working. On hot days, use the air conditioning system to cool the inside of the vehicle before using the player.
- Bumpy roads or other vibrations may make the CD player skip.
- If moisture gets into the CD player, the discs may not be able to be played. Remove the discs from the player and wait until it dries.

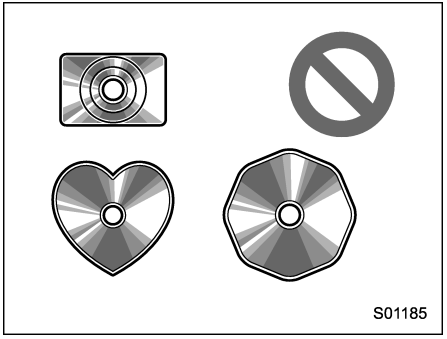
**⚠ WARNING**

**CD players use an invisible laser beam which could cause hazardous radiation exposure if directed outside the unit. Be sure to operate the player correctly.**

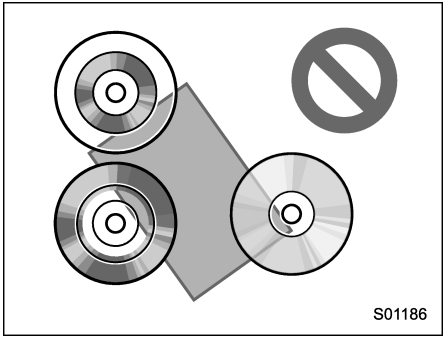
| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Audio CDs | COMPACT disc DIGITAL AUDIO | COMPACT disc DIGITAL AUDIO TEXT |
| | COMPACT disc DIGITAL AUDIO Recordable | COMPACT disc DIGITAL AUDIO ReWritable |

- Use only discs marked as shown above. The following products may not be playable on your player:
  - SACD
  - dts CD
  - Copy-protected CD
  - Video CD

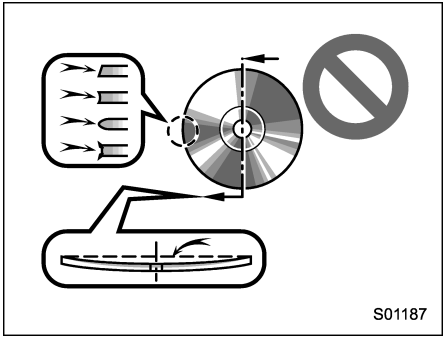
Special shaped discs



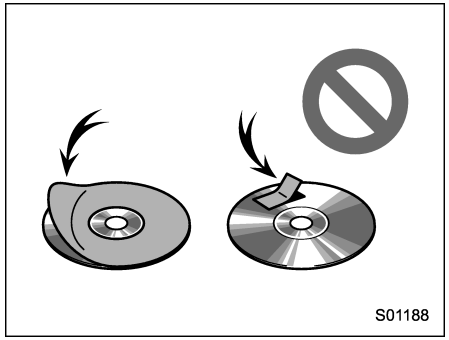

Transparent/translucent discs




Low quality discs

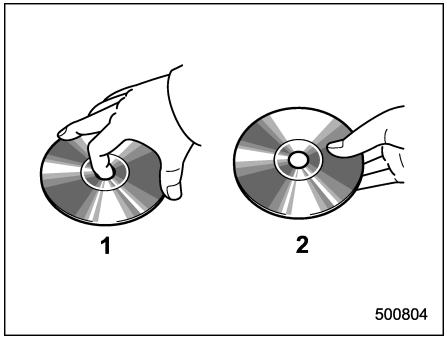


Labeled discs



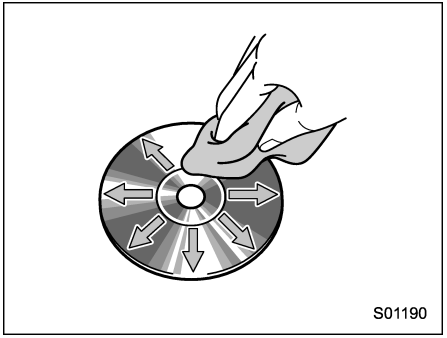

**⚠ CAUTION**

- **Do not use special shaped, transparent/translucent, low quality or labeled discs such as those shown in the illustrations. The use of such discs may damage the player, or it may be impossible to eject the disc.**
- **This system is not designed for use of Dual Discs. Do not use Dual Discs because they may cause damage to the player.**
- **Do not use discs with a protection ring. The use of such discs may damage the player, or it may be impossible to eject the disc.**
- **Do not use printable discs. The use of such discs may damage the player, or it may be impossible to eject the disc.**




1) Correct
2) Wrong

- Handle discs carefully, especially when inserting them. Hold them on the edge and do not bend them. Avoid getting fingerprints on them, particularly on the shiny side.
- Dirt, scratches, warping, pin holes or other disc damage could cause the player to skip or to repeat a section of a track. (To see a pin hole, hold the disc up to the light.)
- Remove discs from the players when not in use. Store them in their plastic cases away from moisture, heat and direct sunlight.




**To clean a disc**: Wipe it with a soft, lint-free cloth that has been dampened with water. Wipe in a straight line from the center to the edge of the disc (not in circles). Dry it with another soft, lint-free cloth. Do not use a conventional record cleaner or anti-static device.

### ▽ CD-R/RW discs

- CD-R/CD-RW discs that have not been subject to the “finalizing process” (a process that allows discs to be played on a conventional CD player) cannot be played.
- It may not be possible to play CD-R/CD-RW discs recorded on a music CD recorder or a personal computer because

– CONTINUED –

of disc characteristics, scratches or dirt on the disc, or dirt, condensation, etc. on the lens of the unit.

- It may not be possible to play discs recorded on a personal computer depending on the application settings and the environment. Record with the correct format. (For details, contact the appropriate application manufacturers of the applications.)
- CD-R/CD-RW discs may be damaged by direct exposure to sunlight, high temperatures or other storage conditions. The unit may be unable to play some damaged discs.
- If you insert a CD-RW disc into the player, playback will begin more slowly than with a conventional CD or CD-R disc.
- Recordings on CD-R/CD-RW cannot be played using the DDCD (Double Density CD) system.

**▼ USB memory device**

- USB communication formats: USB 1.1/2.0 HS (480 Mbps) and FS (12 Mbps)
- File formats: FAT 16/32
- Correspondence class: Mass storage class

**▼ iPod**

The following iPod, iPod nano, iPod classic, iPod touch and iPhone devices can be used with this system.

Made for

- iPod touch (5th generation)*
- iPod touch (4th generation)
- iPod touch (3rd generation)
- iPod touch (2nd generation)
- iPod touch (1st generation)
- iPod classic
- iPod nano (7th generation)*
- iPod nano (6th generation)*
- iPod nano (5th generation)
- iPod nano (4th generation)
- iPod nano (3rd generation)
- iPod nano (2nd generation)*
- iPod nano (1st generation)*
- iPhone 5s*
- iPhone 5c*
- iPhone 5*
- iPhone 4s
- iPhone 4
- iPhone 3GS
- iPhone 3G
- iPhone

*: iPod video not supported

Depending on differences between models or software versions etc., some models might be incompatible with this system.

**▼ File information**

**Compatible compressed files (Audio)**

| Item | USB | DISC |
|---|---|---|
| Compatible file format | MP3/WMA/AAC | |
| Folders in the device | Maximum 512 | Maximum 255 |
| Files in the device | Maximum 8000 | Maximum 512 |
| Files per folder | Maximum 255 | — |

**Corresponding sampling frequency (Audio)**

| File type | Frequency (kHz) |
|---|---|
| MP3 files: MPEG 1 LAYER 3 | 32/44.1/48 |
| MP3 files: MPEG 2 LSF LAYER 3 | 16/22.05/24 |
| WMA files: Ver. 7, 8, 9 (9.1/9.2) | 32/48/64/80/96/128/160/192 |
| AAC files: MPEG4/AAC-LC | 48/44.1/32/24/22.05/16/12/11.025/8 |

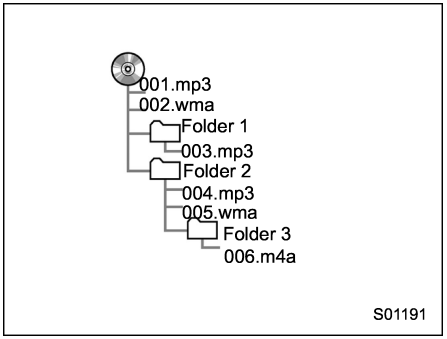
**Corresponding bit rates (Audio)**

| File type | Bit rate (kbps) |
|---|---|
| MP3 files:<br>MPEG 1 LAYER 3 | 32 - 320 |
| MP3 files:<br>MPEG 2 LSF LAYER 3 | 8 - 160 |
| WMA files: Ver. 7, 8 | CBR 48 - 192 |
| WMA files:<br>Ver. 9 (9.1/9.2) | CBR 32 - 192 |
| AAC files:<br>MPEG4/AAC-LC | 16 - 320 |

(Variable Bit Rate (VBR) compatible)

- MP3 (MPEG Audio Layer 3), WMA (Windows Media Audio) and AAC (Advanced Audio Coding) are audio compression standards.
- This system can play MP3/WMA/AAC files on CD-R, CD-RW discs, USB memory, and Bluetooth device.
- This system can play disc recordings compatible with ISO 9660 level 1 and level 2 and with the Romeo and Joliet file system.
- When naming an MP3/WMA/AAC file, add an appropriate file extension (.mp3/.wma/.m4a).
- This system plays back files with .mp3/.wma/.m4a file extensions as MP3/WMA/AAC files respectively. To prevent noise and playback errors, use the appropriate file extension.
- This system can play only the first session when using multi-session compatible CDs.
- MP3 files are compatible with the ID3 Tag Ver. 1.0, Ver. 1.1, Ver. 2.2 and Ver. 2.3 formats. This system cannot display disc title, track title and artist name in other formats.
- WMA/AAC files can contain a WMA/AAC tag that is used in the same way as an ID3 tag. WMA/AAC tags carry information such as track title and artist name.
- The emphasis function is available only when playing MP3/WMA files recorded at 32, 44.1 and 48 kHz.
- This system can play back AAC files encoded by iTunes.
- The sound quality of MP3/WMA files generally improves with higher bit rates. In order to achieve a reasonable level of sound quality, discs recorded with a bit rate of at least 128 kbps are recommended.
- The MP3/WMA player does not play back MP3/WMA files from discs recorded using packet write data transfer (UDF format). Discs should be recorded using “pre-mastering” software rather than packetwrite software.
- M3u playlists are not compatible with the audio device.
- MP3i (MP3 interactive) and MP3PRO formats are not compatible with the audio device.
- The player is compatible with VBR (Variable Bit Rate).
- When playing back files recorded as VBR (Variable Bit Rate) files, the play time will not be correctly displayed if the fast forward or reverse operations are used.
- It is not possible to check folders that do not include MP3/WMA/AAC files.
- MP3/WMA/AAC files in folders up to 8 levels deep can be played. However, the start of playback may be delayed when using discs containing numerous levels of folders. For this reason, we recommend creating discs with no more than 2 levels of folders.

– CONTINUED –




- The play order of the compact disc with the structure shown above is as follows:

001.mp3 → 002.wma . . . → 006.m4a

- The order changes depending on the personal computer and MP3/WMA/AAC encoding software you use.

### ▼ Terms

#### ▽ Packet write

- This is a general term that describes the process of writing data on-demand to CD-R, etc., in the same way that data is written to floppy or hard discs.

#### ▽ ID3 tag

- This is a method of embedding track-related information in an MP3 file. This embedded information can include the track number, track title, the artist's name, the album title, the music genre, the year of production, comments, cover art and other data. The contents can be freely edited using software with ID3 tag editing functions. Although the tags are restricted to a number of characters, the information can be viewed when the track is played back.

#### ▽ WMA tag

- WMA files can contain a WMA tag that is used in the same way as an ID3 tag. WMA tags carry information such as track title and artist name.

#### ▽ ISO 9660 format

- This is the international standard for the formatting of CD-ROM folders and files. For the ISO 9660 format, there are 2 levels of regulations.
- Level 1: The file name is in 8.3 format (8 character file names, with a 3 character file extension. File names must be composed of one-byte capital letters and numbers. The "_" symbol may also be included.)
- Level 2: The file name can have up to 31 characters (including the separation mark "." and file extension). Each folder must contain fewer than 8 hierarchies.

#### ▽ MP3

- MP3 is an audio compression standard determined by a working group (MPEG) of the ISO (International Standard Organization). MP3 compresses audio data to about 1/10 the size of that on conventional discs.

#### ▽ WMA

- WMA (Windows Media Audio) is an audio compression format developed by Microsoft®. It compresses files into a size smaller than that of MP3 files. The decoding formats for WMA files are Ver. 7, 8 and 9.
- This product is protected by certain intellectual property rights of Microsoft Corporation and third parties. Use or distribution of such technology outside of this product is prohibited without a license from Microsoft or an authorized Microsoft subsidiary and third parties.

#### ▽ AAC

- AAC is short for Advanced Audio Coding and refers to an audio compression technology standard used with

MPEG2 and MPEG4.

▼ **Error messages**

| Mode | Message | Explanation |
|---|---|---|
| CD | “Disc read error.” | ● This indicates that no MP3/WMA/AAC files are included in the disc.<br>● This indicates that the disc is dirty, damaged, or it was inserted upside down. Clean the disc or insert it correctly. It indicates a disc which is not playable is inserted. |
| | “Please eject disc.” | There is a trouble inside the system. Eject the disc. |
| USB | “Media not connected. Press AUDIO/TUNE knob to exit.” | This indicates a problem in the USB memory or its connection. Refer to “Connecting and disconnecting a USB memory/portable device” ☞5-8. |
| | “No audio file.” | This indicates that no MP3/WMA/AAC files are included in the USB memory. |
| | “Unplayable file” | This indicates that the accessed file cannot play back. |
| iPod | “Media not connected. Press AUDIO/TUNE knob to exit.” | This indicates that a USB device/iPod is not connected to the system. |
| | “No audio file” | This indicates that there is no audio file in the connected iPod. |
| | “Unplayable file” | This indicates that the accessed file cannot play back. |

## NOTE

**If the malfunction is not rectified: We recommend that you take your vehicle to your SUBARU dealer.**

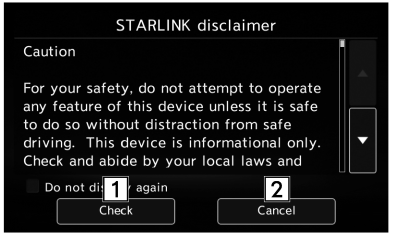
# Useful information

## ■ STARLINK (for Europe)

The STARLINK function allows the system to link with a smartphone using Bluetooth.

### ▼ Displaying STARLINK information

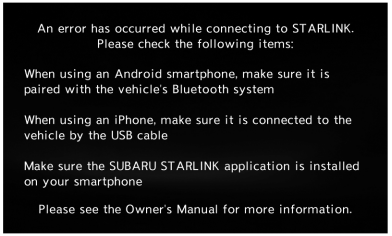
1. Press APPS key on the home screen, or press APPS button, the STARLINK disclaimer screen or the error screen is displayed.




S01226

| No. | Function |
|---|---|
| 1 | Check: Go to APPS screen. |
| 2 | Cancel: STARLINK disclaimer screen is disappeared and return to the previous screen. |

STARLINK disclaimer error screen

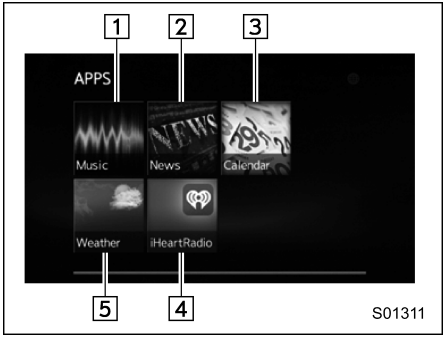



S01310

The error screen will be displayed due to one of the following possible reasons.

- Your smartphone and the system has not been connected via USB (for iPhone) or Bluetooth (for Android).
- STARLINK APPS has not been activated.

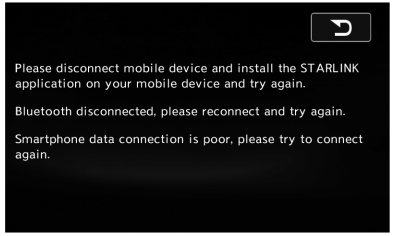
2. If you press Check (Check) on the STARLINK disclaimer screen, the APPS main screen will be displayed.




S01311

| No. | Function |
|---|---|
| 1 | Select to go to the Music APPS screen. |
| 2 | Select to go to the News APPS screen. |
| 3 | Select to go to the Calendar APPS screen. |
| 4 | Select to go to the Weather APPS screen. |
| 5 | Select to go to the iHeartRadio APPS screen. |

Error screen that is displayed while using STARLINK




The error screen will be displayed while using STARLINK due to one of the following possible reasons.

- When your smartphone has no service or the Bluetooth communication is not possible.
- When your smartphone is turned off.
- When the STARLINK APPS is quit.
- When connection to the STARLINK server is not possible.
- When a problem occurs other than a server error.

## NOTE

**When using the STARLINK function, a disclaimer screen will be displayed. Be sure to fully read the contents before using the function.**

## NOTE

**Connection method**
**iPhone: USB**
**Android: Bluetooth**

**Supported devices**
**iPhone: iPhone 4/iPhone 4s/iPhone 5/ iPhone 5c/iPhone 5s (iOS Ver. 5.1 or later)**
**Android: (OS Ver. 4.0 or later)**

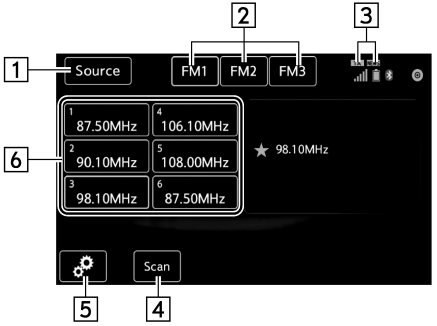
# Radio operation

## ■ AM/FM radio

### ▼ Overview

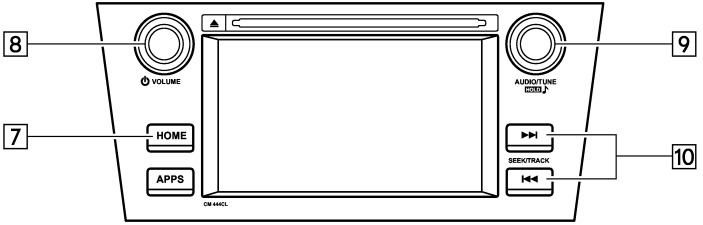
Select AM (AM) or FM (FM) on the "Select Audio Source (Select Audio Source)" screen. Refer to "Selecting an audio source" ☞5-17.

Control screen (for Europe)



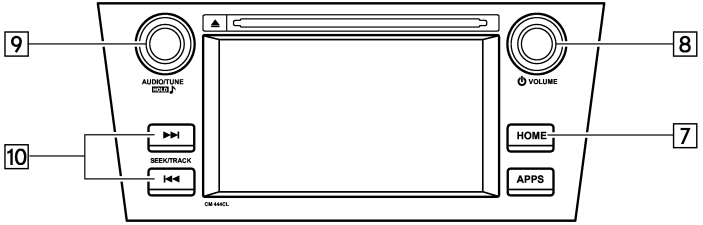

S01662

Control panel (for Europe LHD models)



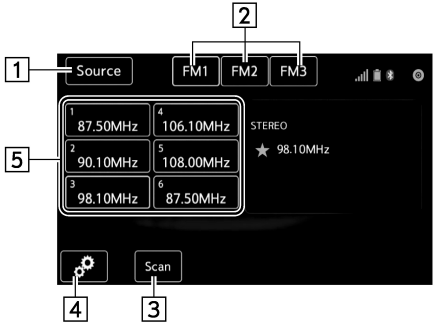

S01760

Control panel (for Europe RHD models)




S01761

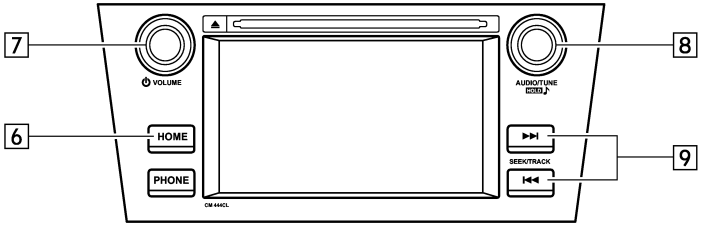
Control screen (except for Europe)




S01663

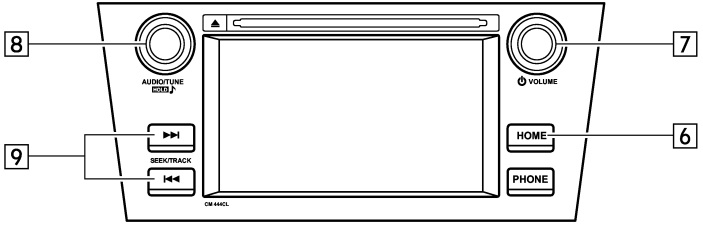
– CONTINUED –

Control panel (except for Europe LHD models)



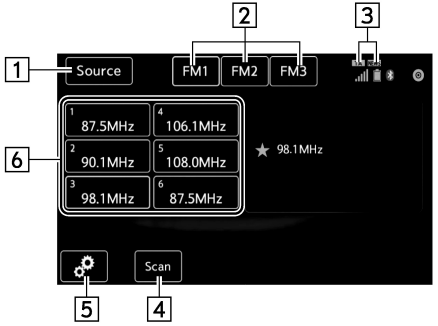

S01762

Control panel (except for Europe RHD models)



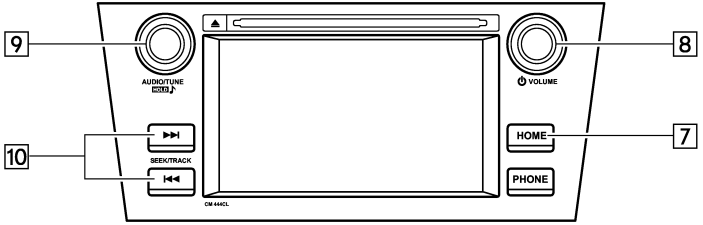

S01763

Control screen (for Australia)




S01664

Control panel (for Australia)




S01764

– CONTINUED –

For Europe, for Australia:

| No. | Function |
|---|---|
| 1 | Select to display the audio source selection screen. |
| 2 | Select to change the FM band. |
| 3 | TA icon: It is displayed when turning the TA setting ON on the FM Options screen. It is not displayed when turning the TA setting OFF.<br>NEWS icon: It is displayed when turning the News setting ON on the FM Options screen. It is not displayed when turning the News setting OFF. |
| 4 | Preset SCAN: Select to search for stations stored in the preset channels in the direction of a higher frequency.<br>When a receivable station is found, the system tunes in to the frequency for 10 seconds.<br>The preset scan ends when all the preset channels have been scanned. |
| 5 | Option key: Select to open the Option screen. |
| 6 | If you press a key for less than 1.5 seconds, the system tunes in to the stored frequency.<br>If you press a key for more than 1.5 seconds, the system stores the frequency to the selected preset channel. Refer to “Presetting a station” ☞5-39. |
| 7 | Select to display the sound setting screen. Refer to “Basic operation” ☞5-16. |
| 8 | Turn to adjust the volume. Press to turn the audio system on/off. |
| 9 | Turn to step up/down frequencies. Press to select an audio mode. |
| 10 | Select to seek for a station/channel. Select and hold for continuous seek. |

Except for Europe:

| No. | Function |
|---|---|
| 1 | Select to display the audio source selection screen. |
| 2 | Select to change the FM band. |
| 3 | Select to scan radio channels. This function enables searching for receivable stations automatically, and tunes in to a frequency for 5 seconds if a station is found. When the 5-second period has elapsed, the system searches for the next receivable station again, and tunes in to the frequency for 5 seconds. |
| 4 | Option key: Select to open the Option screen. |
| 5 | If you press a key for less than 1.5 seconds, the system tunes to the stored frequency.<br>If you press a key for more than 1.5 seconds, the system stores the frequency to the selected preset channel. Refer to “Presetting a station” ☞5-39. |
| 6 | Select to display the sound setting screen. Refer to “Basic operation” ☞5-16. |
| 7 | Turn to adjust the volume. Press to turn the audio system on/off. |
| 8 | Turn to step up/down frequencies. Press to select an audio mode. |
| 9 | Select to seek for a station/channel. Select and hold for continuous seek. |

## NOTE

**The radio automatically changes to stereo reception when a stereo broadcast is received.**

### ▼ Presetting a station

The radio mode has a preset function and can store the amount of stations as follows.

AM: up to 6 stations for each band (AM1/AM2)

FM: up to 6 stations for each band (FM1/FM2/FM3)

When a station name has been acquired, the station name will be displayed instead of the frequency.

1. Tune in the desired station.
2. If you press a key for more than 1.5 seconds, the system stores the frequency to the selected preset channel.

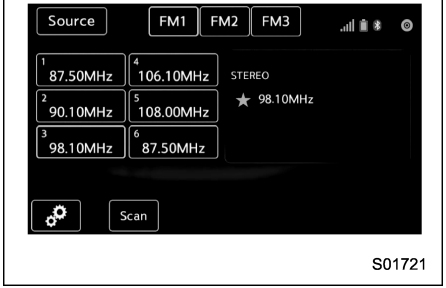
For Europe, for Australia:




S01670

When a station name has been acquired, the station name will be displayed instead of the frequency.

Except for Europe:




S01721

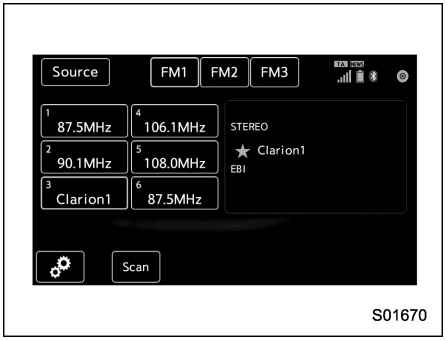
- To change the preset station to a different one, select and hold the preset station.

### ▼ Radio data system (for Europe, for Australia)

RDS (Radio Data System) is an FM multiplex broadcasting system that is popular in Europe, and it transmits digital information as subcarrier signals on FM radio. RDS broadcasts program information and text information, etc.

The transmitted data of RDS contains the control data so that the system can continue to receive the same radio program when driving across several locations.

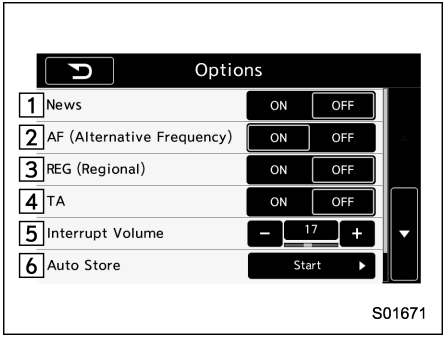
#### ▽ Selecting a desired options screen (for Europe)




S01670

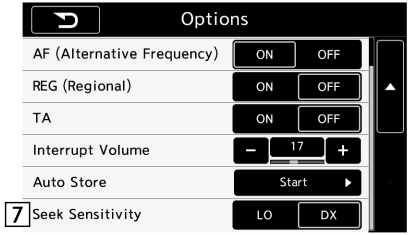
1. Select Option (Option).

Options screen (FM radio)



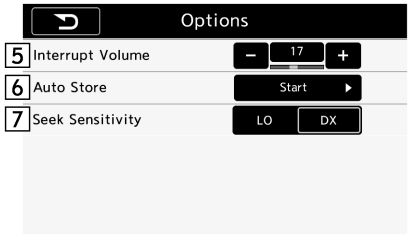

S01671

– CONTINUED –



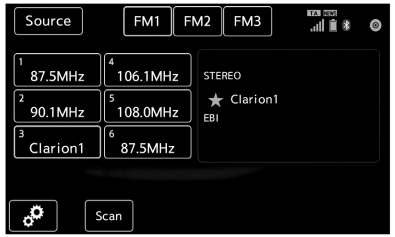

S01672

Options screen (AM radio)




S01673

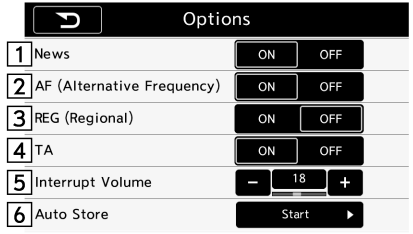
▽ **Selecting a desired options screen (for Australia)**




S01670

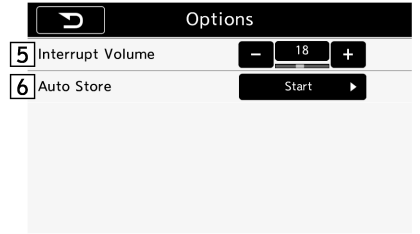
1. Select **Option** (Option).

Options screen (FM radio)




S01674

Options screen (AM radio)




S01675

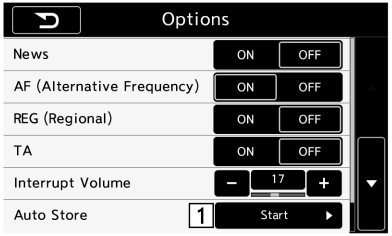
| No. | Function |
|---|---|
| 1 | Select to turn the news interrupt function ON and OFF (Default setting: OFF). If the setting is ON, when the current station broadcasts a news program, the system will automatically switch the audio source to the radio (News). |
| 2 | Select to turn the AF (Alternative Frequency) setting ON and OFF (Default setting: ON). |
| 3 | Select to turn the REG (Regional) setting ON and OFF (Default setting: OFF). If the setting is ON, the system will automatically search the station of which the PI code matches completely. If the AF setting is OFF, the button is disabled and turning ON/OFF is not possible. |

| No. | Function |
|---|---|
| 4 | Select to turn the TA (Traffic Announcement) interrupt function ON and OFF (Default setting: OFF). If the setting is ON, when the current station broadcasts TA, the system will automatically switch the audio source to the radio (TA). |
| 5 | Select to adjust the volume when interrupting (Alarm/TA/News) between 0 and 40 (Default setting: 17). |
| 6 | Select to start the Auto Store function. |
| 7 | Select to switch the sensitivity setting between LO and DX during the seek function (Default setting: DX). The set value is applied both to FM and AM. If you change the setting from DX to LO for FM (Options screen), the setting for AM (Options screen) will be also changed to LO. |

### ▽ Selecting a desired auto store

1. Select Start (Start) on the options screen and the following screen will be displayed.

For Europe, for Australia:




S01676

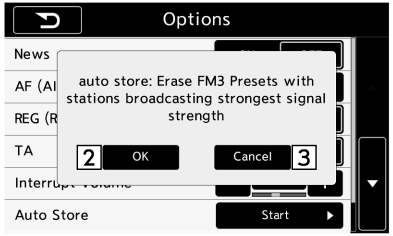
Except for Europe:




S01722

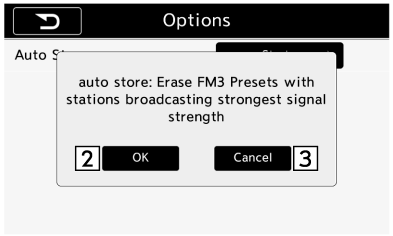
2. If you select OK, the Auto Store screen will be displayed.

For Europe, for Australia:




S01677

Except for Europe:




S01723

3. If you select Cancel on the Auto Store screen, the screen will go back to the Options screen.

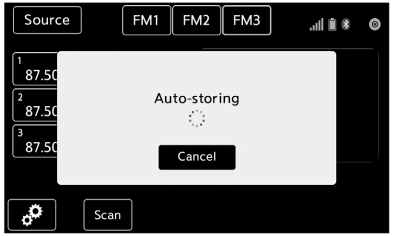
– CONTINUED –

For Europe, for Australia:




S01678

Except for Europe:




S01724

### ▼ Interruption by Alarm, Traffic Announcement or News (for Europe and Australia)

- Even when another audio source is selected, if the Alarm (emergency broadcast) or TA (Traffic Announcement) or a news program is received, the system automatically switches to the Radio (FM) mode. When the corresponding program is ended or the Cancel key is selected, the screen will return to one before the interruption.
- You can turn the interruption function of TA and news on/off in the Options screen. The Alarm interruption function cannot be turned off.
- The priority order of an interruption is as follows.

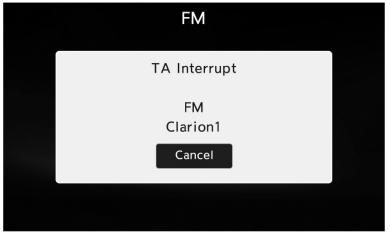
Phone > Alarm > TA > News

Alarm interruption screen:




S01756

TA interruption screen:




S01757

News interruption screen:




S01758

# Media operation

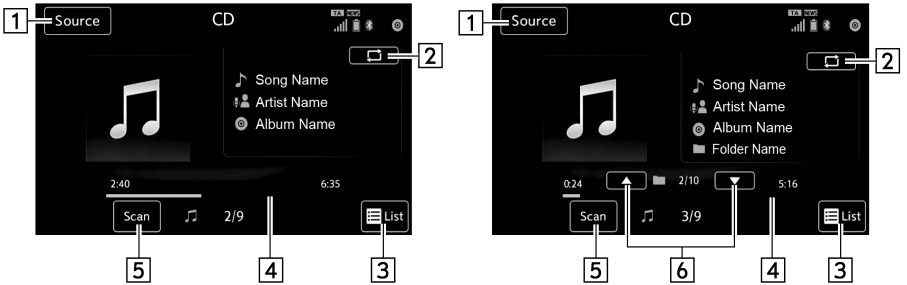
## ■ CD

### ▼ Overview

The CD operation screen can be reached by the following methods:

- Insert a disc. Refer to “Loading and unloading a disc” ☞5-8.
- Select DISC (DISC) on the “Select Audio Source (Select Audio Source)” screen. Refer to “Selecting an audio source” ☞5-17.

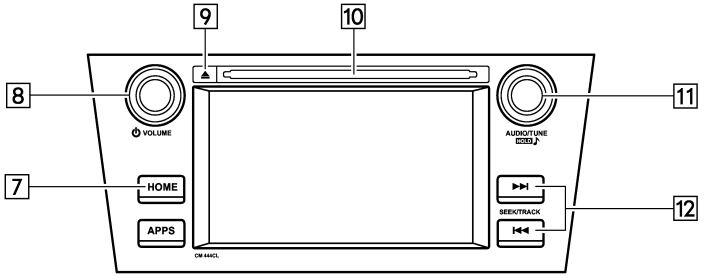
Control screen (for Europe, for Australia)




S01679

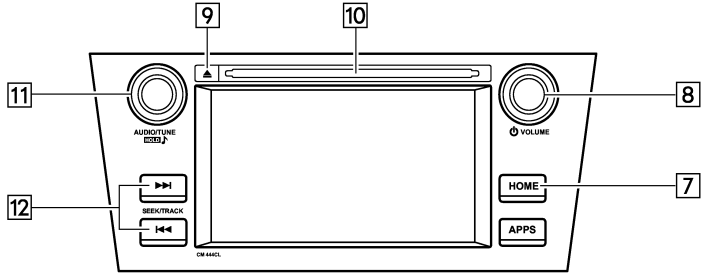
**Left: Audio CD, Right: MP3/WMA/AAC disc**

Control panel (for Europe LHD models)



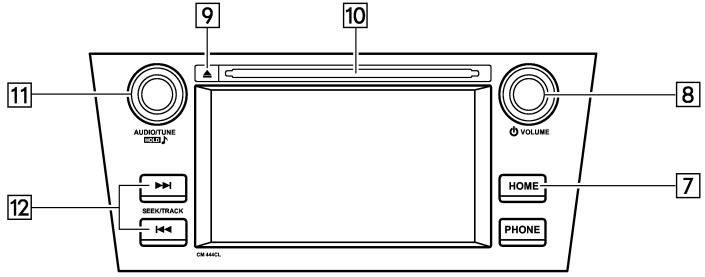

S01680

Control panel (for Europe RHD models)




S01683

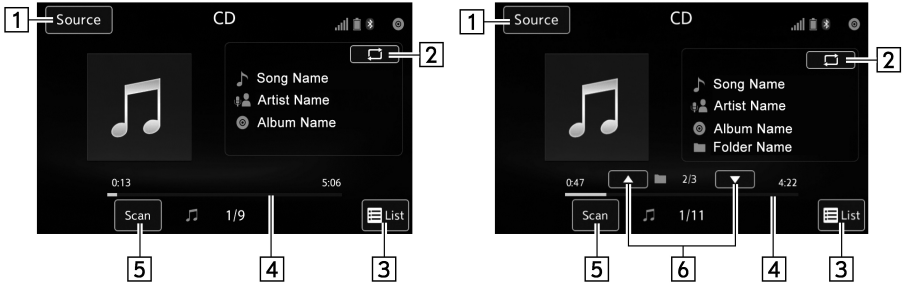
Control panel (for Australia)




S01682

– CONTINUED –

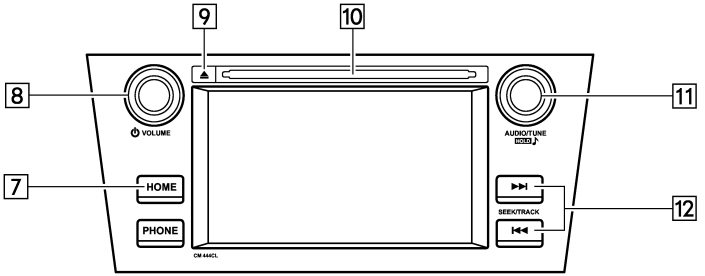
Control screen (except for Europe)




S01196

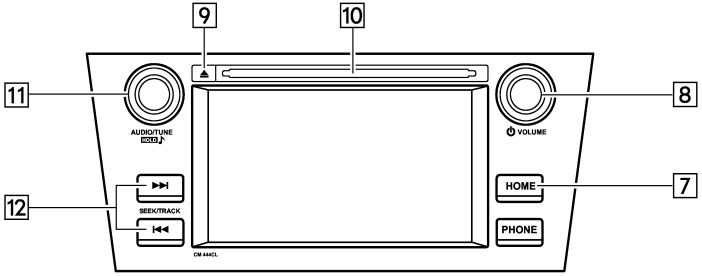
**Left: Audio CD, Right: MP3/WMA/AAC disc**

Control panel (except for Europe LHD models)




S01681

Control panel (except for Europe RHD models)

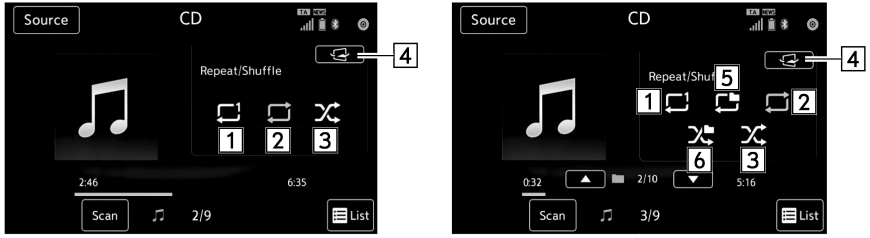



S01684

| No. | Function |
|---|---|
| 1 | Select to display the audio source selection screen. |
| 2 | Select to display Trick Play Settings screen. |
| 3 | Audio CD<br>Select to display a track list.<br>MP3/WMA/AAC disc<br>Select to display a folder list |
| 4 | Shows progress. |
| 5 | The tracks in the disc are played back for ten seconds each from the beginning of the track. |
| 6 | MP3/WMA/AAC disc<br>Select to choose a folder. |
| 7 | Select to display the sound setting screen. Refer to “Basic operation” ☞5-16. |
| 8 | Turn to adjust volume.<br>Press to turn the audio system on/off. |
| 9 | Press to eject a disc. |
| 10 | Disc slot |
| 11 | Turn to select a track/file.<br>Press to select an audio mode. |
| 12 | Select to select a track/file.<br>Select and hold to fast forward/rewind. |

***– CONTINUED –***

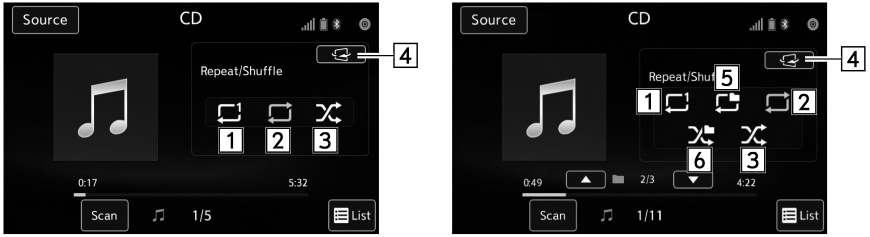
Control screen (Trick Play) (for Europe, for Australia)




S01685

**Left: Audio CD, Right: MP3/WMA/AAC disc**

Control screen (Trick Play) (except for Europe)




S01198

**Left: Audio CD, Right: MP3/WMA/AAC disc**

| No. | Function |
|---|---|
| 1 | Select to start 1 Track Repeat. |
| 2 | Select to start Repeat All. |
| 3 | Select to start Shuffle All. |
| 4 | Return to the control screen. |
| 5 | Select to start Folder Repeat. |
| 6 | Select to start Shuffle Folder. |

## NOTE

**• If a disc contains CD-DA files and MP3/WMA/AAC files, only the CD-DA files can be played back.**
**• If a CD-TEXT disc is inserted, the title of the disc and track will be displayed. Up to 32 characters can be displayed.**
**• If the disc contains no CD-TEXT, only the track number would be displayed on the screen.**
**• If you press the "Mute" switch on the steering wheel during playback, the track pauses. If you press the "Mute" switch once again, the playback will resume.**

## ■ USB memory

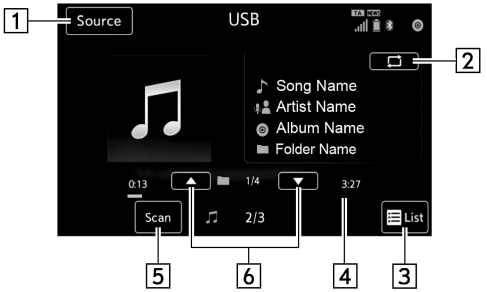
Audio files on the USB memory can be played back.

### ▼ Overview

The USB Audio playback screen can be reached by the following methods:

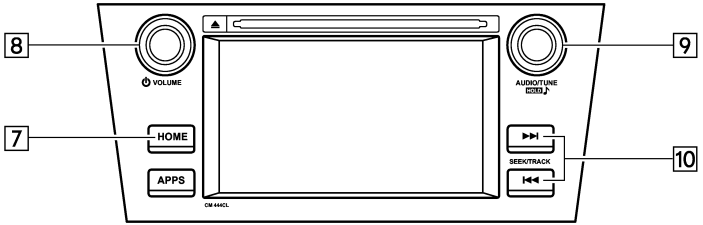
- Connect a USB memory. Refer to “Connecting and disconnecting a USB memory/portable device” ☞5-8.
- Select USB / iPod (USB / iPod) on the “Select Audio Source (Select Audio Source)” screen. Refer to “Selecting an audio source” ☞5-17.

Control screen (for Europe, for Australia)




S01686

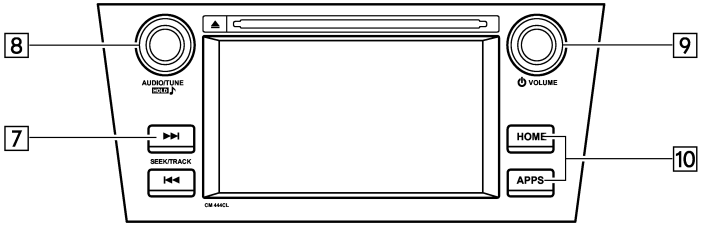
Control panel (for Europe LHD models)




S01688

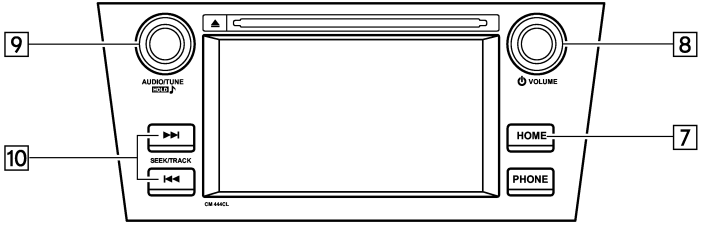
– CONTINUED –

Control panel (for Europe RHD models)



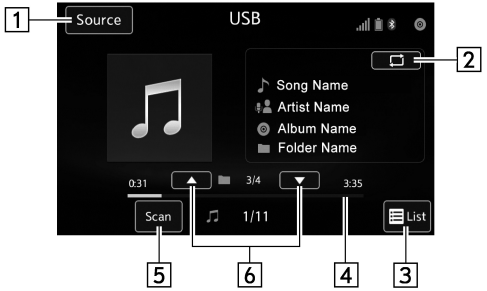

S01691

Control panel (for Australia)



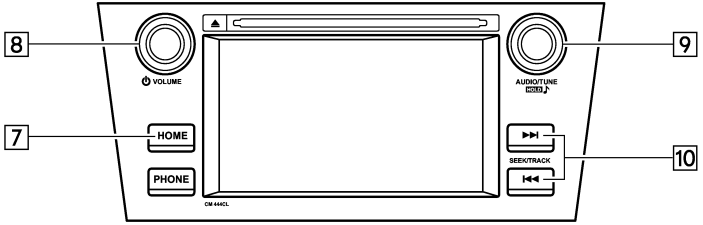

S01690

Control screen (except for Europe)




S01199

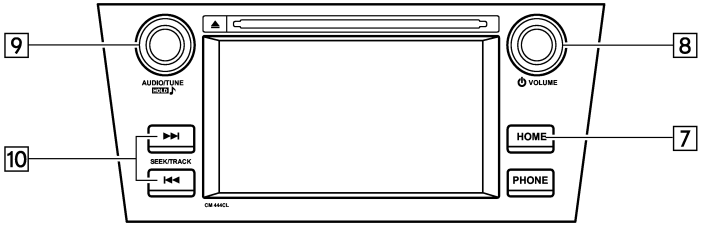
Control panel (except for Europe LHD models)




S01689

– CONTINUED –

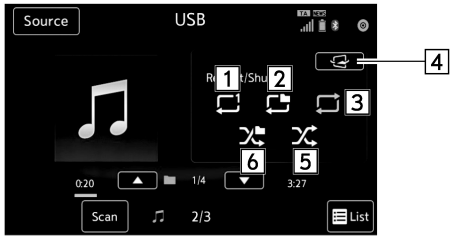
Control panel (except for Europe RHD models)




S01692

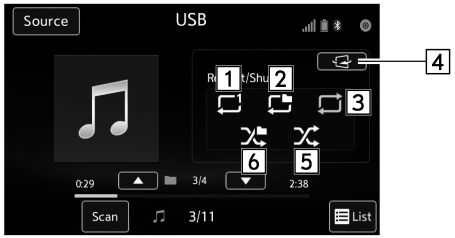
| No. | Function |
|---|---|
| 1 | Select to display the audio source selection screen. |
| 2 | Select to display Trick Play Settings screen. |
| 3 | Select to display Folders List. |
| 4 | Shows progress. |
| 5 | The tracks in the disc are played back ten seconds each from the beginning of the track. |
| 6 | Select to choose a folder. |
| 7 | Select to display the sound setting screen. Refer to “Basic operation” ☞5-16. |
| 8 | Turn to adjust volume.<br>Press to turn the audio system on/off. |
| 9 | Turn to select a file/track.<br>Press to select an audio mode. |
| 10 | Select to select a file/track.<br>Select and hold to fast forward/rewind. |

Control screen (Trick Play) (for Europe, for Australia)




S01687

Control screen (Trick Play) (except for Europe)




S01201

| No. | Function |
|---|---|
| 1 | Select to start 1 Track Repeat. |
| 2 | Select to start Folder Repeat. |
| 3 | Select to start Repeat All. |
| 4 | Return to the control screen. |
| 5 | Select to start Shuffle All. |
| 6 | Select to start Shuffle Folder. |

**WARNING**

**Do not operate the player's controls or connect the USB memory while driving.**

– CONTINUED –

**⚠ CAUTION**

- **Do not leave your portable player in the car. In particular, high temperatures inside the vehicle may damage the portable player.**
- **Do not push down on or apply unnecessary pressure to the portable player while it is connected as this may damage the portable player or its terminal.**
- **Do not insert foreign objects into the port as this may damage the portable player or its terminal.**

## NOTE

**If you press the "Mute" switch on the steering wheel during playback, the track pauses. If you press the "Mute" switch once again, the playback will resume.**

## ■ iPod

### ▼ Overview

The iPod operation screen can be reached by the following methods:

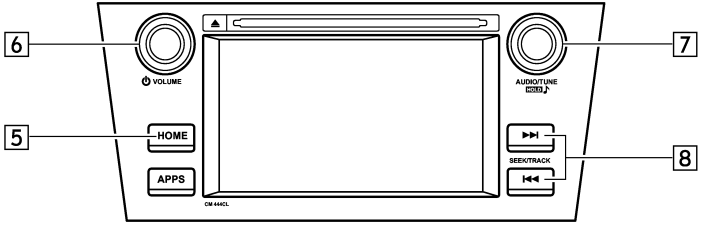
- Connect an iPod. Refer to "Connecting and disconnecting a USB memory/portable device" ☞5-8.
- Select USB / iPod (USB / iPod) on the "Select Audio Source (Select Audio Source)" screen. Refer to "Selecting an audio source" ☞5-17.

Control screen (for Europe, for Australia)




S01693

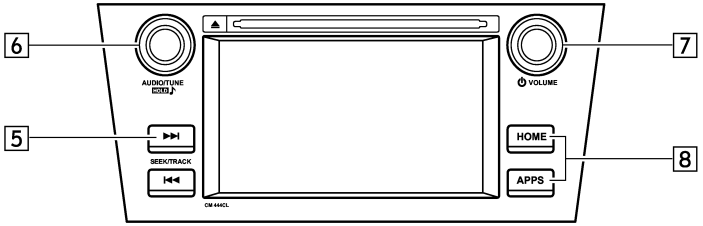
Control panel (for Europe LHD models)




S01695

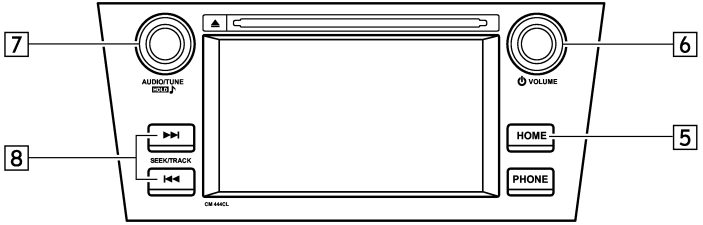
– CONTINUED –

Control panel (for Europe RHD models)



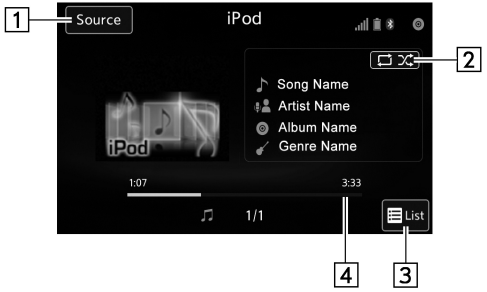

S01698

Control panel (for Australia)



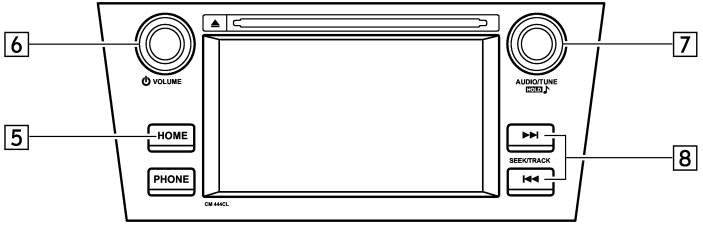

S01697

Control screen (except for Europe)




S01202

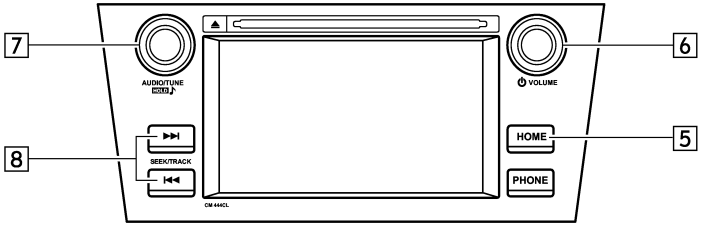
Control panel (except for Europe LHD models)




S01696

– CONTINUED –

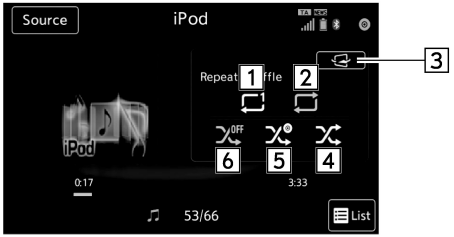
Control panel (except for Europe RHD models)




S01699

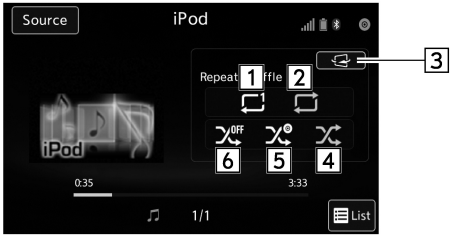
| No. | Function |
|---|---|
| 1 | Select to display the audio source selection screen. |
| 2 | Select to display Trick Play Settings screen. |
| 3 | Select to display iPod List. |
| 4 | Shows progress. |
| 5 | Select to display the sound setting screen. Refer to “Basic operation” ☞5-16. |
| 6 | Turn to adjust volume.<br>Press to turn the audio system on/off. |
| 7 | Turn to select a track/file.<br>Press to select an audio mode. |
| 8 | Select to select a track/file.<br>Select and hold to fast forward/rewind. |

Control screen (Trick Play) (for Europe, for Australia)




S01694

Control screen (Trick Play) (except for Europe)

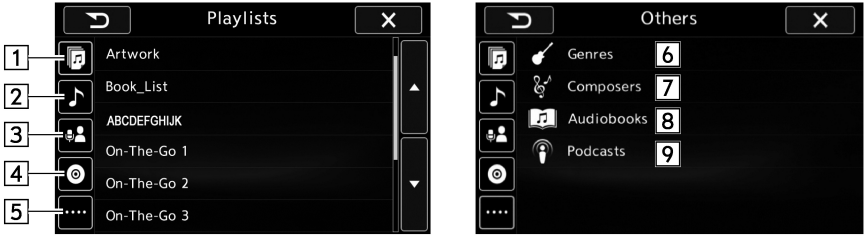



S01204

| No. | Function |
|---|---|
| 1 | Select to start 1 Track Repeat. |
| 2 | Select to start Repeat All. |
| 3 | Return to the control screen. |
| 4 | Select to start Shuffle Track. |
| 5 | Select to start Shuffle Album. |
| 6 | Select to turn off Shuffle. |

– CONTINUED –

Control screen (Play List)




S01205

| No. | Function |
|---|---|
| 1 | Select to display the Playlist. |
| 2 | Select to display Song List. |
| 3 | Select to display Artists List. |
| 4 | Select to display Albums List. |
| 5 | Select to open Others List. |
| 6 | Select to open Genres List. |
| 7 | Select to open Composers List. |
| 8 | Select to open Audiobooks List. |
| 9 | Select to open Podcasts List. |

**WARNING**

**Do not operate the player's controls or connect the iPod while driving.**

**CAUTION**

- **Do not leave your portable player in the car. In particular, high temperatures inside the vehicle may damage the portable player.**
- **Do not push down on or apply unnecessary pressure to the portable player while it is connected as this may damage the portable player or its terminal.**
- **Do not insert foreign objects into the port as this may damage the portable player or its terminal.**

## NOTE

**• When an iPod is connected using a genuine iPod cable, the iPod starts charging its battery.**
**• When an iPod is connected and the audio source is changed to iPod mode, the iPod will resume playing from the same point it was last used.**
**• Depending on the iPod that is connected to the system, certain functions may not be available.**
**• Files/tracks selected by operating a connected iPod may not be recognized or displayed properly.**
**• If you press the "Mute" switch on the steering wheel during playback, the track pauses. If you press the "Mute" switch once again, the playback will resume.**

## ■ Bluetooth audio

The Bluetooth audio system enables users to enjoy listening to music that is played on a portable player on the vehicle speakers via wireless communication.

This audio system supports Bluetooth, a wireless data system capable of playing portable audio music without cables. If your device does not support Bluetooth, the Bluetooth audio system will not function.

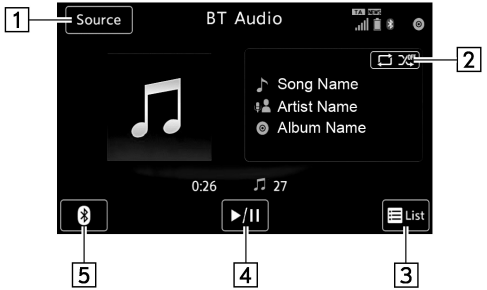
### ▼ Overview

Select BT Audio (BT Audio) on the "Select Audio Source (Select Audio Source)" screen. Refer to "Selecting an audio source" ☞5-17.

Depending on the type of portable player connected, some functions may not be available and/or the screen may look differently than shown in this manual.

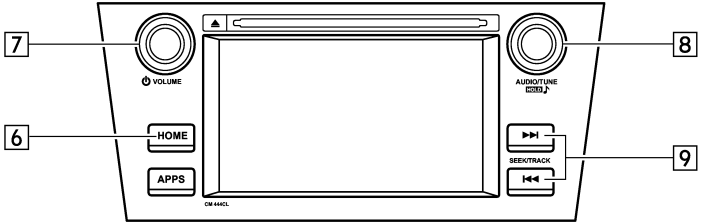
– CONTINUED –

Control screen (for Europe, for Australia)



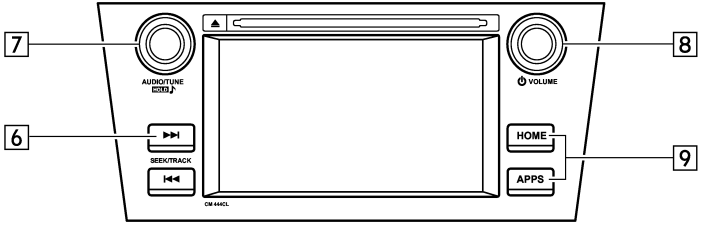

S01700

Control panel (for Europe LHD models)



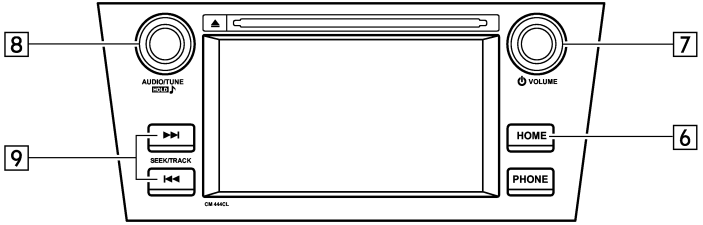

S01702

Control panel (for Europe RHD models)




S01705

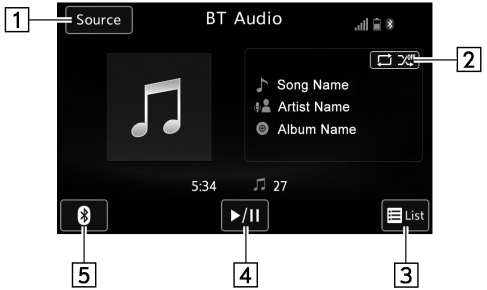
Control panel (for Australia)




S01704

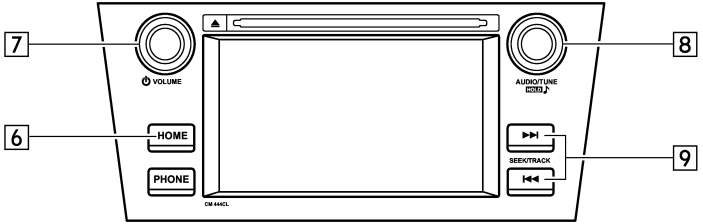
– CONTINUED –

Control screen (except for Europe)



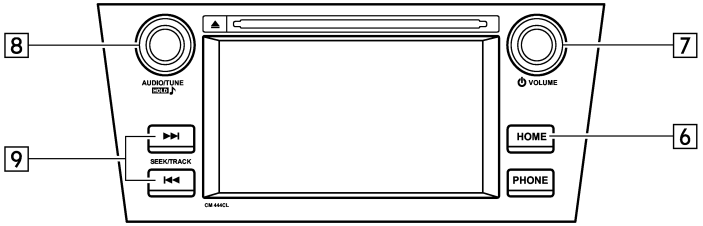

S01206

Control panel (except for Europe LHD models)




S01703

Control panel (except for Europe RHD models)

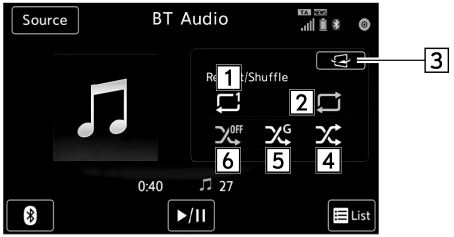



S01706

| No. | Function |
|---|---|
| 1 | Select to display the audio source selection screen. |
| 2 | Select to display Trick Play Settings screen. |
| 3 | Select to display as a list (for the models with AVRCP Ver. 1.4 or higher). |
| 4 | Select to play back or pause a track. The track pauses when pressed during playback and plays back when pressed during pause. |
| 5 | Select to open Bluetooth Settings. |
| 6 | Select to display the sound setting screen. Refer to “Basic operation” ☞5-16. |
| 7 | Turn to adjust volume.<br>Press to turn the audio system on/off. |
| 8 | Turn to select a track.<br>Press to select an audio mode |
| 9 | Select to select a track.<br>Select and hold to fast forward/rewind. |

***– CONTINUED –***

Control screen (Play List) (for Europe, for Australia)




S01701

Control screen (Play List) (except for Europe)




S01208

| No. | Function |
|---|---|
| 1 | Select to start 1 Track Repeat. |
| 2 | Select to start Repeat All. |
| 3 | Return to the control screen. |
| 4 | Select to start Shuffle Track. |
| 5 | Select to start Group Shuffle. |
| 6 | Select to turn off Shuffle. |

**⚠ WARNING**

- **Do not operate the player's controls or connect to the Bluetooth audio system while driving.**
- **Your audio unit is fitted with Bluetooth antennas. People with implantable cardiac pacemakers, cardiac resynchronization therapy-pacemakers or implantable cardioverter defibrillators should maintain a reasonable distance between themselves and the Bluetooth antennas. The radio waves may affect the operation of such devices.**
- **Before using Bluetooth devices, users of any electrical medical device other than implantable cardiac pacemakers, cardiac resynchronization therapy-pacemakers or implantable cardioverter defibrillators should consult the manufacturer of the device for information about its operation under the influence of radio waves. Radio waves could have unexpected effects on the operation of such medical devices.**

**⚠ CAUTION**

**Do not leave your portable player in the vehicle. In particular, high temperatures inside the vehicle may damage the portable player.**

## NOTE

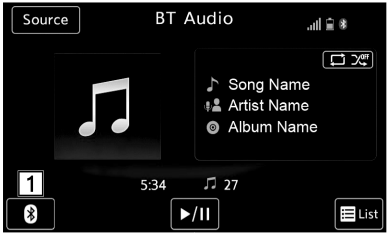
- **Depending on the Bluetooth device that is connected to the system, the music may start playing when selecting ▶/II while it is paused. Conversely, the music may pause when selecting ▶/II while it is playing.**
- **In the following conditions, the system may not function:**
  - **– The Bluetooth device is turned off.**
  - **– The Bluetooth device is not connected.**
  - **– The Bluetooth device has a low battery.**
- **It may take time to connect the phone when Bluetooth audio is being played.**
- **For operating the portable player, see the instruction manual that comes with it.**
- **If the Bluetooth device is disconnected due to poor reception from the Bluetooth network when the ignition switch is in the "ACC" or "ON" position, the system will automatically reconnect to the portable player.**
- **If the Bluetooth device is disconnected on purpose, such as it was turned off, this does not happen. Reconnect the portable player manually.**
- **Bluetooth device information is registered when the Bluetooth device is connected to the Bluetooth audio system. When selling or disposing of the vehicle, remove the Bluetooth audio information from the system. Refer to "Other settings" ☞5-13.**

### ▼ Connecting a Bluetooth device

To use the Bluetooth audio system, it is necessary to register a Bluetooth device with the system.

1. Select the Bluetooth setting key (Bluetooth setting key) on the Bluetooth audio control screen.

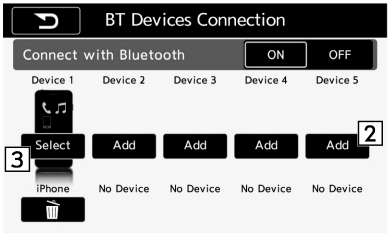
– CONTINUED –




S01707

2. Select the Add key and register a device.

3. Select the Select key, and then select the registered device.




S01708

Registering an additional device

1. Select Add (Add) on the BT Devices Connection screen.

2. For more information: Refer to “Registering a Bluetooth device” ☞5-77.

Selecting a registered device

1. Select Select (Select) on the BT Devices Connection screen.

2. For more information: Refer to “Connecting a Bluetooth device” ☞5-78.

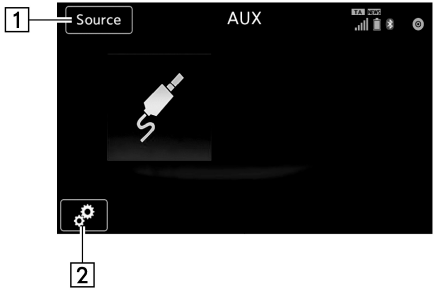
## ■ AUX

### ▼ Overview

The AUX operation screen can be reached by the following methods:

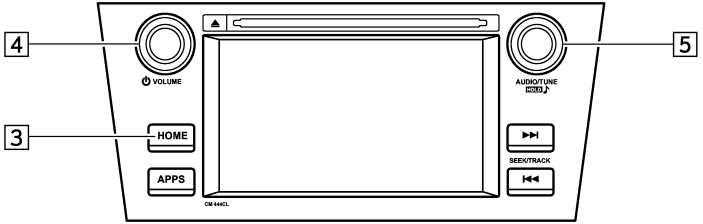
- Connect a portable audio device. Refer to “Connecting and disconnecting a USB memory/portable device” ☞5-8.
- Select AUX (AUX) on the “Select Audio Source (Select Audio Source)” screen. Refer to “Selecting an audio source” ☞5-17.

Control screen (for Europe, for Australia)




S01709

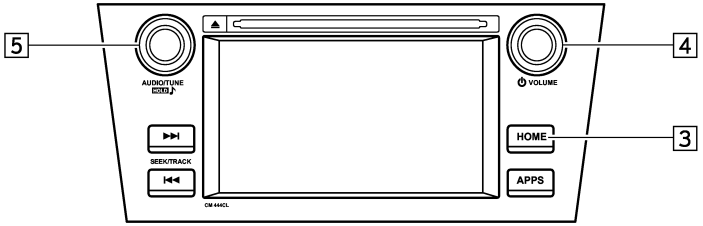
Control panel (for Europe LHD models)




S01710

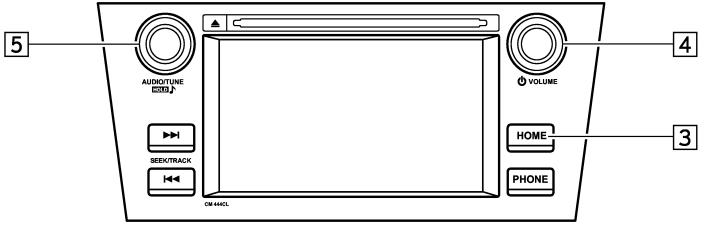
– CONTINUED –

Control panel (for Europe RHD models)



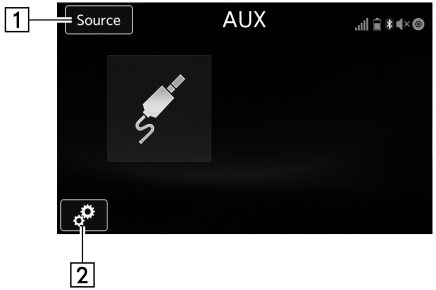

S01713

Control panel (for Australia)



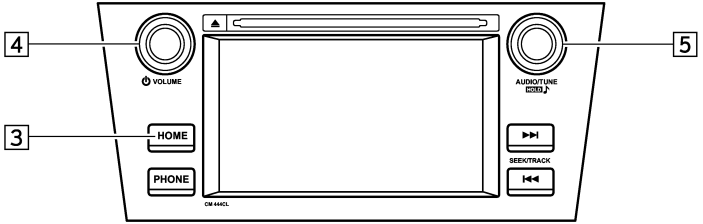

S01712

Control screen (except for Europe)




S01214

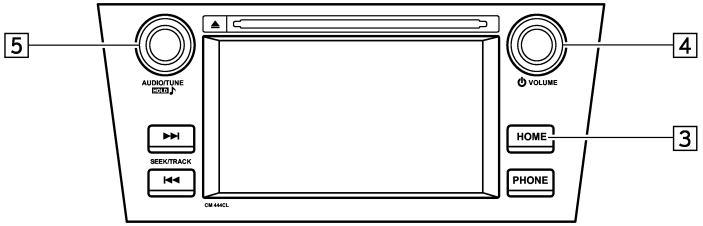
Control panel (except for Europe LHD models)




S01711

– CONTINUED –

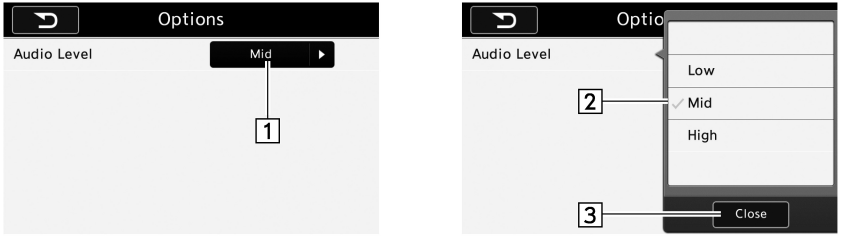
Control panel (except for Europe RHD models)




S01714

| No. | Function |
|---|---|
| 1 | Select to display the audio source selection screen. |
| 2 | Option Key:<br>Select to display the Options screen. |
| 3 | Select to display the sound setting screen. Refer to “Basic operation” ☞5-16. |
| 4 | Turn to adjust volume.<br>Press to turn the audio system on/off. |
| 5 | Press to select an audio mode. |

Control screen (Option Display)




S01216

| No. | Function |
|---|---|
| 1 | Select to adjust the audio gain level. |
| 2 | Select High, Mid, or Low for the audio gain level.<br>The High setting has greater effect. |
| 3 | Select to close the list. |

– CONTINUED –

**⚠ WARNING**

**Do not operate the player's controls or connect the portable audio device while driving.**

**⚠ CAUTION**

- **Do not leave portable audio device in the vehicle. The temperature inside the vehicle may become high, resulting in damage to the player.**
- **Do not push down on or apply unnecessary pressure to the portable audio device while it is connected as this may damage the portable audio device or its terminal.**
- **Do not insert foreign objects into the port as this may damage the portable audio device or its terminal.**

## Bluetooth® settings

### ■ Registering/connecting Bluetooth® device

The Bluetooth® word mark and logos are registered trademarks owned by Bluetooth SIG, Inc.

#### ▼ Registering a Bluetooth phone for the first time

To use the hands-free system, it is necessary to register a Bluetooth phone with the system.

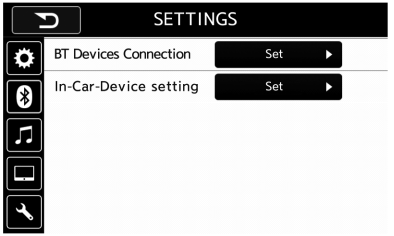
Once the phone has been registered, it is possible to use the hands-free system.

This operation cannot be performed while driving.

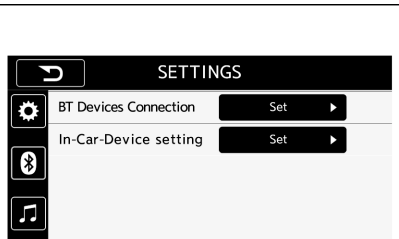
For details about registering a Bluetooth device: Refer to "Registering a Bluetooth device" ☞5-77.

1. Turn the Bluetooth connection setting of your cellular phone on.
   - This function is not available when Bluetooth connection setting of your cellular phone is set to off.
2. Select HOME and select SETTINGS (SETTINGS) to display the SETTINGS screen.

For Europe:

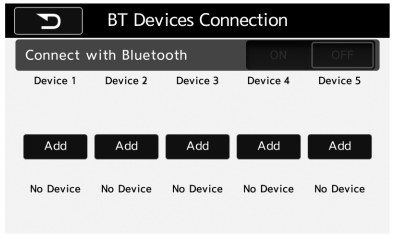



Except for Europe:



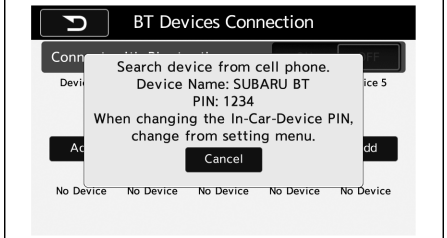

**Settings (When selecting the "BT" tab)**

3. To register a device, select "Add" on "BT Devices Connection".




**"BT Devices Connection" screen (At the initial startup and when no device is registered.)**

4. When this screen is displayed, search for the device name displayed on this screen on the screen of your Bluetooth device.




**When "Add" is selected (Waiting for the connection request from a device).**

- For details about operating the Bluetooth device, see the manual that comes with it.
- To cancel the registration, select Cancel (Cancel).

5. Register the Bluetooth device using your Bluetooth device.
   - A PIN-code is not required for SSP (Secure Simple Pairing) compatible Bluetooth devices. Depending on the type of Bluetooth device being connected, a message confirming registration may be displayed on the Bluetooth device's screen. Respond and operate the Bluetooth device according to the confirmation message.
6. Check that the screen is displayed when registration is complete.
   - The system waits for connection requests coming from the registered device.
   - At this stage, the Bluetooth functions are not yet available.

### ▼ Registering a Bluetooth Audio device for the first time

To use the Bluetooth Audio, it is necessary to register an audio device with the system.

Once the player has been registered, it is possible to use the Bluetooth Audio.

This operation cannot be performed while driving.

For details about registering a Bluetooth device: Refer to "Registering a Bluetooth device" ☞5-77.

The device registration procedure is the same for both the hands-free system and Bluetooth audio.

– CONTINUED –

### ▼ Profiles

This system supports the following services.

| Bluetooth Device | Spec. | Function | Requirements | Recommendations |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Bluetooth Phone/Bluetooth Audio Device | Bluetooth Specification | Registering a Bluetooth device | Ver. 1.1 | Ver. 2.1 + EDR |

| Bluetooth Device | Profile | Function | Requirements | Recommendations |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Bluetooth Phone | HFP (Hands-Free Profile) | Hands-free system | Ver. 1.0 | Ver. 1.5 |
| | OPP (Object Push Profile) | Transferring the contacts | Ver. 1.1 | Ver. 1.1 |
| | PBAP (Phone Book Access profile) | | Ver. 1.0 | Ver. 1.0 |
| | MAP (Message Access Profile) | Bluetooth phone message | — | Ver. 1.0 |
| | SPP (Serial Port Profile) | Connecting a Bluetooth phone | — | Ver. 1.1 |
| Bluetooth Audio Device | A2DP (Advanced Audio Distribution Profile) | Bluetooth audio system | Ver. 1.0 | Ver. 1.2 |
| | AVRCP (Audio/Video Remote Control Profile) | | Ver. 1.0 | Ver. 1.4 |

## NOTE

**• If your cellular phone does not support HFP, registering the Bluetooth phone or using OPP, PBAP, MAP or SPP profiles individually will not be possible.**

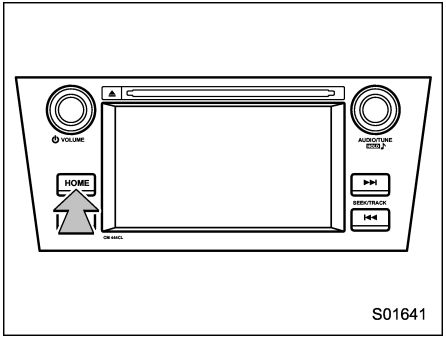
**• If the connected Bluetooth device version is older than recommended or incompatible, the Bluetooth device function may not work properly.**

**• We recommend that you contact your SUBARU dealer to arrange a demonstration in order to confirm whether or not the device can be paired with the vehicle.**

## ■ Setting Bluetooth details

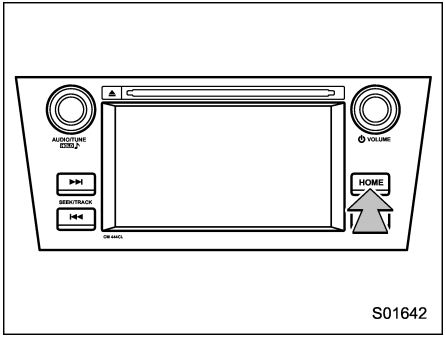
1. Select HOME.

For LHD models:




S01641

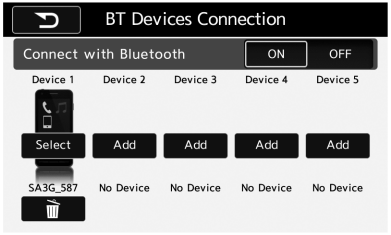
For RHD models:




S01642

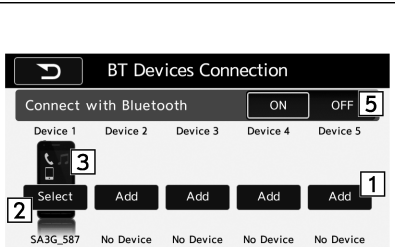
2. Select SETTINGS (SETTINGS).

3. To register a device, select “Add” on “BT Devices Connection”.




S01243

### ▼ BT Devices Connection screen




S01230

**“BT Devices Connection” screen (One device is registered.)**

| No. | Function |
|---|---|
| 1 | “Add” key: Registers the device. |
| 2 | “Select” key: Makes the connection to the registered device. |
| 3 | This shows the status of the device connection profile. (The icon illuminates while connected.) |
| 4 | “Delete (Trash box)” key: Deletes the registered device. |
| 5 | Bluetooth ON/OFF key: Switches to connect/disconnect the Bluetooth communication. |



| Function | Page |
|---|---|
| Registering a Bluetooth device | 5-77 |
| Deleting a Bluetooth device | 5-78 |
| Connecting a Bluetooth device | 5-78 |



### ▼ Registering a Bluetooth device

You can register up to five devices, regardless of whether they are Bluetooth phones or audio devices.

This operation cannot be performed while driving.

1. Display the “BT Devices Connection” screen. Refer to “Registering a Bluetooth phone for the first time” ☞5-74.
2. Select Add (Add).

– CONTINUED –

The “Add” button is not displayed when five devices are already registered.

To add another device, you need to delete one of the registered devices.

Press and hold the Trash box icon for the device to be deleted, and then select “OK”.

3. Register the Bluetooth device using your Bluetooth device.
   - A PIN-code is not required for SSP (Secure Simple Pairing) compatible Bluetooth devices. Depending on the type of Bluetooth device being connected, a message confirming registration may be displayed on the Bluetooth device’s screen. Respond and operate the Bluetooth device according to the confirmation message.

4. Check that the screen is displayed when registration is complete.
   - The system waits for connection requests coming from the registered device.
   - At this stage, the Bluetooth functions are not yet available.

### ▼ Deleting a Bluetooth device

1. Display the “BT Devices Connection” screen. Refer to “Registering a Bluetooth phone for the first time” ☞5-74.
2. Select the desired device.

Press and hold the Trash box icon for the device to be deleted, and then select “OK”.

## NOTE

**When deleting a Bluetooth phone, the contact data will be deleted at the same time.**

### ▼ Connecting a Bluetooth device

Up to 5 Bluetooth devices (Phones (HFP) and audio devices (AVP)) can be registered.

If more than 1 Bluetooth device has been registered, select which device to connect to.

1. Display the “BT Devices Connection” screen. Refer to “Registering a Bluetooth phone for the first time” ☞5-74.
2. Select the device to be connected.
   - Supported profile icons will be displayed.
     - – : Phone
     - – : Audio device
     - – : Smartphone Application (for Europe)
   - Supported profile icons for currently connected devices will illuminate.
   - The Audio icon illuminates only when in the Bluetooth audio mode.
   - All icons are dimmed when Bluetooth is set to OFF or when the connection cannot be made with the device.

## NOTE

- **It may take time if the device connection is carried out during Bluetooth audio playback.**
- **Depending on the type of Bluetooth device being connected, it may be necessary to perform additional steps on the device.**
- **It is not possible to establish a Bluetooth connection with iOS devices currently connected with a USB cable.**

### ▼ Bluetooth ON/OFF

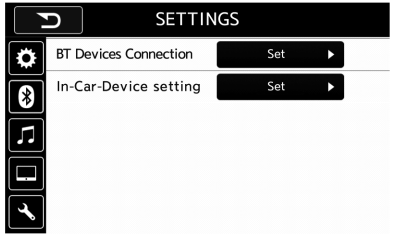
1. Display the “BT Devices Connection” screen. Refer to “Registering a Bluetooth phone for the first time” ☞5-74.
2. Select the “Bluetooth ON/OFF” key.
   - Select “ON” or “OFF” to connect/disconnect the Bluetooth communication. “ON” establishes a connection, and “OFF” disconnects the connection.
   - The setting is fixed as “OFF” when no device is registered.

### ▼ “In-Car-Device setting” screen

The Bluetooth settings can be confirmed and changed.

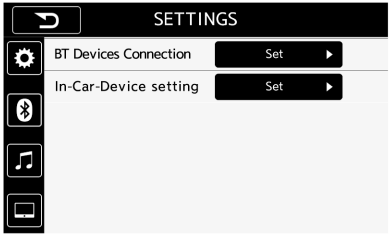
1. Display the “SETTINGS” screen. Refer to “Registering a Bluetooth phone for the first time” ☞5-74.
2. On the SETTINGS for In-Car-Device setting select “Set” key.

For Europe:

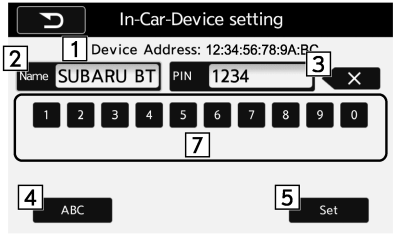



S01231

Except for Europe, Australia:




S01715




S01232




S01233

| No. | Function |
|---|---|
| 1 | BT device address: Displays the Bluetooth device address of the in-vehicle equipment. |
| 2 | BT device name: Displays the Bluetooth device name of the in-vehicle equipment. The default name is “SUBARU BT”, which can be changed by selecting it and entering alphanumeric characters. |
| 3 | PIN code: Displays the PIN code of the in-vehicle equipment. The default code is “1234”, which can be changed by selecting it and entering numbers. |
| 4 | “ABC” key: Switches the screen to input alphabet characters. This key cannot be selected when entering the PIN code. |
| 5 | “Set” key: Saves the current BT device name and PIN code. |

***– CONTINUED –***

| No. | Function |
|---|---|
| 6 | “123” key: Switches the screen to input numbers. |
| 7 | Numeric input keys. |
| 8 | Alphabet input keys. The up arrow key toggles the input between upper case and lower case characters. |
| 9 | “Delete” key: Deletes one character from the currently selected item (BT device name of the PIN code). |

**▽ Editing the Bluetooth Name**

1. Select “BT device name”.
2. Enter a name and then select “Set”.

**▽ Editing the PIN-Code**

1. Select “PIN-Code”.
2. Enter a PIN-code and then select “Set”.

**▽ Common operations**

- Press the “Alphabet” key or “Number” key to make the changes.
- Press the “Set” key to set the entered value. The screen changes to the “Settings Bluetooth” screen.
- Press the “Back” key to discard the entered value. The screen returns to the “Settings Bluetooth” screen.

**▽ When the cursor is at the “Device Name Display Area”**

- The device name can be set or changed.
- Press the “PIN” key to enter a passcode.
- If the “PIN” key is already selected, the “Alphabet” key is cross-hatched and disabled.

**▽ When the cursor is at the “Passcode Display Area”**

- The passcode can be set/changed.
- Press the “Name” key to enter a device name.

## Phone operation (Hands-free system for cellular phones)

### ■ Quick reference

The phone top screen can be used to make a phone call. To display the hands-free operation screen, select HOME and then select PHONE (PHONE), or press the ☎ switch on the steering wheel.

Several functions are available to operate on each screen that is displayed by selecting the 4 tabs.

PHONE (Menu) screen (for Europe, for Australia)




S01716

PHONE (Dialpad) screen (for Europe, for Australia)



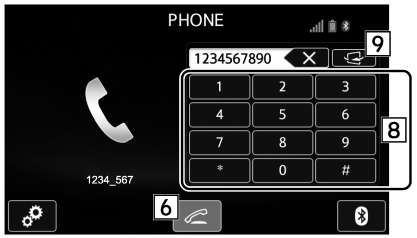

S01717

PHONE (Menu) screen (except for Europe)




S01234

PHONE (Dialpad) screen (except for Europe)

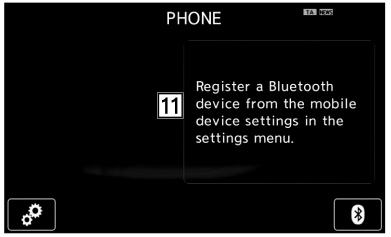



S01235

For Europe, for Australia:




S01718




S01719

– CONTINUED –

Except for Europe:




S01236




S01237

| No. | Function |
|---|---|
| 1 | “Incoming Calls” key: Opens the Incoming Calls screen. |
| 2 | “Outgoing Calls” key: Opens the Outgoing Calls screen. |
| 3 | “Contacts” key: Opens the Contacts screen. |
| 4 | “Dialpad” key: Changes the screen from the Menu screen to the Dialpad screen. |
| 5 | “Option” key: Opens the phone volume setting screen. |
| 6 | “OFF Hook” key: Use to make a phone call. You cannot press this key until you open the Dialpad screen and enter a phone number. |
| 7 | “Bluetooth Setting” key: Opens the BT Devices Connection screen. |
| 8 | Enter the phone number that you want to call. |
| 9 | “Switch Screen” key: Switches the screen to the Phone (Menu) screen. |
| 10<br>11 | If no device is registered, a message is displayed instead of menu items. |

## ■ Some basics

The hands-free system enables calls to be made and received without having to take your hands off the steering wheel.

This system supports Bluetooth. Bluetooth is a wireless data system that enables cellular phones to be used without being connected by a cable or placed in a cradle.

The operating procedure of the phone is explained here.

**⚠ WARNING**

- **While driving, do not use a cellular phone or connect the Bluetooth phone.**
- **Your audio unit is fitted with Bluetooth antennas. People with implantable cardiac pacemakers, cardiac resynchronization therapy-pacemakers or implantable cardioverter defibrillators should maintain a reasonable distance between themselves and the Bluetooth antennas. The radio waves may affect the operation of such devices.**
- **Before using Bluetooth devices, users of any electrical medical device other than implantable cardiac pacemakers, cardiac resynchronization therapy-pacemakers or implantable cardioverter defibrillators should consult the manufacturer of the device for information about its opera-**

**tion under the influence of radio waves. Radio waves could have unexpected effects on the operation of such medical devices.**

**⚠ CAUTION**

**Do not leave your cellular phone in the vehicle. The temperature inside may rise to a level that could damage the phone.**

## NOTE

**• If your cellular phone does not support Bluetooth, this system cannot function.**

**• In the following conditions, the system may not function:**

**– The cellular phone is turned off.**

**– The current position is outside the communication area.**

**– The cellular phone is not connected.**

**– The cellular phone has a low battery.**

**• When using the hands free function and other Bluetooth functions at the same time, the following problems may occur:**

**– The Bluetooth connection may be cut.**

**– Noise may be heard when playing back voice with the Bluetooth function.**

### ▼ Registering/connecting a Bluetooth phone

To use the hands-free system for cellular phones, it is necessary to register a cellular phone with the system. Refer to "Registering/connecting Bluetooth® device" ☞5-74.

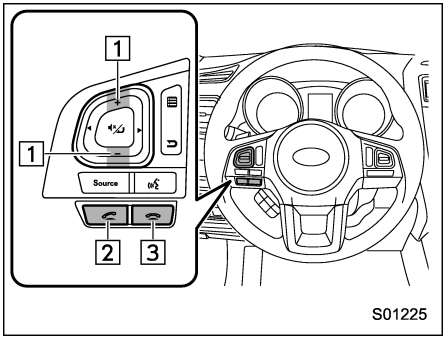
#### ▽ Bluetooth phone condition display

The condition of the Bluetooth phone appears on the upper right side of the screen. Refer to "Bluetooth phone condition display" ☞5-83.

### ▼ Using the phone switch/microphone

Steering switch

By pressing the phone switch, a call can be received or ended without taking your hands off the steering wheel.




1 Volume control switch

• Press the "+" side to increase the volume.

• Press the "-" side to decrease the volume.

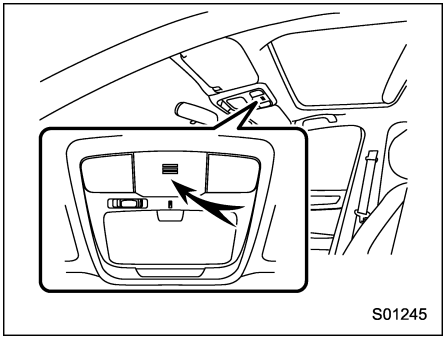
2 Off hook switch

3 On hook switch

Microphone

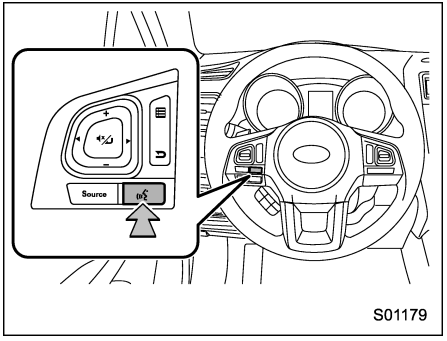
The microphone is used when talking on the phone.

– CONTINUED –


S01245

▼ **Voice command system**

Press this switch to operate the voice command system.



S01179

● The voice command system and its list of commands can be operated. Refer to “Voice command system operation” ☞5-101.

## NOTE

**● The other party’s voice will be heard from the front speakers. The audio/visual system will be muted during phone calls or when hands-free voice commands are used.**

**● Talk alternately with the other party on the phone. If both parties speak at the same time, the other party may not hear what has been said. (This is not a malfunction.)**

**● Keep call volume down. Otherwise, the other party’s voice may be audible outside the vehicle and voice echo may increase. When talking on the phone, speak clearly towards the microphone.**

**● The other party may not hear you clearly when:**

**– Driving on an unpaved road. (Making excessive traffic noise.)**

**– Driving at high speeds.**

**– The roof or windows are open.**

**– The air conditioning vents are pointed towards the microphone.**

**– The sound of the air conditioning fan is loud.**

**– There is a negative effect on sound quality due to the phone and/or network being used.**

▼ **About the contacts in the contact list**

● The following data is stored for every registered phone. When another phone is connected, the following registered data cannot be read:

– Contact data

## NOTE

**When a phone’s registration is deleted, the above-mentioned data is also deleted.**

▼ **When selling or disposing of the vehicle**

A lot of personal data is registered when the hands-free system is used. When selling or disposing of the vehicle, initialize the data. Refer to “Other settings” ☞5-13.

● The following data in the system can be initialized:

– Contact data

– Call history data

– All phone settings

## NOTE

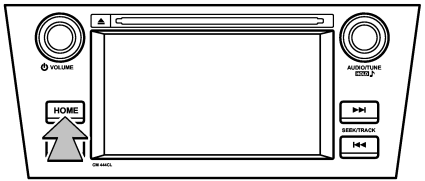
**Once initialized, the data and settings will be erased. Pay much attention when initializing the data.**

## ■ Calling on the Bluetooth phone

After a Bluetooth phone has been registered, a call can be made using the hands-free system. There are several methods by which a call can be made, as described below.

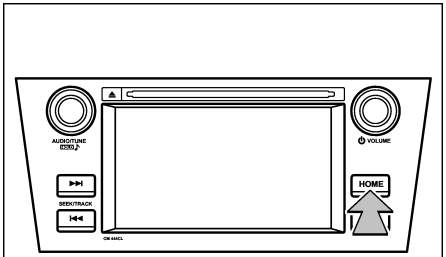
1. Select HOME.

For LHD models:




S01641

For RHD models:




S01642

2. Select PHONE (PHONE).
3. Select the desired tab to call from.

- On the PHONE screen, select “Incoming Calls” to open the Incoming Calls screen. Refer to “Quick reference” ☞5-80.

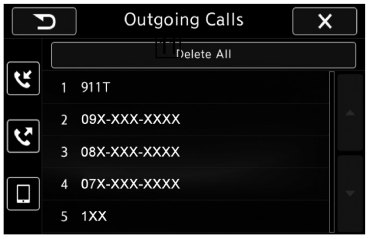



S01238

**Incoming Calls screen**

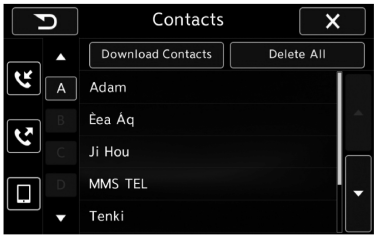
– CONTINUED –

● On the PHONE screen, select “Outgoing Calls” to open the Outgoing Calls screen. Refer to “Quick reference” ☞5-80.




**Outgoing Calls screen**

● On the PHONE screen, select “Contacts” to open the Contacts screen. Refer to “Quick reference” ☞5-80.



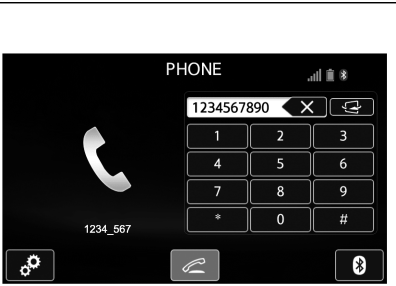

**Contacts screen**

● On the PHONE screen, select “Dialpad” to open the Dialpad screen. Refer to “Quick reference” ☞5-80.

For Europe, for Australia:




Except for Europe:




**PHONE (Dialpad) screen**

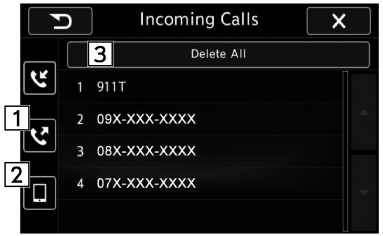
| How to make a call list | Page |
|---|---|
| By call history | 5-87 |
| By contacts list | 5-89 |
| By dialpad*1 | 5-91 |
| By off hook switch | 5-92 |
| By voice command system | 5-102 |

*1: The operation cannot be performed while driving.

## ▼ By call history

### ▽ Incoming Calls

- On the PHONE screen, select “Incoming Calls” to open the Incoming Calls screen.
- Up to ten items in the incoming call history are listed. Scroll the screen to see items that are not on the screen.
- You can make a call by selecting an item in the incoming call history list.




**Incoming Calls screen**

- If there is no incoming call history, a message appears to indicate that there is no incoming call history data.




**Incoming Calls screen (No incoming call history)**




**Incoming Calls screen (Confirmation to delete incoming call history)**

| No. | Function |
|---|---|
| 1 | “Outgoing Calls” key: Opens the Outgoing Calls screen. |
| 2 | “Contacts” key: Opens the Contacts screen. |
| 3 | “Delete All” key: Deletes all incoming call history data. The “Delete All” key is disabled when there is no incoming call history. |
| 4 | “OK” key: Deletes incoming call history. |
| 5 | “Cancel” key: Cancels the deletion of incoming call history. The screen returns to the Incoming Calls screen. |

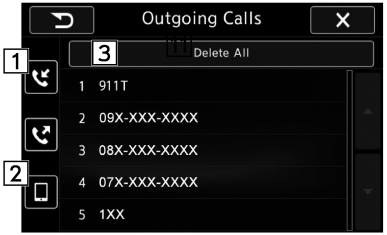
– CONTINUED –

## NOTE

- **When making a call to the same number continuously, only the most recent call is listed in call history.**
- **When a phone number registered in the contact list is received, the name is displayed.**
- **Number-withheld calls are also memorized in the system.**
- **International phone calls may not be made depending on the type of cellular phone you have.**
- **The list should group together consecutive entries with the same phone number and same call type.**

### ▽ Outgoing Calls

- On the PHONE screen, select “Outgoing Calls” to open the Outgoing Calls screen.
- Up to ten items in the outgoing call history are listed. Scroll the screen to see items that are not on the screen.
- You can make a call by selecting an item in the outgoing call history list.
- If there is no outgoing call history, a message appears to indicate that there is no outgoing call history data.




**Outgoing Calls screen**




**Outgoing Calls screen (No outgoing call history)**




**Outgoing Calls screen (Confirmation to delete outgoing call history)**

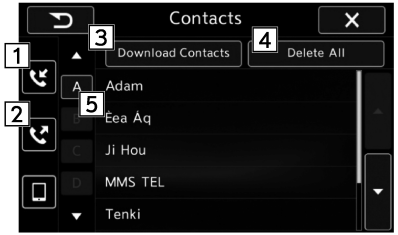
| No. | Function |
|---|---|
| 1 | “Incoming Calls” key: Opens the Incoming Calls screen. |
| 2 | “Contacts” key: Opens the Contacts screen. |
| 3 | “Delete All” key: Deletes all outgoing call history data. The “Delete All” key is disabled when there is no outgoing call history. |
| 4 | “OK” key: Deletes outgoing call history. |
| 5 | “Cancel” key: Cancels to delete outgoing call history. The screen will go back to the Outgoing Calls screen. |

## NOTE

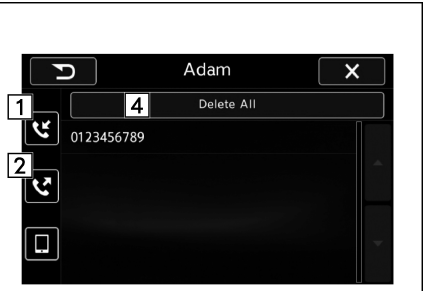
- **When making a call to the same number continuously, only the most recent call is listed in call history.**
- **When a phone number registered in the contact list is received, the name is displayed.**
- **Number-withheld calls are also memorized in the system.**
- **International phone calls may not be made depending on the type of cellular phone you have.**
- **The list should group together consecutive entries with the same phone number and same call type.**

### ▼ By contacts list

- Up to 1000 items in the contact data are listed. Scroll the screen to see items that are not on the screen.
- Select an item in the contact list to open the Phone Number List screen.
- You can make a call by selecting an item in the phone number list (up to five phone numbers are listed).
- If there is no contact data, a message is displayed to indicate that there is no contact data.




**Contacts screen**




**Phone Number List screen (Example when "Adam" is selected)**




**Contacts screen (When there is no data)**

| No. | Function |
|---|---|
| 1 | "Incoming Calls" key: Opens the Incoming Calls screen. |
| 2 | "Outgoing Calls" key: Opens the Outgoing Calls screen. |
| 3 | "Download Contacts" key: Opens a pop-up screen for starting the download of contact data. |
| 4 | "Delete All" key: Deletes all contact data. The "Delete All" key is disabled when there is no contact data. |
| 5 | "Search" key: Opens a list of contacts that starts with the selected character. This key is cross-hatched and cannot be selected if there is no contact data that starts with the selected character, |

Select the up/down arrow key to scroll the "Search" key.

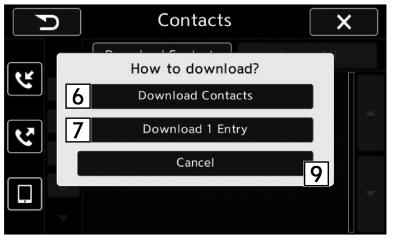
*– CONTINUED –*

▽ **When the contact is empty**

**For PBAP incompatible but OPP compatible Bluetooth phones**

- On the Contacts screen, select “Download Contacts”. A screen where you can select how to download contacts opens.
- You can select to download all items or download one item.

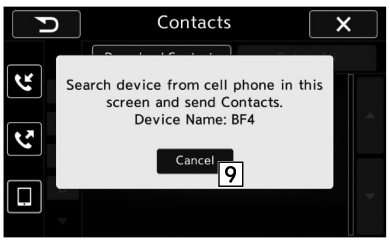
*: To download all items, you may need to change the settings in your cellular phone beforehand.



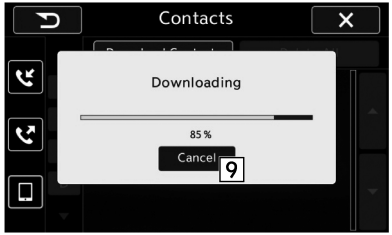

**Contacts screen (Download selection)**




**Contacts screen (Download confirmation)**




**Contacts screen (Download confirmation)**




**Contacts screen (Download in progress)**

| No. | Function |
|---|---|
| 6 | “Download Contacts” key: Opens the Download Confirmation screen. Confirm whether or not to download. If the downloaded contact(s) already exist(s), confirm whether or not to overwrite the existing data. |
| 7 | “Download 1 Entry” key: Downloads one set of contact data. To download the data, you need to operate from the connected device. |
| 8 | “OK” key: Starts downloading all contacts. |
| 9 | “Cancel” key: Cancels the download. The screen returns to the Contacts screen. (The pop-up screen disappears.) |

• All contact data downloaded into the in-vehicle equipment will be deleted.




**Contacts screen (Confirmation to delete contact data)**

| No. | Function |
|---|---|
| 10 | "OK" key: Deletes all downloaded contact data. |
| 11 | "Cancel" key: Cancels the deletion. The screen returns to the Contacts screen. |

## NOTE

**• Manual transfer operation cannot be performed while driving.**
**• If your cellular phone is neither PBAP nor OPP compatible, the contacts cannot be transferred.**
**• Depending on the type of Bluetooth phone:**
**– It may be necessary to perform additional steps on the phone when transferring contact data.**

### ▼ By Dialpad

The Outgoing Call screen opens when you perform the following operations.

• When you enter a phone number on the PHONE (Dialpad) screen and select the "OFF_Hook" key, the Outgoing Call screen opens.
• When you select an item in the incoming call history list on the Incoming Calls screen, the Outgoing Call screen opens.
• When you select an item in the outgoing call history list on the Outgoing Call screen, the Outgoing Call screen opens.
• When you select a phone number on the Contacts (Phone Number List) screen, the Outgoing Call screen opens.




**Outgoing Call screen**

| No. | Function |
|---|---|
| 1 | "Option" key: Opens the Options (volume settings) screen. |
| 2 | "ON_Hook" key: Aborts the call. The screen returns to the Phone (Menu) screen. This is the same as pressing the "ON_Hook" switch on the steering wheel. |

## NOTE

**Depending on the type of Bluetooth phone being connected, it may be necessary to perform additional steps on the phone.**

– CONTINUED –

### ▼ By off hook switch

Calls can be made using the latest call history item.

1. Press the ☎ switch on the steering wheel to display the phone top screen.
2. Check that the “Call (Call)” screen is displayed.

## ■ Receiving on the Bluetooth phone

### ▼ Incoming calls

When a call is received, the incoming call screen is displayed with a sound.

- When you are on the Outgoing Call screen, the screen changes to the Call screen when the other party answers the call.
- The “Mute”, “Speaker”, and “Bluetooth” keys are disabled on the Outgoing Call screen.
- When you receive a phone call while the cellular phone is connected, the screen changes to the Incoming Call screen.




**Incoming Call screen**




**Unable to put call on hold screen**

| No. | Function |
|---|---|
| 1 | “Option” key: Opens the Options (volume settings) screen. |
| 2 | “Hold” key: Puts the incoming call on hold. This function may not work on some cell phone models. This function is the same as pressing the “ON_Hook” switch on the steering wheel for a short period of time. |
| 3 | “OFF_Hook” key: Opens the Call screen. This function is the same as pressing the “OFF_Hook” switch on the steering wheel. |
| 4 | “ON_Hook” key: Rejects the incoming call. This function is the same as pressing and holding the “ON_Hook” switch on the steering wheel. |

## NOTE

**- During international phone calls, the other party’s name or number may not be displayed correctly depending on the type of cellular phone you have.**

**- Depending on the type of Bluetooth phone, both the system and Bluetooth phone may sound simultaneously when there is an incoming call. Refer to ““Sound Settings (Sound Settings)” screen” ☞5-95.**

## ■ Talking on the Bluetooth phone

While talking on the phone, this screen is displayed. The operations outlined below can be performed on this screen.

- When the Incoming Call screen is displayed and you accept the call, the screen changes to the Call screen. The screen stays on the Incoming Call screen if you reject the call.
- The “Dialpad” and “Bluetooth Setting” keys are disabled on the Incoming Call screen.

The Call screen opens when you perform the following operations.

- When you accept a call on the Incoming Call screen (by selecting the “OFF_Hook” key), the Call screen opens.
- When you are on the Outgoing Call screen, the screen changes to the Call screen when the other party answers the call.




**Call screen**




**Call screen (Private ON)**




**Call screen (Your voice Mute ON)**




**Call (Dialpad) screen (DTMF)**

| No. | Function |
|---|---|
| 1 | “Option” key: Opens the Options (volume settings) screen. |

– CONTINUED –

| No. | Function |
|---|---|
| 2 | “Mute” key: Mutes your voice to the other party. Press the “Mute” key again to deactivate the Mute mode. This key is disabled in the Private mode. |
| 3 | “Speaker” key: Changes the mode to Private mode. The other party’s voice emits from the cell phone. Press the “Speaker” key again to deactivate the Private mode. |
| 4 | “ON_Hook” key: Ends the call. You return to the Phone (Menu) screen when ending outgoing calls and the previous screen when ending incoming calls. This function is the same as pressing and holding the “ON_Hook” switch on the steering wheel. |
| 5 | “Dialpad” key: Opens the Call (Dialpad) screen. |
| 6 | “Switch Screen” key: Switches the screen to the Phone (Menu) screen. |
| 7 | “Dialpad” key: Allows you to make DTMF (Dual Tone Multi Frequency) calls. The numbers you enter are sent as tone signals. |

## NOTE

**• When cellular phone call is changed to hands-free call, the hands-free screen will be displayed and its functions can be operated on the screen.**
**• Changing between cellular phone call and hands-free call can be performed by operating the cellular phone directly.**
**• Transferring methods and operations will be different depending on the type of cellular phone you have.**
**• For the operation of the cellular phone, see the manual that comes with it.**

• On the PHONE (Menu) screen, the screen changes to the Phone (Dialpad) screen when you select “Dialpad”.
• After entering the phone number on the keypad, the call is made when you select the “OFF_Hook” key.




**Phone (Dialpad) screen**

| No. | Function |
|---|---|
| 1 | “Dialpad” keys: Allows you to enter numbers from 0 to 9 and *, #, and +. To enter “+”, press and hold the “0” key. |
| 2 | “Delete” key: Deletes one character from the entered characters. |
| 3 | “Switch Screen” key: Switches the screen to the Phone (Menu) screen. |
| 4 | “OFF_Hook” key: Opens the Outgoing Calls screen and dials the entered phone number. This is the same as pressing the “OFF_Hook” switch on the steering wheel. This key is cross-hatched and cannot be selected until the phone number is entered. |
| 5 | “Option” key: Opens the Options (volume settings) screen. |
| 6 | “Bluetooth Setting” key: Opens the BT Devices Connection screen. |

## NOTE

**The sound quality of the voice heard from the other party’s speaker may be negatively impacted.**

## Setup

### ■ Phone settings

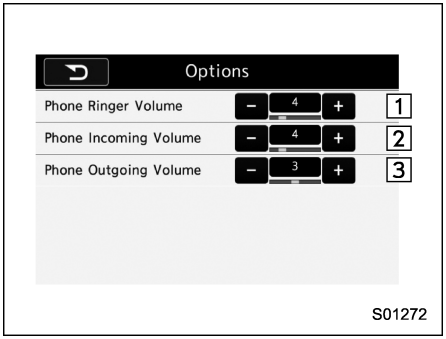
#### ▼ “Sound Settings (Sound Settings)” screen

The call and ringtone volume can be adjusted. A ringtone can be selected.

1. Display the “PHONE” screen. Refer to “Quick reference” ☞5-80.
2. Select Option (Option).
3. Select the desired item to be set.

● Select to adjust the volume of the telephone function.

● On the PHONE screen, the screen changes to the Options screen when you select the “Option” key.




**Options (volume settings) screen**

| No. | Function |
|---|---|
| 1 | Phone Ringer Volume +/- keys: Adjusts the ringtone volume. The “-” key lowers the volume, and the “+” key increases the volume. (Default volume: 4 out of a total of 16 volume levels) |
| 2 | Phone Incoming Volume +/- keys: Adjusts the receive volume. The “-” key lowers the volume, and the “+” key increases the volume. (Default volume: 4 out of a total of 16 volume levels) |
| 3 | Phone Outgoing Volume +/- keys: Adjusts the transmit volume. The “-” key lowers the volume, and the “+” key increases the volume. (Default volume: 3 out of a total of 5 volume levels) |

**NOTE**

**● Depending on the type of phone, certain functions may not be available.**
**● Contact data is managed independently for every registered phone. When one phone is connected, another phone’s registered data cannot be read.**

#### ▼ Update contacts from phone

Operation methods differ between PBAP compatible and PBAP incompatible but OPP compatible Bluetooth phones.

If your cellular phone is neither PBAP nor OPP compatible, the contacts cannot be transferred.

**For PBAP compatible Bluetooth phones**

1. Select Download Contacts (Download Contacts).
   ● Contacts are transferred automatically.
2. Check that a confirmation screen is displayed when the operation is complete.
   ● This operation may be unnecessary depending on the type of cellular phone.

– CONTINUED –

- If another Bluetooth device is connected when transferring contact data, depending on the phone, the connected Bluetooth device may need to be disconnected.
- Depending on the type of Bluetooth phone being connected, it may be necessary to perform additional steps on the phone.

**For PBAP incompatible but OPP compatible Bluetooth phones**

This operation cannot be performed while driving.

1. Select Download Contacts (Download Contacts).

Select Download 1 Entry.

2. Transfer the contact data to the system using a Bluetooth phone.
   - This operation may be unnecessary depending on the type of cellular phone.
   - To cancel this function, select Cancel (Cancel).
3. Check that a confirmation screen is displayed when the operation is complete.

**▼ Deleting the contact data**

1. Select Delete All (Delete All).
2. Select OK (OK) when the confirmation screen appears.

Refer to “By contacts list” ☞5-89.

## NOTE

**For deleting data, all items are deleted.**

# What to do if...

## ■ Troubleshooting

If there is a problem with the hands-free system or a Bluetooth device, first check the table below.

**When using the hands-free system with a Bluetooth device**

| Symptom | Likely cause | Solution | Page | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | Cellular phone | This system |
| The hands-free system or Bluetooth device does not work. | The connected device may not be a compatible Bluetooth cellular phone. | We recommend that you contact your SUBARU dealer to arrange a demonstration in order to confirm whether or not the device can be paired with the vehicle. | * | — |
| | The Bluetooth version of the connected cellular phone may be older than the specified version. | Use a cellular phone with Bluetooth version 1.1 or higher (recommended: Ver. 2.1 + EDR or higher). | * | 5-76 |

*: For details, refer to the owner's manual that came with the cellular phone.

– CONTINUED –

When registering/connecting a cellular phone

| Symptom | Likely cause | Solution | Page | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | Cellular phone | This system |
| A cellular phone cannot be registered. | An incorrect passcode was entered on the cellular phone. | Enter the correct passcode on the cellular phone. | * | — |
| | The registration operation has not been completed on the cellular phone side. | Complete the registration operation on the cellular phone (approve registration on the phone). | * | — |
| | Old registration information remains on either this system or the cellular phone. | Delete the existing registration information from both this system and the cellular phone, then register the cellular phone you wish to connect to this system. | * | 5-77 |
| A Bluetooth connection cannot be made. | Another Bluetooth device is already connected. | Manually connect the cellular phone you wish to use to this system. | — | 5-77 |
| | Bluetooth function is not enabled on the cellular phone. | Enable the Bluetooth function on the cellular phone. | * | — |
| | Automatic Bluetooth connection on this system is set to off. | Set automatic Bluetooth connection on this system to on when the ignition switch is turned to the “ACC” or “ON” position. | — | 5-77 |
| “Unable to dial. Please check your phone. (Unable to dial. Please check your phone.)” | Bluetooth function is not enabled on the cellular phone. | Enable the Bluetooth function on the cellular phone. | * | — |
| | Old registration information remains on either this system or the cellular phone. | Delete the existing registration information from both this system and the cellular phone, then register the cellular phone you wish to connect to this system. | * | 5-77 |

*: For details, refer to the owner’s manual that came with the cellular phone.

When making/receiving a call

| Symptom | Likely cause | Solution | Page | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | Cellular phone | This system |
| A call cannot be made/received. | Your vehicle is in a “No Service (No Service)” area. | Move to where “No Service (No Service)” no longer appears on the display. | — | — |

When using the phonebook

| Symptom | Likely cause | Solution | Page | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | Cellular phone | This system |
| Phonebook data cannot be transferred manually. | The profile version of the connected cellular phone may not be compatible with transferring phonebook data. | We recommend that you contact your SUBARU dealer to arrange a demonstration in order to confirm whether or not the device can be paired with the vehicle. | * | — |
| | Transfer operation on the cellular phone has not completed. | Complete transfer operation on the cellular phone (approve transfer operation on the phone). | * | — |
| Phonebook data cannot be edited. | Editing function is not available on this system. | — | — | 5-96 |

*: For details, refer to the owner’s manual that came with the cellular phone.

– CONTINUED –

In other situations

| Symptom | Likely cause | Solution | Page | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | Cellular phone | This system |
| Even though all conceivable measures have been taken, the symptom status does not change. | The cellular phone is not close enough to this system. | Bring the cellular phone closer to this system. | — | — |
| | The cellular phone is the most likely cause of the symptom. | Turn the cellular phone off, remove and reinstall the battery pack, and then restart the cellular phone. | * | — |
| | | Enable the cellular phone's Bluetooth connection. | * | — |
| | | Stop the cellular phone's security software and close all applications. | * | — |
| | | Before using an application installed on the cellular phone, carefully check its source and how its operation might affect this system. | * | — |

*: For details, refer to the owner's manual that came with the cellular phone.

# Voice command system operation

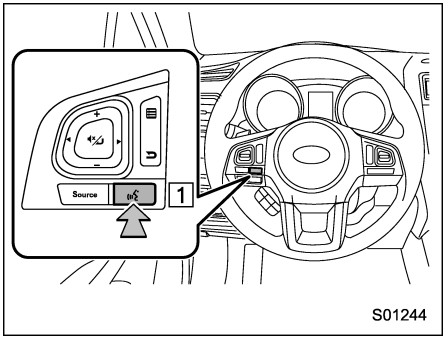
## ■ Voice command system

The voice command system enables the audio, hands-free systems, etc. to be operated using voice commands.

Refer to the “Command list” ☞5-104 for samples of voice commands.

### ▼ Using the voice command system

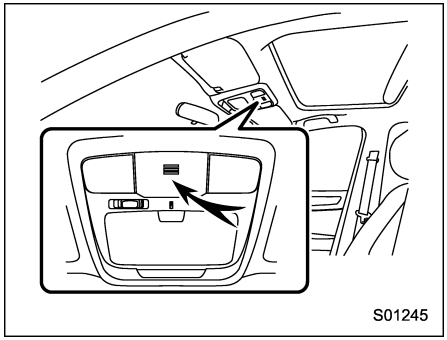
▽ **Steering switch**




1 Talk switch

- Press the talk switch to start the voice command system.
- To cancel voice recognition, press and hold the talk switch.

▽ **Microphone**




- It is unnecessary to speak directly into the microphone when giving a command.

## NOTE

- **Wait for the confirmation beep before speaking a command.**
- **Voice commands may not be recognized if:**
  - **– Spoken too quickly.**
  - **– Spoken at a low or high volume.**
  - **– The roof or windows are open.**
  - **– Passengers are talking while voice commands are spoken.**
  - **– The air conditioning speed is set high.**
  - **– The air conditioning vents are turned towards the microphone.**
- **In the following conditions, the system may not recognize the command properly and using voice commands may not be possible:**
  - **– The command is incorrect or unclear. Note that certain words, accents or speech patterns may be difficult for the system to recognize.**
  - **– There is excessive background noise, such as wind noise.**

### ▼ Voice command system operation

1. Press the talk switch.
   - After the voice command top screen has been displayed, speech guidance will commence.

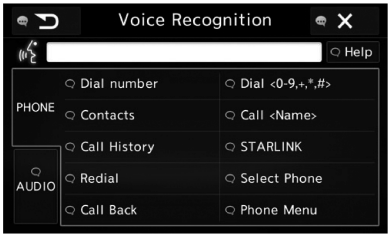



– CONTINUED –

## NOTE

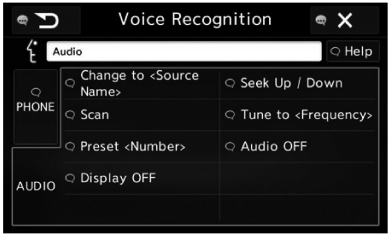
**When the voice command mode is audio mode, voice guidance for the voice command system can be skipped by pressing the talk switch.**

2. Say the command.
   - Say “Help” or “Phone”.




S01274

- Say “Audio”.




S01275

- Commands related with each function are displayed on the screen of the each function tab. Some commonly used commands are displayed on the screen of the main tab. Even if any tab is selected, all commands can be operated.
- Saying Help (Help) prompts guidance to offer examples of commands and operation methods.
- To cancel voice recognition, select “×”, or press and hold the talk switch.

## NOTE

**If the system does not respond or the confirmation screen does not disappear, press the talk switch and try again.**

▽ **Voice command example: Call name**

1. Press the talk switch.
2. Say ***“Call <contacts>”***.
   - A confirmation screen will be displayed showing the recognition results. If multiple matching items are found, a selection screen will be displayed. Say ***“<number>”*** or select the number.

## NOTE

- **In the same manner as it is displayed on the screen, “Call <contacts>” (Call <contacts>), after saying *“Call a contact”* say the name of a contact. For example: *“Call a contact”*, *“John Smith”* or *“Call a contact”*, *“Mary Davis”***
- **Short or abbreviated names in the contacts list may not be recognized. Change names in the contacts list to full names.**
- **Sometimes a voice recognition result confirmation screen will be displayed. After confirming the result, say *“Yes”* or *“No”*.**
- **When the system recognizes multiple names from the contacts list, a name candidate list will be displayed**

**on the screen. If the desired name is not displayed on the top of the screen, say or select the number of the name from the candidate list (number 1, number 2, etc.) to select a name from the candidate list.**

**• When a contact has multiple phone numbers registered in the contacts list, a candidate list will be displayed. If the desired phone number is not displayed on the top of the screen, say or select the number of the desired phone number from the candidate list (number 1, number 2, etc.) to select a phone number from the candidate list.**

**▽ Voice command example: Dial number**

1. Press the talk switch.
2. Say the phone number.
   • In the same manner as it is displayed on the screen, "Dial <number>" (Dial <number>), after saying ***"Dial number"*** say the phone number.
   • Say the phone number one digit at a time.
   For example, if the phone number is 2345678:
   Say ***"two three four five six seven eight"***
   Do not say ***"twenty three forty five sixty seven eight"***
   • As the system cannot recognize additional numbers, say the complete number without stopping.

Calling to other phone numbers

3. Say ***"Dial"*** or press the ☎ switch on the steering wheel.
   • When the system recognizes multiple phone numbers, a phone number candidate list will be displayed on the screen. Pressing the ☎ switch on the steering wheel makes a call to the top entry on the list. If the desired phone number is not displayed on the top of the screen, say the number of the desired phone number from the candidate list to select a phone number from the candidate list.

**▼ Casual speech recognization**

Due to natural language speech recognition technology, this system enables recognition of a command when spoken naturally. However, the system cannot recognize every variation of each command. In some situations, it is possible to omit the command for the procedure and directly state the desired operation. Not all voice commands are displayed in the function menu.

## NOTE

**If the command cannot be recognized completely, the command input screen will be displayed. (Search results will be shown based on the part of the command that was recognized.)**

**▽ Expression examples for each function**

| Command | Expression examples |
|---|---|
| "Dial <phone number>" | *Phone <phone number>.* |

## Command list

Recognizable voice commands and their actions are shown below.

- Some voice commands may not be available depending on the market, vehicle specifications or the device connection status.
- Frequently used commands are listed in the following tables.
- For devices that are not installed in the vehicle, the related commands will not be displayed in the screen. Also, according to conditions, other commands may not be displayed in the screen.
- The functions available may vary according to the system installed.
- Voice recognition language can be changed. Refer to “Other settings” ☞5-13.

### NOTE

- **The notations used in the commands are as follows.**
  - **– [OOO]: Commands that need not to be spoken**
  - **– <OOO>: Numbers, titles, or names to be spoken**

Basic command

| Voice command | Phrase | Function |
|---|---|---|
| System back | Back | Go back one hierarchy or cancel the voice recognition (voice command top screen) |
| System help | Help | Ask for help with the current task |
| System cancel (Close) | Cancel, Close | Cancel the current task |
| Yes | Yes | |
| No | No | |
| Display OFF | Display OFF | Turns the display off |
| Audio ON | Audio ON | Turns the audio system on |
| Audio OFF | Audio OFF | Turns the audio system off |
| STARLINK mode change (for Europe) | STARLINK | Switch to APPS mode |

Commands for changing the radio mode

| Voice command | Phrase | Function |
|---|---|---|
| AM mode change | Change to AM | Switch to AM mode |
| | Change to AM1 | Switch to AM mode band 1 |
| | Change to AM2 | Switch to AM mode band 2 |
| FM mode change | Change to FM | Switch to FM mode |
| | Change to FM1 | Switch to FM mode band 1 |
| | Change to FM2 | Switch to FM mode band 2 |
| | Change to FM3 | Switch to FM mode band 3 |
| Bluetooth Audio mode change | Change to BT Audio | Switch to Bluetooth Audio mode |
| CD mode change | Change to CD | Switch to CD mode |
| USB mode change | Change to USB | Switch to USB mode |
| iPod mode change | Change to iPod | Switch to iPod mode |
| AUX mode change | Change to AUX | Switch to AUX mode |

Commands for Hands Free

| Voice command | Phrase | Function |
|---|---|---|
| Dial number calling | Dial Number → <0-9, +, *, #> → Change number, Dial | Places a call to the said phone number |
| | Dial <0-9, +, *, #> → Change number, Dial | |
| Contacts (Phonebook) | Contacts, Phonebook → <Name> → <1-5> → Dial | Make a call by using the phonebook |
| Call <Name> | Call <Name> → <1-5> → Dial | |
| Recent calls | Call History → Incoming call, Outgoing call → Next (page), Previous (page) → <1-5> → Dial | Make a call by using the call history |
| Incoming calls | Incoming Calls | Display the call history screen |
| Outgoing calls | Outgoing Calls | Display the call history screen |
| Redial | Redial | Places a call to the phone number of the latest outgoing call |
| Callback | Callback | Places a call to the phone number of the latest incoming call |
| Select phone | Select Phone → <1-5> | Display the phone select screen |
| Show phone menu | Phone Menu | Display the hands free top screen |

Commands for AM/FM control

| Voice command | Phrase | Function |
|---|---|---|
| Seek up | Seek Up | Tunes in the higher frequency direction |
| Seek down | Seek Down | Tunes in the lower frequency direction |
| Scan | Scan | Switch to the scan mode |
| Direct frequency tuning | Tune to <Frequency> | Designate the frequency to switch to a specific radio station |
| Preset number tuning | Preset <preset number> | Designate the preset channel to switch to specific radio station |

– CONTINUED –

Commands for CD control

| Voice command | Phrase | Function |
|---|---|---|
| Track up, next track | Track Up | Select the next track |
| Track down, previous track | Track Down | Select the current track |
| Scan | Scan | Switch to the scan mode |
| 1 Track Repeat | 1 Track Repeat | Repeat single track |
| Repeat All | Repeat All | Repeat all tracks |
| Shuffle | Shuffle | Plays randomly |

Commands for MP3/WMA/AAC, USB control

| Voice command | Phrase | Function |
|---|---|---|
| Track up, next track | Track Up | Select the next track |
| Track down, previous track | Track Down | Select the current track |
| Folder up | Folder Up | Plays from the start of the next folder |
| Folder down | Folder Down | Plays from the start of the previous folder |
| Scan | Scan | Switch to the scan mode |
| 1 track repeat | 1 Track Repeat | Repeat single track |
| Repeat folder | Repeat Folder | Repeat of the folder |
| Repeat all | Repeat All | Repeat all tracks |
| Shuffle folder | Shuffle Folder | Plays randomly of the folder |
| Shuffle all | Shuffle All | Plays randomly |

Commands for iPod Control

| Voice command | Phrase | Function |
|---|---|---|
| Track up, next track | Track Up | Select the next track |
| Track down, previous track | Track Down | Select the current track |
| Repeat one | Repeat One | Repeat single track |
| Repeat all | Repeat All | Repeat all tracks |
| Shuffle track | Shuffle Track | Shuffle all tracks |
| Shuffle album | Shuffle Album | Shuffle all tracks |
| Shuffle OFF | Shuffle OFF | Turn off shuffle |

Commands for Bluetooth audio control

| Voice command | Phrase | Function |
|---|---|---|
| Pause | Pause | Pause play |
| Track up, next track | Track Up | Select the next track |
| Track down, previous track | Track Down | Select the current track |
| 1 Track repeat | 1 Track Repeat | Repeat single track |
| Repeat all | Repeat All | Repeat all tracks |
| Group repeat | Group Repeat | Repeat tracks on group |
| Shuffle all | Shuffle All | Shuffle all tracks |
| Group shuffle | Group Shuffle | Shuffle tracks on group |
| Shuffle OFF | Shuffle OFF | Turn off shuffle |

# Appendix

## ■ Certification

- **Bluetooth**

The Bluetooth word mark and logo are registered trademarks of Bluetooth SIG, Inc. and any use of such marks by Clarion Co., Ltd. is under license.

- **iPod**

“Made for iPod” and “Made for iPhone” mean that an electronic accessory has been designed to connect specifically to iPod or iPhone respectively, and has been certified by the developer to meet Apple performance standards. Apple is not responsible for the operation of this device or its compliance with safety and regulatory standards. Please note that the use of this accessory with iPod or iPhone may affect wireless performance.

iPhone, iPod, iPod classic, iPod nano, iPod touch, and iTunes are trademarks of Apple Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries.

- **How to get the source code using the open source**

This system implements software using the open source. For customers who would like to get the source code of the software, it is available by downloading it from the web site of Clarion Co., Ltd.

For details, refer to the following web site.

For Europe:

http://www.clarion.com/xe/en/open-source/index.html

For Australia:

http://www.clarion.com/au/en/open-source/index.html

For South America:

http://www.clarion.com/xl/en/open-source/index.html

For Asia:

http://www.clarion.com/my/en/open-source/index.html

## ■ Certification for UAE models

PF-3637

TRA

REGISTERED No: ER0129018/14

DEALER No: DA0054309/10

– CONTINUED –

## ■ Certification for Paraguay models

Record Number: 2014-06-I-000137

Manufacturer: Clarion Co., Ltd.

Paraguay Distributor:

Tokyo Motors S.A.

Avda. Eusebio Ayala 4649 kg 5 1/2 Asuncion, Paraguay

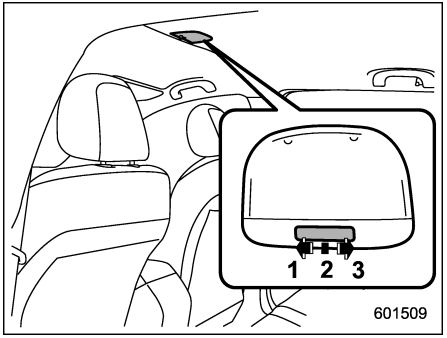
Interior light ..... 6-2
Dome light ..... 6-2
Map lights ..... 6-2
Cargo area light (Outback) ..... 6-3
OFF delay timer ..... 6-3
Sun visors ..... 6-4
Vanity mirror with light ..... 6-4
Storage compartment ..... 6-4
Glove box ..... 6-4
Center console ..... 6-5
Overhead console ..... 6-5
Pocket ..... 6-6
Cup holders ..... 6-6
Front passenger's cup holder ..... 6-6
Rear passenger's cup holder ..... 6-7
Bottle holders ..... 6-7
Accessory power outlets ..... 6-8
Ashtray (if equipped) ..... 6-9
Floor mat (if equipped) ..... 6-10
Coat hook ..... 6-11
Shopping bag hook ..... 6-12
For Sedan ..... 6-12
For Outback ..... 6-12
Convenient grip (Outback) ..... 6-12
Cargo area cover (Outback) ..... 6-13
Using the cover ..... 6-13
To install the front cover ..... 6-14
To remove the front cover ..... 6-14
To remove the cover housing ..... 6-14
Stowage of the cargo area cover ..... 6-15
To take out the stowed cover housing ..... 6-16
To install the cover housing ..... 6-16
Cargo tie-down hooks (Outback) ..... 6-17
Under-floor storage compartment (if equipped) ..... 6-17
Rear view camera (if equipped) ..... 6-18
How to use the rear view camera ..... 6-20
Viewing range on the screen ..... 6-20
Help line ..... 6-21

## Interior light

**⚠ CAUTION**

**When leaving your vehicle, make sure the lights are turned off to avoid battery discharge.**

### ■ Dome light



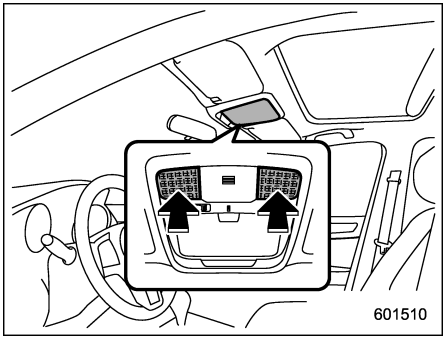

1) ON
2) DOOR
3) OFF

The dome light switch has the following positions.

**ON:** The light remains on continuously.
**OFF:** The light remains off.

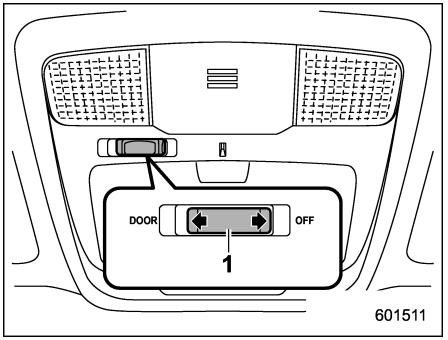
**DOOR:** The dome light illuminates automatically when any of the doors (for Outback, including the rear gate) is opened. Several seconds after all of the doors (including the rear gate) are closed, the dome light gradually turns off. For details, refer to "OFF delay timer" ☞6-3.

### ■ Map lights




To turn on the map light, press the lens.
To turn it off, press the lens again.

#### ▼ Door interlock switch

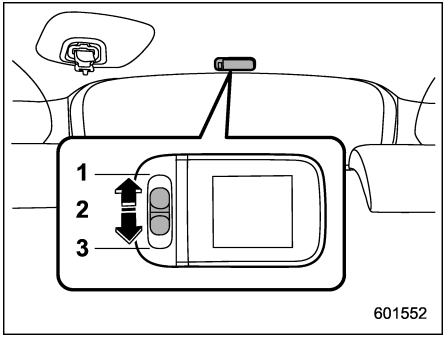



1) Door interlock switch

The door interlock switch has the following positions.

**OFF:** The map lights do not illuminate automatically in conjunction with a door opening. But, the lights can be turned on manually by pressing the map light switches (lenses).
**DOOR:** The map lights illuminate automatically when any of the doors (other than the rear gate or trunk lid) is opened even while the map light switches (lenses) are in the OFF position. Several seconds after all of the doors (other than the rear gate or trunk lid) are closed, the map lights gradually turn off. For details, refer to "OFF delay timer" ☞6-3.

## ■ Cargo area light (Outback)




1) DOOR
2) OFF
3) ON

The cargo area light switch has the following positions.

**DOOR:** The light illuminates only when the rear gate is opened. The light gradually turns off several seconds after the rear gate is closed. For details, refer to "OFF delay timer" ☞6-3.

**OFF:** The light remains off.

**ON:** The light remains on continuously.

## ■ OFF delay timer

The following lights have an automatic illumination function.

- dome light
- map light
- cargo area light (Outback)

After being illuminated automatically, these lights remain on for several seconds and then gradually turn off under the following conditions.

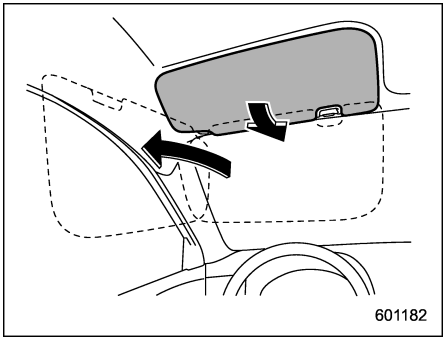
- after the ignition switch is turned to the "LOCK"/"OFF" position
- after any doors or the rear gate (Outback) is closed (dome light)
- after all doors are closed (map light)
- after the rear gate is closed (cargo area light)
- after the doors are unlocked using the keyless access function (if equipped) (dome light and map light)
- after the doors are unlocked using the remote keyless entry system (dome light and map light)

While the lights are illuminated, if any of the following operations is performed, the lights turn off immediately.

- The ignition switch is turned from the "LOCK"/"OFF" position to the "ACC" or "ON" position.
- All doors and the rear gate (Outback) are locked using the keyless access function (if equipped).
- All doors and the rear gate (Outback) are locked using the remote keyless entry system.

The setting for the period of time in which the lights remain on (OFF delay timer) can be changed by a SUBARU dealer. We recommend that you contact your SUBARU dealer for details. Also, the setting can be changed by operating the multi information display. For details, refer to"Interior Light" ☞3-46.

## Sun visors

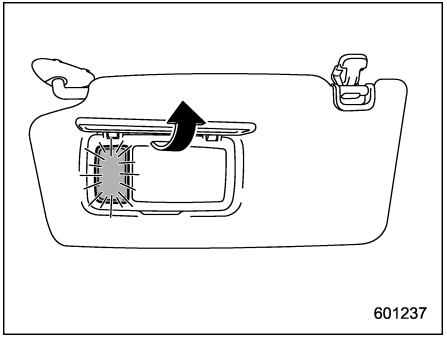



To block out glare, swing down the visors.
To use the sun visor at a side window, swing it down and move it sideways.

## ■ Vanity mirror with light

**⚠ CAUTION**

**Keep the vanity mirror cover closed while the car is being driven to avoid being distracted by the light.**




To use the vanity mirror, swing down the sun visor and open the vanity mirror cover.
The light beside the vanity mirror illuminates when the mirror cover is opened.

### NOTE

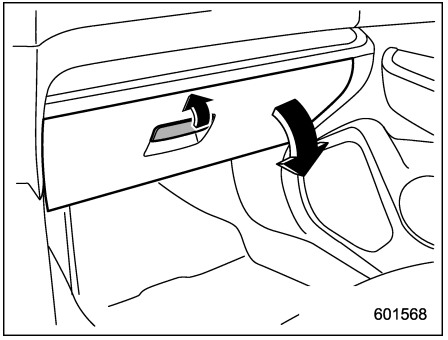
**Use of the vanity mirror light for a long period of time while the engine is not running can cause battery discharge.**

## Storage compartment

**⚠ CAUTION**

- **Always keep the storage compartment closed while driving to reduce the risk of injury in the event of sudden stops or an accident.**
- **Do not store spray cans, containers with flammable or corrosive liquids or any other dangerous items in the storage compartment.**

## ■ Glove box

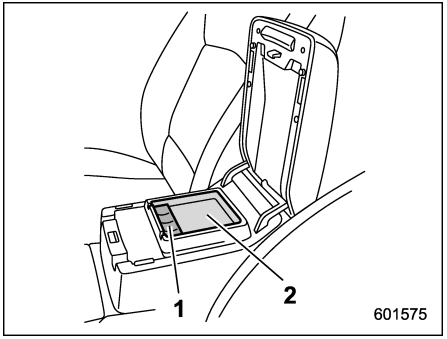



To open the glove box, pull the handle. To

close it, push the lid firmly upward.

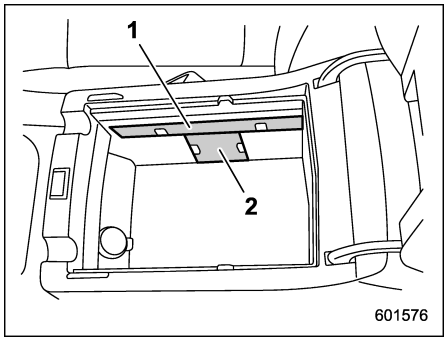
## ■ Center console

The center console box provides a storage space.




1) Coin tray
2) Accessory tray

The lid located inside the center console can be used as a coin tray or an accessory tray for small items.

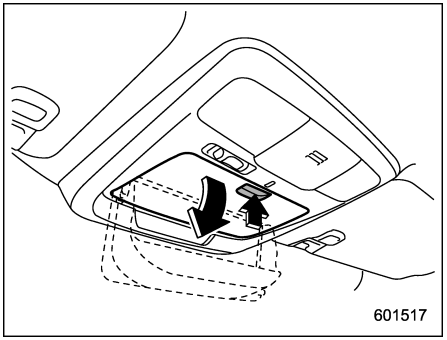



1) Pen holder
2) Card holder

When the lid inside the center console is removed, you can use the center console as a pen holder or a card holder.

The top of the console can be used as an armrest.

## ■ Overhead console



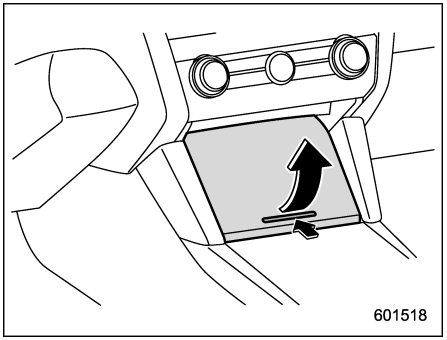

To open the console, push on the lid lightly and it will automatically open.

**⚠ CAUTION**

- **Before operating this vehicle, ensure that the overhead console is closed.**
- **When your vehicle is parked in the sun or on a warm day, the inside of the overhead console heats up. Do not store plastic or other heat-vulnerable or flammable articles such as a lighter in the overhead console.**

– CONTINUED –

## ■ Pocket




**⚠ CAUTION**

- **Do not use the pocket as an ashtray or leave a lighted cigarette in the pocket. This could cause a fire.**
- **When your vehicle is parked in the sun or on a warm day, the inside of the pocket heats up. Avoid storing plastic or other heat-vulnerable or flammable articles such as a lighter in the pocket.**

To use the pocket, push on the lid lightly and it will automatically open.

# Cup holders

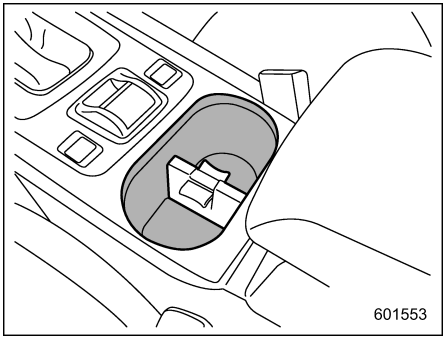
**⚠ CAUTION**

**Take care to avoid spills. Beverages, if hot, might burn you and/or your passengers. Spilled beverages may also damage upholstery, carpets or audio equipment.**

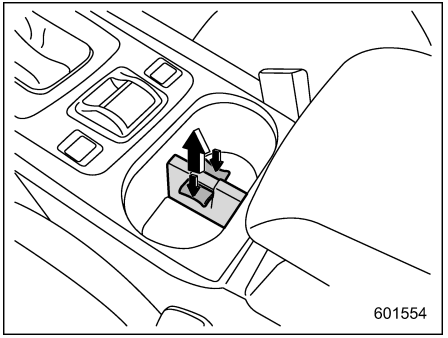
## ■ Front passenger's cup holder

**⚠ CAUTION**

- **Do not pick up a cup from the cup holder or put a cup in the holder while you are driving, as this may distract you and lead to an accident.**
- **Take care not to spill a beverage on the shift lever/select lever or any switch(es) in the adjacent area. If the beverage is spilled, it may cause a malfunction of the shift lever/select lever and/or switch(es).**




Two cup holders are built into the center console.

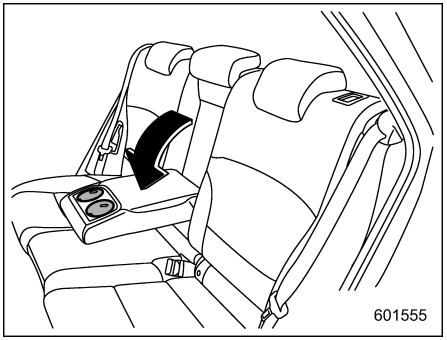



The divider in the cup holder can be pulled out.

**NOTE**

**With the divider taken out, the cup holder can be used as a storage box.**

### ■ Rear passenger's cup holder




A dual cup holder is built into the armrest.

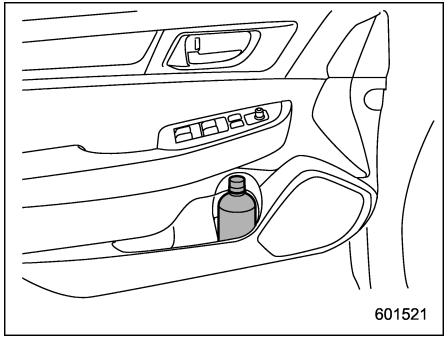
**⚠ CAUTION**

**When a cup containing a beverage is in the cup holder, do not fold down or recline any seat. Otherwise, the beverage could spill while driving and, if the beverage is hot, it could burn you and/or your passengers.**

## Bottle holders

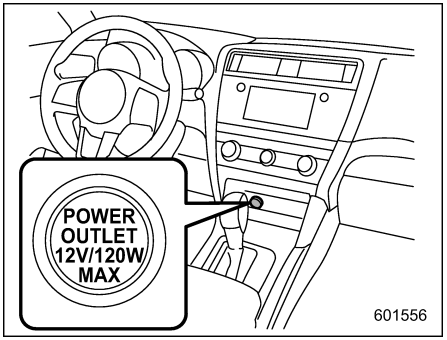
**⚠ CAUTION**

- **Do not pick up a bottle from the bottle holder or put a bottle in the holder while you are driving, as this may distract you and lead to an accident.**
- **When placing a beverage in a bottle holder, make sure it is capped. Otherwise, the beverage could spill when opening/closing the door or while driving and, if the beverage is hot, it could burn you and/or your passengers.**

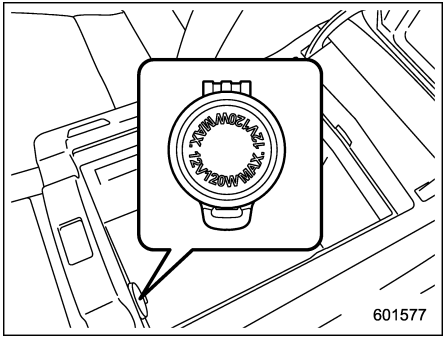



The bottle holder equipped on each door trim can be used to hold beverage bottles and other items.

## Accessory power outlets




**Power outlet below the climate control**




**Power outlet in the center console**

Accessory power outlets are provided below the climate control and in the center console. Electrical power (12V DC) from the battery is available at any of the outlets when the ignition switch is in either the "ACC" or "ON" position.

You can use an in-vehicle electrical appliance by connecting it to an outlet.

The maximum power rating of an appliance that can be connected is **120W**. Do not use an appliance which exceeds the indicated wattage for each outlet.

When using appliances connected to two outlets simultaneously, the total power consumed by them must not exceed 120W.

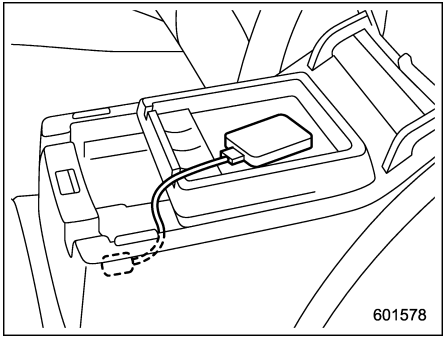
**⚠ CAUTION**

- **Do not attempt to use a cigarette lighter in the accessory power outlets.**
- **Do not place any foreign objects, especially metal ones such as coins or aluminum foil, into the accessory power outlet. That could cause a short circuit. Always put the cap on the accessory power outlet when it is not in use.**
- **Use only electrical appliances which are designed for 12V DC.**

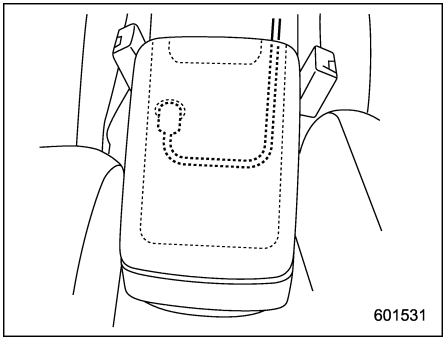
  **The maximum power rating of an appliance that can be connected is 120W. Do not use an appliance which exceeds the indicated wattage for each outlet.**

  **When using appliances connected to two outlets simultaneously, the total power consumed by them must not exceed 120W. Overloading the accessory power outlet can cause a short circuit. Do not use double adapters or more than one electrical appliance.**
- **If the plug on your electric appliance is either too loose or too tight for the accessory power outlet, this can result in a poor contact or cause the plug to get stuck. Only use plugs that fit properly.**
- **Use of an electric appliance in the accessory power outlet for a long period of time while the engine is not running can cause battery discharge.**
- **Before driving your vehicle, make sure that the plug and the cord on your electrical appliance will not interfere with your shifting gears and operating the accelerator and brake pedals. If they do, do not use the electrical**

appliance while driving.




Upper compartment




Lower compartment

## NOTE

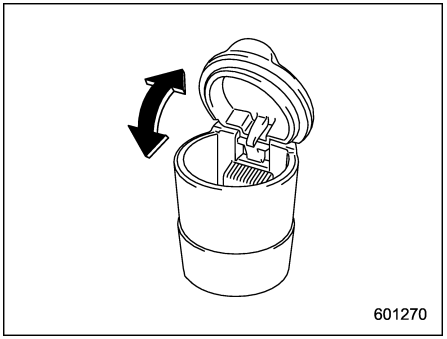
When the lid of the center console is closed, a gap remains between the center console and the lid to allow the power outlet in the center console to be used. Pass the cord of the electrical appliance through this gap.

## Ashtray (if equipped)

**CAUTION**

- Do not use ashtrays as waste receptacles or leave a lighted cigarette in an ashtray. This could cause a fire.
- Always extinguish matches and cigarettes before putting them into the ashtray, and then close the ashtray securely. If you keep the ashtray open, the fire of the cigarette may spread to another cigarette butt and start a fire.
- Do not put flammable material in the ashtray.
- Do not leave a lot of cigarette butts in the ashtray.

– CONTINUED –



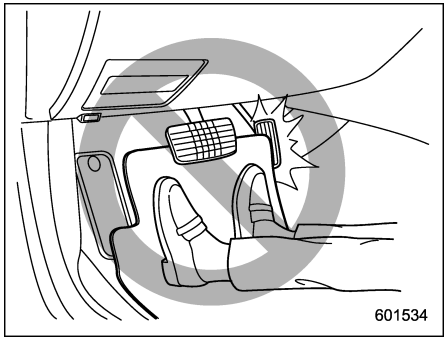

The portable ashtray can be installed in each cup holder. For the locations of the cup holders, refer to “Cup holders” ☞6-6. When using the ashtray, open the lid of the ashtray. When removing the ashtray from a cup holder, pull the ashtray upwards.

Fully close the lid after using it to help reduce residual smoke.

## NOTE

**Particles of ash and tobacco will accumulate around the hinges of the ashtray’s inner lid. Clean them off using a toothbrush or another narrow-ended implement.**

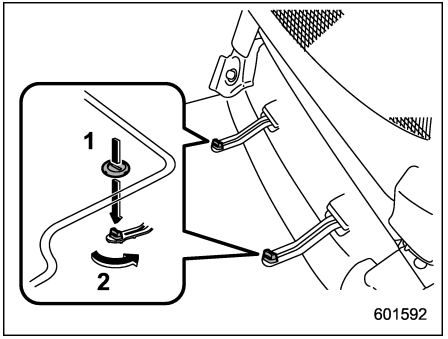
# Floor mat (if equipped)




**⚠ CAUTION**

**If the floor mat slips forward and interferes with the movement of the pedals during driving, it could cause an accident. Observe the following precautions to prevent the floor mat from slipping forward.**

- **Be sure to use a genuine SUBARU floor mat or an equivalent designed with grommets in the correct locations.**
- **Make sure that the driver’s floor mat is placed back in its proper location and is correctly secured on its retainers.**
- **Do not use more than one floor mat.**

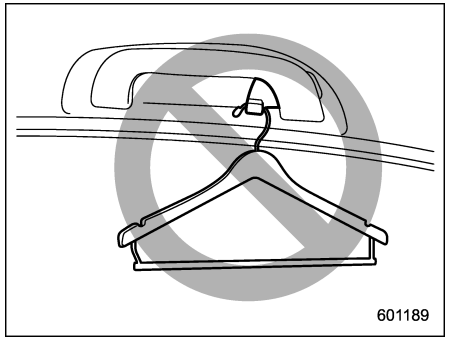



1) First, place the grommets over the retainers and push them downward.
2) Then, rotate the retainers 90 degrees to secure the floor mat.

Retainers are located on the driver’s side floor.

The floor mat should be properly secured using the built-in grommets as shown in the illustration.

## Coat hook

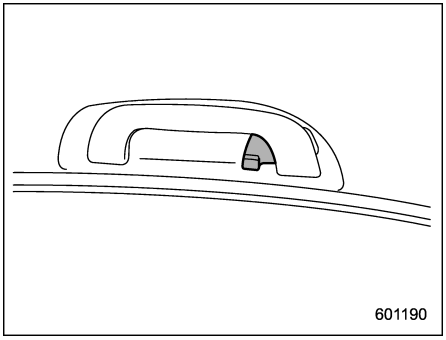



**⚠ WARNING**

**Do not hang coat hangers or other hard or pointed objects on the coat hooks. If such items were hanging on the coat hooks during deployment of the SRS curtain airbags, they could cause serious injuries by coming off the coat hooks and being thrown through the cabin or by preventing correct airbag deployment. Before hanging clothing on the coat hooks, make sure there are no pointed objects in the pockets. Hang clothing directly on the coat hooks without using hangers.**

**⚠ CAUTION**

**Never hang anything on the coat hook that might obstruct the driver's view or that could cause injury in sudden stops or in a collision. Also, do not hang items on the coat hook that weigh 5 kg (11 lbs) or more.**



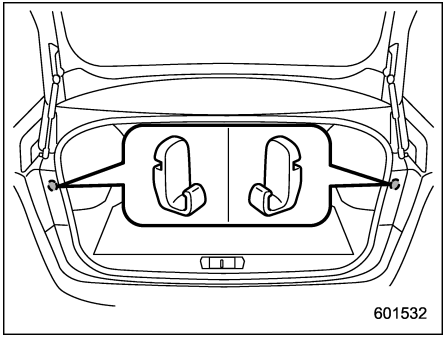

The coat hook is attached to each rear passenger's hand grip.

## Shopping bag hook

**⚠ CAUTION**

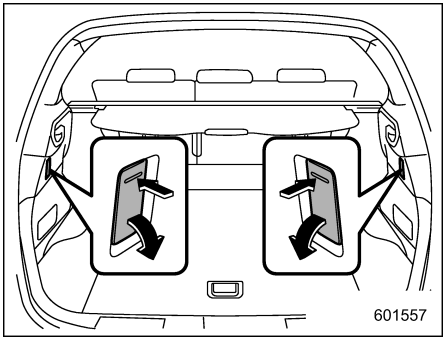
**Do not hang items on the shopping bag hook that weigh 5 kg (11 lbs) or more.**

### ■ For Sedan




A shopping bag hook is attached to each inner side wall of the trunk near the trunk lid opening.

### ■ For Outback




A shopping bag hook is attached to each side of the cargo area.

To use the hook, push the upper portion and the shopping bag hook will appear.

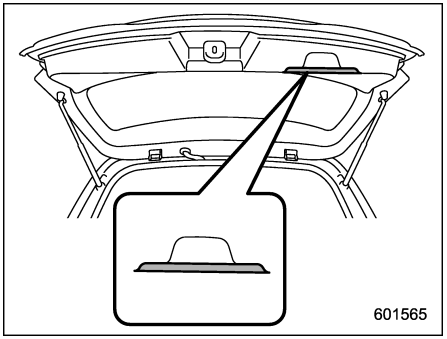
**NOTE**

**When not used, store the shopping bag hook.**

## Convenient grip (Outback)

**⚠ CAUTION**

- **Do not hang items on the convenient grip that weigh 3 kg (6 lbs) or more. Depending on the conditions of use (for example, in low temperatures, etc.), the rear gate may lower even with lighter loads. However, this is not a malfunction. Be careful not to hit your head or other body parts.**
- **When using the convenient grip, do not try to close the rear gate. Doing so may cause the item on the grip to be jammed in the rear gate and damaged. Remove the item from the grip before closing the rear gate.**



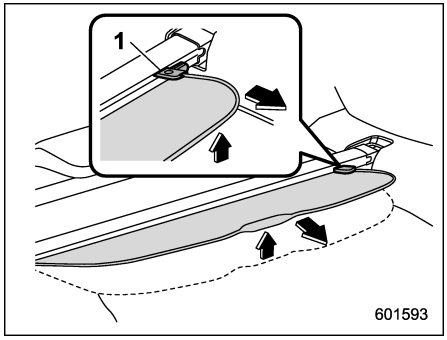

A convenient grip is attached to the rear gate trim. When the rear gate is open, you can hang a candle lantern, wet suit, etc. on the grip.

## Cargo area cover (Outback)

The cargo area cover is provided for covering the cargo area and to protect its contents from direct sunlight. This cover is detachable to make room for additional cargo.

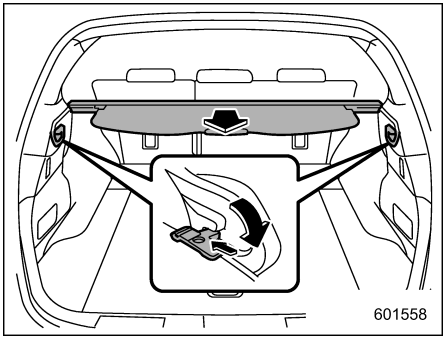
### ■ Using the cover

**To extend the cargo area cover:**




1) Stopper

1. Hold the handle located at the center of the cargo area cover and lift the cargo area cover at a diagonal angle to unlock the stopper located at right and left end.

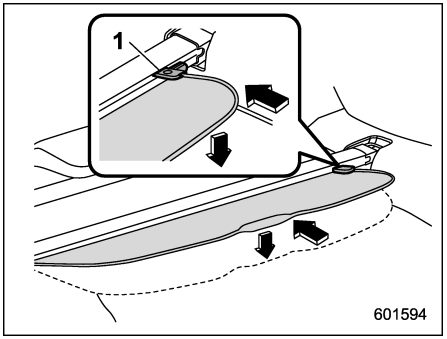



2. Pull the end of the cover out of the housing. Then insert its hooks into the catches as shown.

**To rewind the cargo area cover:**

1. Hold the handle located at the center of the cargo area cover, pull it toward you and lift up to release the cargo area cover from the hook.

– CONTINUED –




1) Stopper

2. From the lifted up position, slowly rewind the cargo area cover at a diagonal angle into the cover housing and make sure that the stopper is in the locked position.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Do not place anything on the extended cover. Putting excessive weight on the extended cover can break it and an object on the cover could tumble forward in the event of a sudden stop or collision. This could cause serious injury.**

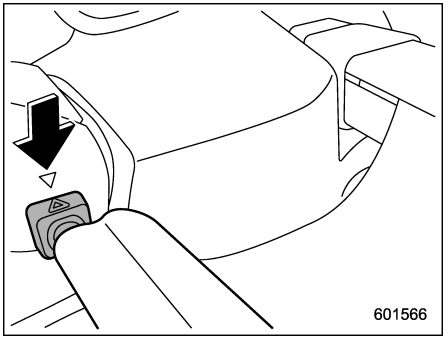
**⚠ CAUTION**

- **Be careful not to scratch the rear gate stays while extending and rewinding the cover. Scratches on the stays could cause leakage of gas from the stays, which may result in their inability to hold the rear gate open.**
- **When reclining the rear seatback, move the front cover backward so that the cover is not damaged.**

## ■ To install the front cover

**⚠ CAUTION**

**When reclining the rear seatback, move the front cover backward so that the cover is not damaged.**



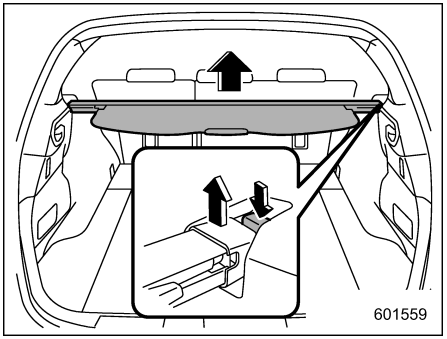

1. Align the right side of the front cover with the triangle mark before fixing the cover in place.
2. Push the front cover to the right side and shorten the bar.
3. Align the left side of the front cover with the triangle mark before fixing the cover in place.

## ■ To remove the front cover

1. Push the front cover to the right side and shorten the bar.
2. Remove the front cover.

## ■ To remove the cover housing

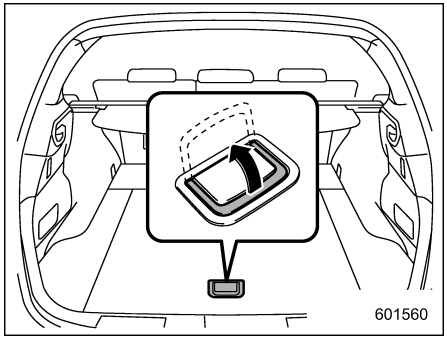
1. Rewind the cover.



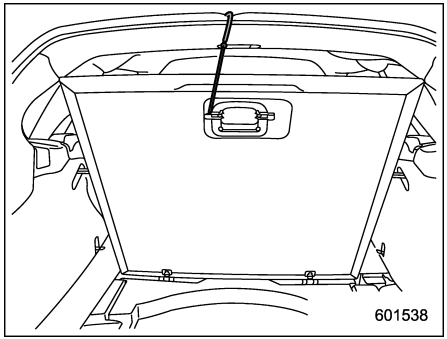

2. Hold down the button on the right-hand rear quarter panel and lift up the right-hand cover housing.
3. Remove the cover housing.

## ■ Stowage of the cargo area cover

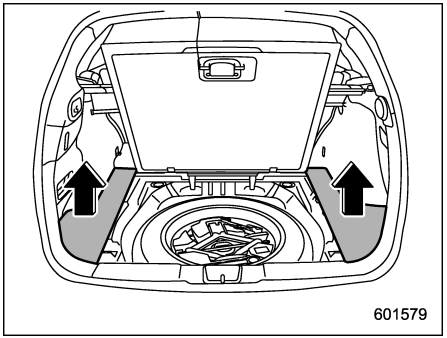
The cargo area cover can be stowed in under the cargo floor.



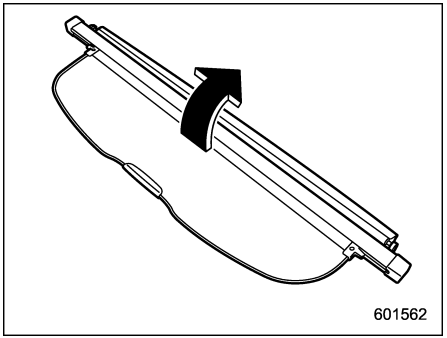

1. To open the lid, pull the handle up.




2. To keep the lid open, hang the hook (provided on the back of the lid) on the rear edge of the roof.



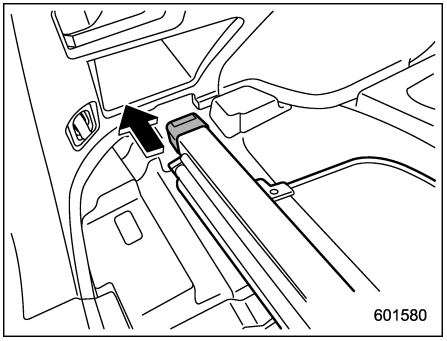

3. Remove the left and right parts of the cargo floor lid.



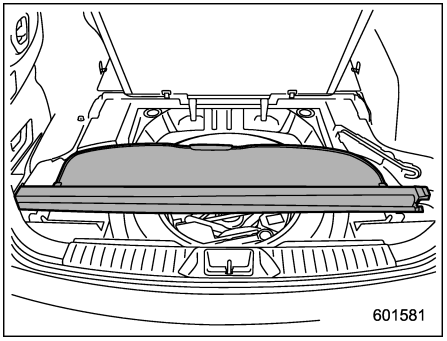

4. Turn the cover housing 180 degrees

– CONTINUED –

toward the front.

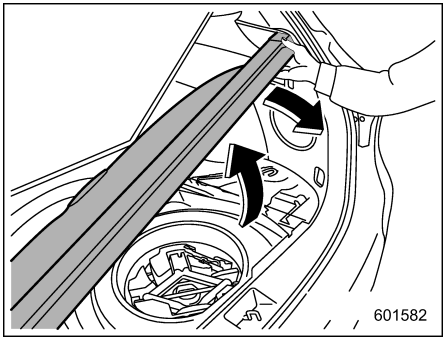



5. Insert the left end of the cover housing into the retainer.



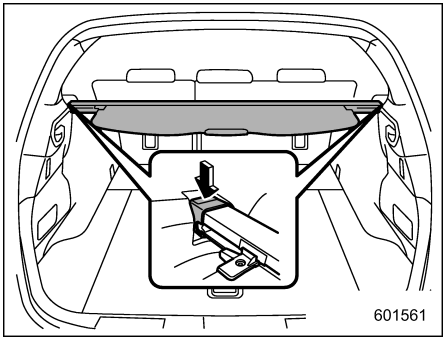

6. Stow the cover housing in the cargo area end.

## ■ To take out the stowed cover housing

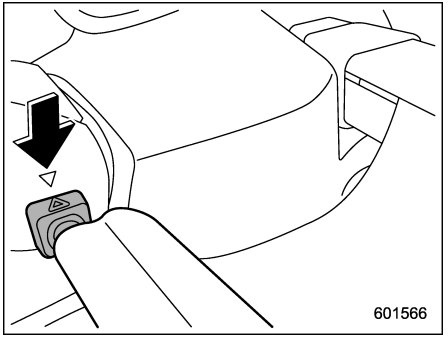



1. Raise the right side of the cover housing.
2. Take out the cover housing by pulling it toward you.

## ■ To install the cover housing

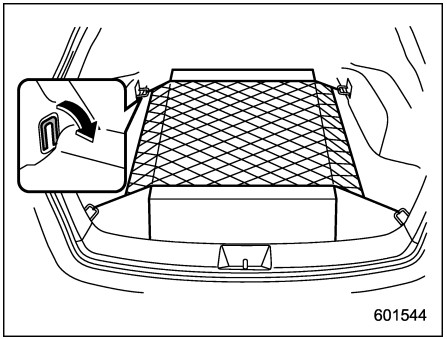



1. Insert both ends of the cover housing into the retainers.




2. Make sure to fix the front part of the cargo area cover behind the rear seat.

## Cargo tie-down hooks (Outback)




The cargo area is equipped with four tie-down hooks so that cargo can be secured with a cargo net or ropes.

When using the tie-down hooks, turn them down out of the storing recesses. When not in use, put the hooks up into the storing recesses.

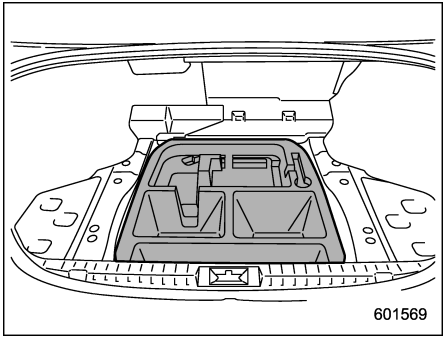
**⚠ CAUTION**

**The cargo tie-down hooks are designed only for securing light cargo. Never try to secure cargo that exceeds the capacity of the hooks. The maximum load capacity is 50 kg (110 lbs) per a hook.**

## Under-floor storage compartment (if equipped)

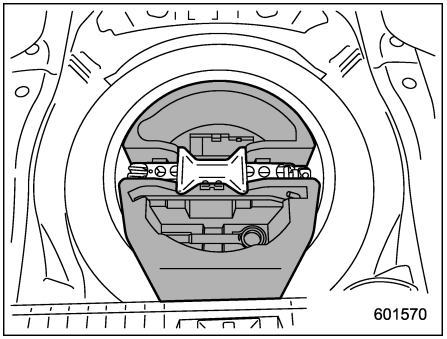
### NOTE

**The shape of the storage compartment may be different depending on the model.**

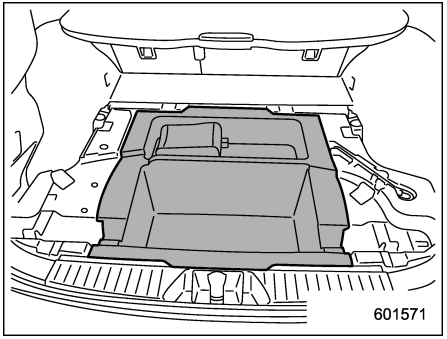



**Sedan (type A)**

– CONTINUED –




**Sedan (type B)**




**Outback**

The storage compartment is located under the floor of the trunk (Sedan) or the cargo area (Outback) and can be used to store small items. To open the lid, pull the tab up.

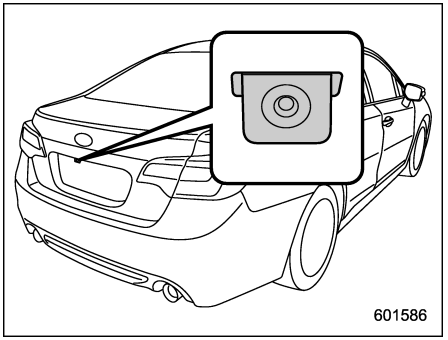
## NOTE

**For models without flat tire repair kit, when storing a flat tire, put the storage tray in the trunk (Sedan) or the cargo area (Outback).**

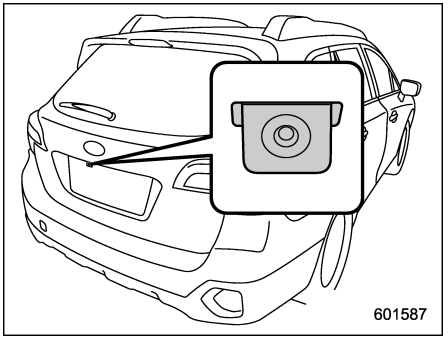
**⚠ CAUTION**

- **Always keep the lid of the storage compartment closed while driving to reduce the risk of injury in the event of sudden stop or an accident.**
- **Do not store spray cans, containers with flammable or corrosive liquids or any other dangerous items in the storage compartment.**

# Rear view camera (if equipped)




**Sedan**




**Outback**

A rear view camera is attached to the

trunk lid (Sedan) or rear gate (Outback).

When the ignition switch is “ON” and the shift lever (MT models) or select lever (CVT models) is set to “R”, the rear view camera automatically displays the rear view image behind the vehicle on the audio/navigation monitor.

**⚠ WARNING**

- **Since the rear view camera uses a wide-angle lens, the image on the monitor is different from the actual view in terms of distance.**
- **Since the range of the image on the monitor is limited, you should always check the rear view and the surrounding area with your eyes and mirrors, and move backward at a slow speed. Moving backward only by checking the rear view image from the camera could cause an accident.**
- **Do not disassemble or modify the camera, switch or wiring. If smoke comes out or you smell a strange odor, stop using the rear view camera immediately. We recommend that you contact your SUBARU dealer for an inspection. Continued use may result in accident, fire or electric shock.**

**⚠ CAUTION**

- **If your vehicle is washed with a high-pressure washer, do not allow water to contact the camera directly. Entry of water in the camera lens may result in condensation, malfunction, fire or electric shock.**
- **Since the camera is a precision device, do not subject it to strong impacts. Otherwise, malfunction, fire or electric shock may occur.**
- **If mud or snow sticks to or is frozen on the camera, you must be very careful removing it. Otherwise, damage done to the camera may cause a fire or electric shock. Pour water or lukewarm water over the camera to remove mud and ice, and wipe it with a soft, dry cloth.**
- **Do not put a flame close to the camera or wiring. Otherwise, damage or fire may occur.**
- **When replacing the fuse, be sure to use a fuse with the specified rating. Use of a fuse with a different rating may result in a malfunction.**
- **If the rear view camera is used for a long time while the engine is not operated, the battery may become completely discharged.**

## NOTE

- **Do not wipe the camera with alcohol, benzine or paint thinner. Otherwise, discoloration may occur. To remove contamination, wipe the camera with a cloth moistened with a diluted neutral detergent and then wipe it with a soft, dry cloth.**
- **When waxing the vehicle, be careful not to apply the wax to the camera. If it comes in contact with the camera, moisten a clean cloth with a diluted neutral detergent to remove the wax.**
- **The camera lens has hard coating to help prevent scratches. However, when washing the vehicle or cleaning the camera lens, be careful not to scratch the camera lens. Do not use a washing brush directly on the camera lens. The monitor screen may be adversely affected.**
- **Strong light shined on the camera lens may develop white light stripes around the light source. This is not a malfunction.**

– CONTINUED –

**• Under fluorescent light, the display may flicker. However, this is not a malfunction.**
**• The image of the rear view camera may be slightly different from the actual color of the objects.**

## ■ How to use the rear view camera

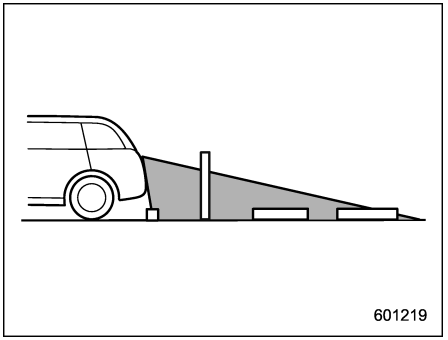
When the shift lever or select lever is set to “R”, the rear view camera automatically displays the rear view image from the vehicle. When the lever is set to other positions, the image before setting to “R” is displayed.

1. Set the ignition switch to “ON”.
2. Set the shift lever or select lever to “R”.

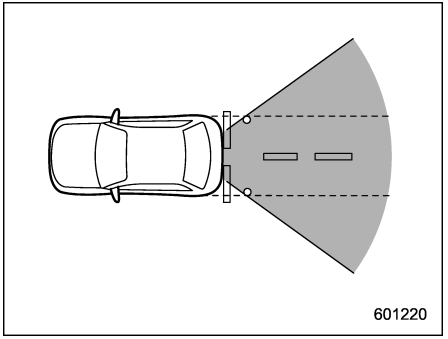
## NOTE

**• For models with the genuine SUBARU navigation system, the image of the rear view camera has priority over other screen displays. Therefore, while the rear view camera is in operation, the operations of other screens are disabled. To operate other screens, set the shift lever or select lever to a position other than “R”.**
**• The image of the rear view camera is horizontally reversed as is the case with the vehicle rear view mirror or the side view mirror.**
**• It may be difficult to see the image of the rear view camera in the following cases. This is not a malfunction of the camera.**
**– The vehicle is in a dark place (at night, in a tunnel, etc.).**
**– The vehicle is in an extremely hot or cold place.**
**– An object (such as raindrops, snow, dirt, etc.) that disturbs the view of the rear view camera sticks to the lens of the camera.**
**– Strong light shined directly on the camera lens (occasionally, there are vertical lines on the screen).**

## ■ Viewing range on the screen




**Range of view**




**Range of view**

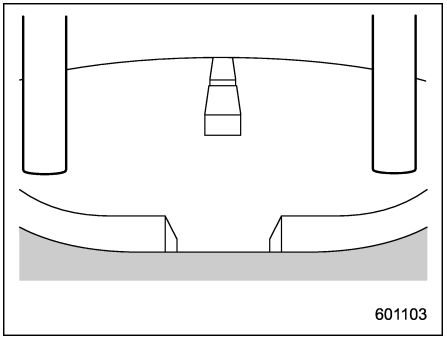


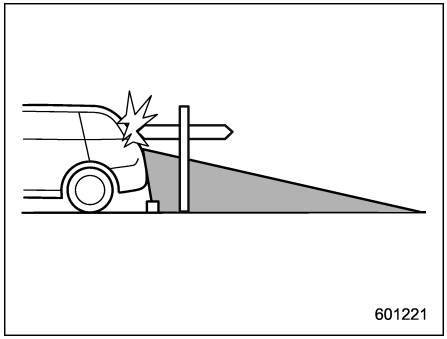

**Image from camera**

The area from the rear end of the bumper can be viewed. Areas at both ends of the bumper and areas just under the bumper cannot be viewed.

Also, objects seen in the rear view image are closer than the actual distance.

**CAUTION**

**The range that can be viewed with the rear view camera is limited. Always be sure to check with your eyes when moving backward and proceed slowly.**




**Range of view**

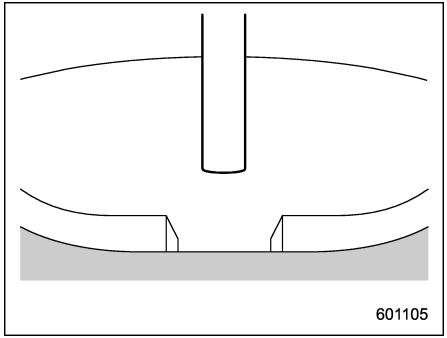



**Image from camera**

The area above the camera cannot be viewed. If there is an object that has a wide projection on its upper part such as a sign pole behind the vehicle, the projection cannot be seen on the screen.

**CAUTION**

**The range that can be viewed with the rear view camera is limited. Always be sure to check with your eyes when moving backward and proceed slowly.**

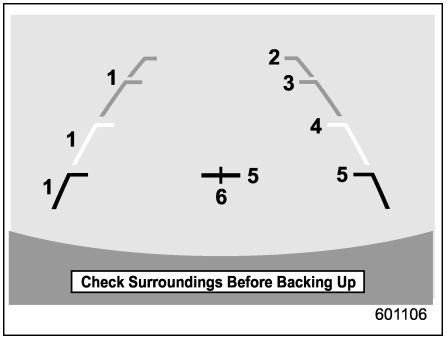
## ■ Help line

The help line (distance marker and vehicle width line) is a guide to help you realize the actual distance from the screen.

### NOTE

**If you shift to the "R" range within several seconds after turning on the ignition switch, the help line and warning message may not be displayed. Wait for several seconds after turning on the ignition switch before shifting to the "R" range. Then help line and warning message will be displayed.**

– CONTINUED –




1) Vehicle width line (oblique vertical line)
2) Approx. 3 m (10 feet) from the bumper (green horizontal line)
3) Approx. 2 m (6.5 feet) from the bumper (green horizontal line)
4) Approx. 1 m (3 feet) from the bumper (yellow horizontal line)
5) Approx. 0.5 m (1.5 feet) from the bumper (red horizontal line)
6) Vehicle centerline

When the shift lever or select lever is set to position “R”, the monitor screen displays the help lines together with the rear view image.

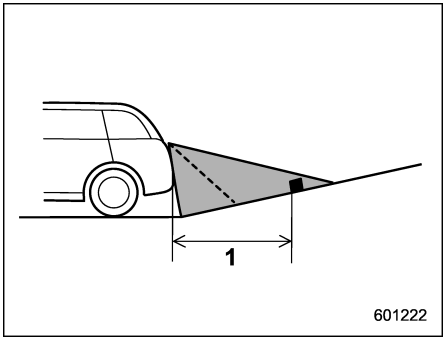
**⚠ CAUTION**

- **When moving backward, always check the back with your eyes without relying on the help lines.**
- **The actual position may be different from the indication of the help lines.**
- **Differences may occur due to number of passengers or loaded cargo.**
- **When the vehicle is on a slope or when the vehicle is inclined against the road, the indication is different from the actual position.**

**▼ Difference between screen and actual road**

The distance markers show the distance for a level road when the vehicle is not loaded. It may be different from the actual distance depending on the loading conditions or road conditions.

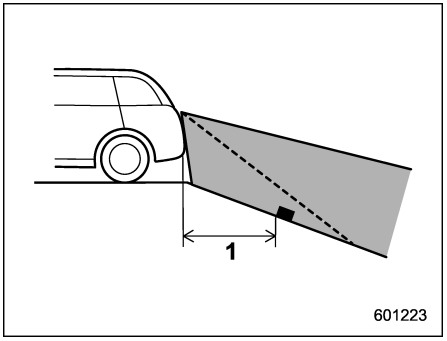
**▽ When there is an upward slope at the back**




1) 1 m (3 feet)

The distance on the screen looks farther than the actual distance.

▽ **When there is a downward slope at the back**



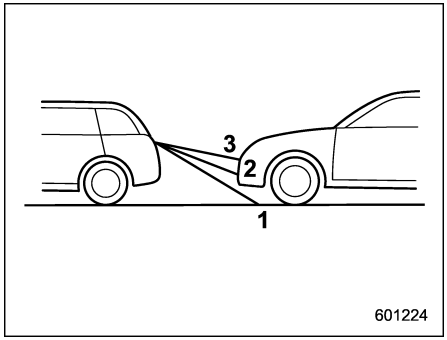

1) 1 m (3 feet)

The distance on the screen looks nearer than the actual distance.

## NOTE

**When cargo is loaded, the rear view distance on the screen looks farther than the actual distance as in an upward slope.**

▼ **Feature of distance marker**




1) 1 m (3 feet) line
2) 2 m (6.5 feet) line
3) 3 m (10 feet) line

The distance marker shows the distance on the road. If there is a car or other object close behind, distance cannot be correctly displayed.

Fuel ..... 7-3
Fuel requirements for petrol engine models ..... 7-3
Fuel requirements for diesel engine models ..... 7-3
Fuel filler lid and cap ..... 7-4
Preparing to drive ..... 7-7
Starting and stopping engine (models without push-button start system) ..... 7-7
Starting engine ..... 7-7
Stopping engine ..... 7-10
Starting and stopping engine (models with push-button start system) ..... 7-10
Safety precautions ..... 7-10
Operating range for push-button start system ..... 7-10
Starting engine ..... 7-10
Stopping engine ..... 7-13
When access key does not operate properly ..... 7-13
Manual transmission ..... 7-14
Shifting speeds ..... 7-14
Driving tips ..... 7-16
Continuously variable transmission ..... 7-17
Select lever ..... 7-18
Shift lock function ..... 7-19
Selection of manual mode ..... 7-20
Driving tips ..... 7-22
SI-DRIVE (petrol engine models) ..... 7-22
Intelligent (I) mode ..... 7-23
Sport (S) mode ..... 7-23
Sport Sharp (S#) mode (3.6 L models) ..... 7-23
SI-DRIVE switches ..... 7-24
Power steering ..... 7-25
Braking ..... 7-26
Braking tips ..... 7-26
Brake system ..... 7-26
Disc brake pad wear warning indicators ..... 7-27
ABS (Anti-lock Brake System) ..... 7-28
ABS system self-check ..... 7-28
ABS warning light ..... 7-28
Electronic Brake Force Distribution (EBD) system ..... 7-29
Steps to take if EBD system fails ..... 7-29
Vehicle Dynamics Control system ..... 7-30
Vehicle Dynamics Control system monitor ..... 7-31
Vehicle Dynamics Control OFF switch ..... 7-32
X-mode (Outback CVT models) ..... 7-33
To activate/deactivate the X-mode ..... 7-34
Hill descent control function ..... 7-35
Parking your vehicle ..... 7-36
Electronic parking brake ..... 7-36
Parking tips ..... 7-40
Hill start assist system (MT models) ..... 7-41
To activate/deactivate the Hill start assist system ..... 7-42
Tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS) (if equipped) ..... 7-43
TPMS mode setting ..... 7-44
Cruise control ..... 7-45
To set cruise control ..... 7-46
To temporarily cancel the cruise control ..... 7-47
To turn off the cruise control ..... 7-47

**To change the cruising speed..... 7-47**
**Cruise control indicator..... 7-49**
**Cruise control set indicator ..... 7-49**

**Auto Start Stop system (if equipped)..... 7-49**
**System operation..... 7-49**
**Displaying the Auto Start Stop system status..... 7-52**
**System warning..... 7-52**

# Fuel

## ■ Fuel requirements for petrol engine models

**⚠ CAUTION**

- **Use of a fuel which is low in quality or use of an inappropriate fuel additive may cause engine damage.**
- **Do not let fuel spill on the exterior surfaces of the vehicle. Because fuel may damage the paint, be sure to wipe off any spilled fuel quickly. Paint damage caused by spilled fuel is not covered under the SUBARU Limited Warranty.**
- **The neck of the fuel filler pipe is designed to accept only an unleaded petrol filler nozzle. Under no circumstances should leaded petrol be used because it will damage the emission control system and may impair driveability and fuel economy. Also, this can increase maintenance costs.**

### ▼ Australia models

Your engine is designed to use only **unleaded petrol**. The use of unleaded petrol with an octane rating of **91 or higher** is recommended. This octane rating is the Research Octane number.

For optimum engine performance and driveability, it is recommended that you use premium grade unleaded petrol.

### ▼ Other models

Your engine is designed to use only **unleaded petrol**. The use of unleaded petrol with an octane rating of **95 or higher** is recommended. This octane rating is the Research Octane number.

If unleaded petrol with an octane rating of 95 or higher is not available, unleaded petrol with an octane rating of 90 or higher may be used.

## ■ Fuel requirements for diesel engine models

Your engine is designed to use only **diesel** fuel with a specification of **EN590** or an equivalent.

**⚠ CAUTION**

- **Never use fuels other than specification EN590 or an equivalent for your vehicle. If an inappropriate fuel is used, it could cause not only lower engine performance but also serious damage to the engine and fuel system. To avoid damaging the engine, you must obey the following instructions.**
  - **Never use petrol or a diesel fuel mixed with petrol.**
  - **Never use paraffin, heating oils, etc.**
  - **Never use marine diesel fuel.**
  - **Never add any fuel additives or cleaning agents to the diesel fuel.**
- **Do not let fuel spill on the exterior surfaces of the vehicle. Because fuel may damage the paint, be sure to wipe off any spilled fuel quickly. Paint damage caused by spilled fuel is not covered under the SUBARU Limited Warranty.**

### ▼ Winter diesel

In order to avoid operational problems at low fuel temperatures, diesel fuels with improved cold flow qualities are available during the winter season. However, the specification of the diesel fuel for the

– CONTINUED –

winter season depends on the climate of the area where the vehicle is driven.

For more details about the winter diesel fuel, we recommend that you contact a SUBARU dealer.

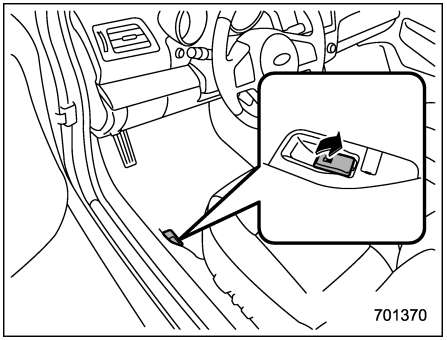
## ■ Fuel filler lid and cap

### ▼ Refueling

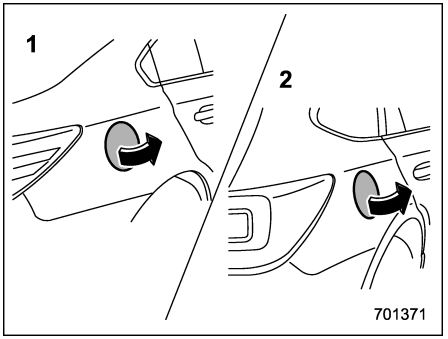
Only one person should be involved in refueling. Do not allow others to approach the area of the vehicle near the fuel filler pipe while refueling is in progress.

Be sure to observe any other precautions that are posted at the service station.

1. Stop the vehicle and turn off the engine.




2. To open the fuel filler lid, pull the lid release lever up. The lever is on the floor of the driver's seat.

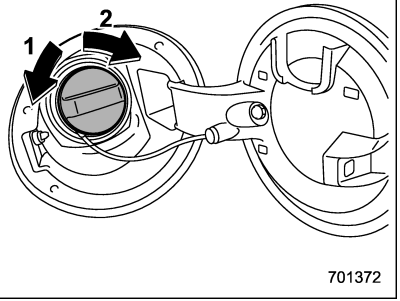



1) Sedan
2) Outback

3. Open the fuel filler lid.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Before opening the fuel filler cap, first touch the vehicle body or a metal portion of the fuel pump or similar object to discharge any static electricity that may be present on your body. If your body is carrying an electrostatic charge, there is a possibility that an electric spark could ignite the fuel, which could burn you. To avoid acquiring a new static electric charge, do not get back into the vehicle while refueling is in progress.**

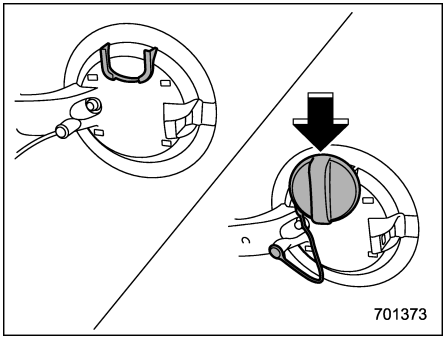



1) Open
2) Close

4. Remove the fuel filler cap by turning it slowly counterclockwise.

**⚠ WARNING**

- **Fuel vapor is highly flammable. Before refueling, always first stop the engine and close all vehicle doors and windows. Make sure that there are no lighted cigarettes, open flames or electrical sparks in the adjacent area. Only handle fuel outdoors. Quickly wipe up any spilled fuel.**
- **When opening the cap, grasp it firmly and turn it slowly to the left. Do not remove the cap quickly. Fuel may be under pressure and spray out of the fuel filler neck, especially in hot weather. If you hear a hissing sound while you are removing the cap, wait for the sound to stop and then slowly open the cap to prevent fuel from spraying out and creating a fire hazard.**




5. Set the fuel filler cap on the cap holder inside the fuel filler lid.

**⚠ WARNING**

- **When refueling, insert the fuel nozzle securely into the fuel filler pipe. If the nozzle is lifted or not fully inserted, its automatic stopping mechanism may not function, causing fuel to overflow the tank and creating a fire hazard.**

– CONTINUED –

- **Stop refueling when the automatic stop mechanism on the fuel nozzle activates. If you continue to add fuel, temperature changes or other conditions may cause fuel to overflow from the tank and create a fire hazard.**

6. Stop filling the tank after the fuel filler pump automatically stops. Do not add any more fuel.
7. Put the cap back on, turn it clockwise until you hear a clicking noise. Be certain not to catch the tether under the cap while tightening.

**⚠ CAUTION**

**Make sure that the cap is tightened until it clicks to prevent fuel spillage in the event of an accident.**

8. Close the fuel filler lid completely.

**⚠ CAUTION**

**If you spill any fuel on the painted surface, rinse it off immediately. Otherwise, the painted surface could be damaged.**

## NOTE

**You will see the "⛽▶" sign in the fuel gauge. This indicates that the fuel filler door (lid) is located on the right side of the vehicle.**

**⚠ CAUTION**

- **Never add any cleaning agents to the fuel tank. The addition of a cleaning agent may cause damage to the fuel system.**
- **After refueling, turn the cap clockwise until it clicks to ensure that it is fully tightened. If the cap is not securely tightened, fuel may leak out while the vehicle is being driven or fuel spillage could occur in the event of an accident, creating a fire hazard.**
- **Do not let fuel spill on the exterior surfaces of the vehicle. Because fuel may damage the paint, be sure to wipe off any spilled fuel quickly. Paint damage caused by spilled fuel is not covered under the SUBARU Limited Warranty.**
- **We recommend that you always use a genuine SUBARU fuel filler cap. If you use the wrong cap, it may not fit or have proper venting and your fuel tank and emission control system may be damaged. It could also lead to fuel spillage and a fire.**
- **Immediately put fuel in the tank whenever the low fuel warning light illuminates. Engine misfires as a result of an empty tank could cause damage to the engine.**

## Preparing to drive

You should perform the following checks and adjustments every day before you start driving.

1. Check that all windows, mirrors, and lights are clean and unobstructed.
2. Check the appearance and condition of the tires. Also check tires for proper inflation.
3. Look under the vehicle for any sign of leaks and check that no small animal is under the vehicle.
4. Check that no small animal enters the engine compartment.
5. Check that the hood, trunk (Sedan) and rear gate (Outback) are fully closed.
6. Check the adjustment of the seat.
7. Check the adjustment of the inside and outside mirrors.
8. Fasten your seatbelt. Check that your passengers have fastened their seatbelts.
9. Check the operation of the warning and indicator lights when the ignition switch is turned to the “ON” position.
10. Check the gauges, indicator and warning lights after starting the engine.

**⚠ CAUTION**

**Trapping small animals in the cooling fan and belts of the engine may result in a malfunction. Check that no small animal enters the engine compartment and under the vehicle before starting the engine.**

### NOTE

**Engine oil, engine coolant, brake fluid, washer fluid and other fluid levels should be checked daily, weekly or at fuel stops.**

## Starting and stopping engine (models without push-button start system)

### ■ Starting engine

**⚠ CAUTION**

**Do not operate the starter motor continuously for more than 10 seconds. If the engine fails to start after operating the starter for 5 to 10 seconds, wait for 10 seconds or more before trying again.**

### NOTE

**It may be difficult to start the engine when the battery has been disconnected and reconnected (for maintenance or other purposes). This difficulty is caused by the electronically controlled throttle’s self-diagnosis function. To overcome it, keep the ignition switch in the “ON” position for approximately 10 seconds before starting the engine.**

– CONTINUED –

**▼ General precautions when starting/ stopping engine**

**⚠ WARNING**

- **Never start the engine from outside the vehicle. It may result in an accident.**
- **Do not leave the engine running in locations with poor ventilation, such as a garage and indoors. The exhaust gas may enter the vehicle or indoors, and it may result in carbon monoxide poisoning.**
- **Do not start the engine near dry foliage, paper, or other flammable substances. The exhaust pipe and exhaust emissions can create a fire hazard at high temperatures.**

**⚠ CAUTION**

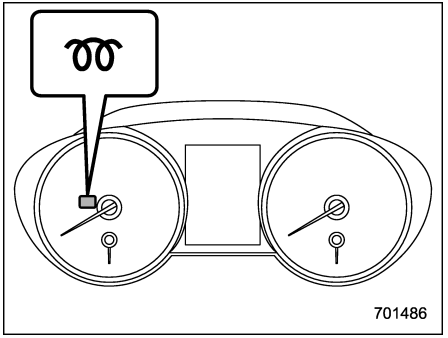
- **Do not stop the engine during driving. Otherwise, the catalyst may overheat and burn.**
- **When starting the engine, be sure to sit in the driver's seat.**

## NOTE

- **Avoid rapid racing and rapid acceleration immediately after the engine has started.**
- **For a short time after the engine has started, the engine speed is kept high. When the warm-up is completed, the engine speed lowers automatically.**
- **On rare occasions, it may be difficult to start the engine depending on the fuel and the usage condition (repeated driving of a distance in which the engine has not warmed up sufficiently). In such a case, it is recommended that you change to a different brand of fuel.**
- **On rare occasions, transient knocking may be heard from the engine when the accelerator is operated rapidly such as a rapid start-up and a rapid acceleration. This is not a malfunction.**
- **The engine starts more easily when the headlights, air conditioner and rear window defogger are turned off.**
- **After the engine starts, the engine speed will be kept high until the engine has warmed up sufficiently.**

**▼ MT models**

1. Apply the parking brake.
2. Turn off unnecessary lights and accessories.
3. Depress the clutch pedal to the floor and shift the shift lever into neutral. Hold the clutch pedal to the floor while starting the engine.




**Preheating indicator light**

4. Turn the ignition switch to the "ON" position and check the operation of the warning and indicator lights. At this time, confirm that the preheating indicator light has illuminated for a few seconds and has turned off. Refer to "Warning and indicator lights" ☞3-12.
5. Turn the ignition switch to the "START" position **without** depressing the accelerator pedal. Release the key immediately after the engine has started.
6. Confirm that all warning and indicator lights have turned off after the engine has started. The fuel injection system automatically lowers the idle speed as the

engine warms up.

## NOTE

**You may feel vibration during engine idling for several tens of seconds. This vibration is caused by a self-learning procedure of the injector. This learning procedure is necessary to stabilize the best engine performance. Therefore, it does not indicate a malfunction.**

### ▼ CVT petrol engine models

1. Apply the parking brake.
2. Turn off unnecessary lights and accessories.
3. Shift the select lever to the “P” or “N” position (preferably “P” position).
4. Turn the ignition switch to the “ON” position and check the operation of the warning and indicator lights. Refer to “Warning and indicator lights” ☞3-12.
5. Turn the ignition switch to the “START” position **without** depressing the accelerator pedal. Release the key immediately after the engine has started.

If the engine does not start, perform the following procedures.

(1) Turn the ignition switch to the “LOCK” position and wait for at least 10 seconds. After checking that the parking brake is applied, turn the ignition switch to the “START” position while depressing the accelerator pedal slightly (approximately a quarter of the full stroke). Release the accelerator pedal as soon as the engine starts.

(2) If this fails to start the engine, turn the ignition switch back to the “LOCK” position and wait for at least 10 seconds. Then fully depress the accelerator pedal and turn the ignition switch to the “START” position. If the engine starts, quickly release the accelerator pedal.

(3) If this fails to start the engine, turn the ignition switch again to the “LOCK” position. After waiting for 10 seconds or longer, turn the ignition switch to the “START” position without depressing the accelerator pedal.

(4) If the engine still does not start, we recommend that you contact your nearest SUBARU dealer for assistance.

6. Confirm that all warning and indicator lights have turned off after the engine has started. The fuel injection system automatically lowers the idle speed as the engine warms up.

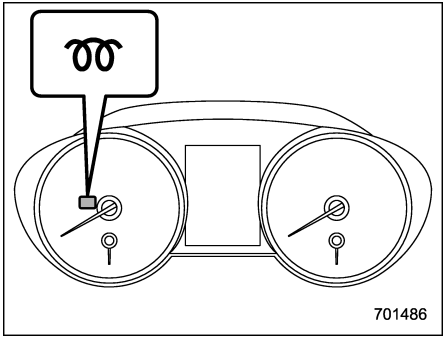
While the engine is warming up, make sure that the select lever is at the “P” or “N” position and that the parking brake is applied.

**⚠ CAUTION**

**If you restart the engine while the vehicle is moving, shift the select lever into the “N” position. Do not attempt to place the select lever of a moving vehicle into the “P” position.**

### ▼ CVT diesel engine models

1. Apply the parking brake.
2. Turn off unnecessary lights and accessories.
3. Shift the select lever to the “P” or “N” position (preferably “P” position).




**Preheating indicator light**

4. Turn the ignition switch to the “ON” position and check the operation of the

– CONTINUED –

warning and indicator lights. At this time, confirm that the preheating indicator light has illuminated for a few seconds and has turned off. Refer to “Warning and indicator lights” ☞3-12.

5. Turn the ignition switch to the “START” position **without** depressing the accelerator pedal. Release the key immediately after the engine has started.

6. Confirm that all warning and indicator lights have turned off after the engine has started. The fuel injection system automatically lowers the idle speed as the engine warms up.

While the engine is warming up, make sure that the select lever is at the “P” or “N” position and that the parking brake is applied.

**⚠ CAUTION**

**If you restart the engine while the vehicle is moving, shift the select lever into the “N” position. Do not attempt to place the select lever of a moving vehicle into the “P” position.**

## NOTE

**You may feel vibration during engine idling for several tens of seconds. This vibration is caused by a self-learning procedure of the injector. This learning procedure is necessary to stabilize the best engine performance. Therefore, it does not indicate a malfunction.**

### ■ Stopping engine

The ignition switch should be turned off only when the vehicle is stopped and the engine is idling.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Do not stop the engine when the vehicle is moving. This will cause loss of power to the power steering and the brake booster, making steering and braking more difficult. It could also result in accidental activation of the “LOCK” position on the ignition switch, causing the steering wheel to lock.**

# Starting and stopping engine (models with push-button start system)

### ■ Safety precautions

Refer to “Safety precautions” ☞2-8.

### ■ Operating range for push-button start system

Refer to “Operating range for push-button start system” ☞3-5.

### ■ Starting engine

**⚠ WARNING**

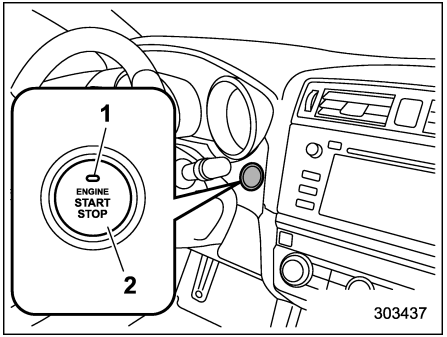
- **There are some general precautions when starting the engine. Carefully read the precautions described in “General precautions when starting/stopping engine” ☞7-8.**
- **If the indicator on the push-button ignition switch flashes in green after the engine has started, never drive the vehicle. The steering is still locked, and it may result in an accident.**

**⚠ CAUTION**

- **When the operation indicator on the push-button ignition switch is flashing in orange, there may be a malfunction with the vehicle. We recommend that you contact a SUBARU dealer immediately.**
- **If the indicator on the push-button ignition switch is flashing in green after the engine has started, it means that the steering is still locked. While moving the steering wheel right and left, depress the brake pedal, and press the push-button ignition switch.**
- **Do not continue pushing the push-button ignition switch for more than 10 seconds. Doing so could cause a malfunction. If the engine does not start, stop pushing the push-button ignition switch and turn off the engine. Wait 10 seconds, and then push the push-button ignition switch to start the engine.**

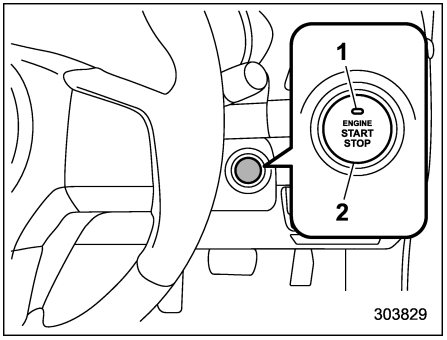
## NOTE

**• When the push-button ignition switch is pressed while depressing the clutch pedal (MT models) or the brake pedal (CVT models), the engine starter operates for a maximum of 10 seconds and after starting the engine, the starter stops automatically.**
**• When the push-button ignition switch is pressed while depressing the clutch pedal (MT models) or the brake pedal (CVT models), the engine can be started regardless of the power status.**
**• If the immobilizer indicator light illuminates when you attempt to start the engine but the engine does not start, press the push-button ignition switch to switch the power to "OFF" and then try to start the engine again.**
**• If the engine does not start, press the push-button ignition switch without depressing the clutch pedal (MT models) or the brake pedal (CVT models) to switch the power to "OFF". Then, while depressing the clutch pedal (MT models) or the brake pedal (CVT models) more forcefully, press the push-button ignition switch.**
**• The engine start procedures may not function depending on the radio wave conditions around the vehicle. In such a case, refer to "Starting engine" ☞9-30.**
**• If the vehicle battery is discharged, the steering cannot be unlocked. Charge the battery.**




**Left-hand drive models**
1) Operation indicator
2) Push-button ignition switch

– CONTINUED –




**Right-hand drive models**
1) Operation indicator
2) Push-button ignition switch

**▼ MT models**

1. Carry the access key, and sit in the driver's seat.
2. Apply the parking brake.
3. Shift the shift lever in neutral.
4. Depress the brake pedal.
5. Depress the clutch pedal until the indicator on the push-button ignition switch turns green.
6. While depressing the clutch pedal, press the push-button ignition switch.

## NOTE

**• In case the engine does not start by the normal engine start procedure, move the shift lever to the neutral position, and switch the power to "ACC". Depress the clutch pedal, and press the push-button ignition switch for at least 15 seconds. The engine may start. Only use this engine start procedure in case of emergency.**
**• The engine will not start until the preheating indicator light has turned off.**
**• You may feel vibration during engine idling for several tens of seconds. This vibration is caused by the self-learning procedure of the injector. This learning procedure is necessary for optimum engine performance. This does not indicate a malfunction.**

**▼ CVT models**

1. Carry the access key, and sit in the driver's seat.
2. Apply the parking brake.
3. Shift the select lever in the "P" position. The engine can also start when the select lever is in the "N" position, however, for safety reasons, start in the "P" position.
4. Depress the brake pedal until the operation indicator on the push-button ignition switch turns green. When starting with the select lever in the "N" position, the indicator does not turn green.
5. While depressing the brake pedal, press the push-button ignition switch.

## NOTE

**• In case the engine does not start by the normal engine start procedure, move the select lever to the "P" position, and switch the power to "ACC". Depress the brake pedal, and press the push-button ignition switch for at least 15 seconds. The engine may start. Only use this engine start procedure in case of emergency.**
**• When the engine is not started, the brake pedal may feel stiff. In such a case, depress the brake pedal more forcefully than usual. Check that the operation indicator on the push-button ignition switch turns green, and press the push-button ignition switch to start the engine.**
**• For diesel engine models, the engine will not start until the preheating indicator light has turned off.**
**• For diesel engine models, you may feel vibration during engine idling for several tens of seconds. This vibration is caused by the self-learning procedure of the injector. This learning procedure is necessary for optimum**

**engine performance. This does not indicate a malfunction.**

## ■ Stopping engine

1. Stop the vehicle completely.
2. Move the select lever to the "P" position (CVT models).
3. Press the push-button ignition switch. The engine will stop, and the power will be switched off.

**⚠ WARNING**

- **Do not touch the push-button ignition switch during driving.**

  **When the push-button ignition switch is operated as follows, the engine will stop.**

  **– The switch is pressed and held for 3 seconds or longer.**

  **– The switch is pressed briefly 3 times or more in succession.**

  **When the engine stops, the brake booster will not function. A greater foot pressure will be required on the brake pedal.**

  **The power steering system will not operate either. A greater force will be required to steer, and it may result in an accident.**

- **If the engine stops during driving, do not operate the push-button ignition switch or open any of the doors until the vehicle is stopped in a safe location. It is dangerous because the steering lock may be activated. Stop the vehicle in a safe place, and we recommend that you contact a SUBARU dealer immediately.**

**⚠ CAUTION**

**For CVT models:**

- **Do not stop the engine while the select lever is in a position other than the "P" position.**
- **If the engine is stopped while the select lever is in a position other than the "P" position, the power will be in "ACC". If the vehicle is left in this condition, the battery may be discharged.**

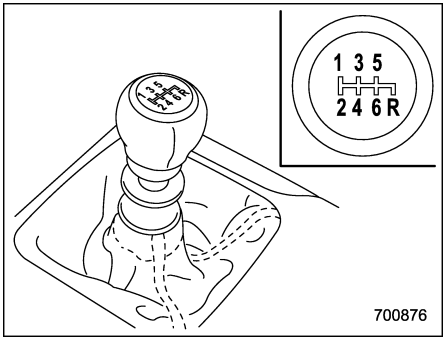
### NOTE

**Although you can stop the engine by operating the push-button ignition switch, do not stop the engine during driving except in an emergency.**

## ■ When access key does not operate properly

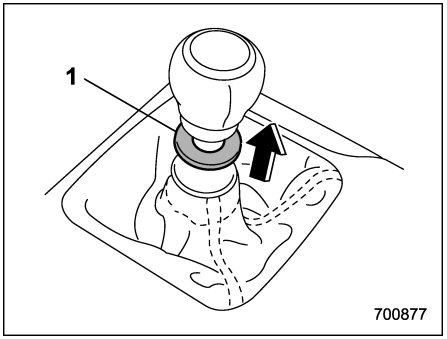
Refer to "Access key – if access key does not operate properly" ☞9-29.

## Manual transmission




The manual transmission is a full synchromesh, 6-forward-speed and 1-reverse-speed transmission.

The shift pattern is shown on the shift lever knob.




1) Slider

You must raise the slider and hold it in that position before you move the shift lever to the "R" position.

To change gears, fully depress the clutch pedal, move the shift lever, and gradually let up on the clutch pedal.

If it is difficult to shift into gear, put the transmission in neutral, release the clutch pedal momentarily, and then try again.

**⚠ WARNING**

- **Do not drive the vehicle with the clutch disengaged (i.e., when the clutch pedal is depressed) or with the shift lever in the neutral position. Engine braking has no effect in either of these conditions and the risk of an accident is consequently increased.**
- **Do not engage the clutch (i.e., release the clutch pedal) suddenly when starting the vehicle. By doing so the vehicle might unexpectedly accelerate or the transmission could malfunction.**

**⚠ CAUTION**

**Shift into reverse ONLY when the vehicle has completely stopped. It may cause damage to the transmission to try shifting into reverse when the vehicle is moving.**

### ■ Shifting speeds

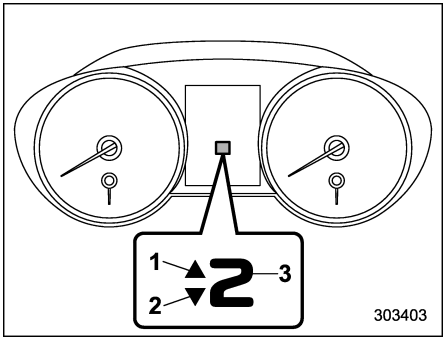
#### ▼ Recommended shifting speeds

The best compromise between fuel economy and vehicle performance during normal driving is ensured by shifting up

at the speeds listed in the following table.

| Shift up | km/h (mph) |
|---|---|
| 1st to 2nd | 24 (15) |
| 2nd to 3rd | 40 (25) |
| 3rd to 4th | 64 (40) |
| 4th to 5th | 72 (45) |
| 5th to 6th | 80 (50) |

▽ **Gear shift indicator (except Australia models)**



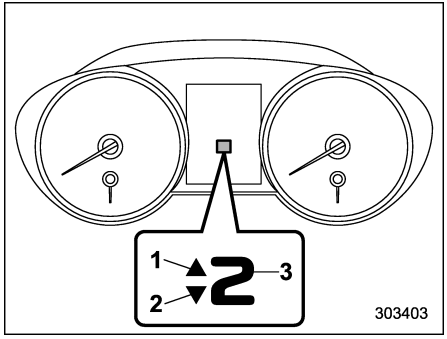

1) Upshift indicator
2) Downshift indicator
3) Gear position indicator

The gear position indicator shows the currently selected gear. When shifting up is recommended for good fuel economy, the upshift indicator blinks. When shifting down is recommended, the downshift indicator blinks.

## NOTE

**• Usually, the gear shift indicator is guideline for driving more fuel-efficiency and it also may operate to prevent a possible engine stall at low engine speed.**
**• Also, the gear shift indicator operates to prevent engine damage at high engine speed.**

▽ **Upshift/Downshift indicator (Australia models)**




1) Upshift indicator
2) Downshift indicator
3) Gear position indicator

The shift-up indicator illuminates to inform the driver about the upshift timing.

The shift-up indicator can be activated or deactivated. For details, refer to “Select lever/gear position indicator” ☞3-31.

▼ **Maximum allowable speeds**

The following table shows the maximum speeds that are possible with each different gear. The tachometer’s needle will enter the red area if these speeds are exceeded.

With the exception of cases where sudden acceleration is required, the vehicle should not be driven with the tachometer’s needle inside the red area. Failure to observe this precaution can lead to excessive engine wear and poor fuel economy.

| Gear | km/h (mph) |
|---|---|
| 1st | 35 (22) |
| 2nd | 70 (43) |
| 3rd | 115 (71) |
| 4th | 156 (97) |
| 5th | 193 (120) |
| 6th | 220 (136) |

– CONTINUED –

**NOTE**

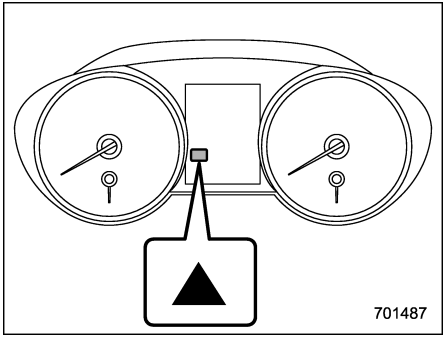
**Never exceed posted speed limits.**

**⚠ WARNING**

**When shifting down a gear, ensure that the vehicle is not travelling at a speed exceeding the Maximum Allowable Speed for the gear which is about to be selected. Failure to observe this precaution can lead to engine over-revving and this in turn can result in engine damage.**

**In addition, sudden application of engine brakes when the vehicle is travelling on a slippery surface can lead to wheel locking; as a consequence, control of the vehicle may be lost and the risk of an accident increased.**

▽ **Over-rev warning**




**Over-rev warning light**

**⚠ CAUTION**

**When performing the down shifting procedure by depressing the clutch pedal and moving the shift lever into a lower gear, if the warning system determines that it is highly likely that over-revving will occur if the clutch is engaged (clutch pedal is released) in that position, a buzzer will sound and the over-rev warning light on the combination meter will flash in yellow. In this case, do not engage the clutch in that position. Shift the gear up properly while keeping the clutch pedal depressed.**

**Not doing so could result in serious engine damage.**

## ■ Driving tips

Do not drive with your foot resting on the clutch pedal and do not use the clutch to hold your vehicle at a standstill on an upgrade. Either of those actions may cause clutch damage.

Do not drive with your hand resting on the shift lever. This may cause wear on the transmission components.

When it is necessary to reduce vehicle speed due to slow traffic, turning corners, or driving up steep hills, downshift to a lower gear before the engine starts to labor.

On steep downgrades, downshift the transmission to 5th, 4th, 3rd or 2nd gear as necessary; this helps to maintain a safe speed and to extend brake pad life.

In this way, the engine provides a braking effect. Remember, if you “ride” (over use) the brakes while descending a hill, they may overheat and not work properly.

The engine may, on rare occasions, knock when the vehicle rapidly accelerates or rapidly pulls away from a standstill. This phenomenon does not indicate a problem.

## Continuously variable transmission

The continuously variable transmission is electronically controlled and provides an infinite number of forward speeds and 1 reverse speed. It also has a manual mode.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Do not shift from the "P" or "N" position into the "D" or "R" position while depressing the accelerator pedal. This may cause the vehicle to lurch forward or backward.**

**⚠ CAUTION**

- **Shift into the "P" or "R" position only after the vehicle is completely stopped. Shifting while the vehicle is moving may cause damage to the transmission.**
- **Do not race the engine for more than 5 seconds in any position except the "N" or "P" position when the brake is applied or when chocks are used in the wheels. This may cause the transmission fluid to overheat.**
- **Do not shift from the "D" position into the "R" position or vice versa until the vehicle has completely stopped. Such shifting may cause damage to the transmission.**
- **When parking the vehicle, first securely apply the parking brake and then place the select lever in the "P" position. Avoid parking for a long time with the select lever in any other position as doing so could result in a dead battery.**

### NOTE

**• When the engine coolant temperature is still low, the transmission will upshift or downshift at higher engine speeds than when the coolant temperature is sufficiently high in order to shorten the warm-up time and improve driveability. The gearshift timing will automatically shift to the normal timing after the engine has warmed up.**

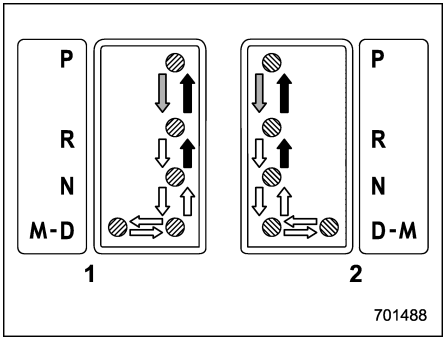
**• Immediately after transmission fluid is replaced, you may feel that the transmission operation is somewhat unusual. This results from invalidation of data which the on-board computer has collected and stored in memory to allow the transmission to shift at the most appropriate times for the current condition of your vehicle. Optimized shifting will be restored as the vehicle continues to be driven for a while.**

**• When driving under continuous heavy load conditions such as towing a camper or climbing a long, steep hill, the engine speed or the vehicle speed may automatically be reduced. This is not a malfunction. This phenomenon results from the engine control function maintaining the cooling performance of the vehicle. The engine and vehicle speed will return to a normal speed when the engine is able to maintain the optimum cooling performance after the heavy load decreases. Driving under a heavy load must be performed with extreme care. Do not try to pass a vehicle in front when driving on an uphill slope while towing.**

**• The continuously variable transmission is a chain type system that provides superior transmission efficiency for maximum fuel economy. At times, depending on varying driving conditions, a chain operating noise may be heard that is characteristic of this type of system.**

– CONTINUED –

## ■ Select lever




⇨ : With the brake pedal depressed, shift while pressing the button in
➡ : Shift while pressing the button in
⇨ : Shift without pressing the button
1) Left-hand drive models
2) Right-hand drive models

The select lever has four positions, “P”, “R”, “N”, “D” and also has manual gate for using the manual mode.

### NOTE

**To protect the engine/transmission while the select lever is in the “P” or “N” position, the engine is controlled so that the engine speed may not become too high even if the accelerator pedal is depressed hard.**

**▼ P (Park)**

This position is for parking the vehicle and starting the engine.

In this position, the transmission is mechanically locked to prevent the vehicle from rolling freely.

When you park the vehicle, first apply the parking brake, then shift into the “P” position. Do not hold the vehicle with only the transmission.

To shift the select lever from the “P” position to any other position, you have to depress the brake pedal fully then push the release button on the selector lever when the ignition switch is in the “ON” position. This prevents the vehicle from lurching when it is started.

**▼ R (Reverse)**

This position is for backing the vehicle. To shift from the “N” to “R” position, stop the vehicle completely then move the lever to the “R” position while pressing the select lever button in.

When the ignition switch has been turned to the “LOCK”/“OFF” position, movement of the select lever from the “N” to “R” position is possible for a limited time period by depressing the brake pedal, and then it becomes impossible. For details, refer to “Shift lock function” ☞7-19.

**▼ N (Neutral)**

This position is for restarting a stalled engine.

In this position the wheels and transmission are not locked. In this position, the transmission is neutral; the vehicle will roll freely, even on the slightest incline unless the parking brake or foot brake is applied.

Do not coast with the transmission in neutral. Engine braking has no effect in this condition.

### NOTE

**If the select lever is in the “N” position when you stop the engine for parking, you may not subsequently be able to move it to the “R” and “P” positions. If this happens, turn the ignition switch to the “ON” position. You will then be able to move the select lever to the “P” position.**

**⚠ WARNING**

**Do not drive the vehicle with the select lever in the “N” (neutral) position. Engine braking has no effect in this condition and the risk of an accident is consequently increased.**

▼ **D (Drive)**

This position is for normal driving. The transmission shifts automatically and continuously into a suitable gear according to the vehicle speed and the acceleration you require. Also, while driving up and down a hill, the transmission assists and controls the driving performance and engine braking while corresponding to the road grade.

When more acceleration is required in "D" position, depress the accelerator pedal fully to the floor and hold that position. The transmission will automatically downshift. In this case, the transmission will operate like a conventional automatic transmission. When you release the pedal, the transmission will return to the original gear position.

To use the manual mode, move the lever from this position into the manual gate.

## NOTE

**Diesel engine models:**

**When depressing the brake pedal with the select lever in the "D" position after the vehicle has completely stopped, the transmission automatically shifts to neutral. Before driving again, the transmission will engage again approximately 1 second after the brake pedal is released.**

## ■ Shift lock function

The shift lock function helps prevent the improper operation of the select lever.

- The select lever cannot be operated unless the ignition switch is turned to the "ON" position and the brake pedal is depressed.
- The select lever cannot be moved from the "P" position to any other position before the brake pedal is depressed. Depress the brake pedal first, and then operate the select lever.
- Only the "P" position allows you to turn the key from the "ACC" position to the "LOCK" position and remove the key from the ignition key cylinder (models without "keyless access with push-button start system").
- Only the "P" position allows you to turn the push-button ignition switch to the "OFF" position (models with "keyless access with push-button start system").
- If the ignition switch is turned to the "LOCK"/"OFF" position while the select lever is in the "N" position, the select lever may not be moved to the "P" position after a period of time. Therefore, move the select lever to the "P" position with the brake pedal depressed soon after the ignition switch is turned to the "LOCK"/"OFF" position.

▼ **Shift lock release**

If the select lever cannot be operated, turn the ignition switch back to the "ON" position then move the select lever to the "P" position with the select lever button pressed and brake pedal depressed.

If the select lever does not move after performing the above procedure, perform the following steps.

- **When the select lever cannot be shifted from "P" to "N":**

Refer to "Shift lock release using the shift lock release button" ☞7-20.

- **When the select lever cannot be shifted from "N" to "R", "P":**

Within 60 seconds after placing the ignition switch in the "ACC" position, move the select lever to the "P" position with the select lever button pressed and brake

– CONTINUED –

pedal depressed.

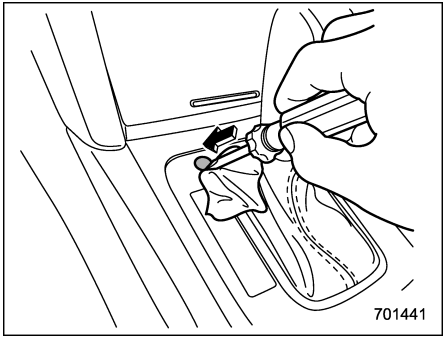
If you must perform the above procedure, the shift lock system (or the vehicle control system) may be malfunctioning. We recommend that you contact a SUBARU dealer for an inspection as soon as possible.

If the select lever does not move after performing the above procedure, refer to “Shift lock release using the shift lock release button” ☞7-20.

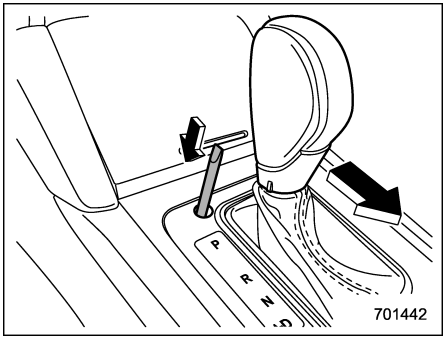
### ▼ Shift lock release using the shift lock release button

Perform the following procedure to release the shift lock.

1. Apply the parking brake and stop the engine.




2. Remove the shift lock cover using a flat-head screwdriver.



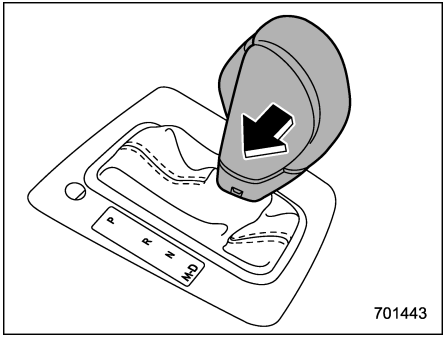

3. While depressing the brake pedal, insert the screwdriver into the hole, press the shift lock release button using the screwdriver, and then move the select lever.

## NOTE

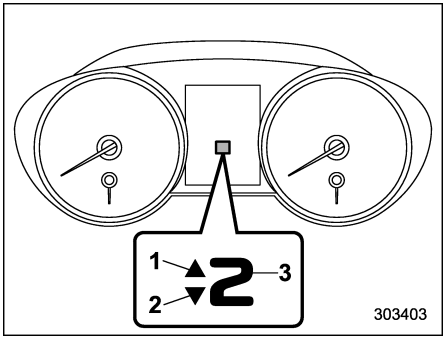
**To prevent damage to the shift lock cover, cover the tip of the flat-head screwdriver with vinyl tape or a cloth before removing the cover.**

If the select lever does not move after performing the above procedure, the shift lock system may be malfunctioning. We recommend that you contact a SUBARU dealer for an inspection as soon as possible.

## ■ Selection of manual mode




With the vehicle either moving or stationary, move the select lever from the “D” position to the “M” position to select the manual mode.



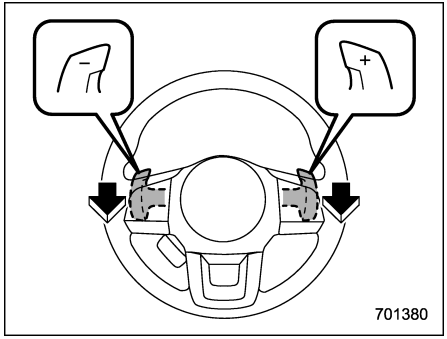

1) Upshift indicator
2) Downshift indicator
3) Gear position indicator

When the manual mode is selected, the gear position indicator and upshift indicator and/or downshift indicator on the combination meter illuminate. The gear position indicator shows the currently selected gear in the following ways.

- Petrol engine models: 1st-to-6th-gear range
- Diesel engine models: 1st-to-7th-gear range

The upshift and downshift indicators show when a gearshift is possible. When the upshift indicator "△" is on, upshifting is possible. When the downshift indicator "▽"is on, downshifting is possible. When both indicators are on, upshifting and downshifting are both possible. When the vehicle stops (for example, at traffic signals), the downshift indicator turns off.

Gearshifts can be performed using the shift paddle behind the steering wheel.




To upshift to the next higher gear position, pull the shift paddle that has "**+**" indicated on it. To downshift to the next lower gear position, pull the shift paddle that has "**–**" indicated on it.

To deselect the manual mode, return the select lever to the "D" position from the "M" position.

While driving with the select lever in the "D" position, if you change gears by operating the shift paddle, the gear position indicator light illuminates and shows the current gear condition.

**⚠ CAUTION**

**Do not place or hang anything on the shift paddles. Doing so may result in accidental gear shifting.**

## NOTE

**Please read the following points carefully and bear them in mind when using the manual mode.**

- **If you attempt to shift down when the engine speed is too high, i.e., when a downshift would push the tachometer needle beyond the red zone, beeps will be emitted to warn you that the downshift is not possible.**
- **If you attempt to shift up when the vehicle speed is too low, the transmission will not respond.**
- **You can perform a skip-shift (for example, from 4th to 2nd) by operating the shift paddle twice in rapid succession.**
- **The transmission automatically selects 1st gear when the vehicle stops moving.**
- **If the temperature of the transmission fluid becomes too high, the "AT OIL TEMP" warning light will illuminate. Immediately stop the vehicle in a safe**

– CONTINUED –

**location and let the engine idle until the warning light turns off.**

**▼ Gear shift indicator (if equipped)**

When shifting up is recommended for good fuel economy, the upshift indicator blinks. When shifting down is recommended, the downshift indicator blinks.

### NOTE

**• Usually, the gear shift indicator is guideline for driving more fuel-efficiency and it also may operate to prevent a possible engine stall at low engine speed.**
**• Also, the gear shift indicator operates to prevent engine damage at high engine speed.**

### ■ Driving tips

• On a road surface where there is a risk of wheelspin (for example, a snow- or gravel-covered road), you can pull away from a standstill (safely and easily) by first selecting the 2nd gear of the manual mode.

• Always apply the foot or parking brake when the vehicle is stopped in the “D” or “R” position.

• Always apply the parking brake when parking your vehicle. Do not hold the vehicle with only the transmission.

• Do not keep the vehicle in a stationary position on an uphill grade by using the “D” position. Use the brake instead.

• The engine may, on rare occasions, knock when the vehicle rapidly accelerates or rapidly pulls away from a standstill. This phenomenon does not indicate a malfunction.

• For 3.6 L models, a slight reduction in output torque may occur before the engine warms up.

## SI-DRIVE (petrol engine models)

SI-DRIVE (SUBARU Intelligent Drive) works to maximize engine performance, control and efficiency.

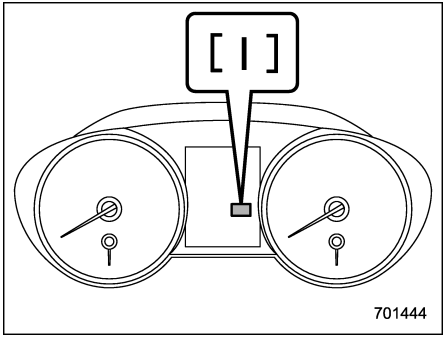
This system consists of the following modes:

- Intelligent (I) mode
- Sport (S) mode
- Sport Sharp (S#) mode (3.6 L models)

By operating the SI-DRIVE switches, the character of the power unit changes.

## ■ Intelligent (I) mode

▼ **For smooth, efficient performance driving**



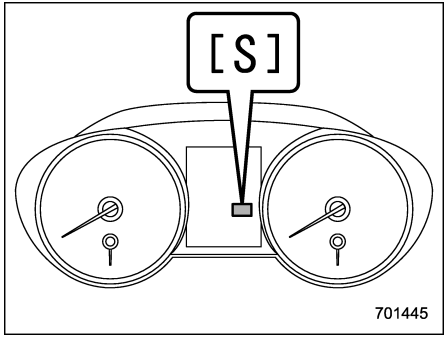

The linear acceleration characteristic of this versatile mode is ideal for normal driving use.

The Intelligent (I) mode provides well-balanced performance with greater fuel efficiency and smooth driveability without stress. Power delivery is moderate during acceleration for maximum fuel efficiency.

This is ideal for around-town driving and situations that do not require full power output. It provides better control in difficult driving conditions, such as slippery roads or loose surfaces, due to gentler throttle response.

## ■ Sport (S) mode

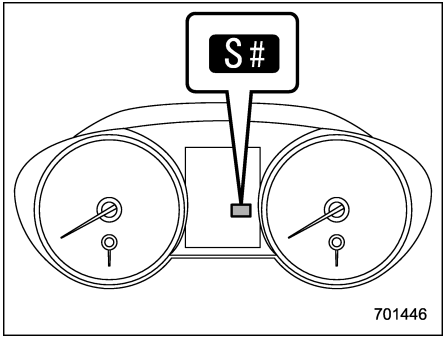
▼ **For all-around performance driving**




The Sport (S) mode provides the engine power desired by those who want to make the driving experience their own personal adventure.

## ■ Sport Sharp (S#) mode (3.6 L models)

▼ **For maximum performance driving**




For sports-minded drivers, the Sport Sharp (S#) mode offers an exhilarating level of engine performance and control. The throttle becomes more responsive regardless of the engine speed. Delivering maximum driving enjoyment, this mode is ideal for tackling twisting roads and for merging or overtaking other vehicles on the freeway with confidence.

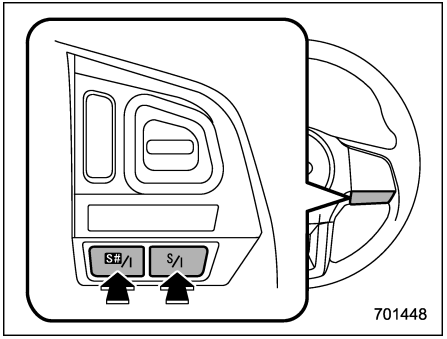
– CONTINUED –

## ■ SI-DRIVE switches

### NOTE

**If any of the SI-DRIVE indicators blink, the SI-DRIVE system may be malfunctioning. We recommend that you contact your SUBARU dealer.**

**▼ 3.6 L models**




**SI-DRIVE switches**

To select the Intelligent (I) mode, perform either of the following procedures.

- Press the “S/I” switch when the Sport (S) mode is selected
- Press the “S#/I” switch when the Sport Sharp (S#) mode is selected

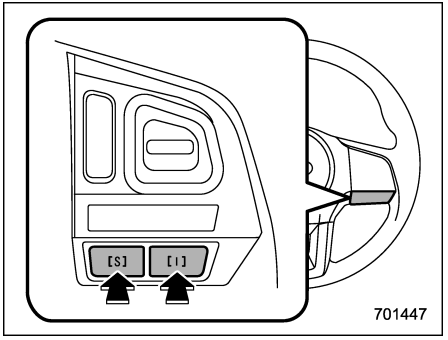
To select the Sport (S) mode, press the “S/I” switch when any mode other than Sport (S) mode is selected.

To select the Sport Sharp (S#) mode, press the “S#/I” switch when any mode other than Sport Sharp (S#) mode is selected.

### NOTE

- **The next time you turn on the engine, after you turned off the engine in the Sport Sharp (S#) mode, the SI-DRIVE mode changes to the Sport (S) mode.**
- **The next time you turn on the engine, after you turned off the engine in the Sport (S) mode or Intelligent (I) mode, the SI-DRIVE mode will stay in the same mode as when the engine was turned off.**
- **While the engine is running, if the malfunction indicator light/CHECK ENGINE warning light illuminates, the SI-DRIVE mode changes to the Sport (S) mode. In this case, it is not possible to change to the Sport Sharp (S#) mode or Intelligent (I) mode.**
- **If there is a possibility that the engine could overheat because of a temperature increase of the engine coolant, it is not possible to change to the Sport Sharp (S#) mode. While the vehicle is in the Sport Sharp (S#) mode, it changes to the Sport (S) mode when the engine coolant temperature increases.**

**▼ 2.5 L models**




**SI-DRIVE switches**

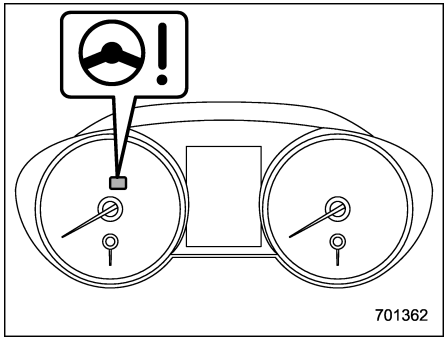
To select the Intelligent (I) mode, press the “I” switch. To select the Sport (S) mode, press the “S” switch.

### NOTE

**The next time you turn on the engine, the SI-DRIVE mode will stay in the**

**same mode as when the engine was turned off.**

## Power steering




**Power steering warning light**

The vehicle is equipped with an electric power steering system. When the ignition switch is turned to the “ON” position, the power steering warning light on the combination meter illuminates to inform the driver that the warning system is functioning properly. Then, if the engine started, the warning light turns off after 2 seconds to inform the driver that the steering power assist is operational.

**⚠ CAUTION**

**While the power steering warning light is illuminated, there may be more resistance when the steering wheel is operated. We recommend that you drive carefully to the nearest SUBARU dealer and have the vehicle inspected immediately.**

### NOTE

**If the steering wheel is operated in the following ways, the power steering control system may temporarily limit the power assist in order to prevent the system components, such as the control computer and drive motor, from overheating.**

- **The steering wheel is operated frequently and widely while the vehicle is maneuvered at extremely low speeds, such as while frequently turning the steering wheel during parallel parking.**
- **The steering wheel remains in the fully turned position for a long period of time.**

**At this time, there will be more resistance to steering. However this is not a malfunction. Normal steering force will be restored after the steering wheel is not operated for a while, because the power steering control system cools down. However, if the power steering is operated in a non-standard way such as by causing power assist limitation too frequently, the power steering con-**

*– CONTINUED –*

**trol system may result in a malfunction.**

# Braking

## ■ Braking tips

**⚠ WARNING**

**Never rest your foot on the brake pedal while driving. This can cause dangerous overheating of the brakes and needless wear on the brake pads and linings.**

### ▼ When the brakes get wet

When driving in rain or after washing the vehicle, the brakes may get wet. As a result, brake stopping distance will be longer. To dry the brakes, drive the vehicle at a safe speed while lightly depressing the brake pedal to heat up the brakes.

### ▼ Use of engine braking

Remember to make use of engine braking in addition to foot braking. When descending a grade, if only the foot brake is used, the brakes may start working improperly because of brake fluid overheating, caused by overheated brake pads. To help prevent this, shift into a lower gear to get stronger engine braking.

### ▼ Braking when a tire is punctured

Do not depress the brake pedal suddenly when a tire is punctured. This could cause a loss of control of the vehicle. Keep driving straight ahead while gradually reducing speed. Then slowly pull off the road to a safe place.

## ■ Brake system

### ▼ Two separate circuits

Your vehicle has two separate circuit brake systems. Each circuit works diagonally across the vehicle. If one circuit of the brake system should fail, the other half of the system still works. If one circuit fails, the brake pedal will go down much closer to the floor than usual and you will need to press it down much harder. And a much longer distance will be needed to stop the vehicle.

### ▼ Brake booster

The brake booster uses engine manifold vacuum to assist braking force. Do not turn off the engine while driving because that will turn off the brake booster, resulting in poor braking power.

The brakes will continue to work even when the brake booster completely stops functioning. If this happens, however, you will have to depress the pedal much

harder than normal and the braking distance will increase.

▼ **Brake assist system**

**⚠ WARNING**

**Do not be overconfident about the brake assist. It is not a system that brings more braking ability to the vehicle beyond its braking capability. Always use the utmost care when driving regarding vehicle speed and safe distance.**

**⚠ CAUTION**

**When you need to brake suddenly, continue depressing the brake pedal strongly to bring the effect of the brake assist.**

Brake assist is a driver assistance system. It assists the brake power when the driver cannot depress the brake pedal strongly and the brake power is insufficient.

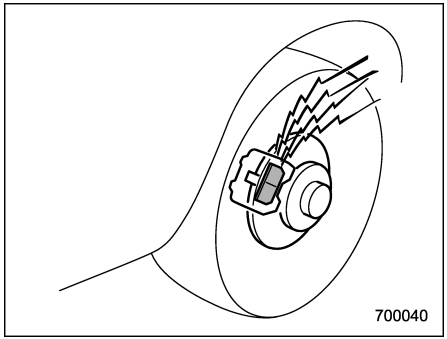
Brake assist generates the brake power according to the speed at which the driver depresses the brake pedal.

## NOTE

**When you depress the brake pedal strongly or suddenly, the following phenomena occur. However, even though these occur, they do not indicate any malfunctions, and the brake assist system is operating properly.**

- **You might feel that the brake pedal is applied by lighter force and generates a greater braking force.**
- **You might hear sound of the ABS operating from the engine compartment.**

## ■ Disc brake pad wear warning indicators




The disc brake pad wear warning indicators on the disc brakes give a warning noise when the brake pads are worn.

If a squeaking or scraping noise is heard from the disc brakes while braking, we recommend that you immediately have your vehicle checked by your SUBARU dealer.

## ABS (Anti-lock Brake System)

The ABS system prevents the lock-up of wheels which may occur during sudden braking or braking on slippery road surfaces. This helps prevent the loss of steering control and directional stability caused by wheel lock-up.

When the ABS system is operating, you may hear a chattering noise or feel a slight vibration in the brake pedal. This is normal when the ABS operates.

The ABS system will not operate when the vehicle speed is below approximately 10 km/h (6 mph).

**⚠ WARNING**

**Always use the utmost care in driving – overconfidence because you are driving with an ABS equipped vehicle could easily lead to a serious accident.**

**⚠ CAUTION**

- **The ABS system does not always decrease stopping distance. You should always maintain a safe following distance from other vehicles.**
- **When driving on badly surfaced roads, gravel roads, icy roads, or over deep newly fallen snow, stopping distances may be longer for a vehicle with the ABS system than one without. When driving under these conditions, therefore, reduce your speed and leave ample distance from other vehicles.**
- **When you feel the ABS system operating, you should maintain constant brake pedal pressure. Do not pump the brake pedal since doing so may defeat the operation of the ABS system.**

### ■ ABS system self-check

Just after the vehicle is started, you may feel on the brake pedal a vibration similar to when the ABS operates, and you may also hear the sound of the ABS working from the engine compartment. This is caused by an automatic functional test of the ABS system being carried out and does not indicate any abnormal condition.

### ■ ABS warning light

Refer to “ABS warning light” ☞3-19.

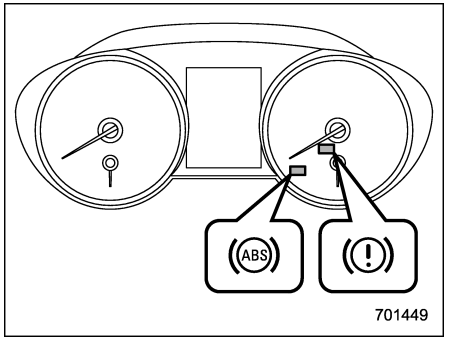
## Electronic Brake Force Distribution (EBD) system

The EBD system maximizes the effectiveness of the brakes by allowing the rear brakes to supply a greater proportion of the braking force. It functions by adjusting the distribution of braking force to the rear wheels in accordance with the vehicle's loading condition and speed.

The EBD system is an integral part of the ABS system and uses some of the ABS system's components to perform its function of optimizing the distribution of braking force. If any of the ABS components used by the EBD function fails, the EBD system also stops working.

When the EBD system is operating, you may hear a chattering noise or feel a slight vibration in the brake pedal. This is normal and does not indicate a malfunction.

### ■ Steps to take if EBD system fails




If a malfunction occurs in the EBD system, the system stops working and the brake system warning light and ABS warning light illuminate simultaneously.

The EBD system may be malfunctioning if the brake system warning light and ABS warning light illuminate simultaneously during driving.

Even if the EBD system fails, the conventional braking system will still function. However, the rear wheels will be more prone to locking when the brakes are applied harder than usual and the vehicle's motion may therefore become somewhat harder to control.

If the brake system warning light and ABS warning light illuminate simultaneously, take the following steps.

1. Stop the vehicle in the nearest safe, flat location.
2. Apply the parking brake and turn off the engine.
3. Restart the engine.
4. Release the parking brake.

**Even if both warning lights turn off:**

The EBD system may be malfunctioning. We recommend that you drive carefully to the nearest SUBARU dealer and have the system inspected.

**If both warning lights illuminate again and remain illuminated after restarting the engine:**

1. Turn off the engine again.
2. Apply the parking brake.
3. Check the brake fluid level. For details about checking the brake fluid level, refer to "Checking the fluid level" ☞11-28.

- Even if the brake fluid level is not below the "MIN" mark, the EBD system may be malfunctioning. We recommend that you drive carefully to the nearest SUBARU dealer and have the system inspected.
- If the brake fluid level is below the "MIN" mark, DO NOT drive the vehicle.

– CONTINUED –

Instead, we recommend that you have the vehicle towed to the nearest SUBARU dealer for repair.

**⚠ WARNING**

- **Driving with the brake system warning light illuminated is dangerous. This indicates your brake system may not be working properly. If the light remains illuminated, we recommend that you have the brakes inspected by a SUBARU dealer immediately.**
- **If at all in doubt about whether the brakes are operating properly, do not drive the vehicle. We recommend that you have your vehicle towed to the nearest SUBARU dealer for repair.**

## Vehicle Dynamics Control system

**⚠ WARNING**

**Always use the utmost care in driving – overconfidence because you are driving with a Vehicle Dynamics Control system equipped vehicle could easily lead to a serious accident.**

**⚠ CAUTION**

- **Even if your vehicle is equipped with Vehicle Dynamics Control, winter tires or snow chains should be used when driving on snow-covered or icy roads; in addition, vehicle speed should be reduced considerably. Simply having a Vehicle Dynamics Control system does not guarantee that the vehicle will be able to avoid accidents in any situation.**
- **When a vehicle is fitted with snow chains, the effectiveness of the Vehicle Dynamics Control system is reduced and this should be taken into account when driving the vehicle in such a condition.**
- **Activation of the Vehicle Dynamics Control system is an indication that the road being travelled on has a slippery surface; since having Vehicle Dynamics Control is no guarantee that full vehicle control will be maintained at all times and under all conditions, its activation should be seen as a sign that the speed of the vehicle should be reduced considerably.**
- **Whenever suspension components, steering components, or an axle are removed from a vehicle equipped with the Vehicle Dynamics Control system, we recommend that you have an inspection of that system performed by an authorized SUBARU dealer.**
- **The following precautions should be observed in order to ensure that the Vehicle Dynamics Control system is operating properly.**
  - **All four wheels should be fitted with tires of the same size, type, and brand. Furthermore, the amount of wear**

**should be the same for all four tires.**

**– Keep the tire pressure at the proper level as shown on the label attached to the vehicle's door pillar.**

**– Use only the special temporary spare tire to replace a flat tire. With a temporary spare tire, the effectiveness of the Vehicle Dynamics Control system is reduced and this should be taken into account when driving the vehicle in such a condition.**

**• If non-matching tires are used, it is quite possible that the Vehicle Dynamics Control system will be unable to operate correctly as intended.**

In the event of wheelspin and/or skidding on a slippery road surface and/or during cornering and/or an evasive maneuver, the Vehicle Dynamics Control system adjusts the engine's output and the wheels' respective braking forces to help maintain traction and directional control.

**• Traction Control Function**

The traction control function is designed to prevent spinning of the driving wheels on slippery road surfaces, thereby helping to maintain traction and directional control. Activation of this function is indicated by flashing of the Vehicle Dynamics Control operation indicator light.

**• Skid Suppression Function**

The skid suppression function is designed to help maintain directional stability by suppressing the wheels' tendency to slide sideways during steering operations. Activation of this function is indicated by flashing of the Vehicle Dynamics Control operation indicator light.

## NOTE

**• The Vehicle Dynamics Control system may be considered normal when the following conditions occur.**

**– Slight twitching of the brake pedal is felt.**

**– Vehicle or steering wheel shakes to a small degree.**

**– An operating sound from the engine compartment is heard briefly when starting the engine and when driving off after starting the engine.**

**– The brake pedal seems to jolt when driving off after starting the engine.**

**• In the following circumstances, the vehicle may be less stable than it feels to the driver. The Vehicle Dynamics Control System may therefore operate. Such operation does not indicate a system malfunction.**

**– on gravel-covered or rutted roads**

**– on unfinished roads**

**– when the vehicle is towing a trailer**

**– when the vehicle is fitted with snow tires or winter tires**

**• Activation of the Vehicle Dynamics Control system will cause operation of the steering wheel to feel slightly different compared to that for normal conditions.**

**• It is always important to reduce speed when approaching a corner, even if the vehicle is equipped with Vehicle Dynamics Control.**

**• Always turn off the engine before replacing a tire. Failure to do so may render the Vehicle Dynamics Control system unable to operate correctly.**

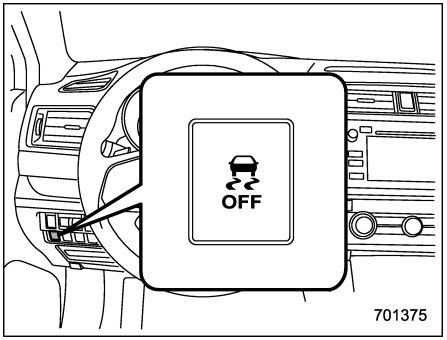
## ■ Vehicle Dynamics Control system monitor

Refer to "Vehicle Dynamics Control warning light/Vehicle Dynamics Control operation indicator light" ☞3-20 and "Vehicle

– CONTINUED –

Dynamics Control OFF indicator light" ☞3-21.

## ■ Vehicle Dynamics Control OFF switch




**Vehicle Dynamics Control OFF switch**

Pressing the Vehicle Dynamics Control OFF switch deactivates the Vehicle Dynamics Control system.

Creating an adequate driving wheel slip by deactivating the Vehicle Dynamics Control system temporarily may help to escape from the following situations. Use the Vehicle Dynamics Control OFF switch as necessary.

- a standing start on a steeply sloping road with a snowy, gravel-covered, or otherwise slippery surface
- extrication of the vehicle when its wheels are stuck in mud or deep snow

When the switch is pressed during engine operation, the Vehicle Dynamics Control OFF indicator light illuminates. The Vehicle Dynamics Control system will be deactivated. When the switch is pressed again to reactivate the Vehicle Dynamics Control system, the indicator light turns off.

You should not deactivate the Vehicle Dynamics Control system except under the above-mentioned situations.

**⚠ CAUTION**

**The Vehicle Dynamics Control system helps prevent unstable vehicle motion such as skidding using control of the brakes and engine power. Do not turn off the Vehicle Dynamics Control system unless it is absolutely necessary. If you must turn off the Vehicle Dynamics Control system, drive very carefully based on the road surface condition.**

## NOTE

**- When the switch has been pressed to deactivate the Vehicle Dynamics Control system, the Vehicle Dynamics Control system automatically reactivates itself the next time the ignition switch is turned to the "LOCK"/"OFF" position and the engine is restarted.**
**- If the switch is held down for 10 seconds or longer, the indicator light turns off, the Vehicle Dynamics Control system is activated, and the system ignores any further pressing of the switch. To make the switch usable again, turn the ignition switch to the "LOCK"/"OFF" position and restart the engine.**
**- When the switch is pressed to deactivate the Vehicle Dynamics Control system, the vehicle's running performance is comparable with that of a vehicle that does not have a Vehicle Dynamics Control system. Do not deactivate the Vehicle Dynamics Control system except when absolutely necessary.**
**- Even when the Vehicle Dynamics Control system is deactivated, components of the brake control system may still activate. When the brake control system is activated, the Vehicle Dynamics Control operation indicator light illuminates.**

## X-mode (Outback CVT models)

**⚠ WARNING**

- **Always use the utmost care in driving – overconfidence because you are driving a vehicle with X-mode could easily lead to a serious accident.**
- **Always use the utmost care in driving – overconfidence because you are driving a vehicle with hill descent control function could easily lead to a serious accident. Be especially careful, and depress the brake pedal if necessary when driving on extremely steep downhill, frozen, muddy or sandy roads. Failure to control the vehicle's speed may cause a loss of control and result in a serious accident.**

**⚠ CAUTION**

- **Even if your vehicle is equipped with X-mode, winter tires or snow chains should be used when driving on snow-covered or icy roads; in addition, vehicle speed should be reduced considerably. Simply having X-mode does not guarantee that the vehicle will be able to avoid accidents in any situation.**
- **Activate the X-mode when you encounter a very slippery surface at low speed. However, having X-mode is no guarantee that full vehicle control will be maintained at all times and under all conditions. Even when activating X-mode, reduce the vehicle speed considerably.**
- **Whenever suspension components, steering components, or an axle are removed from a vehicle, we recommend that you have the system inspected by an authorized SUBARU dealer.**
- **The following precautions should be observed in order to ensure that the X-mode is operating properly:**
  - **All four wheels should be fitted with tires of the same size, type, and brand. Furthermore, the amount of wear should be the same for all four tires.**
  - **Keep the tire pressure at the proper level as shown on the label attached to the vehicle's door pillar.**
  - **Use only the special temporary spare tire to replace a flat tire. With a normal temporary spare tire, the effectiveness of the X-mode is reduced and this should be taken into account when driving the vehicle in such a condition.**
- **If the hill descent control function has operated continuously for a long time, the temperature of the brake disc may increase and the hill descent control function may be temporarily disabled. In this case, the hill descent control indicator will disappear. When the hill descent control indicator disappears, the hill descent control function is disabled.**

X-mode is the integrated control system of the engine, AWD and Vehicle Dynamics Control system, etc. for driving with bad road conditions. Using X-mode, you can drive more comfortably even in slippery road conditions including uphill and downhill.

X-mode has the following functions.

*– CONTINUED –*

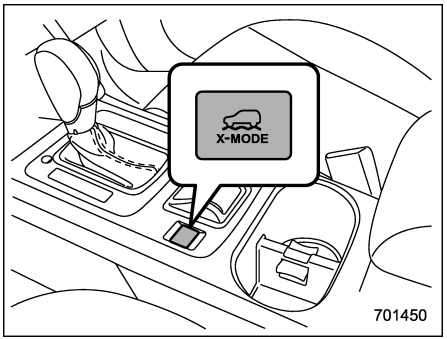
- **Hill descent control function:**

Using the hill descent control function, you can keep the vehicle at a consistent speed driving downhill. If the vehicle speed is likely to increase, the brake control system will be activated to adjust the vehicle speed.

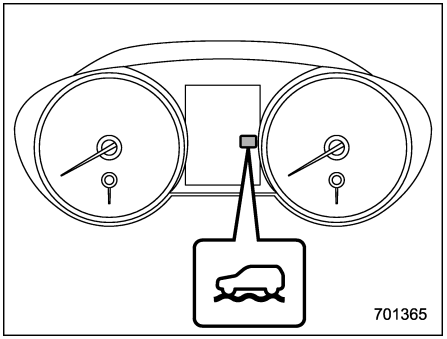
- **Driving ability control:**

This mode increases the hill-climbing ability and driving ability as well as enabling smooth application of torque for easier control of the steering wheel.

## ■ To activate/deactivate the X-mode




**X-mode switch**




**X-mode indicator**

**To activate:**

Press the X-mode switch. While the X-mode is activated, the X-mode indicator appears.

**To deactivate:**

Press the X-mode switch again. The X-mode indicator will disappear when the X-mode is deactivated.

## NOTE

**• Even if you try to activate the X-mode by pressing the X-mode switch when the vehicle speed is 20 km/h (12 mph) or more, the X-mode will not be activated. At this time, a buzzer will sound twice.**

**• If the vehicle speed reaches 40 km/h (25 mph) or more while the X-mode is activated, a buzzer will sound once and the X-mode will be deactivated.**

**• For models with SI-DRIVE, the SI-DRIVE mode will change to the Intelligent (I) mode when the X-mode is deactivated.**

**• For models with SI-DRIVE, the SI-DRIVE mode will not be affected even if the SI-DRIVE switch is pressed while the X-mode is activated. At this time, the buzzer will sound twice.**

**• For models with Auto Start Stop system, the system will be stopped while the X-mode is activated.**

**• While the engine is running, if either of the following conditions is met, the X-mode will be deactivated. In this case, it is not possible to activate the X-mode. Also, for models with SI-DRIVE, the mode will change to the Sport (S) mode and it will not be possible to change to the other modes.**

**– The malfunction indicator light (Check Engine light) illuminates.**

**– The AT OIL TEMP warning light flashes.**

**– The ABS warning light illuminates.**

**– The Vehicle Dynamics Control warning light illuminates.**

**• If there is a possibility that the**

**engine could overheat because of a temperature increase of the engine coolant, it is not possible to activate the X-mode. Even while the X-mode is activated, the X-mode will be deactivated when the engine coolant temperature increases. In this case, the mode will change to the Sport (S) mode (models with SI-DRIVE).**

## ■ Hill descent control function

The hill descent control function will be in standby mode when the X-mode is activated and the vehicle speed is less than approximately 20 km/h (12 mph).

The function will operate when the vehicle speed is less than approximately 20 km/h (12 mph) and the accelerator ratio is less than approximately 10%.

The function will turn off when the vehicle speed is more than approximately 20 km/h (12 mph) and the accelerator pedal is depressed.

### NOTE

**• Even while the hill descent control function is operating, you can vary the vehicle speed by using the brake pedal or accelerator pedal.**

**• During braking by the hill descent control function, the hill descent control indicator will flash.**

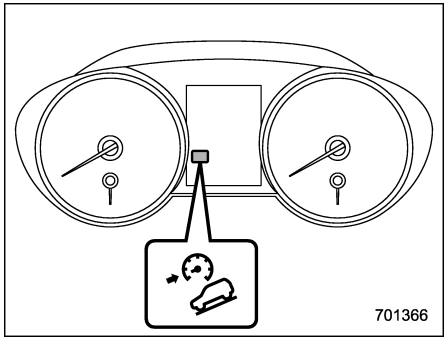
**• The hill descent control function is operable regardless of the gradient of the road.**

**• The hill descent control function may be considered normal when the following conditions occur.**

**– An operating sound is heard briefly from the engine compartment while the hill descent control function is operating.**

**– The sensation of depressing the brake pedal is different, (harder than usual etc.) when the brake pedal is depressed during hill descent control function operation.**

**▼ Hill descent control indicator**



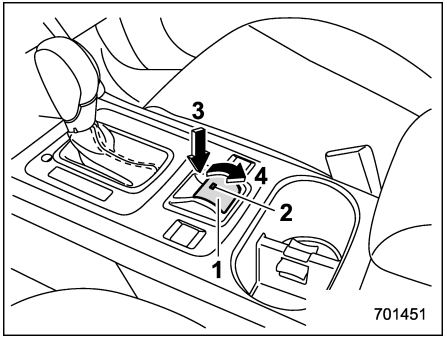

This indicator appears while the hill descent control function is in the standby mode. It flashes while the function is operating. It will disappear when the function is in the disabled mode. When this function is changed from operational to non-operational, it will disappear when the vehicle speed reaches more than approximately 30 km/h (18 mph).

## Parking your vehicle

**⚠ WARNING**

- **Never leave unattended children or pets in the vehicle. They could accidentally injure themselves or others through inadvertent operation of the vehicle. Also, on hot or sunny days, the temperature in a closed vehicle could quickly become high enough to cause severe or possibly fatal injuries to them.**
- **Do not park the vehicle over flammable materials such as dry grass, waste paper or rags, as they may burn easily if they come near hot engine or exhaust system parts.**
- **Be sure to stop the engine if you take a nap in the vehicle. If engine exhaust gas enters the passenger compartment, occupants in the vehicle could die from carbon monoxide (CO) contained in the exhaust gas.**

### ■ Electronic parking brake




1) Parking brake switch
2) Indicator light
3) Release the electronic parking brake
4) Apply the electronic parking brake

**⚠ WARNING**

- **Before exiting the vehicle, make sure that you turn off the engine. Otherwise, the parking brake may be released and an accident may occur.**
- **If the electronic parking brake warning light illuminates, the electronic parking brake system may be malfunctioning. Immediately stop your vehicle in a safe location, use tire stops under the tires to prevent the vehicle from moving and we recommend that you contact your SUBARU dealer.**

**⚠ CAUTION**

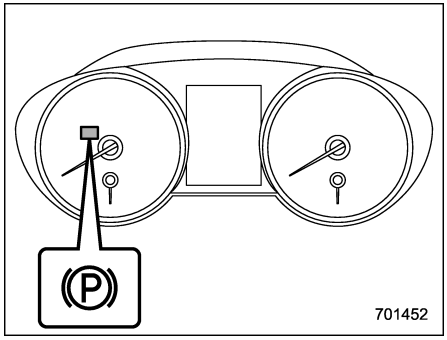
- **When the electronic parking brake system has a malfunction and the parking brake cannot be applied, we recommend that you contact your SUBARU dealer immediately for an inspection. If you have to park your vehicle in such conditions, perform the following procedure.**
  - **Stop your vehicle in a flat location.**
  - **Shift the shift lever in the "1" or reverse position (MT models).**
  - **Shift the select lever in the "P" position (CVT models). When the select lever cannot be shifted into the "P" position, you must release shift lock. Refer to "Shift lock function" ☞7-19.**
  - **Use tire stops under the tires to prevent the vehicle from moving.**

- **Never drive while the parking brake is applied because this will cause unnecessary wear on the brake linings. Before starting to drive, always make sure that the parking brake has been released and the electronic parking brake indicator light has turned off.**

Your vehicle is equipped with an electronic parking brake. You can apply/release the parking brake by operating the parking brake switch.

**To apply:** Pull up the parking brake switch.

**To release:** Press the parking brake switch firmly while the ignition switch is in the "ON" position and the brake pedal is depressed.




**Electronic parking brake indicator light**

When the parking brake is applied while the ignition switch is in the "ON" position, the following indicator lights illuminate.

- the indicator light on the parking brake switch
- the electronic parking brake indicator light on the combination meter (for details, refer to "Electronic parking brake indicator light" ☞3-23.)

## NOTE

- **If the parking brake switch is pressed with the ignition switch in the "ACC" or "LOCK"/"OFF" position, the parking brake is not released.**
- **If the parking brake switch is pressed without depressing the brake pedal (all models) and/or clutch pedal (MT models), the parking brake is not released.**
- **The electronic parking brake system uses motors to apply the parking brake. Therefore, operating sounds from the motors will be heard when applying or releasing the parking brake. Make sure that the motor sounds are heard when applying or releasing the parking brake. Additionally, the motor sounds will be heard when operating the shift lever or the select lever or depressing the brake pedal. This is not a malfunction. The sounds will occur when the electronic parking brake system automatically controls the motors.**
- **When the electronic parking brake system has a malfunction or the electronic parking brake operation is prohibited temporarily, if the parking brake switch is operated, a chirp sound is heard and the electronic parking brake indicator light flashes.**
- **When the electronic parking brake is applied under any of the following conditions, the operating sound of the electronic parking brake may be heard several minutes after the electronic parking brake indicator light illuminates. However, this does not indicate a malfunction.**

– CONTINUED –

**– The parking brake overheats.**
**– The vehicle is parked on a steep slope.**
**– You operate the parking brake switch after the ignition switch has been turned off.**

**• If you use the electronic parking brake under the following conditions, the electronic parking brake indicator light may flash.**
**– The parking brake overheats.**
**– The vehicle is stopped on a steep slope.**

**Even in these cases, the electronic parking brake will operate. However, use tire stops because the vehicle may move.**

**• For models with Auto Start Stop system, the Auto Start Stop system is deactivated while the electronic parking brake is applied.**

**• For models with Auto Start Stop system, if you operate the electronic parking brake switch while the Auto Start Stop system is activated, the Auto Start Stop system will be deactivated. The electronic parking brake will activate after the engine is restarted. After the electronic parking brake indicator light is illuminated, release your foot from the brake pedal.**

**• For models with Auto Start Stop system, when starting the engine or restarting the engine using the Auto Start Stop system, if you operate the electronic parking brake switch, the electronic parking brake indicator light may flash temporarily. However, this is not a malfunction if the light turns off after the electronic parking brake is deactivated.**

**▼ Automatic release function by accelerator pedal**

The electronic parking brake system has an automatic release function. The parking brake will be automatically released by depressing the accelerator pedal. However, the automatic release function does not operate under the following conditions.

- Any door is open.
- The driver's seatbelt is not fastened.
- The select lever is in the "P" or "N" position (CVT models).

If the parking brake is automatically released, the electronic parking brake indicator light and the indicator light on the parking brake switch turn off.

## NOTE

**While pulling up the parking brake switch, the parking brake will not be automatically released even when the accelerator pedal is depressed.**

**▼ Hill Holder function**

**⚠ WARNING**

**When stopping on an uphill slope with the Hill Holder function activated, release the brake pedal after the electronic parking brake indicator light has illuminated. Otherwise, the Hill Holder function may not operate properly and an accident may occur.**

The electronic parking brake system has a Hill Holder function. If the Hill Holder function is activated, the parking brake will be automatically applied when stopping on an uphill slope with the brake pedal depressed. In this case, the electronic parking brake indicator light and the indicator light on the parking brake switch illuminate.

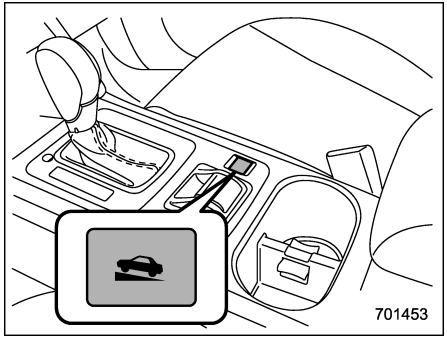
## NOTE

**• The Hill Holder function may not activate on a gentle uphill slope. In this case, manually apply the electronic parking brake.**
**• If you do not depress the brake pedal sufficiently, the Hill Holder func-**

**tion may not operate properly. However, this is not a malfunction. When stopping on an uphill slope, depress the brake pedal firmly and release it after the electronic parking brake indicator light illuminates.**

- **Depending on the condition of the road surface and braking force, the brakes operate temporarily and feel different than usual.**
- **When the electronic parking brake system has a malfunction while the Hill Holder function is activated, a chirp sound is heard, the Hill Holder indicator light turns off and the electronic parking brake warning light illuminates.**
- **The Hill Holder function does not reactivate when parking with the electronic parking brake released after the Hill Holder function is activated. If necessary, manually apply the electronic parking brake.**
- **If the driver does not fasten the seatbelt when the Hill Holder function is activated, the vehicle may not start moving smoothly from a stop, or a noise may be heard from the brake components.**

**▽ Hill Holder switch**




**Hill Holder switch**

You can activate/deactivate the Hill Holder function by pressing the Hill Holder switch.

**To activate:** Press the Hill Holder switch.
**To deactivate:** Press the Hill Holder switch again.

Deactivate the Hill Holder function under the following conditions.

- When towing a trailer
- When carrying a heavy load
- When you do not frequently use the parking brake when stopping on an uphill slope

## NOTE

- **If the Hill Holder switch is pressed for more than 30 seconds, the Hill Holder indicator light turns off, electronic parking brake warning light illuminates and the system ignores any further pressing of the switch. To activate the switch again, turn the ignition switch to the "LOCK"/"OFF" position and restart the engine.**
- **When the Hill Holder function is deactivated while the Hill Holder function has a malfunction, if you press the Hill Holder switch, a chirp sounds.**

**▽ Hill Holder indicator light**

Refer to "Hill Holder indicator light" ☞3-23.

**▼ Emergency brake**

**⚠ CAUTION**

**Use the emergency brake only in case of an emergency. If the emergency brake is excessively used, the brake parts will wear down faster or the brake may not work sufficiently due to rear wheel brake overheating.**

## NOTE

**While using the emergency brake, the electronic parking brake indicator light and the indicator light on the parking**

– CONTINUED –

**brake switch illuminate and a chirp sounds.**

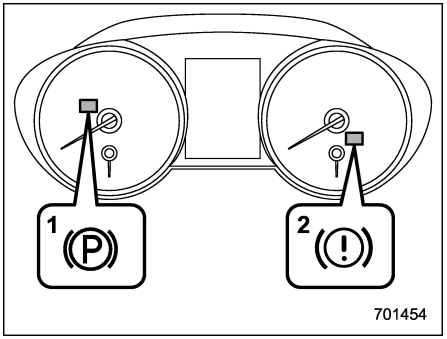
If the foot brake has a malfunction, you can stop the vehicle by pulling the parking brake switch continuously.

While applying the emergency brake, the electronic parking brake indicator light and the indicator on the parking brake switch illuminate and a chirp sounds.

▼ **Electronic parking brake system warning**

**⚠ CAUTION**

**If the electronic parking brake indicator light flashes, the electronic parking brake system may be malfunctioning. Immediately stop your vehicle in the nearest safe location and we recommend that you contact your SUBARU dealer.**




1) Electronic parking brake indicator light
2) Electronic parking brake warning light

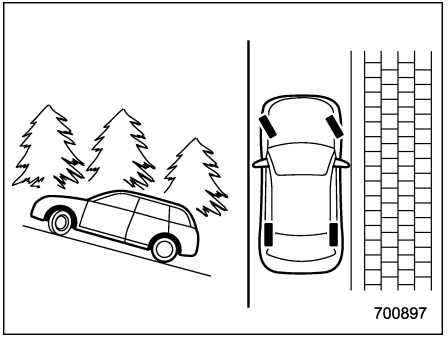
If a malfunction occurs in the electronic parking brake system, the electronic parking brake warning light illuminates and/or the electronic parking brake indicator light flashes. Refer to "Electronic parking brake warning light (yellow)" ☞3-22 and "Electronic parking brake indicator light" ☞3-23.

## ■ Parking tips

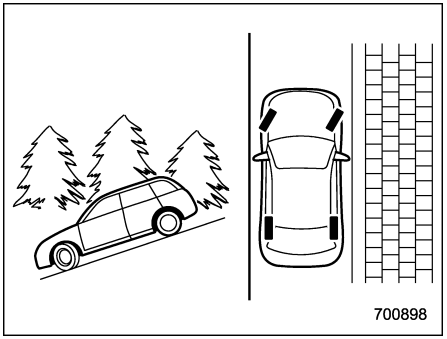
When parking your vehicle, always perform the following items.

- Apply the parking brake.
- For MT models, put the shift lever in the "1" (1st) for upgrade or "R" (Reverse) for a downgrade.
- For CVT models, put the select lever in the "P" (Park) position.

Never rely on the transmission alone to hold the vehicle.




When parking on a hill, always turn the steering wheel. When the vehicle is headed up the hill, the front wheels should be turned away from the curb.



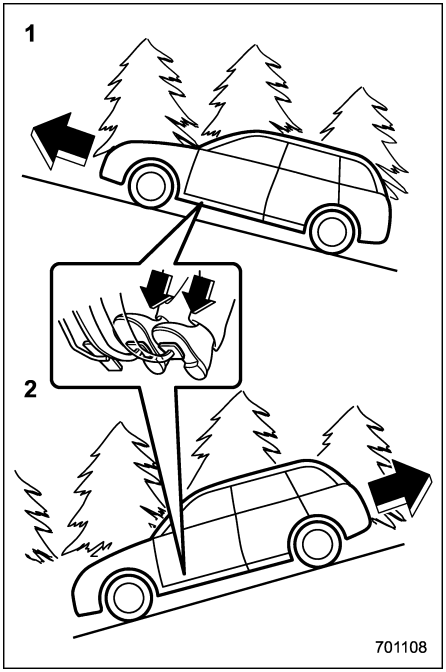

When facing downhill, the front wheels should be turned into the curb.

## Hill start assist system (MT models)

**⚠ WARNING**

- **The Hill start assist system is a device only for helping the driver to START the vehicle on an uphill grade. To prevent accidents when the vehicle is parked on a slope, be sure to firmly set the parking brake. When setting the parking brake, make sure that the vehicle remains stationary when the clutch pedal and brake pedal are released.**
- **Do not turn the ignition switch to the "LOCK"/"OFF" position while the Hill start assist system is operating. The Hill start assist system will be deactivated, causing an accident.**

The Hill start assist system is a device to make the following vehicle operations easier.




1) Starting forward facing uphill
2) Starting backward facing downhill

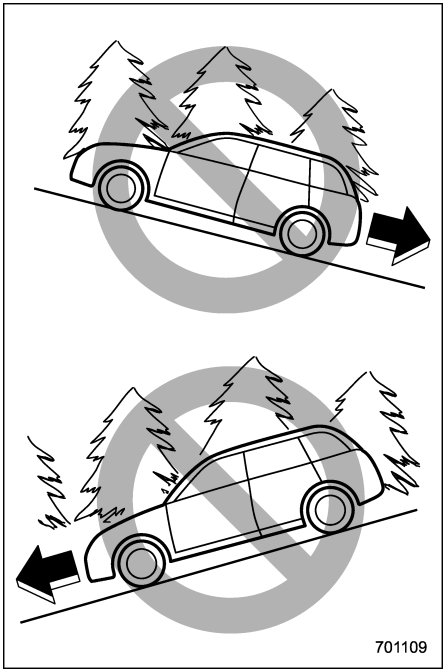
In both these cases, when the clutch pedal is depressed while the brake pedal is also depressed, braking power is maintained temporarily by the Hill start

– CONTINUED –

assist system when the brake pedal is released. The driver is therefore able to start the vehicle the same way as on a level grade, just using the clutch and accelerator pedal.

If the braking power of the Hill start assist system is insufficient after the brake pedal is released, apply more braking power by depressing the brake pedal again.

The Hill start assist system may not operate on slight grades. Also, the Hill start assist system does not operate in the following cases.




- when starting backward facing uphill
- when starting forward facing downhill
- while the parking brake is applied
- while the ignition switch is in the “ACC” or “LOCK”/“OFF” position
- while the Hill Holder indicator light is OFF

When using the Hill start assist system, a braking effect may be felt even after the brake pedal has been released. However, this braking effect should disappear once the clutch pedal is released.

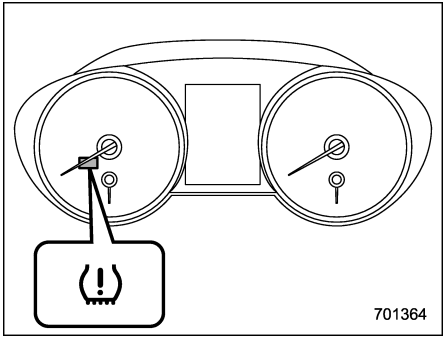
## NOTE

**A slight jolt may be felt when the vehicle begins to move forward after being reversed.**

### ■ To activate/deactivate the Hill start assist system

When activating/deactivation the Hill Holder function, the Hill start assist system will also be activated/deactivated. For details about activating/deactivating the Hill Holder function, refer to “Hill Holder switch” ☞7-39.

## Tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS) (if equipped)




**Low tire pressure warning light**

The tire pressure monitoring system provides the driver with a warning message by sending a signal from a sensor that is installed in each wheel when a tire pressure is severely low relative to the selected TPMS mode.

The tire pressure monitoring system will activate only when the vehicle is driven at speeds above 40 km/h (25 mph). Also, this system may not react immediately to a sudden drop in tire pressure (for example, a blow-out caused by running over a sharp object).

**⚠ WARNING**

**If the low tire pressure warning light illuminates while driving, never brake suddenly and keep driving straight ahead while gradually reducing speed. Then slowly pull off the road to a safe place. Otherwise an accident involving serious vehicle damage and serious personal injury could occur.**

**Check the pressure for all four tires and adjust the pressure according to the most appropriate one of three (normal, loading, towing) COLD tire pressure values shown on the tire placard located on the door pillar on the driver's side.**

**Even when the vehicle is driven a very short distance, the tires get warm and their pressures increase accordingly. Be sure to let the tires cool thoroughly before adjusting their pressures to the standard values shown on the tire placard. Refer to "Tires and wheels" ☞11-33. The tire pressure monitoring system does not function when the vehicle is stationary. After adjusting the tire pressures, increase the vehicle speed to at least 40 km/h (25 mph) to start the TPMS rechecking of the tire inflation pressures. If the tire pressures are now above the severe low pressure threshold, the low tire pressure warning light should turn off a few minutes later.**

**If this light still illuminates while driving after adjusting the tire pressure, a tire may have significant damage and a fast leak that causes the tire to lose air rapidly. If you have a flat tire, replace it with a spare tire as soon as possible.**

**When a spare tire is mounted or a wheel rim is replaced without the original pressure sensor/transmitter being transferred, the low tire pressure warning light will illuminate steadily after blinking for approximately one minute. This indicates the TPMS is unable to monitor all four road wheels. We recommend that you contact your SUBARU dealer as soon as possible for tire and sensor replacement and/or system resetting.**

**When a tire is repaired with liquid sealant, the tire pressure warning valve and transmitter may not operate properly. If a liquid sealant is used, we recommend that you contact your nearest SUBARU dealer or other qualified service shop as soon**

– CONTINUED –

**as possible. Make sure to replace the tire pressure warning valve and transmitter when replacing the tire. You may reuse the wheel if there is no damage to it and if the sealant residue is properly cleaned off. If the light illuminates steadily after blinking for approximately one minute, we recommend that you promptly contact a SUBARU dealer to have the system inspected.**

**⚠ CAUTION**

**Do not place metal film or any metal parts in the cargo area. This may cause poor reception of the signals from the tire pressure sensors, and the tire pressure monitoring system will not function properly.**

## ■ TPMS mode setting

Before driving your vehicle, make sure that the TPMS mode is set to the most appropriate one based on the loading condition of the vehicle.

Set a mode under the following conditions.

- when the vehicle is stationary
- when the ignition switch is in the “ON” position

There are three types of TPMS mode settings.

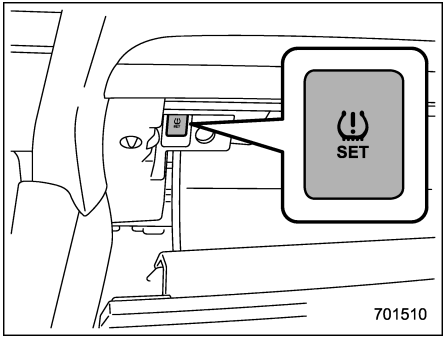
**▼ Normal type meter display**

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| P1: | Normal mode | |
| P2: | Loading mode | |
| P3: | Towing mode | |

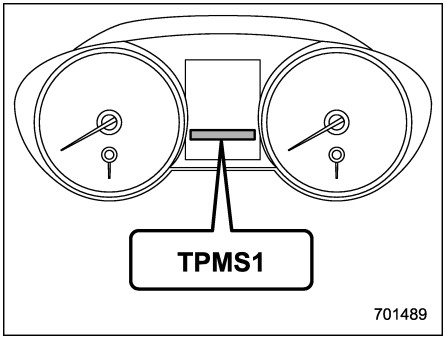
**▼ Liquid-crystal type meter display**

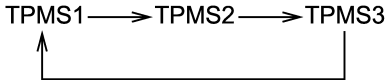
| | | |
|---|---|---|
| TPMS1: | Normal mode | |
| TPMS2: | Loading mode | |
| TPMS3: | Towing mode | |

**▼ TPMS mode selection**

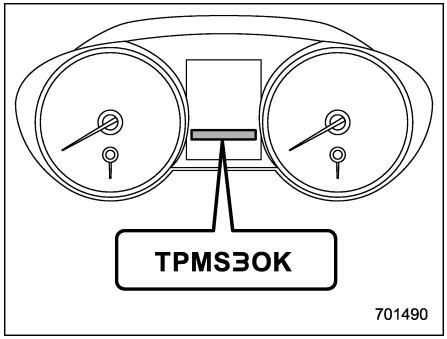



1. When the trip meter is displayed in the combination meter, press and hold the TPMS set switch (for approximately 3 seconds) located inside the glove box. The current TPMS mode will be displayed in the trip meter display, and the TPMS mode can be changed.
2. Briefly press the TPMS set switch to change the mode. The mode will change in the following sequence.




3. When the desired mode is displayed, press and hold the switch (for approximately 3 seconds) to confirm the setting. Once the setting is complete, the confirmation message will be displayed (for example, if you select TPMS3, "TPMS3OK" will be displayed).




After the TPMS mode is displayed, the trip meter will appear again.

## NOTE

**If no operations are performed while the TPMS mode selection is activated, the display will return to the trip meter after approximately 10 seconds.**

**Change the TPMS mode according to the specified pressure shown on the tire inflation pressure label.**

# Cruise control

## NOTE

**For models with EyeSight system: Refer to the Owner's Manual supplement for the EyeSight system.**

Cruise control enables you to maintain a constant vehicle speed without holding your foot on the accelerator pedal and it is operative when the vehicle speed is 30 km/h (20 mph) or more.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Do not use the cruise control under any of the following conditions. These may cause loss of vehicle control.**

- **driving up or down a steep grade**
- **driving on slippery or winding roads**
- **driving in heavy traffic**
- **towing a trailer**

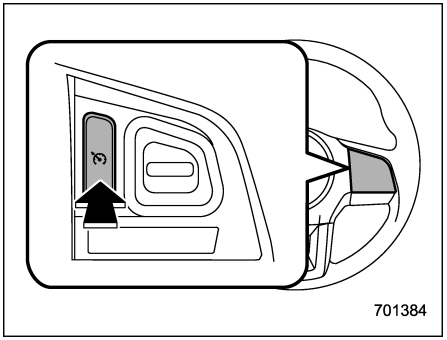
## NOTE

- **On uphill and downhill slopes, depending on the degree of the slope and the load of the vehicle, there may be cases when a constant speed cannot be guaranteed.**

*– CONTINUED –*

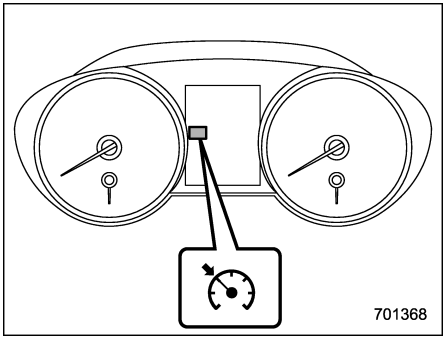
**• If the cruise control indicator light does not illuminate even after pressing the cruise control main button, it is possible that there is a malfunction in the system. We recommend that you contact your SUBARU dealer for an inspection.**
**• Make sure the cruise control system is turned off when the cruise control is not in use to avoid unintentionally setting the cruise control.**

## ■ To set cruise control




**Cruise control main button**

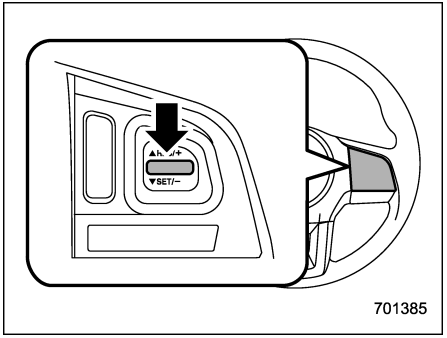
1. Press the cruise control main button.



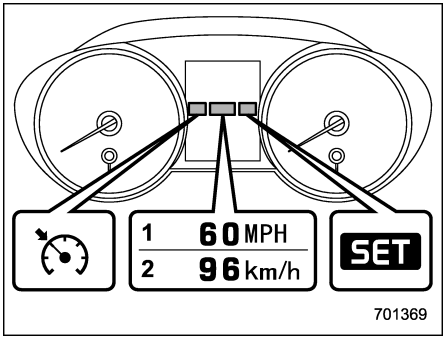

**Cruise control indicator light**

The cruise control indicator light on the combination meter will illuminate.

2. Depress the accelerator pedal until the vehicle reaches to the desired speed.




3. Press the “RES/SET” switch to the “SET” side and release it. Then release the accelerator pedal.




**Cruise control set indicator**

1) When setting the displayed unit as “MPH”.
2) When setting the displayed unit as “km/h”.

At this time, the cruise control set indicator appears in the combination meter. The set speed will be shown on the combination meter. You can change the displayed unit by operating the multi information display. For details, refer to “Units (U.K. models)” ☞3-45.

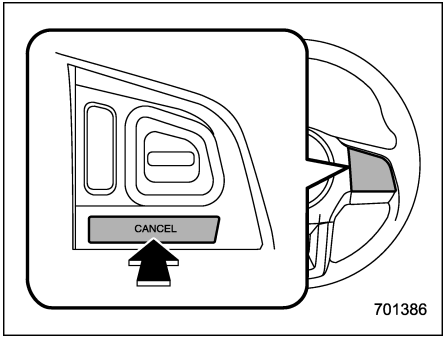
The vehicle will maintain the desired speed.

Vehicle speed can be temporarily increased while driving with the cruise control activated. Simply depress the

accelerator pedal to accelerate the vehicle. When the accelerator pedal is released, the vehicle will return to and maintain the previous cruising speed.

## ■ To temporarily cancel the cruise control

The cruise control can be temporarily canceled in the following ways.

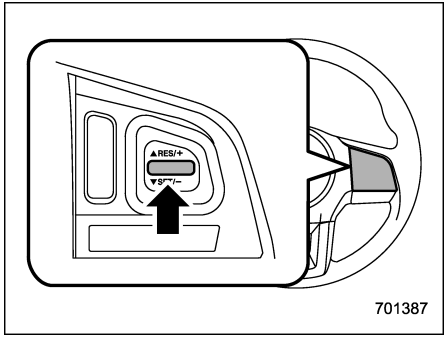



- Press the “CANCEL” button.
- Press the X-mode switch to activate the X-mode (models with X-mode).
- Depress the brake pedal.
- Depress the clutch pedal (MT models).

**⚠ WARNING**

**For CVT models, do not place the select lever in the “N” position while driving. If the select lever is shifted into the “N” position, cruise control can be canceled but the engine brake will no longer work. This could result in an accident.**

The cruise control set indicator light on the combination meter turns off when the cruise control is canceled.




To resume the cruise control after it has been temporarily canceled and with vehicle speed of approximately 30 km/h (20 mph) or more, press the “RES/SET” switch to the “RES” side to return to the original cruising speed automatically.

The cruise control set indicator light on the combination meter will automatically illuminate at this time.

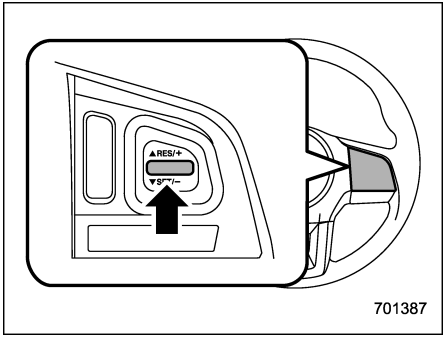
## ■ To turn off the cruise control

There are two ways to turn off the cruise control.

- Press the cruise control main button again.
- Turn the ignition switch to the “ACC” or “LOCK”/“OFF” position (but only when the vehicle is completely stopped).

## ■ To change the cruising speed

### ▼ To increase the speed (by the “RES/SET” switch)




Press the “RES/SET” switch to the “RES” side and hold it until the vehicle reaches the desired speed. Then, release the switch. The vehicle speed at that moment will be memorized and treated as the new set speed.

– CONTINUED –

**When setting the displayed unit as "MPH":**

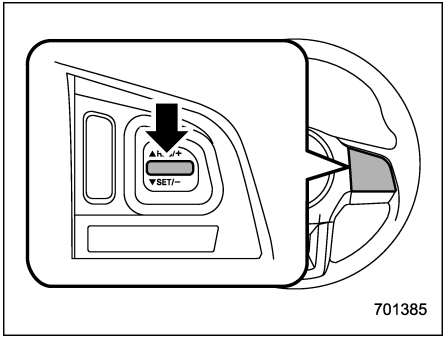
The set speed can be increased 1 mph (1.6 km/h) each time by pressing the "RES/SET" switch to the "RES" side.

**When setting the displayed unit as "km/h":**

The set speed can be increased 1 km/h each time by pressing the "RES/SET" switch to the "RES" side.

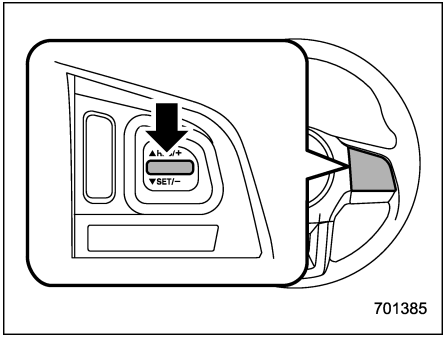
**▼ To increase the speed (by accelerator pedal)**

1. Depress the accelerator pedal to accelerate the vehicle to the desired speed.




2. Press the "RES/SET" switch to the "SET" side once. Now the desired speed is set and the vehicle will keep running at that speed without depressing the accelerator pedal.

**▼ To decrease the speed (by the "RES/SET" switch)**




Press the "RES/SET" switch to the "SET" side and hold it until the vehicle reaches the desired speed. Then, release the switch. The vehicle speed at that moment will be memorized and treated as the new set speed.

**When setting the displayed unit as "MPH":**

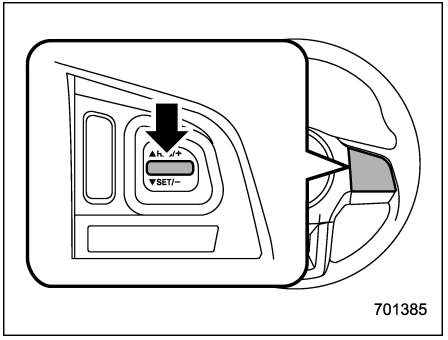
The set speed can be decreased 1 mph (1.6 km/h) each time by pressing the "RES/SET" switch to the "SET" side.

**When setting the displayed unit as "km/h":**

The set speed can be decreased 1 km/h each time by pressing the "RES/SET" switch to the "SET" side.

**▼ To decrease the speed (by brake pedal)**

1. Depress the brake pedal to release cruise control temporarily.




2. When the vehicle speed is decreased to the desired speed, press the "RES/SET" switch to the "SET" side once. Now the desired speed is set and the vehicle will keep running at that speed without depressing the accelerator pedal.

### ■ Cruise control indicator

Refer to “Cruise control indicator” ☞3-32.

### ■ Cruise control set indicator

Refer to “Cruise control set indicator” ☞3-32.

## Auto Start Stop system (if equipped)

The Auto Start Stop system is designed to automatically stop and restart the engine when the vehicle is stationary for a short period of time (while waiting for a traffic light or in a traffic jam, etc.) after the engine has warmed up, in order to reduce fuel consumption and exhaust emissions, as well as undesired idling noise.

### ■ System operation

**⚠ CAUTION**

- **The Auto Start Stop system is designed to automatically stop and restart the engine for a short period of time during idling. Do not use the system when parking the vehicle normally.**
- **If the Auto Start Stop system operates when a trailer hitch connector is connected, we recommend that you consult your SUBARU dealer. Continuing to drive the vehicle while using the system in this condition could result in lurching down downhill slopes or rolling back on downhill slopes, or could cause damage to the transmission.**

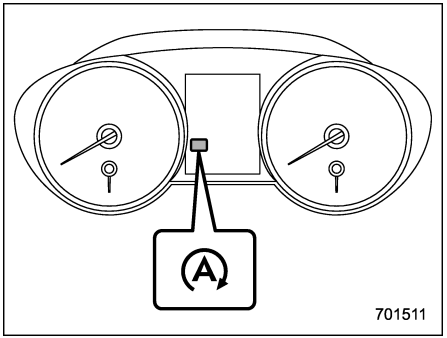
So that it can be used safely and comfortably, in addition to driver operations, the Auto Start Stop system is designed to constantly monitor the vehicle conditions as well as the environment inside and outside the vehicle, in order to control stopping and restarting of the engine. The engine can be automatically stopped by the system when all of the following conditions are met.

- when the vehicle has been driven once after the engine was started (If the vehicle is left continuously idling without being driven, the engine will not be stopped automatically. Also, the engine will not be stopped and restarted repeatedly while the vehicle is stationary.)
- the engine is sufficiently warmed up
- the vehicle battery is in good condition
- the engine hood is closed
- all doors are closed (including the trunk and rear gate)
- the driver’s seatbelt is fastened
- the rear window defogger is not in use
- the defroster is not in use
- the air conditioner is not in use or used with a negligible temperature difference between the setting temperature and the temperature inside the vehicle (refer to

– CONTINUED –

"Air conditioner control" ☞4-7.)

- climate control for the driver's seat is set to any temperature setting except the maximum heating or maximum cooling settings (refer to "Temperature control" ☞4-6.)
- the vehicle is at an altitude of less than approximately 1,500 m (4,900 ft)
- the outside temperature is higher than approximately −10°C (14°F)
- the Auto Start Stop warning light (yellow) is not illuminated
- the malfunction indicator light (Check Engine light) is off
- the steering wheel is in the straight ahead position
- the steering wheel is not being operated
- the vehicle is not be used for towing
- the vehicle is not stopped on a road that has a steep slope
- negative pressure in the brake booster is sufficient
- the brake pedal is firmly depressed fully after it has been depressed to stop the vehicle (The system may not operate in some cases if the brake pedal is not fully depressed or if the brake is applied suddenly.)
- the electronic parking brake is not applied
- the select lever is in the "D" position
- the CVT fluid is sufficiently warmed up
- the temperature of the CVT fluid is not abnormally high
- The X-mode has been turned off (if equipped)
- The power rear gate is not being used (if equipped)




**Auto Start Stop indicator light (green)**

If the engine is temporarily stopped by the system, the Auto Start Stop indicator light on the combination meter will illuminate in green. This indicator light will turn off when the system restarts the engine.

## NOTE

- **Vehicles that are equipped with the Auto Start Stop system are also equipped with a special high-performance battery. When replacing the vehicle battery, be sure to replace it with a genuine SUBARU battery (or equivalent) designed specifically for use in a vehicle equipped with the Auto Start Stop system. For details, we recommend that you consult your SUBARU dealer.**
- **In the following cases, it may take some time for the Auto Start Stop system to operate.**
  - **– when the battery is discharged because the vehicle has not been used for a long period of time, etc.**
  - **– when the outside temperature is very high, or when it is very low**
  - **– when the battery terminals are disconnected after replacing the battery**

After depressing the brake pedal with the select lever in the "D" position and stopping the vehicle, if the brake pedal is further depressed, the engine will be automatically stopped.

If you release the brake pedal with the select lever in the "D" position, the engine will be automatically restarted.

▼ **Restarting the engine after it has been temporarily stopped by the Auto Start Stop system**

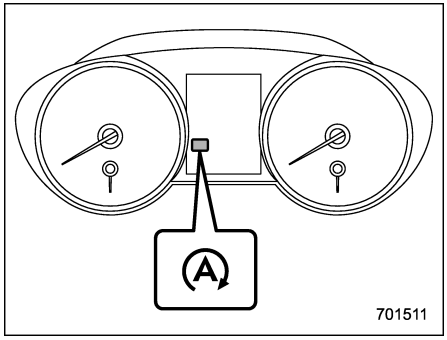
**⚠ CAUTION**

**While the engine is temporarily stopped by the Auto Start Stop system, if the engine does not restart, even if you release the brake pedal, we recommend that you have your vehicle inspected by a SUBARU dealer as soon as possible.**

## NOTE

**When the engine has been restarted by the Auto Start Stop system, the voltage of the accessory power outlets will be reduced. Because of this, the power of any electrical appliances that are connected may be temporarily turned off.**

If any one of the conditions for Auto Start Stop operation can no longer be met, the engine will be automatically restarted. However, in order to ensure safety, the engine will not be automatically restarted if the engine hood is opened, even if you release the brake pedal.



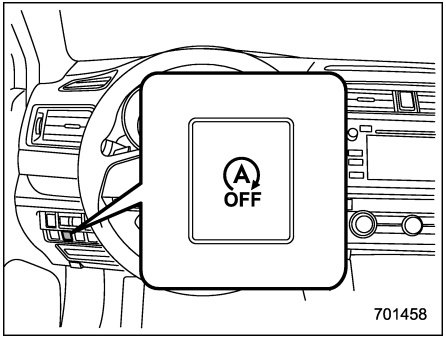

**Auto Start Stop warning light (yellow)**

When the engine is temporarily stopped by the system, the Auto Start Stop warning light will illuminate in yellow if the engine hood is opened.

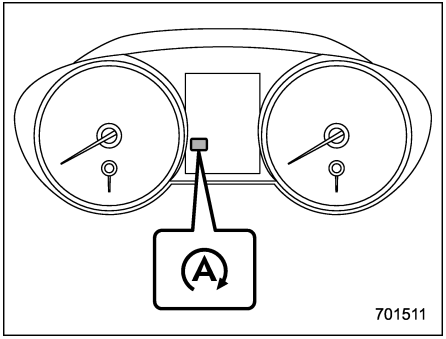
Also, in the following cases, the length of time that the engine is temporarily stopped by the Auto Start Stop system may be shorter.

- when the outside temperature is high, or when it is low (because the air conditioner can no longer maintain the set temperature)
- when consumption of electricity by electrical components is high

▼ **Auto Start Stop OFF switch**




**Auto Start Stop OFF switch**




**Auto Start Stop OFF indicator light (yellow)**

If the Auto Start Stop OFF switch is pressed, operation of the Auto Start Stop system will be disabled. The Auto Start

*– CONTINUED –*

Stop OFF indicator light on the combination meter will then illuminate in yellow. If the switch is pressed once more, the Auto Start Stop system will turn on again. The Auto Start Stop OFF indicator light will then turn off.

While the engine is temporarily stopped by the system, if the Auto Start Stop OFF switch is pressed, the engine will be restarted even if you do not release the brake pedal.

## NOTE

**• If the engine is restarted when the Auto Start Stop system is not operational and the ignition switch has been turned to the "LOCK"/"OFF" position, the Auto Start Stop system will turn on again.**

**• Be sure to turn the ignition switch to the "LOCK"/"OFF"position when leaving the vehicle. Failure to do so could result in the battery discharging.**

## ■ Displaying the Auto Start Stop system status

Approximate indications of the time that the engine has been stopped by the Auto Start Stop system and/or the amount of fuel saved can be displayed on the information display or the multi function display. For details, refer to "Basic screens" ☞3-39.

## ■ System warning

So that it can be used safely and comfortably, the Auto Start Stop system is designed to constantly monitor the vehicle conditions as well as the environment inside and outside the vehicle in addition to driver operations, and to provide various warnings to the driver via the warning light and/or indicator light illuminating or flashing and a buzzer sounding. For details about the warning light and indicator light, refer to "Auto Start Stop warning indicator/Auto Start Stop OFF indicator (yellow)" ☞3-34 and "Auto Start Stop indicator (green)" ☞3-35.

### ▼ Warning buzzer

The buzzer will sound when the engine hood is opened while the engine is stopped by the Auto Start Stop system.

When this occurs, the buzzer will stop sounding when the following operations are performed.

• the engine is restarted by normal operation (refer to "Preparing to drive" ☞7-7)

• the ignition switch is turned to the "LOCK"/"OFF" position

New vehicle break-in driving – the first 1,600 km (1,000 miles) ..... 8-2
Fuel economy hints ..... 8-2
Engine exhaust gas (carbon monoxide)..... 8-2
Catalytic converter ..... 8-3
Diesel particulate filter (diesel engine models) ..... 8-4
Periodic inspections ..... 8-5
Driving in foreign countries ..... 8-5
Driving tips for AWD vehicles ..... 8-6
Sedan ..... 8-6
Outback ..... 8-7
Off road driving ..... 8-8
Sedan ..... 8-8
Outback ..... 8-8
Winter driving ..... 8-10
Operation during cold weather..... 8-10
Driving on snowy and icy roads ..... 8-12
Corrosion protection..... 8-13
Snow tires ..... 8-13
Tire chains ..... 8-13
Rocking the vehicle ..... 8-14
Loading your vehicle..... 8-14
Roof rack (Outback) (dealer option)..... 8-15
Roof rails with integrated crossbars (Outback — if equipped) ..... 8-16
Trailer towing ..... 8-20
Maintenance ..... 8-20
Towing weight ..... 8-20
Trailer hitches (dealer option)..... 8-21
Trailer safety chains..... 8-21
Side mirrors ..... 8-21
Trailer lights ..... 8-22
Tires..... 8-22
Trailer towing tips ..... 8-22
Additional information for Europe ..... 8-24

## New vehicle break-in driving – the first 1,600 km (1,000 miles)

The performance and long life of your vehicle are dependent on how you handle and care for your vehicle while it is new. Follow these instructions during the first 1,600 km (1,000 miles):

- For petrol engine models, do not allow the engine speed to exceed 4,000 rpm except in an emergency.
- For diesel engine models, do not allow the engine speed to exceed 3,500 rpm except in an emergency.
- Do not drive at one constant engine or vehicle speed for a long time, either fast or slow.
- Avoid starting suddenly and rapid acceleration, except in an emergency.
- Avoid hard braking, except in an emergency.

The same break-in procedures should be applied to an overhauled engine, newly mounted engine or when brake pads or brake linings are replaced with new ones.

## Fuel economy hints

The following suggestions will help to save your fuel.

- Select the proper gear position for the speed and road conditions.
- Avoid sudden acceleration or deceleration. Always accelerate gently until you reach the desired speed. Then try to maintain that speed for as long as possible.
- Do not pump the accelerator and avoid racing the engine.
- Avoid unnecessary engine idling.
- Keep the engine properly tuned.
- Keep the tires inflated to the correct pressure shown on the tire placard, which is located under the door latch on the driver's side. Low pressure will increase tire wear and fuel consumption.
- Use the air conditioner only when necessary.
- Keep the front and rear wheels in proper alignment.
- Avoid carrying unnecessary luggage or cargo.
- The indication of the ECO gauge shows a reference for saving fuel. For details, refer to "ECO gauge" ☞3-12.

## Engine exhaust gas (carbon monoxide)

**⚠ WARNING**

- **Never inhale engine exhaust gas. Engine exhaust gas contains carbon monoxide, a colorless and odorless gas which is dangerous, or even lethal, if inhaled.**
- **Always properly maintain the engine exhaust system to prevent engine exhaust gas from entering the vehicle.**
- **Never run the engine in a closed space, such as a garage, except for the brief time needed to drive the vehicle in or out of it.**
- **Avoid remaining in a parked vehicle for a long time while the engine is running. If that is unavoidable, then use the ventilation fan to force fresh air into the vehicle.**
- **Always keep the front ventilator inlet grille free from snow, leaves or other obstructions to ensure that the ventilation system always works properly.**
- **If at any time you suspect that**

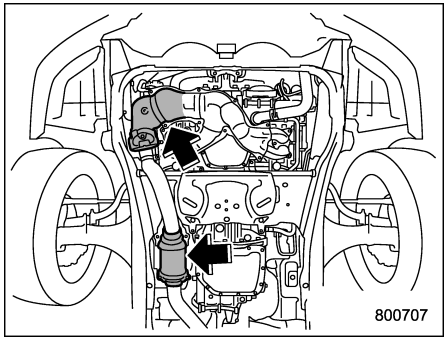
**exhaust fumes are entering the vehicle, have the problem checked and corrected as soon as possible. If you must drive under these conditions, drive only with all windows fully open.**

- **Keep the trunk lid (Sedan) or rear gate (Outback) closed while driving to prevent exhaust gas from entering the vehicle.**

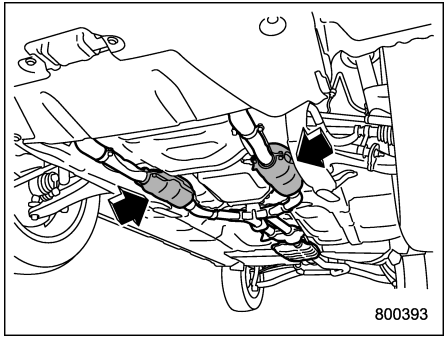
## NOTE

**Due to the expansion and contraction of the metals used in the manufacture of the exhaust system, you may hear a crackling sound coming from the exhaust system for a short time after the engine has been shut off. This sound is normal.**

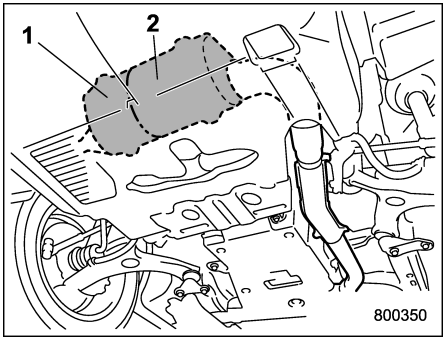
## Catalytic converter




**2.5 L models**




**3.6 L models**




**Diesel engine models**

1) Catalytic converter
2) Diesel particulate filter

The catalytic converter is installed in the exhaust system. It serves as catalyst to reduce HC, CO and NOx in exhaust gases, thus providing cleaner exhaust.

To avoid damage to the catalytic converter:

- For petrol engine models, use only unleaded petrol. Even a small amount of leaded fuel will damage the catalytic converter.
- For diesel engine models, use only diesel fuel with a specification of EN590 or an equivalent.
- Never start the engine by pushing or pulling the vehicle.

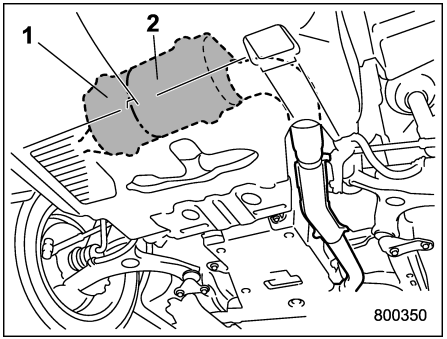
*– CONTINUED –*

- Avoid racing the engine.
- Never turn off the ignition switch while the vehicle is moving.
- Keep your engine tuned-up. If you feel the engine running rough (misfiring, backfiring or incomplete combustion), we recommend that you have your vehicle checked and repaired by an authorized SUBARU dealer.
- Do not apply undercoating or rust prevention treatment to the heat shield of catalytic converter and the exhaust system.
- Do not drive with an extremely low fuel level.

**⚠ WARNING**

- **Avoid fire hazards. Do not drive or park the vehicle anywhere near flammable materials (e.g. grass, paper, rags or leaves), because the catalytic converter operates at very high temperatures.**
- **Keep everyone and flammable materials away from the exhaust pipe while the engine is running. The exhaust gas is very hot.**

## Diesel particulate filter (diesel engine models)

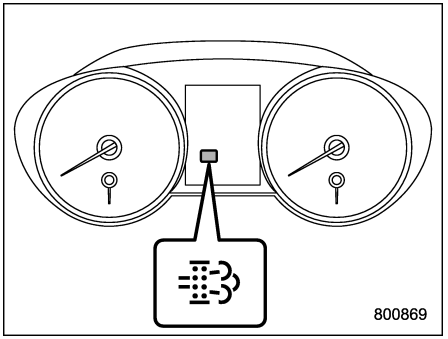



1) Catalytic converter
2) Diesel particulate filter

The diesel particulate filter is a device that eliminates particulate matter in the exhaust gas of a diesel engine.

In most cases, the accumulated soot is automatically burned in the filter while driving. However, accumulated soot in the filter is not burned if you drive the vehicle under the following conditions.

- when the vehicle is continuously driven at 15 km/h (9 mph) or less
- when the vehicle is driven without sufficient preheating or the vehicle is repeatedly driven for only a short period of time
- when the vehicle is idling for a long time




**Diesel particulate filter warning light**

The diesel particulate filter warning light will illuminate when the accumulated particulate matter exceeds the specified limit. When the warning light illuminates, refer to “Diesel particulate filter warning indicator (diesel engine models)” ☞3-33.

**⚠ WARNING**

- **Avoid fire hazards. Do not drive or park the vehicle anywhere near flammable materials (e.g., grass, paper, rags or leaves), because the diesel particulate filter operates at very high tem-**

peratures.

- **Keep everyone and flammable materials away from the diesel particulate filter and exhaust pipe while the engine is running. The exhaust gas is very hot.**

### NOTE

- **While the soot is burning in the diesel particulate filter, the driveability, engine revolutions, engine sound and smell of emission gas may change.**
- **If any service or maintenance is necessary for the diesel particulate filter, it should be performed by a well-trained expert. In some cases, the work requires maintenance of the on-board computer system using a special tool. Otherwise, the diesel particulate filter warning light will not operate properly. Therefore, we recommend that you contact your SUBARU dealer for service or maintenance of the diesel particulate filter. Fully trained mechanics are on standby at the SUBARU dealer to utilize the special tools and spare parts.**

## Periodic inspections

To keep your vehicle in the best condition at all times, always have the recommended maintenance services listed in the maintenance schedule performed at the specified time or mileage intervals.

## Driving in foreign countries

When planning to use your vehicle in another country:

- Confirm the availability of the correct fuel. Refer to “Fuel” ☞7-3.
- Comply with all regulations and requirements of each country.

## Driving tips for AWD vehicles

**⚠ WARNING**

- **Always maintain a safe driving speed according to the road and weather conditions in order to avoid having an accident on a sharp turn, during sudden braking or under other similar conditions.**
- **Always use the utmost care in driving – overconfidence because you are driving an All-Wheel Drive vehicle could easily lead to a serious accident.**
- **When replacing or installing tire(s), all four tires must be the same for the following items.**
  **(a) Size**
  **(b) Circumference**
  **(c) Speed symbol**
  **(d) Load index**
  **(e) Construction**
  **(f) Manufacturer**
  **(g) Brand (tread pattern)**
  **(h) Degrees of wear**

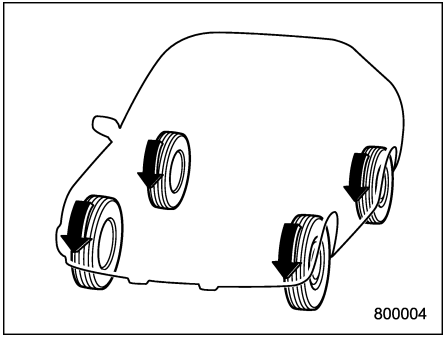
  **For items (a) to (d), you must obey the specification that is printed on the tire placard. The tire placard is located on the bottom of the driver's door pillar.**

  **If all four tires are not the same in items (a) to (h), there is a possibility that it may lead to serious mechanical damage to the drive train of your car and affect the following factors.**
  **— Ride**
  **— Handling**
  **— Braking**
  **— Speedometer/Odometer calibration**
  **— Clearance between the body and the tires**

  **It also may be dangerous and lead to loss of vehicle control, and it can lead to an accident.**

**⚠ CAUTION**

**If you use a temporary spare tire to replace a flat tire, be sure to use the original temporary spare tire stored in the vehicle. Using other sizes may result in severe mechanical damage to the drive train of your vehicle.**




### ■ Sedan

All-Wheel Drive distributes the engine power to all four wheels. AWD vehicles provide better traction when driving on slippery, wet or snow-covered roads and when moving out of mud, sand or dirt. These vehicles, however, are not designed for off road use. If you do this, the vehicles may experience excessive

stress. AWD vehicles should be driven only under the same conditions suitable for ordinary front wheel drive vehicles.

For safety purpose as well as to avoid damaging the AWD system, you should keep the following tips in mind:

- An AWD vehicle is better able to climb steeper roads under snowy or slippery conditions than a front wheel drive vehicle. There is little difference in handling, however, during extremely sharp turns or sudden braking. Therefore, when driving down a slope or turning corners, be sure to reduce your speed and maintain an ample distance from other vehicles.
- Never attempt to drive through pools and puddles, or roads flooded with water. Water entering the engine air intake or the exhaust pipe or water splashing onto electrical parts may damage your vehicle and may cause it to stall.
- An AWD vehicle can be used to traverse difficult areas covered with snow, mud and slush, or sand and dirt. It is, however, designed as an all-road vehicle and not as an all-terrain vehicle. For this reason, an AWD vehicle should be handled with as much care as an ordinary passenger vehicle.
- Always check your brakes for effectiveness immediately after driving in sand, mud or puddle. Do this by driving slowly and stepping on the brake pedal. Repeat that process several times to dry out the brake discs and brake pads.
- Always check the cold tire pressure before starting to drive. The recommended tire pressure is provided on the tire placard, which is located on the door pillar on the driver's side.
- Tire chains should always be placed on the front wheels only.
- Frequent driving of an AWD model under hard-driving conditions such as steep hills or dusty roads will necessitate more frequent replacement of the following items than that specified in "Maintenance schedule" ☞11-3.
  - Engine oil
  - Brake fluid
  - Rear differential gear oil
  - Continuously variable transmission fluid
  - Front differential gear oil
- There are some precautions that you must observe when towing your vehicle. For detail information, refer to "Towing" ☞9-24.

## ■ Outback

All-Wheel Drive distributes the engine power to all four wheels. In normal driving, however, an AWD vehicle operates almost the same as other vehicles with front wheel drive. AWD vehicles provide better traction when driving on slippery, wet or snow-covered roads and when moving out of mud, sand or dirt.

For safety purpose as well as to avoid damaging the AWD system, you should keep the following tips in mind.

- An AWD vehicle is better able to climb steeper roads under snowy or slippery conditions than a two wheel drive vehicle. There is little difference in handling, however, during extremely sharp turns or sudden braking. Therefore, when driving down a slope or turning corners, be sure to reduce your speed and maintain an ample distance from other vehicles.
- Always check the cold tire pressure before starting to drive. The recommended tire pressure is provided on the tire placard, which is located under the door latch on the driver's side.
- Tire chains should always be placed on the front wheels only.
- Frequent driving of an AWD model under hard-driving conditions such as steep hills or dusty roads will necessitate

*– CONTINUED –*

more frequent replacement of the following items than that specified in “Maintenance schedule” ☞11-3.

– Engine oil
– Brake fluid
– Rear differential gear oil
– Manual transmission oil (MT models)
– Continuously variable transmission fluid (CVT models)
– Front differential gear oil (CVT models)

- There are some precautions that you must observe when towing your vehicle. For detail information, refer to “Towing” ☞9-24.

## Off road driving

**⚠ WARNING**

- **Always maintain a safe driving speed according to the road and weather conditions in order to avoid having an accident on a sharp turn, during sudden braking or under other similar conditions.**
- **Always use the utmost care in driving – overconfidence because you are driving an All-Wheel Drive vehicle could easily lead to a serious accident.**

### ■ Sedan

Your AWD vehicle is neither a conventional off-road vehicle nor an all terrain vehicle. It is a passenger car designed primarily for on-road use. The AWD feature gives it some limited off-road capabilities in situations in which the driving surface is relatively level, obstruction-free and otherwise similar to on-road driving conditions. Operating it under other than those conditions could subject the vehicle to excessive stress which might result in damage not eligible for repair under warranty. If you do take your SUBARU off road, you should review the common sense precautions in the next section (applicable to the Outback) for general guidance. But please keep in mind that your vehicle’s off-road capabilities are more limited than those of the Outback.

Never attempt to drive through pools and puddles, or roads flooded with water. Water entering the engine air intake or the exhaust pipe or water splashing onto electrical parts may damage your vehicle and may cause it to stall.

### ■ Outback

**⚠ CAUTION**

**Frequent driving of an AWD model under hard-driving conditions such as rough roads or off roads will necessitate more frequent replacement of the following items than that specified in “Maintenance schedule” ☞11-3.**

- **Engine oil**
- **Brake fluid**
- **Manual transmission oil (MT models)**
- **Continuously variable transmis-**

**sion fluid (CVT models)**
- **Front differential gear oil (CVT models)**

Because of the AWD feature and higher ground clearance, you can drive your SUBARU on some limited off-roads. But please keep in mind that an AWD SUBARU is a passenger car and is neither a conventional off-road vehicle nor an all-terrain vehicle. If you do take your SUBARU off-road, certain common sense precautions such as those in the following list should be taken.

### ▼ Before driving

- Make certain that you and all of your passengers are wearing seatbelts.
- Carry some emergency equipment, such as a towing rope or chain, a shovel, wheel blocks, first aid kit and cell phone or citizens band radio.
- Secure all cargo carried inside the vehicle and make certain that it is not piled higher than the seatbacks. During sudden stops or jolts, unsecured cargo could be thrown around in the vehicle and cause injury. Do not pile heavy loads on the roof. Those loads raise the vehicle's center of gravity and make it more prone to tip over.
- Never equip your vehicle with tires larger than those specified in this manual.

### ▼ During driving

**General precautions:**

- Drive carefully. Do not take unnecessary risks by driving in dangerous areas or over rough terrain.
- Slow down and employ extra caution at all times. When driving off-road, you will not have the benefit of marked traffic lanes, banked curves, traffic signs and the like.
- Do not drive across steep slopes. Instead, drive either straight up or straight down the slopes. A vehicle can much more easily tip over sideways than it can end over end. Avoid driving straight up or down slopes that are too steep.
- Avoid sharp turning maneuvers, especially at higher speeds.
- Do not grip the inside or spokes of the steering wheel. A bad bump could jerk the wheel and injure your hands. Instead, drive with your fingers and thumbs on the outside of the rim.
- Do not drive or park over or near flammable materials such as dry grass or fallen leaves, as they may burn easily. The exhaust system is very hot while the engine is running and right after the engine stops. This could create a fire hazard.

**Precautions when driving under especially dangerous situations:**

- If driving through water, such as when crossing shallow streams, first check the depth of the water and the bottom of the stream bed for firmness and ensure that the bed of the stream is flat. Drive slowly and completely through the stream. The water should be shallow enough that it does not reach the vehicle's undercarriage. Water entering the engine air intake or the exhaust pipe or water splashing onto electrical parts may damage your vehicle and may cause it to stall. Never attempt to drive through rushing water; regardless of its depth, it can wash away the ground from under your tires, resulting in possible loss of traction and even vehicle rollover.
- If you must rock the vehicle to free it from sand or mud, depress the accelerator pedal slightly and move the shift lever/select lever back and forth between "1"/"D" and "R" repeatedly. Do not race the engine. For the best possible traction, avoid spinning the wheels when trying to free the vehicle.
- When the road surface is extremely slippery, you can obtain better traction by starting the vehicle with the transmission in 2nd than 1st (both for MT and CVT). For CVT models, refer to "Selection of manual

*– CONTINUED –*

mode” ☞7-20.

▼ **After driving**

- Always check your brakes for effectiveness immediately after driving in sand, mud or water. Do this by driving slowly and stepping on the brake pedal. Repeat that process several times to dry out the brake discs and brake pads.
- After driving through tall grass, mud, rocks, sand, rivers, etc., check that there is no grass, bush, paper, rags, stones, sand, etc. adhering to or trapped on the underbody. Clear off any such matter from the underbody. If the vehicle is used with these materials trapped or adhering to the underbody, a mechanical breakdown or fire could occur.
- Wash the vehicle’s underbody after off-road driving. Suspension components are particularly prone to dirt buildup, so they need to be washed thoroughly.

## Winter driving

### ■ Operation during cold weather

Carry some emergency equipment, such as tire chains, a window scraper, a bag of sand, flares, a small shovel, and jumper cables.

Check the battery and cables. Cold temperatures reduce battery capacity. The battery must be in good condition to provide enough power for cold winter starts.

Use an engine oil of a suitable grade and viscosity for cold weather. Using heavy summer oil will make it harder to start the engine.

Keep the door locks from freezing by squirting them with deicer or glycerin.

Forcing a frozen door open may damage or separate the rubber weather strips around the door. If the door is frozen, use hot water to melt the ice, and afterwards thoroughly wipe the water away.

Use a windshield washer fluid that contains an antifreeze solution. Do not use engine antifreeze or other substitutes because they may damage the paint of the vehicle.

SUBARU Windshield Washer Fluid contains 58.5% methyl alcohol and 41.5% surfactant, by volume. Its freezing temperature varies according to how much it is diluted, as indicated in the following table.

| Washer Fluid Concentration | Freezing Temperature |
|---|---|
| **30%** | **−12°C (10.4°F)** |
| **50%** | **−20°C (−4°F)** |
| **100%** | **−45°C (−49°F)** |

In order to prevent freezing of washer fluid, check the freezing temperatures in the table above when adjusting the fluid concentration to the outside temperature.

If you fill the reservoir tank with a fluid with a different concentration from the one used previously, purge the old fluid from the piping between the reservoir tank and washer nozzles by operating the washer for a certain period of time. Otherwise, if the concentration of the fluid remaining in the piping is too low for the outside temperature, it may freeze and block the nozzles.

**⚠ CAUTION**

**Adjust the washer fluid concentration appropriately for the outside**

**temperature. If the concentration is inappropriate, sprayed washer fluid may freeze on the windshield and obstruct your view, and the fluid may freeze in the reservoir tank.**

### ▼ Before driving your vehicle

Before entering the vehicle, remove any snow or ice from your shoes because that could make the pedals slippery and driving dangerous.

While warming up the vehicle before driving, check that the accelerator pedal, brake pedal, and all other controls operate smoothly.

Clear away ice and snow that has accumulated under the fenders to avoid making steering difficult. During severe winter driving, stop when and where it is safe to do so and check under the fenders periodically.

### ▼ Parking in cold weather

**⚠ WARNING**

**Snow can trap dangerous exhaust gases under your vehicle. Keep snow clear of the exhaust pipe and from around your vehicle if you park the vehicle in snow with the engine running.**

**⚠ CAUTION**

- **Do not use the parking brake when parking for long periods in cold weather since it could freeze in that position.**
- **When the vehicle is parked in snow or when it snows, raise the wiper blades off the glass to prevent damage to them.**
- **When the vehicle has been left parked after use on roads heavily covered with snow, or has been left parked during a snowstorm, icing may develop on the brake system, which could cause poor braking action. Check for snow or ice buildup on the suspension, disc brakes and brake hoses underneath the vehicle. If there is caked snow or ice, remove it, being careful not to damage the disc brakes and brake hoses and ABS harness.**

When parking for long periods in cold weather, you should observe the following tips.

1. For MT models, place the shift lever in the “1” or “R” position. For CVT models, place the select lever in the “P” position.
2. Use tire stops under the tires to prevent the vehicle from moving.

### ▼ Refueling in cold weather

#### ▽ Petrol engine models

To help prevent moisture from forming in the fuel system and the risk of its freezing, use of an antifreeze additive in the fuel tank is recommended during cold weather. Use only additives that are specifically designed for this purpose. When an antifreeze additive is used, its effect lasts longer if the tank is refilled whenever the fuel level reaches half empty.

If your SUBARU is not going to be used for an extended period, it is best to have the fuel tank filled to capacity.

#### ▽ Diesel engine models

For information about refueling in cold weather, refer to “Fuel requirements for diesel engine models” ☞7-3.

*– CONTINUED –*

## ■ Driving on snowy and icy roads

To prevent skidding and slipping, avoid sudden braking, abrupt acceleration, high-speed driving, and sharp turning when driving on snowy or icy roads.

Always maintain ample distance between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead of you to avoid the need for sudden braking.

To supplement the foot brake, use the engine brake effectively to control the vehicle speed. (Shift into a lower gear when necessary.)

Avoid shifting down abruptly. Such behavior can cause the wheels to lock, possibly leading to loss of vehicle control.

An anti-lock brake system (ABS) enhances your vehicle's braking performance on snowy and icy roads. For information about braking on slippery surfaces, refer to "ABS (Anti-lock Brake System)" ☞7-28 and "Vehicle Dynamics Control system" ☞7-30.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Do not use the cruise control on slippery roads such as snowy or icy roads. This may cause loss of vehicle control.**

**⚠ CAUTION**

**Avoid prolonged continuous driving in snowstorms. Snow will enter the engine's intake system and may hinder the airflow, which could result in engine shutdown or even breakdown.**

### ▼ Wiper operation when snowing

Before driving in cold weather, make sure the wiper blades are not frozen to the windshield or rear window.

If the wiper blades are frozen to the windshield or rear window, perform the following procedure.

- To thaw the windshield wiper blades, use the defroster with the airflow selection in "  " and the temperature set for maximum warmth until the wiper blades are completely thawed. Refer to "Climate control" ☞4-1.
- If your vehicle is equipped with a wiper deicer, use it. It is helpful to thaw the windshield wiper blades. Refer to "Defogger and deicer" ☞3-63.
- To thaw the rear wiper blade, use the rear window defogger. Refer to "Defogger and deicer" ☞3-63.

When driving in snow, if frozen snow starts to stick on the surface of the windshield despite wiper operation, use the defroster with the airflow selection in "" and the temperature set for maximum warmth. After the windshield gets warmed enough to melt the frozen snow on it, wash it away using the windshield washer. Refer to "Windshield washer" ☞3-61.

Snow stuck on the wiper arm prevents the wiper from working effectively. If snow is stuck on the wiper arm, pull off the road to a safe place, then remove it. If you stop the vehicle at road side, use the hazard warning flasher to alert other drivers. Refer to "Hazard warning flasher" ☞3-8.

We recommend use of non-freezing type wiper blades (winter blades) during the seasons you could have snow and freezing temperatures.

Blades of this type give superior wiping performance in snowy conditions. Be sure to use blades that are suitable for your vehicle.

**⚠ CAUTION**

**During high-speed driving, non-freezing type wiper blades may not perform as well as standard wiper blades. If this happens, reduce the vehicle speed.**

## NOTE

**When the season requiring non-freezing type wiper blades is over, replace them with standard wiper blades.**

## ■ Corrosion protection

Refer to "Corrosion protection" ☞10-4.

## ■ Snow tires

**⚠ WARNING**

- **When replacing original tires with winter (snow) tires, all four tires must be the same for the following items.**
  **(a) Size**
  **(b) Circumference**
  **(c) Speed symbol**
  **(d) Load index**
  **(e) Construction**
  **(f) Manufacturer**
  **(g) Brand (tread pattern)**
  **(h) Degrees of wear**

  **For items (a) to (d), you must obey the specification that is printed on the tire placard. The tire placard is located on the bottom of the driver's door pillar.**

  **If all four tires are not the same in items (a) to (h), there is a possibility that it may lead to serious mechanical damage to the drive train of your car and affect the following factors.**
  **— Ride**
  **— Handling**
  **— Braking**
  **— Speedometer/Odometer calibration**
  **— Clearance between the body and the tires**

  **It also may be dangerous and lead to loss of vehicle control, and it can lead to an accident.**
- **Do not use a combination of radial, belted bias or bias tires since it may cause dangerous handling characteristics and lead to an accident.**

In winter, it may be possible to enhance performance through use of tires designed specifically for winter driving conditions. If you choose to install winter tires on your vehicle, be sure to use the correct tire size and type. All four tires must be of the same size, construction, brand and load index and you should never mix radial, belted bias or bias tires since this may result in dangerous handling characteristics. Remember to drive with care at all times regardless of the type of tires on your vehicle.

When using winter tires (speed symbol Q, T, H or V) never exceed 160 km/h (99 mph), 190 km/h (118 mph), 210 km/h (130 mph) or 240 km/h (149 mph), respectively.

## ■ Tire chains

**⚠ WARNING**

**For models with flat tire repair kit:**

**When any of the tires are punctured, you can seal the tire temporarily. However, do not use the tire chain on a sealed tire. If any of the front tires are punctured although it is required to use tire chains, we recommend that you contact the**

*– CONTINUED –*

**nearest SUBARU dealer.**

If you need to use the tire chains for driving on snowy grades or icy roads, observe the following precautions:

- Put the chains on the front wheels only.
- Use only chains that are of the correct size for your tires so as not to damage the vehicle body or suspension.
- Do not put a tire chain on the temporary spare tire.
- When driving with tire chains, drive at speeds below 30 km/h (19 mph).

Always use the utmost care when driving with tire chains – overconfidence because you are driving with tire chains could easily lead to a serious accident.

### ■ Rocking the vehicle

If you must rock the vehicle to free it from snow, sand or mud, depress the accelerator pedal slightly and move the shift lever/select lever back and forth between "1"/"D" and "R" repeatedly. Do not race the engine. For the best possible traction, avoid spinning the wheels when trying to free the vehicle.

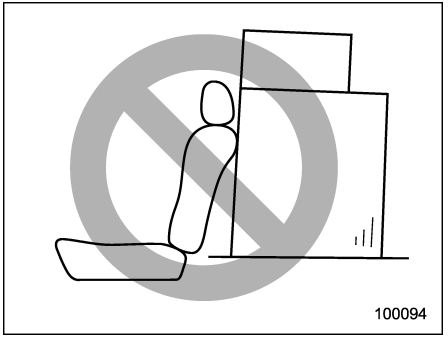
When the road surface is extremely slippery, you can obtain better traction by starting the vehicle with the transmission in 2nd than 1st (both for MT and CVT).

If your vehicle is a CVT model, for information about holding the transmission in the 2nd position, refer to "Selection of manual mode" ☞7-20.

## Loading your vehicle

**⚠ WARNING**

**Never allow passengers to ride on a folded rear seatback, in the trunk or in the cargo area. Doing so may result in serious injury.**



**⚠ WARNING**

**Never stack luggage or other cargo higher than the top of the seatback because it could tumble forward and injure passengers in the event of a sudden stop or accident. Keep luggage or cargo low, as close to the floor as possible.**

**⚠ WARNING**

- **When you carry something inside the vehicle, secure it whenever you can to prevent it from being thrown around inside the vehicle during sudden stops, sharp turns or in an accident.**
- **Do not pile heavy loads on the roof. These loads raise the vehicle's center of gravity and make it more prone to tip over.**
- **Secure long items properly to prevent them from shooting forward and causing serious injury during a sudden stop.**
- **Do not place anything on the rear shelf behind the rear seatback (Sedan) or the extended cargo area cover (Outback). Such items could tumble forward in the event of a sudden stop or a collision. This could cause serious injury.**

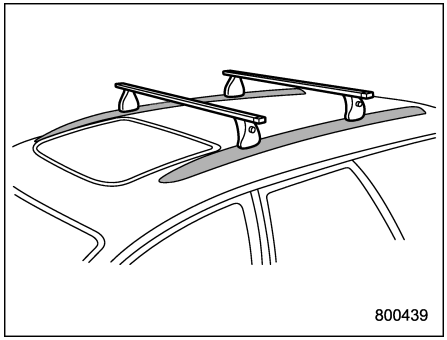
**⚠ CAUTION**

**Do not carry spray cans, containers with flammable or corrosive liquids or any other dangerous items inside the vehicle.**

## NOTE

**For better fuel economy, do not carry unneeded cargo.**

## ■ Roof rack (Outback) (dealer option)




**⚠ CAUTION**

- **For cargo carrying purposes, the roof rail must be used together with the roof rack. The roof rail must never be used alone to carry cargo. Otherwise, damage to the roof or paint or a dangerous road hazard due to loss of cargo could result.**
- **When using the roof rack, make sure that the total weight of the roof rack, carrying attachments and cargo does not exceed the maximum load limit. Overloading may cause damage to the vehicle and create a safety hazard.**

Cargo can be carried on the roof after securing the roof rack to the roof. When installing the roof rack on the roof, follow the manufacturer's instructions.

The maximum load limit of the cargo, roof rack and carrying attachments must not exceed **80 kg (176 lbs)**. Place the heaviest load at the bottom, nearest the roof, and evenly distribute the cargo. Always properly secure all cargo.

*– CONTINUED –*

### ▼ Installing carrying attachments on the roof rack

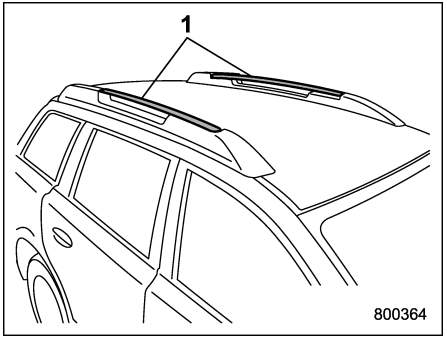
When installing any carrying attachments such as a bike carrier, ski carrier, kayak carrier, cargo basket, etc. on the roof rack, follow the manufacturer's instructions and make sure that the attachments are securely fixed to the roof rack. Use only attachments designed specifically for the roof rack. A roof rack set is designed to carry loads (cargo and attachments) of not more than **75 kg (165 lbs)**. Before operating the vehicle, make sure that the cargo is properly secured on the attachments.

## NOTE

**Remember that the vehicle's center of gravity is altered with the weight of the load on the roof, thus affecting the driving characteristics.**

**Drive carefully. Avoid rapid starts, hard cornering and abrupt stops. Crosswind effects will be increased.**

## ■ Roof rails with integrated crossbars (Outback — if equipped)




1) Integrated crossbars

**⚠ CAUTION**

- **For cargo carrying purposes, the bars must be used as crossbars and be used together with the genuine SUBARU carrying attachment or an equivalent. The bars must never be used alone to carry cargo. Otherwise, damage to the roof or paint or a dangerous road hazard due to loss of cargo could result.**
- **When using the bars as crossbars, make sure that the total weight of the carrying attachment and cargo does not exceed 67.5 kg (150 lbs). Overloading may cause damage to the vehicle and create a safety hazard.**

The bars can be used as crossbars. Cargo can be carried after setting the bars as crossbars and installing the genuine SUBARU carrying attachment or an equivalent.

The maximum load limit of the cargo and carrying attachment must not exceed **67.5 kg (150 lbs)**. Place the heaviest load at the bottom, nearest the roof, and evenly distribute the cargo. Always properly secure all cargo.

### ▼ Installing carrying attachments on the crossbars

When installing any carrying attachment such as a bike carrier, ski carrier, kayak carrier, cargo basket, etc. on the crossbars, follow the manufacturer's instructions and make sure that the attachment is securely fixed to the crossbars. Use only attachments designed specifically for the crossbars. A set of the crossbars is designed to carry loads (cargo and attachment) of not more than **67.5 kg (150 lbs)**. Before operating the vehicle, make sure that the cargo is properly secured on the attachment.

## NOTE

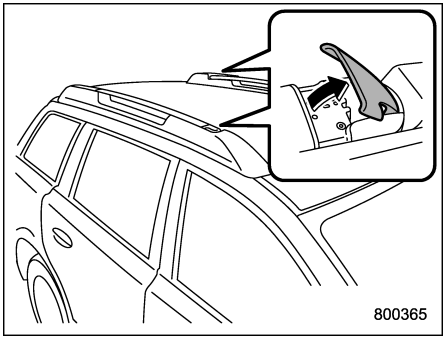
**• Remember that the vehicle's center of gravity is altered with the weight of the load on the roof, thus affecting the driving characteristics. Drive carefully, avoid rapid starts, hard cornering and abrupt stops. Crosswind effects will be increased.**

**• Restore the bars to the original position when the bars are not used as crossbars.**

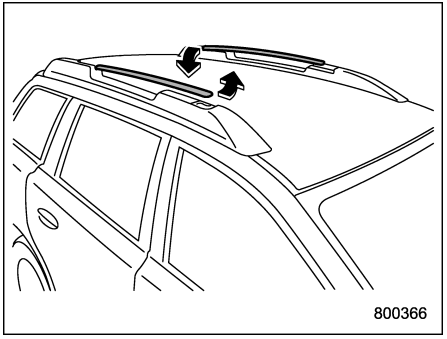
### ▼ How to use as crossbars

**⚠ CAUTION**

- **For cargo carrying purposes, the bars must be used as crossbars and be used together with the genuine SUBARU carrying attachment or an equivalent. The bars must never be used alone to carry cargo.**
- **Do not raise the bar higher than necessary. The base of the bar may be damaged.**
- **Be careful not to contact the bars while sliding them. Otherwise, the bars may be scratched or the latch portions may be damaged.**
- **Do not slide the bar more than necessary when sliding the bar. The base of the bar may be damaged.**
- **Do not allow the bar to fall on or contact the roof panel or the sunroof when sliding the bar. Otherwise the roof panel may be dented or the glass of the sunroof may be damaged.**

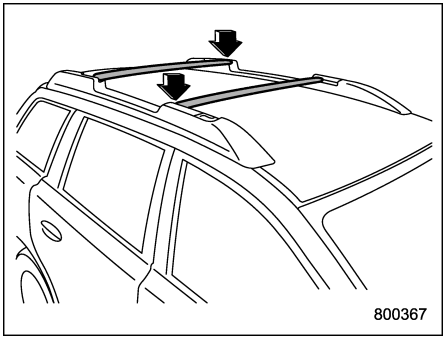



1. Pull out the integrated crossbars from the roof rail holders by pulling up the covers.




2. Slide the bars in the direction shown in the illustration.

– CONTINUED –




3. Install the bars into the holders.
4. Make sure that the latches are fitted securely.

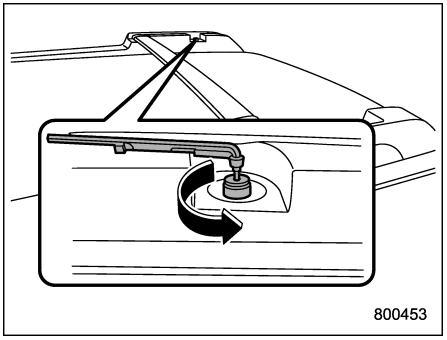
▼ **How to change the position of the crossbar**

**⚠ CAUTION**

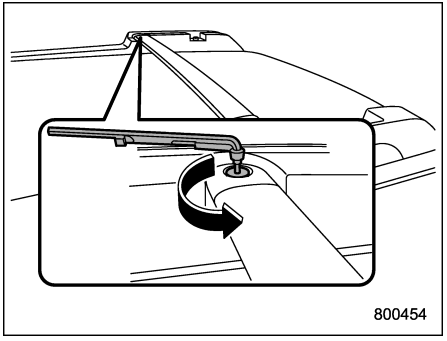
**Carefully read the caution label attached to the roof rail.**

You can change the position of the rear crossbar. To change the position, perform the following procedure.

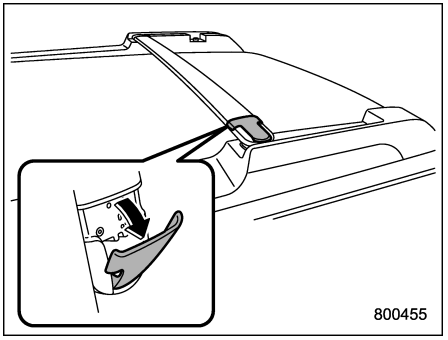
1. Take out the torque wrench from the under-floor storage compartment.



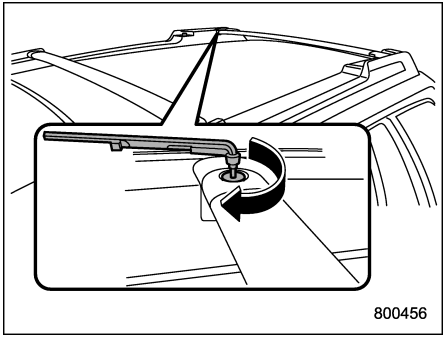

2. Undo the cap of the roof rail holder by using the torque wrench.




3. Undo the bolt of the crossbar by using the torque wrench.

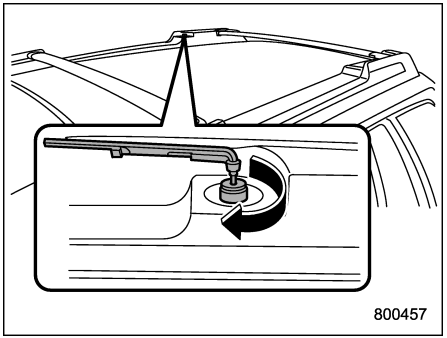



4. Pull out the crossbar from the roof rail holder by pulling up the cover.
5. Install the crossbar into the other holder.




6. Tighten the bolt of the crossbar by using the torque wrench. The tightening

torque is approximately 12 ± 3.0 N·m (1.2 ± 0.3 kgf·m, 8.9 ± 2.2 lbf·ft).

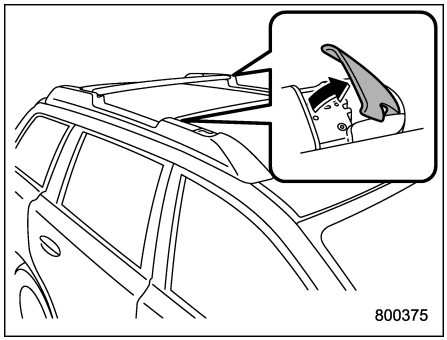



7. Tighten the cap of the holder by using the torque wrench. The tightening torque is approximately 12 ± 3.0 N·m (1.2 ± 0.3 kgf·m, 8.9 ± 2.2 lbf·ft).

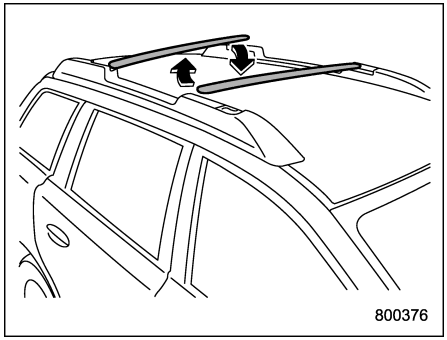
▼ **How to re-stow bars**

**⚠ CAUTION**

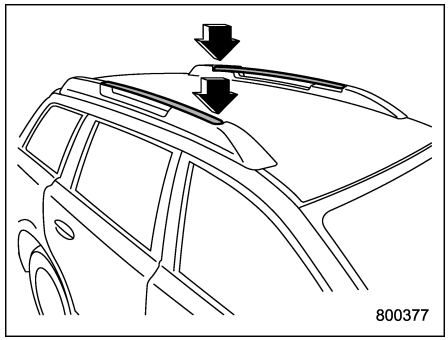
**Do not use the bars as roof rails when the bars are stowed.**




1. Pull out the crossbars from the roof rail holders by pulling up the covers.




2. Slide the bars in the direction shown in the illustration.




3. Install the bars into the holders.
4. Make sure that the latches are fitted securely.

## Trailer towing

**⚠ WARNING**

- **Use only the ball mount that is suitable for the trailer hitch. Use the hitch only as a weight carrying hitch. Do not use with any type of weight distributing hitch.**
- **The standard bumper beam must be installed after you remove the trailer hitch. We recommend that you consult a SUBARU dealer for purchase of a standard bumper beam if you do not have the original.**
- **Safety performance is decreased and there is increased risk of injury to passengers in the case of an accident if the trailer hitch or a standard bumper beam is not installed. One of them must always be installed on the vehicle.**
- **If a trailer hitch is installed, it is not possible to install the rear towing hook.**
- **For models with flat tire repair kit: When any of the tires are punctured, you can seal the tire temporarily. However, do not tow a trailer when a sealed tire is used. We recommend that you consult the nearest SUBARU dealer for details.**

Your vehicle is designed and intended to be used primarily as a passenger-carrying vehicle. Towing a trailer puts additional loads on your vehicle's engine, drive train, brakes, tires and suspension and has an adverse effect on fuel economy.

In some countries, there are some regulations which you have to obey when towing a trailer. If you do decide to tow a trailer, your safety and satisfaction depend upon proper use of correct equipment and cautious operation of your vehicle. We recommend that you seek the advice of your SUBARU dealer to assist you in purchasing a hitch and other necessary towing equipment appropriate for your vehicle. In addition, be sure to follow the instructions on correct installation and use provided by the trailer and other towing equipment manufacturers.

SUBARU assumes no responsibility for injuries or vehicle damage that result from trailer towing equipment, or from any errors or omissions in the instructions accompanying such equipment or for your failure to follow the proper instructions.

**NOTE**

**For the model with Auto Start Stop system:**

**Auto Start Stop system will not operate when towing a trailer. Refer to "Auto Start Stop system" ☞7-49.**

### ■ Maintenance

If you use your vehicle to tow a trailer, more frequent maintenance will be required due to the additional load. Refer to "Maintenance schedule" ☞11-3.

Under no circumstances should a trailer be towed with a new vehicle or a vehicle with any new powertrain component (engine, transmission, differential, wheel bearings, etc.) for the first 1,600 km (1,000 miles) of driving.

### ■ Towing weight

Before towing a trailer, we recommend that you confirm the towing capacity and ball coupling load with your nearest SUBARU dealer or the vehicle registration documents and/or hitch installation manual and make sure your trailer is within the towing capacity.

The total trailer weight (trailer weight with brakes plus its cargo weight) must never exceed maximum towing weight.

Remember that the ball coupling load will

increase the load on the vehicle. Both the maximum permissible weight (MPW) and maximum permissible rear axle weight (rear MPAW) must not be exceeded.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Never exceed the maximum towing weight. Exceeding the maximum towing weight could cause personal injury and/or vehicle damage.**

**▼ 2.5 L models and diesel engine models**

The stated trailer weights are only valid for elevations up to 1,000 m (3,250 ft) above sea level. At higher altitudes, the engine loses power as the elevation increases, resulting in a reduction of vehicle towing performance. Under these conditions, the "Maximum combined weight" should be reduced by 10% per 1,000 m (3,250 ft) of increased altitude. Please consider weight before driving.

## NOTE

**The "Maximum combined weight" is the sum of the "Maximum permissible weight" (MPW) and the "Maximum trailer weight".**

## ■ Trailer hitches (dealer option)

The use of a genuine SUBARU trailer hitch is recommended. We recommend that you ask your SUBARU dealer for details.

Regularly check that the hitch mounting bolts and nuts are tightened securely.

**⚠ CAUTION**

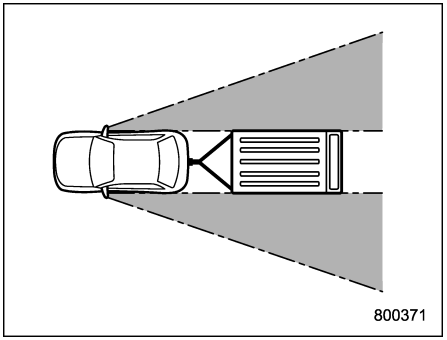
**Do not modify the vehicle exhaust system, brake system, or other system when installing a hitch or other trailer towing equipment.**

## ■ Trailer safety chains

In case the trailer hitch connector or hitch ball should break or become disconnected, the trailer could get loose and create a traffic safety hazard.

For safety, always connect the towing vehicle and trailer with trailer safety chains. Pass the chains crossing each other under the trailer tongue to prevent the trailer from dropping onto the ground in case the trailer tongue should disconnect from the hitch ball. Allow sufficient slack in the chains taking tight turn situations into account; however, be careful not to let them drag on the ground.

## ■ Side mirrors




Many countries have regulations requiring special outside mirrors when towing a trailer. After hitching a trailer to your vehicle, check that the standard side mirrors provide a good rearward field of view without significant blind spots. If significant blind spots occur with the vehicle's standard side mirrors, use additional outside mirrors that conform with regulations.

– CONTINUED –

## ■ Trailer lights

Connection of trailer lights to your vehicle's electrical system requires modifications to the vehicle's lighting circuit to increase its capacity and accommodate wiring changes. To ensure the trailer lights are connected properly, we recommend that you consult your SUBARU dealer. Check for proper operation of the turn signals and the brake lights each time you connect a trailer to your vehicle.

**⚠ CAUTION**

**Direct splicing or other improper connection of trailer lights may damage your vehicle's electrical system and cause a malfunction of your vehicle lighting system.**

## ■ Tires

Make sure that all the tires on your vehicle are inflated to the pressure under towing conditions as shown on the tire placard located under the door striker on the driver's side. Trailer tire condition, size, load rating and proper inflation pressure should be in accordance with the trailer manufacturer's specifications.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Never tow a trailer when the temporary spare tire is used. The temporary spare tire is not designed to sustain the towing load. Use of the temporary spare tire when towing can result in failure of the spare tire and/or less stability of the vehicle and may lead to an accident.**

## ■ Trailer towing tips

**⚠ WARNING**

- **Never exceed 80 km/h (50 mph) or legal towing speed limit, whichever is lower. Exceeding the speed limit could cause loss of vehicle stability and/or could lead to an accident.**
- **When towing a trailer, steering, stability, stopping distance and braking performance will be different when compared to normal operation. You should never drive at excessive speeds but always employ extra caution when towing a trailer. You should also keep the following tips in mind.**

**⚠ CAUTION**

**Diesel engine models only:**
**The vehicle speed may decrease when climbing up a slope or during continuous high-load driving while towing a trailer. Therefore, please use extra caution when climbing up slopes while towing a trailer (for example, never attempt to pass vehicles while driving uphill, etc.). This control system is necessary for maintaining the ability of the vehicle cooling performance and does not indicate a malfunction. The vehicle speed performance while towing a trailer will return to normal when the load of the vehicle is decreased and the cooling performance returns to normal.**

If your vehicle is equipped with SI-DRIVE, and when towing a trailer on an uphill slope, do not drive in the Intelligent (I) mode. It is recommend that you drive in the Sport (S) mode. For 3.6 L models, you may drive in the Sport Sharp (S#) mode.

However, it is possible to tow a trailer in any mode of the SI-DRIVE on a downhill slope.

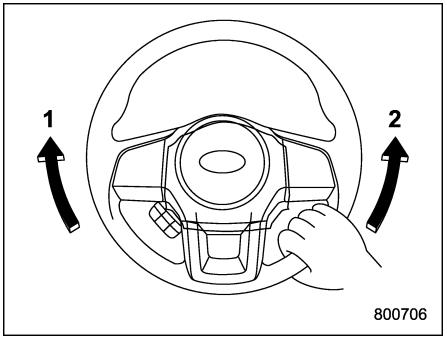
### ▼ Before starting out on a trip

- Be sure to check regulations concerning the maximum speed or driving restrictions for vehicles towing trailers. If you are driving across several countries, check each country's requirement before leaving home, because regulations may vary.
- Check that the vehicle and vehicle-to-hitch mounting are in good condition. If any problems are apparent, do not tow the trailer.
- Check that the vehicle rests horizontally with the trailer attached. If the vehicle is tipped sharply up at the front and down at the rear, check the drawbar weight and the weight on the rear axle do not exceed the maximum permissible rear axle weight.
- Check that the tire pressures are correct.
- Check that the vehicle and trailer are connected properly. Confirm that:
  – the trailer tongue is connected properly to the hitch ball.
  – the trailer lights connector is connected properly and trailer's brake lights illuminate when the vehicle's brake pedal is depressed, and that the trailer's turn signal lights flash when the vehicle's turn signal lever is operated.
  – the safety chains are connected properly.
  – all cargo in the trailer is secured safely in position.
  – the side mirrors provide a good rearward field of view without a significant blind spot.

### ▼ Driving with a trailer

- You should allow for considerably more stopping distance when towing a trailer. Avoid sudden braking because it may result in skidding or jackknifing and loss of control.
- Avoid abrupt starts and sudden accelerations. For MT models, always start out in first gear and release the clutch pedal at moderate engine revolution.
- Avoid uneven steering, sharp turns and rapid lane changes.
- Slow down before turning. Make a longer than normal turning radius because the trailer wheels will be closer than the vehicle wheels to the inside of the turn. In a tight turn, the trailer could hit your vehicle.
- Sufficient time should be taken to learn the "feel" of the vehicle/trailer combination before starting out on a trip. In an area free of traffic, practice turning, stopping and backing up.
- Crosswinds will adversely affect the handling of your vehicle and trailer, causing sway. Crosswinds can be due to weather conditions or the passing of large trucks or buses. If swaying occurs, firmly grip the steering wheel and promptly begin decelerating your vehicle at a gradual pace.
- When passing other vehicles, considerable distance is required because of the added weight and length caused by attaching the trailer to your vehicle.

– CONTINUED –




1) Left turn
2) Right turn

- Backing up with a trailer is difficult and takes practice. When backing up with a trailer, never accelerate or steer rapidly. When turning back, grip the bottom of the steering wheel with one hand and turn it to the left for a left turn, and turn it to the right for a right turn.
- If the ABS warning light illuminates while the vehicle is in motion, stop towing the trailer. We recommend that you have repairs performed immediately by your nearest SUBARU dealer.

### ▼ Driving on grades

- Before going down a steep hill, slow down and shift into lower gear (if necessary, use 1st gear) in order to utilize the engine braking effect and prevent overheating of your vehicle's brakes. Do not make sudden downshifts.
- When driving uphill in hot weather, the air conditioner may turn off automatically to protect the engine from overheating.
- When driving uphill in hot weather, pay attention to the following indicators because the engine and transmission are relatively prone to overheating.
  - Temperature gauge
  - AT OIL TEMP warning light (CVT models)
- If any of the following conditions occur, immediately turn off the air conditioner and stop the vehicle in the nearest safe location. Refer to "If you park your vehicle in case of an emergency" ☞9-2 and "Engine overheating" ☞9-24.
  - Temperature gauge needle approaches the OVERHEAT zone. Refer to "Temperature gauge" ☞3-11.
  - AT OIL TEMP warning light illuminates (CVT models). Refer to "AT OIL TEMP warning light (CVT models)" ☞3-17.
- For CVT models, avoid using the accelerator pedal to stay stationary on an uphill slope instead of using the parking brake or foot brake. That may cause the transmission fluid to overheat.
- For CVT models, place the select lever as follows.

Uphill slopes: "D" position

Downhill slopes: A low-speed gear position to use engine braking

### ▼ Parking on a grade

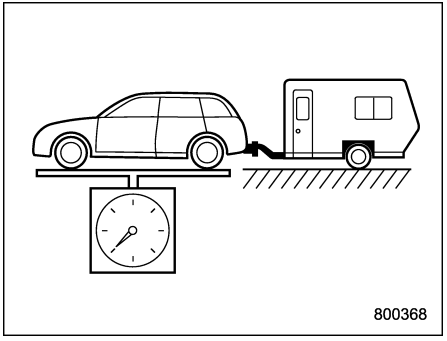
Always block the wheels under both vehicle and trailer when parking. Apply the parking brake. You should not park on a hill or slope. If parking on a hill or slope cannot be avoided, you should take the following steps:

1. Apply the brakes and hold the pedal down.
2. Have someone place wheel blocks under both the vehicle and trailer wheels.
3. When the wheel blocks are in place, release the regular brakes slowly until the blocks absorb the load.
4. Apply the regular brakes and then apply the parking brake; slowly release the regular brakes.
5. Shift into 1st or reverse gear (MT models) or "P" position (CVT models) and shut off the engine.

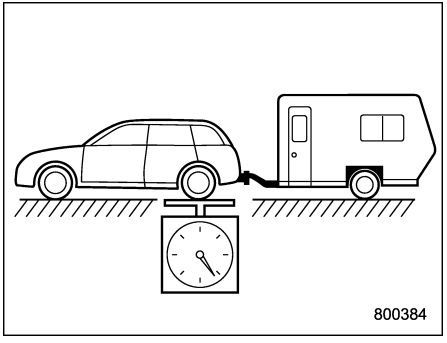
## ■ Additional information for Europe

The following information represents the European statutory and regulatory requirements of EEC 1230/2012.

### ▼ Maximum permissible vehicle weight (MPW) and maximum permissible rear axle weight (rear MPAW) for trailer towing




**MPW**




**Rear MPAW**

| Model | | | MPW at towing (kg) | Rear MPAW at towing (kg) |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Sedan | 2.5 L non-turbo petrol engine | CVT | 2,130 | 1,200 |
| | 3.6 L petrol engine | | 2,180 | |
| Outback | 2.0 L diesel engine | MT | 2,210 | 1,200 |
| | | CVT | 2,260 | |
| | 2.5 L non-turbo petrol engine | CVT | 2,180 | |
| | 3.6 L petrol engine | CVT | 2,210 | |

MT: Manual Transmission
CVT: Continuously Variable Transmission

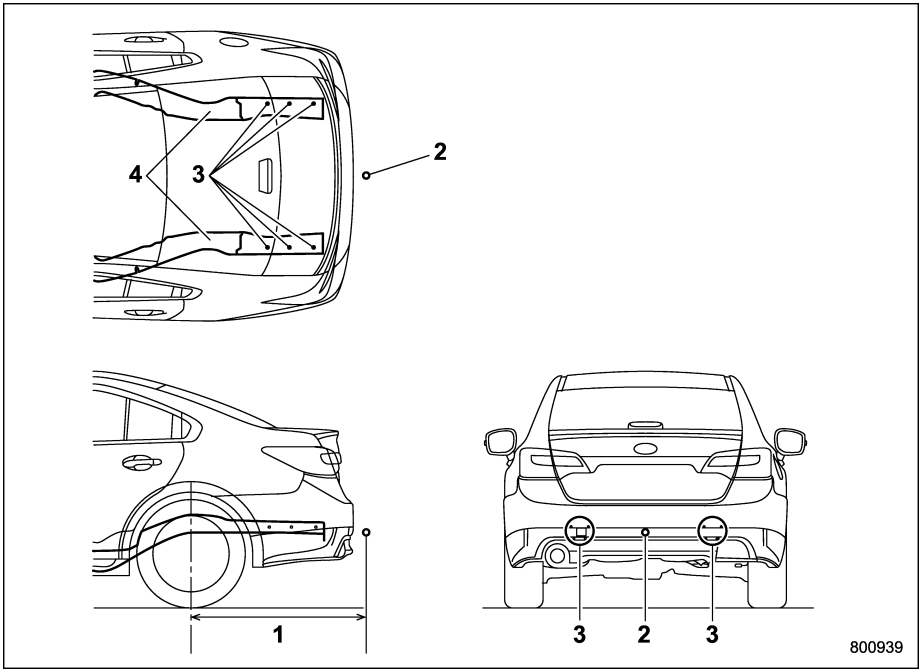
*– CONTINUED –*

▼ **The technically permissible maximum mass at the coupling point (ball coupling load)**

90 kg

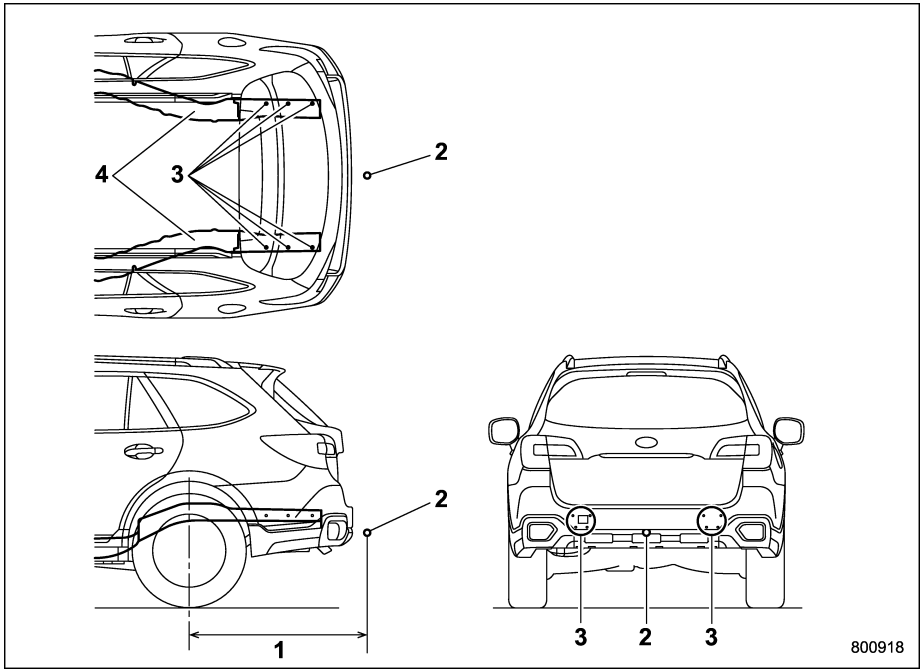
▼ **Mounting points of the coupling device**

The mounting points of the coupling on the towing vehicle are shown in the diagram.




**Sedan**

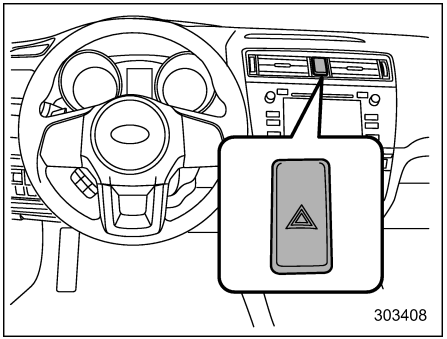
1) Maximum permissible rear overhang for the coupling point: 1,141 mm (45 in)
2) Coupling
3) Fixing points: Three places on the side of the rear frame and four places on the rear side of the rear frame for each side
4) Rear frame




**Outback**
1) Maximum permissible rear overhang for the coupling point: 1,157 mm (46 in)
2) Coupling
3) Fixing points: Three places on the side of the rear frame and four places on the rear side of the rear frame for each side
4) Rear frame

**If you park your vehicle in case of an emergency** ..... 9-2
**Temporary spare tire (if equipped)** ..... 9-2
**Maintenance tools** ..... 9-3
Sedan ..... 9-4
Outback ..... 9-5
**Flat tires** ..... 9-7
Changing a flat tire ..... 9-7
Sealing flat tire (models with flat tire repair kit) ..... 9-10
Tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS) (if equipped) ..... 9-19
**Jump starting** ..... 9-20
Battery Precautions! ..... 9-20
Precautions when jump starting! ..... 9-21
How to jump start ..... 9-22
**Engine overheating** ..... 9-24
If steam is coming from the engine compartment ..... 9-24
If no steam is coming from the engine compartment ..... 9-24
**Towing** ..... 9-24
Towing hooks and tie-down hooks/holes ..... 9-25
Using a flat-bed truck ..... 9-27
Towing with all wheels on the ground ..... 9-28
**Electronic parking brake – if the electronic parking brake cannot be released** ..... 9-28
**Access key – if access key does not operate properly** ..... 9-29
Locking and unlocking ..... 9-29
Switching power ..... 9-29
Starting engine ..... 9-30
**Trunk lid (Sedan) – if the trunk lid cannot be opened** ..... 9-31
**Rear gate (Outback) – if the rear gate cannot be opened** ..... 9-31
**Power rear gate - if power rear gate does not operate properly** ..... 9-32
When the power rear gate is deactivated ..... 9-32
When the rear gate cannot be opened ..... 9-33
When the rear gate cannot be closed ..... 9-33
**Running out of fuel (diesel engine models)** ..... 9-33
**If your vehicle is involved in an accident** ..... 9-34

## If you park your vehicle in case of an emergency




The hazard warning flasher should be used in day or night to warn other drivers when you have to park your vehicle under emergency conditions.

Avoid stopping on the road. It is best to safely pull off the road if a problem occurs.

The hazard warning flasher can be activated regardless of the ignition switch position.

Turn on the hazard warning by pressing the hazard warning flasher switch. Turn it off by pressing the switch again.

### NOTE

**When the hazard warning flasher is on, the turn signals do not work.**

## Temporary spare tire (if equipped)

**⚠ WARNING**

- **Never tow a trailer when the temporary spare tire is used. The temporary spare tire is not designed to sustain the towing load. Use of the temporary spare tire when towing can result in failure of the spare tire and/or less stability of the vehicle and may lead to an accident.**
- **When a spare tire is mounted or a wheel rim is replaced without the original pressure sensor/transmitter being transferred, the low tire pressure warning light will illuminate steadily after blinking for approximately one minute. This indicates the tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS) is unable to monitor all four road wheels. Contact your SUBARU dealer as soon as possible for tire and sensor replacement and/or system resetting.**

**⚠ CAUTION**

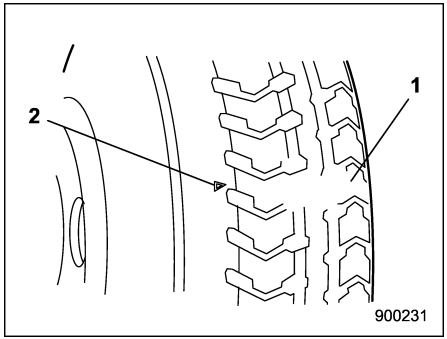
- **Never use any temporary spare tire other than the original. Using other sizes may result in severe mechanical damage to the drive train of your vehicle.**
- **Always conform to the following instructions when using the temporary spare tire. Otherwise, a seriously dangerous situation may occur.**

The temporary spare tire is smaller and lighter than a conventional tire and is designed for emergency use only. Remove the temporary spare tire and reinstall the conventional tire as soon as possible because the spare tire is designed only for temporary use.

Check the inflation pressure of the temporary spare tire periodically to keep the tire ready for use. For the correct pressure, refer to "Tires" ☞12-12.

When using the temporary spare tire, note the following.

- Do not exceed 80 km/h (50 mph).
- Do not put a tire chain on the temporary spare tire. Because of the smaller tire size, a tire chain will not fit properly.
- Do not use two or more temporary spare tires at the same time.
- Do not drive over obstacles. This tire has a smaller diameter, so road clearance is reduced.



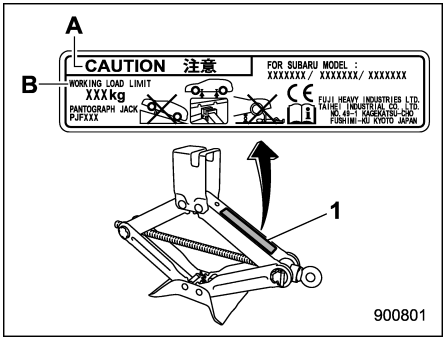

1) Tread wear indicator bar
2) Indicator location mark

- When the wear indicator appears on the tread, replace the tire.
- The temporary spare tire must be used only on a rear wheel. If a front wheel tire gets punctured, replace the wheel with a rear wheel and install the temporary spare tire in place of the removed rear wheel.

## Maintenance tools

Your vehicle is equipped with the following maintenance tools:

- Jack
- Jack handle
- Screwdriver
- Towing hook (eye bolt)
- Wheel nut wrench
- Torque wrench (Outback – if equipped)



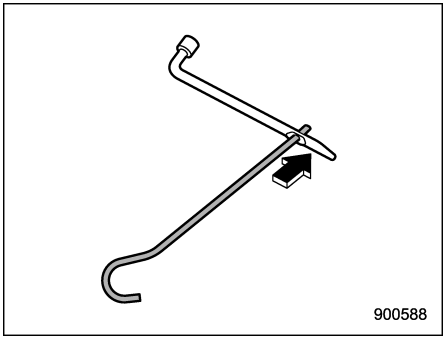

**Example of jack label**

1) Jack label
A) CAUTION
B) WORKING LOAD LIMIT

– CONTINUED –

## NOTE

**This jack complies with the Machinery Directive 2006/42/EC. A copy of the original Declaration of Conformity is found in chapter 13.**

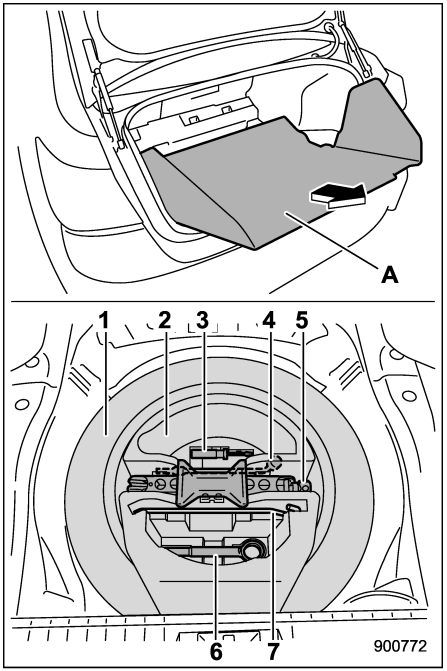



## NOTE

**To use the jack handle, insert the jack handle into the hole of the wheel nut wrench.**

## ■ Sedan

### ▼ Models without flat tire repair kit

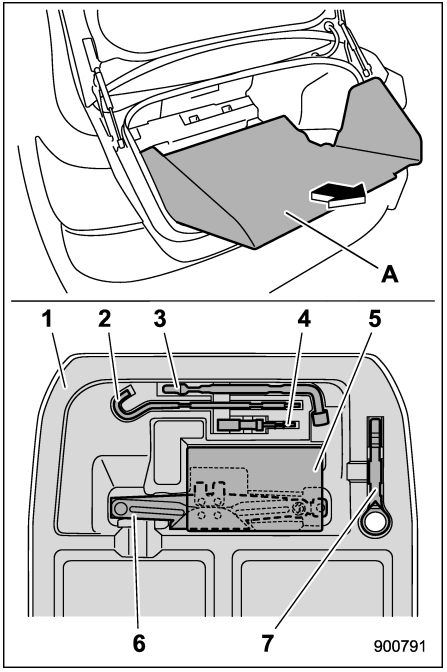



A) Remove the floor mat of the trunk.
1) Spare tire
2) Tool bucket
3) Screwdriver
4) Wheel nut wrench
5) Jack
6) Towing hook (eye bolt)
7) Jack handle

The maintenance tools are stored in the tool bucket that is located in the recess of the spare tire wheel.

For the method to use the jack, refer to “Flat tires” ☞9-7.

▼ **Models with flat tire repair kit**



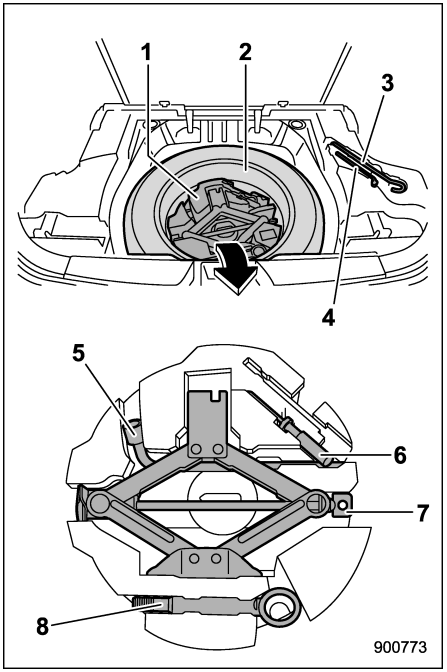

A) Remove the floor mat of the trunk.
1) Under-floor storage compartment (Refer to “Under-floor storage compartment” ☞6-17.)
2) Jack handle
3) Wheel nut wrench
4) Screwdriver
5) Flat tire repair kit
6) Jack
7) Towing hook (eye bolt)

The maintenance tools are stored in the pocket of the under-floor storage compartment.

For the method to use the jack, refer to “Flat tires” ☞9-7.

## ■ Outback

▼ **Models without flat tire repair kit**




1) Tool bucket
2) Spare tire
3) Jack handle
4) Torque wrench (if equipped)

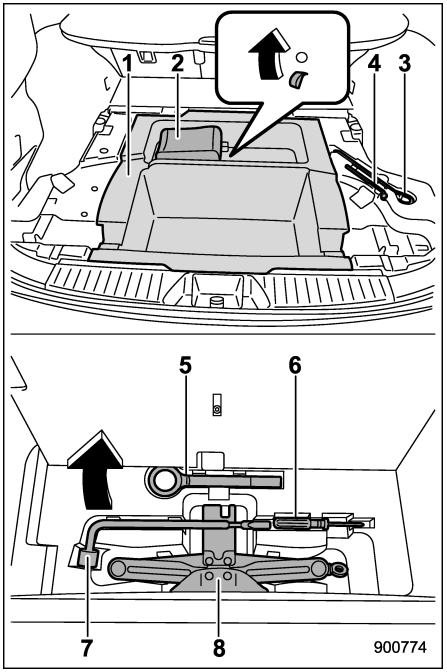
– CONTINUED –

5) Wheel nut wrench
6) Screwdriver
7) Jack
8) Towing hook (eye bolt)

The jack handle is stored under the cargo area. The other tools are stored in the tool bucket that is located in the recess of the spare tire wheel.

For the method to use the jack, refer to “Flat tires” ☞9-7.

▼ **Models with flat tire repair kit**




1) Under-floor storage compartment (Refer to “Under-floor storage compartment” ☞6-17.)
2) Flat tire repair kit
3) Jack handle
4) Torque wrench (if equipped)
5) Towing hook (eye bolt)
6) Screwdriver
7) Wheel nut wrench
8) Jack

The jack handle is stored under the cargo area. The other tools are stored in the pocket of the under-floor storage compartment. To open the pocket lid, pull the strap up. Refer to “Under-floor storage compartment” ☞6-17.

For the method to use the jack, refer to “Flat tires” ☞9-7.

## Flat tires

If you have a flat tire while driving, never brake suddenly; keep driving straight ahead while gradually reducing speed. Then slowly pull off the road to a safe place.

### ■ Changing a flat tire

**▼ Models with flat tire repair kit**

It may be difficult to change a flat tire. However, it may be possible to seal the tire. For details, refer to "Sealing flat tire (models with flat tire repair kit)" ☞9-10.

**▼ Models without flat tire repair kit**

**⚠ WARNING**

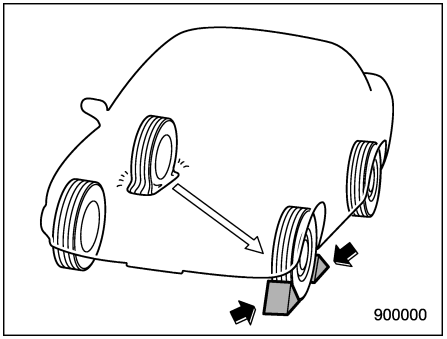
- **Do not jack up the vehicle on an incline or a loose road surface. The jack can come out of the jacking point or sink into the ground and this can result in a serious accident.**
- **Use only the jack provided with your vehicle. The jack supplied with the vehicle is designed only for changing a tire. Never get under the vehicle while supporting the vehicle with this jack.**
- **Always turn off the engine before raising the flat tire off the ground using the jack. Never swing or push the vehicle supported with the jack. The jack can come out of the jacking point due to a jolt and this can result in a serious accident.**

**⚠ WARNING**

**For Australia and New Zealand, the following instructions are supplied by the Australian/New Zealand Standard™ (AS/NZS 2693:2007). Be sure to obey the following instructions for your safety.**

- **That the jack should be used on level firm ground wherever possible.**
- **That it is recommended that the wheels of the vehicle be chocked, and that no person should remain in a vehicle that is being jacked.**
- **That no person should place any portion of their body under a vehicle that is supported by a jack.**

1. Park on a hard, level surface, whenever possible, then stop the engine.
2. Apply the parking brake and shift the shift lever to the reverse position (MT models) or the select lever to the "P" (Park) position (CVT models).
3. Turn on the hazard warning flasher and have everyone get out of the vehicle.




4. Put wheel blocks at the front and rear of the tire diagonally opposite the flat tire.
5. Take out the jack, jack handle and wheel nut wrench.

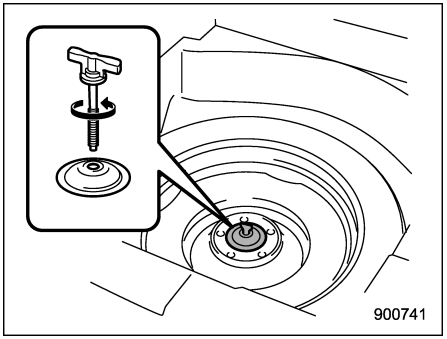
Refer to "Maintenance tools" ☞9-3.

**NOTE**

**Make sure that the jack is well lubricated before using it.**

6. Take out the spare tire (if equipped).

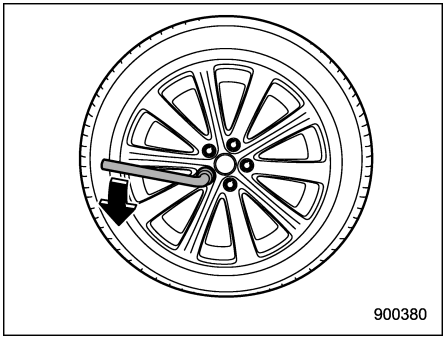
*– CONTINUED –*



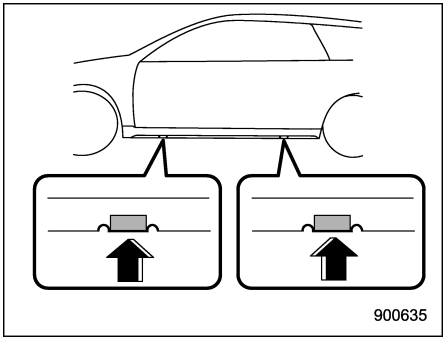

Turn the attaching bolt counterclockwise, then take the spare tire out.

## NOTE

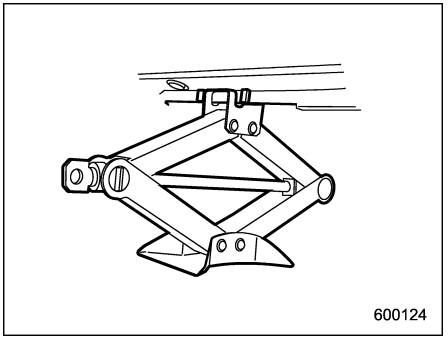
**If the spare tire provided in your vehicle is a temporary spare tire, read carefully "Temporary spare tire" ☞9-2 and strictly follow the instructions.**



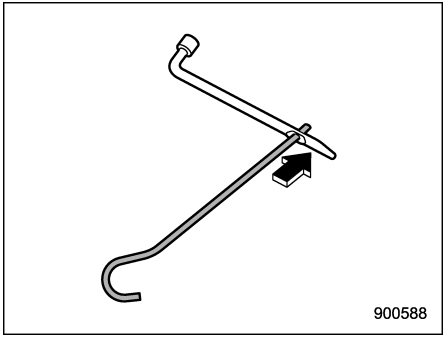

7. Loosen the wheel nuts using the wheel nut wrench but do not remove the nuts.



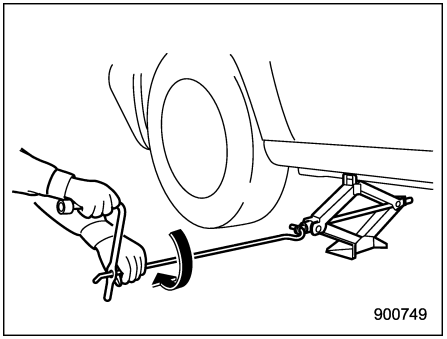

8. Place the jack under the side sill at the front or rear jack-up point closest to the flat tire.



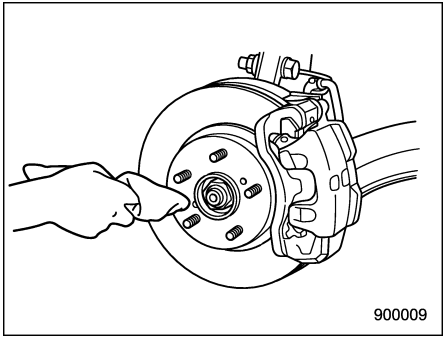

Turn the jackscrew by hand until the jack head engages firmly into the jack-up point.

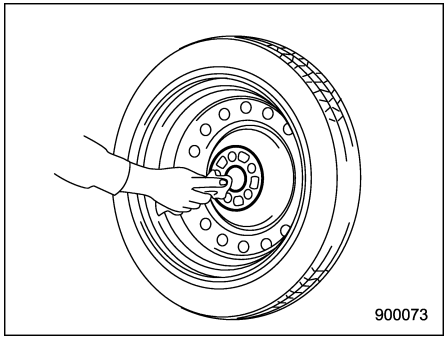



9. Insert the jack handle into the hole of the wheel nut wrench.




10. Insert the jack handle into the jack-screw, and turn the handle until the tire clears the ground. Do not raise the vehicle higher than necessary.
11. Remove the wheel nuts and the flat tire.



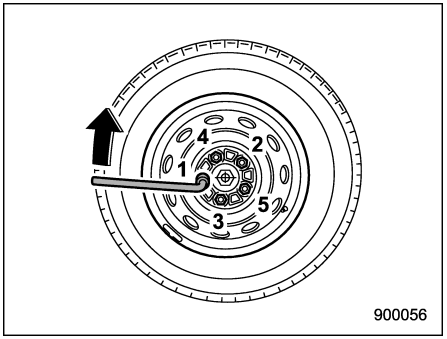




12. Before putting the spare tire on, clean the mounting surface of the wheel and hub with a cloth.
13. Put on the spare tire. Replace the wheel nuts. Tighten them by hand.

**⚠ WARNING**

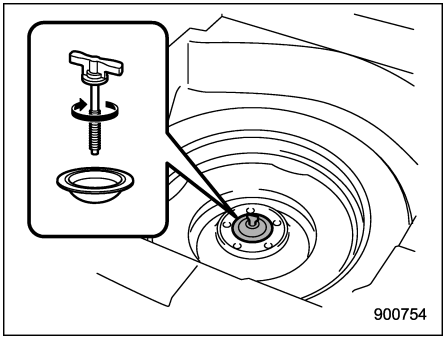
**Do not use oil or grease on the wheel studs or nuts when the spare tire is installed. This could cause the nuts to become loose and lead to an accident.**

14. Turn the jack handle counterclockwise to lower the vehicle.




15. Use the wheel nut wrench to securely tighten the wheel nuts to the specified torque, following the tightening order in the illustration.
For the wheel nut tightening torque, refer to “Tires” ☞12-12. Never use your foot on the wheel nut wrench or a pipe extension on the wrench because you may exceed the specified torque. Have the wheel nut torque checked at the nearest automotive service facility.
16. Store the flat tire in the spare tire compartment. Place the spacer in the following way and tighten the attaching bolt firmly.

*– CONTINUED –*




17. Store the jack, jack handle and wheel nut wrench in their storage locations.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Never place a tire or tire changing tools in the passenger compartment after changing wheels. In a sudden stop or collision, loose equipment could strike occupants and cause injury. Store the tire and all tools in the proper place.**

## ■ Sealing flat tire (models with flat tire repair kit)

**⚠ WARNING**

**Read these instructions and warnings carefully before sealing a flat tire.**

**Compliance with these instructions is vital to ensuring vehicle safety. Noncompliance with these instructions means risking tire damage, which can affect vehicle handling and lead to loss of vehicle control. This may result in serious injury or death.**

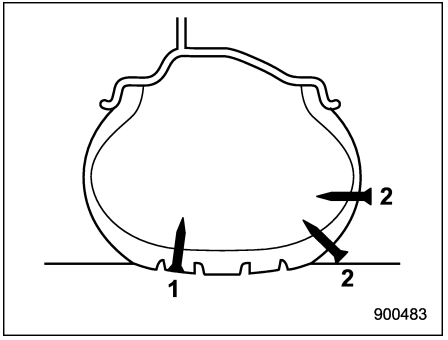
If the tire is punctured, you can seal the flat tire temporarily by using the flat tire repair kit. You can seal a flat tire caused, for example, by nails or similar objects with a small diameter. However, depending on the type and extent of tire damage, some tires can only be partially sealed or not sealed at all, and this condition may cause a loss of tire pressure. A loss of tire pressure can affect vehicle handling, leading to the loss of vehicle control.

After sealing the flat tire temporarily, change the tires with new ones as soon as possible. We recommend that you have the sealed tire changed by your nearest SUBARU dealer. You may reuse the wheel if the attached sealant is wiped off, but the valve of the wheel must be replaced with a new one.

For tire replacement, refer to “Tire replacement” ☞11-39.

### ▼ Safety precautions when sealing flat tire

Observe the following rules when sealing a flat tire.




1) Sealing is possible
2) Sealing is not possible

**⚠ WARNING**

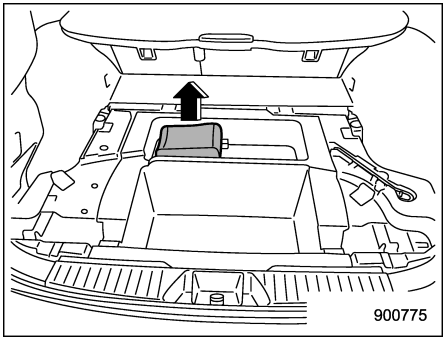
- Do not use the flat tire repair kit in the following cases.
  - The tire has already been damaged as a result of being driven in the under inflated condition.
  - The tire damage is not located within the visible tread of the tire.
  - The tire damage is on the sidewall of the tire.
  - When the tire has been taken off of the wheel.
  - The wheel of the flat tire is damaged.
  - Two or more tires have been punctured.
  - The expiration date of the sealant has passed.
- When inflating the flat tire, if the tire inflation pressure does not reach 180 kPa (1.8 kgf/cm$^2$, 26 psi) within 10 minutes, do not continue to seal the tire. We recommend that you contact your SUBARU dealer.
- Drive with caution and avoid making sudden steering or driving maneuvers.
- Do not exceed a maximum speed of 80 km/h (50 mph).
- Do not exceed a maximum driving distance of 200 km (125 miles).
- Do not use tire chains on a sealed tire.
- Do not tow a trailer.
- If used for a purpose other than sealing a flat tire, the flat tire repair kit may cause a severe accident or injury due to the fact that compressed air can act as an explosive or propellant.
- Safely park your vehicle on the roadside so that you do not obstruct the flow of traffic and so that you are able to seal the flat tire without being in danger.
- Apply the parking brake, even if the vehicle is parked on a level road, to make sure that the vehicle will not move.
- Stop the engine before sealing the flat tire.
- Turn on the hazard warning flasher while sealing the flat tire.
- Do not attempt to remove foreign objects like nails or screws that have penetrated the tire. Leave them as they are.
- Never leave the flat tire repair kit unattended while in use.

**⚠ CAUTION**

- Remember that the flat tire repair kit only provides temporary mobility. Regulations concerning tire repair after usage of flat tire repair kit may differ from country to country. We recommend that you consult your SUBARU dealer or tire dealer for advice.
- Store the flat tire repair kit safely and secure it in the cargo area. Storing it anywhere in the passenger compartment is not advisable because it could strike an occupant in the event of a sudden stop or collision and cause injury.
- Use the flat tire repair kit with original vehicle tires only.
- Do not keep the compressor operating for more than 10 minutes, otherwise there is a risk of it overheating.

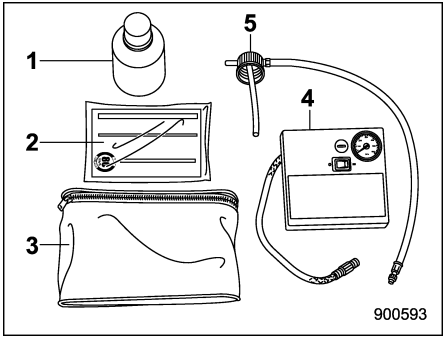
– CONTINUED –

### ▼ Location of the flat tire repair kit

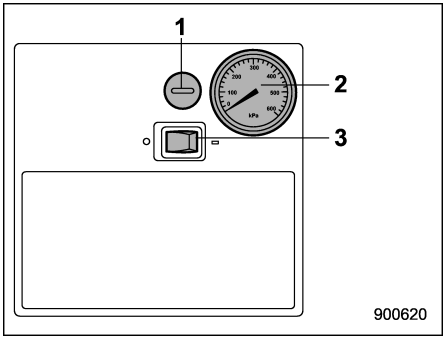



The flat tire repair kit is stored under the floor of the cargo area.

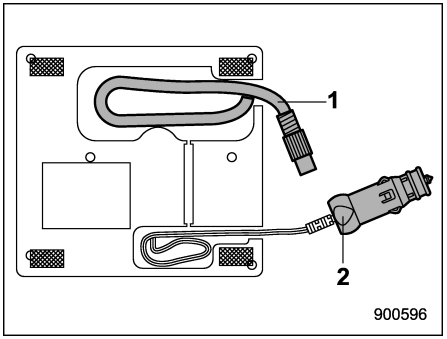
### ▼ Contents of the flat tire repair kit



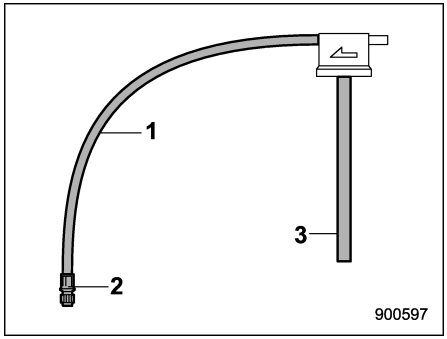

1) Bottle of sealant
2) Quick reference
3) Bag
4) Compressor
5) Sealant application cap




**Compressor (front side)**
1) Air vent button
2) Pressure gauge
3) Power switch




**Compressor (rear side)**
1) Hose
2) Power cord



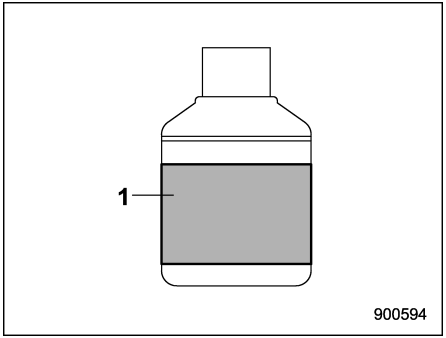

**Sealant application cap**
1) Rubber hose
2) Valve fitting
3) Semi-transparent tube




**Speed limit label**

**⚠ WARNING**

- **Do not drink the sealant. If the sealant is accidentally swallowed, seek medical attention immediately.**
- **If the sealant splashes onto your skin or eyes, wash it away immediately with plenty of water. If necessary, seek medical attention immediately.**
- **Keep the flat tire repair kit out of the reach of children.**




1) Expiration date

– CONTINUED –

**⚠ CAUTION**

**Replace the sealant bottle with a new one before the expiration date passes.**

**▼ How to seal the flat tire**

To seal the flat tire, perform the following two steps.

First, pump in the sealant and air (step 1). Drive the vehicle for approximately 10 minutes or 5 km (3 miles) so that the sealant can seal the damaged area. Stop the vehicle again, check and, if necessary, adjust the pressure of the damaged tire (step 2). After that, you can continue to drive carefully no faster than 80 km/h (50 mph) and within the maximum distance of 200 km (125 miles).

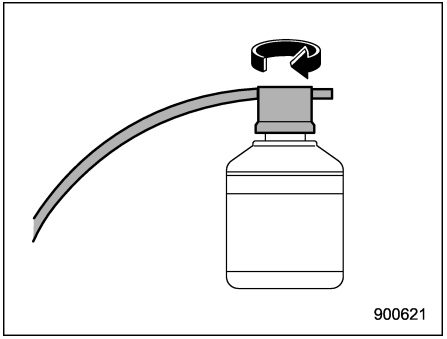
Inform all other users of the vehicle that the tire has been temporarily sealed with the flat tire repair kit and make them aware of the special driving conditions to be observed.

**Step 1: Pumping in the sealant and air**

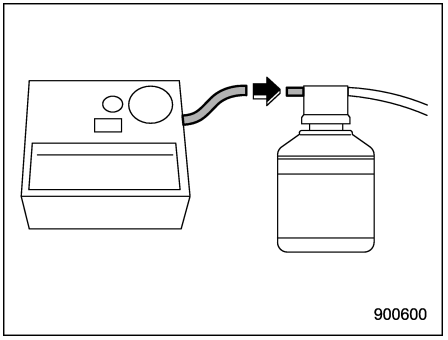
1. Shake the sealant bottle well.
2. Make sure the compressor power switch is OFF.
3. Remove the cap of the bottle and break the aluminum seal to make a hole.

**⚠ CAUTION**

**Be careful not to spill the sealant.**



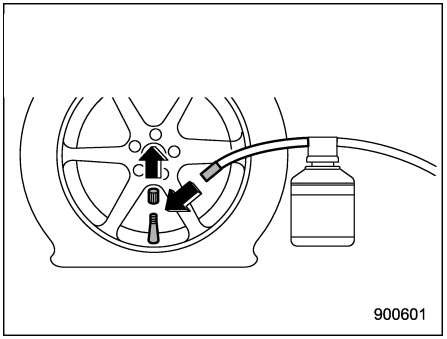

4. Insert the semitransparent tube into the hole, and then tighten the sealant application cap until it clicks.




5. Connect the compressor hose to the sealant application cap.

**⚠ CAUTION**

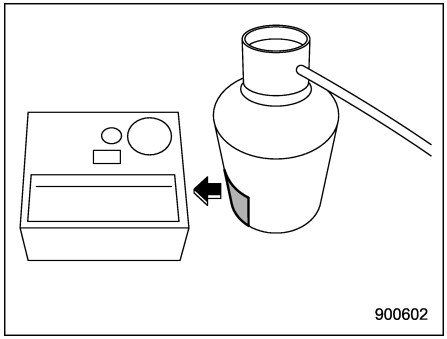
**Be careful not to allow the hose to become twisted.**



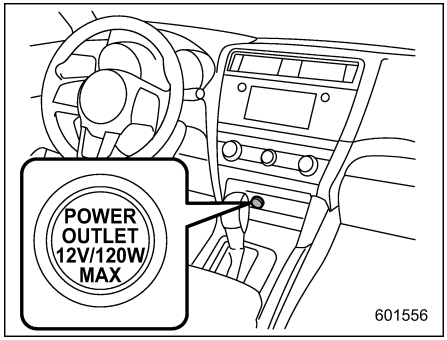

6. Remove the valve cap of the wheel, and connect the valve fitting to the valve.

**⚠ CAUTION**

**The sealant may leak if the fitting is not tight enough.**



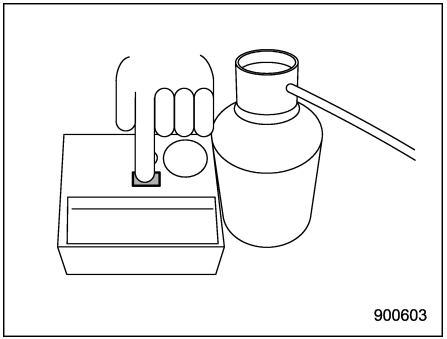

7. Secure the bottle and compressor with Velcro to keep the bottle upright.




8. Insert the power cord of the compressor into the accessory power outlet.
9. Apply the parking brake and turn the ignition switch to the “ACC” position.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Running the engine in a non-ventilated or poorly ventilated area (e.g., inside a building) may cause asphyxiation. Do not start the engine.**



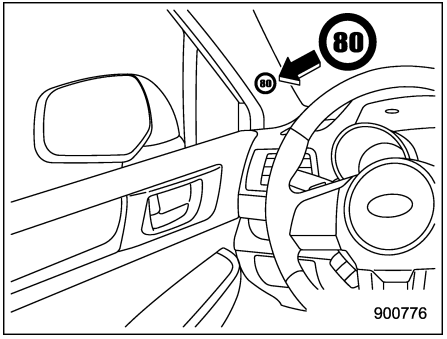

10. Turn the power switch on and inject the sealant and air.

**⚠ CAUTION**

- **Before turning the power switch on, check the sidewall of the tire prior to inflation. If there are any cracks, bumps or similar damage, do not attempt to inflate the tire. Contact your SUBARU dealer or a road service.**

*– CONTINUED –*

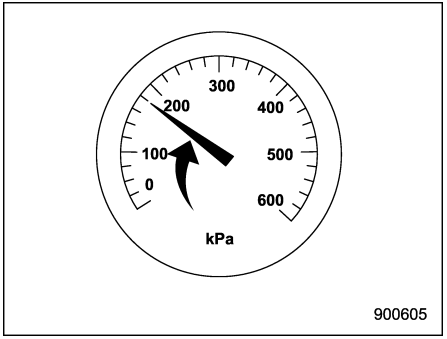
- **Do not stand directly next to the tire while the compressor is pumping.**
- **Watch the sidewall of the tire while the compressor is pumping. If any cracks, bumps or similar damage appear, turn off the compressor. In this case, do not continue to use the tire. Contact your SUBARU dealer or a road service.**




11. Attach the speed limit label in the position shown in the illustration.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Do not attach the label to the steering wheel pad or dashboard. If the SRS frontal airbag deploys, the label could interfere with proper operation of the airbag and could be propelled inside the vehicle and cause injury. Refer to "SRS airbags" ☞1-58.**



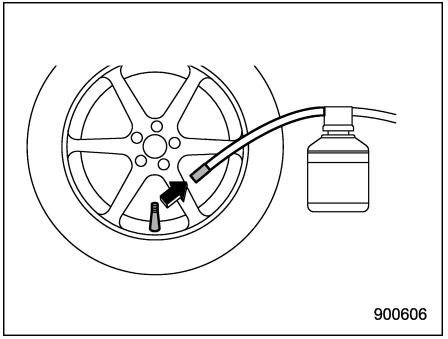

12. Turn off the power switch when the air pressure reaches 180 kPa.

**⚠ CAUTION**

**If the pressure does not reach 180 kPa for 10 minutes, you cannot repair the tire with the flat tire repair kit. Contact your SUBARU dealer or a road service.**

## NOTE

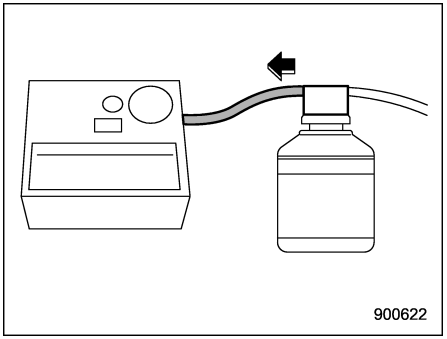
**The pressure will exceed 300 kPa temporarily and then decrease when all the sealant enters the tire.**



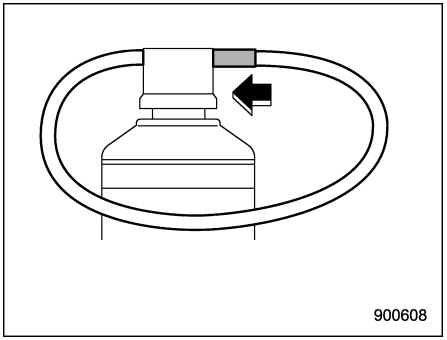

13. Remove the fitting from the valve while pushing the air vent button.

**⚠ CAUTION**

**Remove the fitting quickly.**




14. Remove the compressor hose from the application cap.




15. Connect the valve fitting to the other side of the application cap to prevent the remaining sealant from leaking out.

**⚠ CAUTION**

**Be careful that sealant does not leak onto skin or fabric.**

16. Put away the repair kit and drive your vehicle for approximately 10 minutes or 5 km (3 miles).

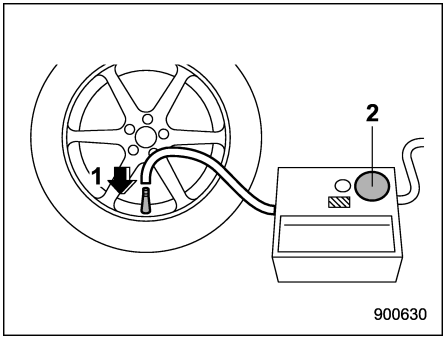
**⚠ WARNING**

- **Do not drive for more than 10 minutes and do not drive any faster than 80 km/h (50 mph) (observe the label indicating the maximum permissible speed).**
- **Do not use tire chains on a sealed tire.**
- **Do not tow a trailer.**
- **If heavy vibrations, unsteady steering behavior or noises occur while driving, reduce your speed and drive with caution to a location where it is safe for you to stop the vehicle. Recheck the tire and its pressure. If the tire pressure is less than 130 kPa (1.3 kgf/cm$^2$, 19 psi) or if there are any cracks, bumps or similar tire damage visible, do not continue to use the tire.**

**Step 2: Adjusting the tire pressure**

1. Stop the vehicle in a safe location after driving approximately 5 km (3 miles). Check and, if necessary, adjust the pressure of the damaged tire.

– CONTINUED –




1) Connect the compressor
2) Read the tire pressure

2. Connect only the compressor to the valve.

3. Turn the power switch on for several seconds, and then turn it off.

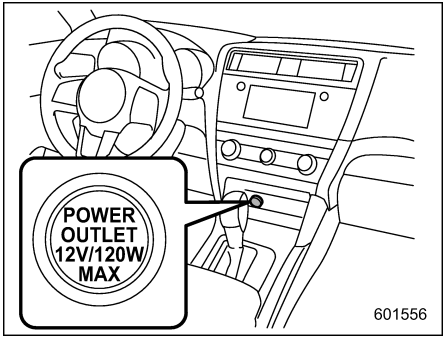
4. Read the tire pressure from the pressure gauge.

**⚠ CAUTION**

**If the tire check shows that the pressure of the sealant-filled tire is less than 130 kPa (1.3 kgf/cm$^2$, 19 psi) or if there are any cracks, bumps or similar tire damage visible, do not continue to use the tire. Contact your SUBARU dealer or a road service.**

5. If the pressure of the sealant-filled tire is 130 kPa (1.3 kgf/cm$^2$, 19 psi) or more, it must now be adjusted to the pressure specified for your vehicle. See the tire pressure label located on the door pillar on the driver's side.

6. Make sure that the power switch of the compressor is turned off.




7. Insert the power plug into the accessory power outlet located below the climate controls.

8. Turn the ignition switch to the "ACC" position.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Running the engine in a non-ventilated or poorly ventilated area (e.g., inside a building) may cause asphyxiation. Do not start the engine.**

9. Switch the compressor on and pump the tire up to the specified tire pressure. See the tire pressure label located on the door pillar on the driver's side.

10. Switch the compressor off and check the tire pressure again. If the tire pressure is too high, deflate the tire to the specified pressure using the pressure relief valve.

11. Once you have inflated the tire to its correct tire pressure, switch off the compressor, pull the power cord out of the accessory power outlet, unscrew the hose and fasten the valve cap.

**⚠ WARNING**

- **After using the sealant, do not drive faster than 80 km/h (50 mph). The damaged tire must also be replaced as quickly as**

**possible (within a maximum driving distance of 200 km (125 miles)). Do not continue to drive if heavy vibrations, unsteady steering behavior or noises occur while driving.**

- **Do not use tire chains on a sealed tire.**
- **Do not tow a trailer.**

12. Drive to the nearest SUBARU dealer or other workshop to have the damaged tire replaced.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Before driving, ensure that the tire is adjusted to the recommended inflation pressure as indicated on the vehicle placard. Monitor the tire pressure until the sealed tire is replaced.**

13. Before the tire is removed from the rim, inform your SUBARU dealer or other tire dealer that the tire contains sealant.

**⚠ CAUTION**

**Sealant deposits in a used hose of a sealant application cap may impair proper functioning of the compressor. The bottle of sealant, sealant application cap and speed limit label need to be replaced after using the flat tire repair kit.**

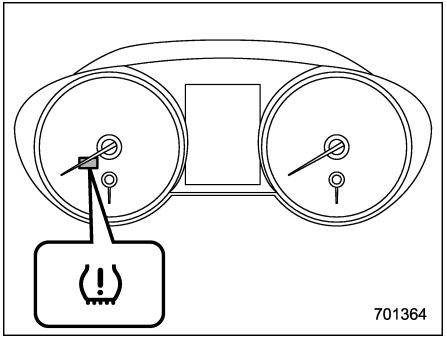
## NOTE

**New sealant and replacement parts can be purchased from your authorized repair shop or SUBARU dealer, and they should also be installed into the kit by a specialist. Empty sealant bottles and replacement parts must be returned to your SUBARU dealer or disposed of in compliance with local waste disposal regulations.**

**▼ Technical data of compressor**

| | |
|---|---|
| Line voltage | DC 12V |
| Operating voltage | DC 10 – 15V |
| Amperage | Max. 10A |

## ■ Tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS) (if equipped)




The tire pressure monitoring system provides the driver with a warning message by sending a signal from a sensor that is installed in each wheel when a tire pressure is severely low relative to the selected TPMS mode.

The tire pressure monitoring system will activate only when the vehicle is driven at speeds above 40 km/h (25 mph). Also, this system may not react immediately to a sudden drop in tire pressure (for example, a blow-out caused by running over a sharp object).

*– CONTINUED –*

**⚠ WARNING**

**If the low tire pressure warning light illuminates while driving, never brake suddenly and keep driving straight ahead while gradually reducing speed. Then slowly pull off the road to a safe place. Otherwise an accident involving serious vehicle damage and serious personal injury could occur.**

**Check the pressure for all four tires and adjust the pressure according to the most appropriate one of three (normal, loading, towing) COLD tire pressure values shown on the tire placard located on the door pillar on the driver's side. If this light still illuminates while driving after adjusting the tire pressure, a tire may have significant damage and a fast leak that causes the tire to lose air rapidly. If you have a flat tire, replace it with a spare tire as soon as possible.**

**When a spare tire is mounted or a wheel rim is replaced without the original pressure sensor/transmitter being transferred, the low tire pressure warning light will illuminate steadily after blinking for approximately one minute. This indicates the TPMS is unable to monitor all four road wheels. We recommend that you contact your SUBARU dealer as soon as possible for tire and sensor replacement and/or system resetting.**

**When a tire is repaired with liquid sealant, the tire pressure warning valve and transmitter may not operate properly. If a liquid sealant is used, we recommend that you contact your nearest SUBARU dealer or other qualified service shop as soon as possible. Make sure to replace the tire pressure warning valve and transmitter when replacing the tire. You may reuse the wheel if there is no damage to it and if the sealant residue is properly cleaned off.**

**If the light illuminates steadily after blinking for approximately one minute, we recommend that you promptly contact a SUBARU dealer to have the system inspected.**

## Jump starting

### ■ Battery Precautions!

**⚠ WARNING**

**Read these instructions carefully:**

**To ensure safe and correct handling of your battery, read the following precautions carefully before using the battery or inspecting it.**

**Wear eye protection:**

**Always wear eye protection when working near your vehicle's battery. Battery fluid contains sulfuric acid, so it can cause blindness if splashed into your eyes. Also, batteries emit highly flammable, explosive hydrogen gas. Eye protection is vital for protection in the event that this gas ignites.**

**Battery fluid contains sulfuric acid:**

**Since battery fluid contains sulfuric acid, be sure to wear eye protection**

and protective gloves when inspecting your vehicle's battery. Avoid tipping the battery and subjecting it to shocks since this could cause fluid to spill.

Under no circumstances allow battery fluid to make contact with your skin, eyes, or clothing since this can cause blindness and burns. If battery fluid splashes onto your skin, eyes or clothing, wash it away immediately with plenty of water. If battery fluid splashes into your eyes, seek medical attention immediately.

If battery fluid is accidentally swallowed, immediately drink a large amount of milk or water, and seek medical attention immediately.

Battery fluid is corrosive. If it splashes onto your vehicle's paintwork or fabrics, wash it away immediately with plenty of water.

 Keep children away:

Batteries must be handled only by persons who are aware of the potential hazards. Take particular care to keep children away from your vehicle's battery. Improper handling can cause blindness and burns.

 Keep flames away:

Before working on or near your vehicle's battery, extinguish all cigarettes, matches, and lighters. Also, keep the battery away from flammable items and electrical sparks. Since batteries emit highly flammable, explosive hydrogen gas, any flames or sparks in the vicinity could cause an explosion.

When working near your vehicle's battery, take care that metal tools do not short-circuit the battery's (+) and (−) terminals or connect the battery's (+) terminal to the vehicle's body. A short circuit could create electrical sparks and lead to an explosion.

To prevent electrical sparks, all rings, wristwatches, and other metal accessories must be taken off before work is carried out on or near the battery.

 Prevent explosions:

While being charged, batteries emit highly flammable, explosive hydrogen gas. To prevent an explosion, charge your vehicle's battery in a well ventilated area and keep flames away.

## ■ Precautions when jump starting!

**⚠ WARNING**

- Never attempt jump starting if the discharged battery is frozen. It could cause the battery to burst or explode.
- Be sure the jumper cables and clamps on them do not have loose or missing insulation.

  Do not jump start unless cables in suitable condition are available.
- A running engine can be dangerous. Keep your fingers, hands, clothing, hair and tools away from the cooling fan, belts and any other moving engine parts. Removing rings, watches and ties is advisable.
- Jump starting is dangerous if it done incorrectly. If you are unsure about the proper procedure

– CONTINUED –

**for jump starting, consult a competent mechanic.**

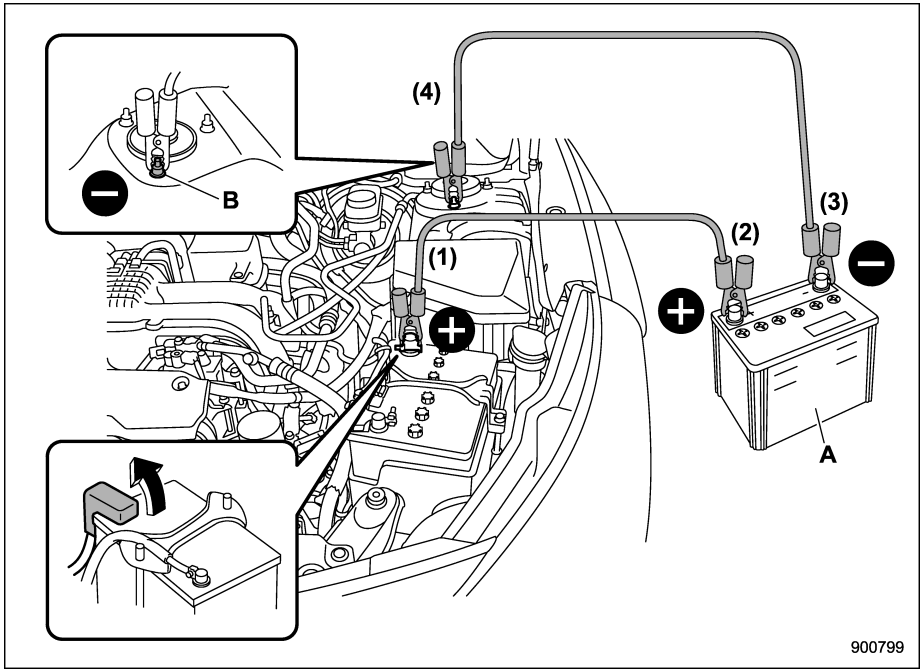
**⚠ CAUTION**

**The battery used for boosting must be 12 V. Do not jump start unless you are sure that the booster battery is correct.**

When your vehicle does not start due to a run down (discharged) battery, the vehicle may be jump started by connecting your battery to another battery (called the booster battery) with jumper cables.

## ■ How to jump start

1. Make sure the booster battery is 12 volts and the negative terminal is grounded.
2. If the booster battery is in another vehicle, do not let the two vehicles touch.
3. Turn off all unnecessary lights and accessories.
4. Connect the jumper cables exactly in the sequence illustrated.




A) Booster battery
B) Strut mounting nut

(1) Connect one jumper cable to the positive (+) terminal on the discharged battery.
(2) Connect the other end of the jumper cable to the positive (+) terminal of the booster battery.
(3) Connect one end of the other cable to the negative (−) terminal of the booster battery.
(4) Connect the other end of the cable to the strut mounting nut.

Make sure that the cables are not near any moving parts and that the cable clamps are not in contact with any other metal.

5. Start the engine of the vehicle with the booster battery and run it at moderate speed. Then start the engine of the vehicle that has the discharged battery.
6. When finished, carefully disconnect the cables in exactly the reverse order.

## Engine overheating

**⚠ WARNING**

**Never attempt to remove the radiator cap until the engine has been shut off and has fully cooled down. When the engine is hot, the coolant is under pressure. Removing the cap while the engine is still hot could release a spray of boiling hot coolant, which could burn you very seriously.**

If the engine overheats, safely pull off the road and stop the vehicle in a safe place.

### ■ If steam is coming from the engine compartment

Turn off the engine and get everyone away from the vehicle until it cools down.

### ■ If no steam is coming from the engine compartment

**NOTE**

**For details about how to check the coolant level or how to add coolant, refer to "Engine coolant" ☞11-23.**

1. Keep the engine running at idling speed.
2. Open the hood to ventilate the engine compartment. Refer to "Engine hood" ☞11-11.

Confirm that the cooling fan is turning. If the fan is not turning, immediately turn off the engine and contact your authorized dealer for repair.

3. After the engine coolant temperature has dropped, turn off the engine.

If the temperature gauge stays in the overheated zone, turn off the engine.

4. After the engine has fully cooled down, check the coolant level in the reserve tank.

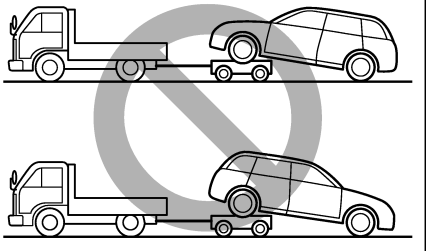
If the coolant level is below the "LOW" mark, add coolant up to the "FULL" mark.

5. If there is no coolant in the reserve tank, add coolant to the reserve tank. Then remove the radiator cap and fill the radiator with coolant.

If you remove the radiator cap from a hot radiator, first wrap a thick cloth around the radiator cap, then turn the cap counterclockwise slowly without pressing down until it stops. Release the pressure from the radiator. After the pressure has been fully released, remove the cap by pressing down and turning it.

## Towing

If towing is necessary, it is best done by your SUBARU dealer or a commercial towing service. Observe the following procedures for safety.



900487

**⚠ WARNING**

**Never tow AWD vehicles with the front wheels raised off the ground while the rear wheels are on the ground, or with the rear wheels raised off the ground while the front wheels are on the ground. This will cause the vehicle to spin away due to the operation or deterioration of the center differential.**

## ■ Towing hooks and tie-down hooks/holes

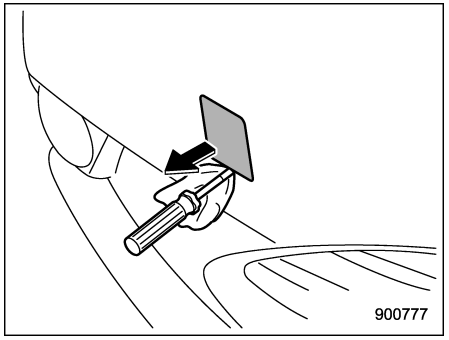
The towing hooks should be used only in an emergency (e.g., to free a stuck vehicle from mud, sand or snow).

**⚠ CAUTION**

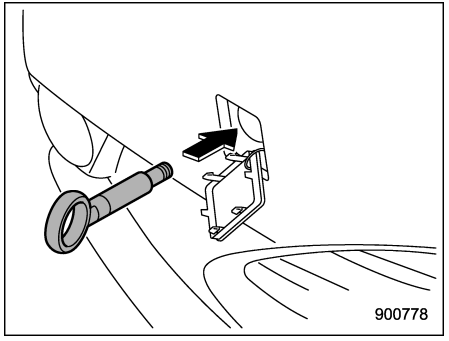
**Use only the specified towing hooks and tie-down hooks/holes. Never use suspension parts or other parts of the body for towing or tie-down purposes.**

**Front towing hook:**

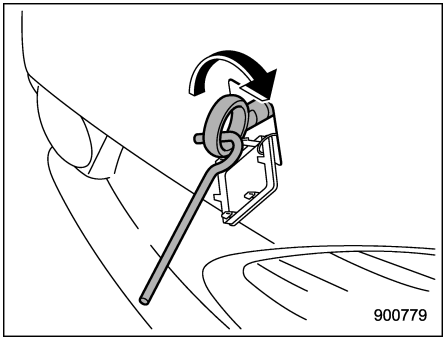
1. Take the screwdriver, towing hook, wheel nut wrench and jack handle out of the trunk (Sedan) or cargo area (Outback).




2. Pry off the cover on the front bumper using a flat-head screwdriver, and you will find a threaded hole for attaching the towing hook.




3. Screw the towing hook into the threaded hole until its thread can no longer be seen.




4. Tighten the towing hook securely using the jack handle and wheel nut wrench.

After towing, remove the towing hook from the vehicle and stow it in the tool bucket. Fit the towing hook cover on the bumper.

**⚠ WARNING**

- **Do not use the towing hook except when towing your vehicle.**

*– CONTINUED –*

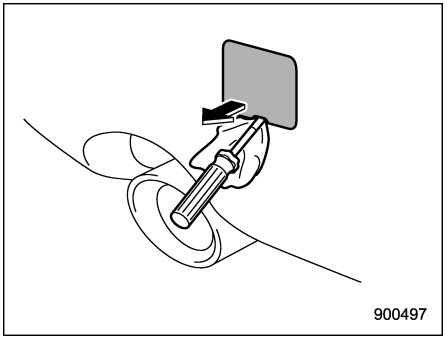
- **Be sure to remove the towing hook after towing. Leaving the towing hook mounted on the vehicle could interfere with proper operation of the SRS airbag system in a frontal collision.**

**⚠ CAUTION**

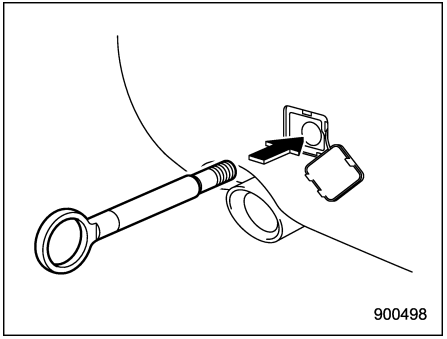
**To prevent deformation to the bumper and the towing hook, do not apply excessive lateral load to the towing hook.**

**Rear towing hook:**

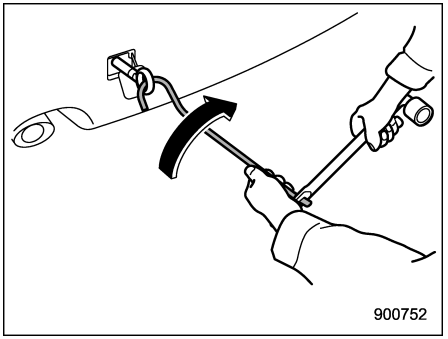
1. Take the screwdriver, towing hook, wheel nut wrench and jack handle out of the trunk (Sedan) or cargo area (Outback).




2. Pry off the cover on the rear bumper using a flat-head screwdriver, and you will find a threaded hole for attaching the towing hook.




3. Screw the towing hook into the threaded hole until its thread can no longer be seen.




4. Tighten the towing hook securely using the jack handle and wheel nut wrench.

After towing, remove the towing hook from the vehicle and stow it in the tool bucket. Fit the towing hook cover on the bumper.

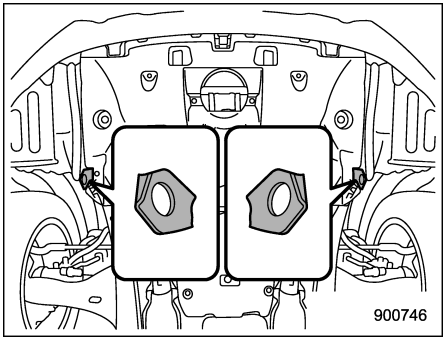
**⚠ WARNING**

- **Do not use the towing hook except when towing your vehicle.**
- **Be sure to remove the towing hook after towing. Leaving the towing hooks mounted on the vehicle could interfere with proper operation of the fuel pump shut-off function when the vehicle is struck from behind.**

**⚠ CAUTION**

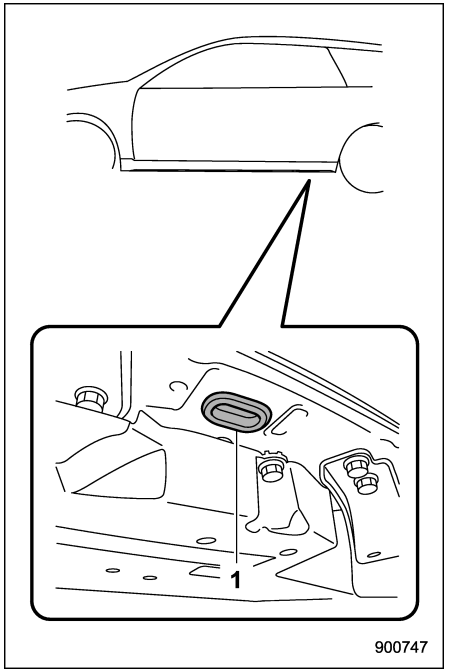
**To prevent deformation to the bumper and the towing hook, do not apply excessive lateral load to the towing hook.**

**Front tie-down hooks:**




The front tie-down hooks are located between each of the front tires and the front bumper.

**Rear tie-down holes:**




1) Rear tie-down hole

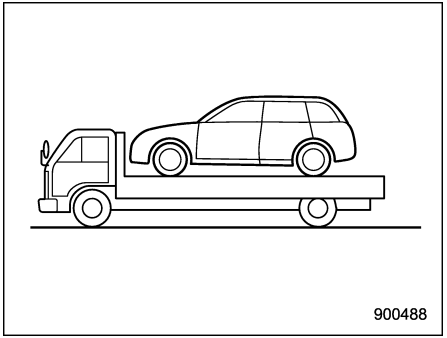
The rear tie-down holes are located near each of the jack-up reinforcements.

There is a plug in each rear tie-down hole. To use the rear tie-down holes, remove the plugs. After using the rear tie-down holes, return the plugs to their original places.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Use the rear tie-down holes only for downward anchoring. If they are used to anchor the vehicle in any other direction, cables may slip out of the holes, possibly causing a dangerous situation.**

## ■ Using a flat-bed truck




This is the best way to transport your vehicle. Use the following procedures to ensure safe transportation.

1. Shift the select lever into the “P” position for CVT models or the shift lever

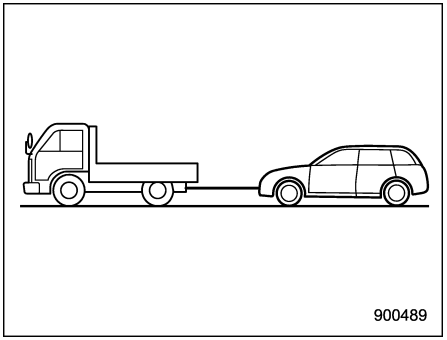
*– CONTINUED –*

into “1st” for MT models.

2. Apply the parking brake firmly.

3. Secure the vehicle onto the carrier properly with safety chains. Each of safety chain should be equally tightened and care must be taken not to pull the chains so tightly that the suspension bottoms out.

## ■ Towing with all wheels on the ground




1. Release the parking brake and put the transmission in neutral.

2. The ignition switch should be in the “ON” position while the vehicle is being towed.

3. Take up slack in the towline slowly to prevent damage to the vehicle.

**⚠ WARNING**

- **Never turn the ignition switch to the “LOCK”/“OFF” position while the vehicle is being towed because the steering wheel and the direction of the wheels will be locked.**
- **Remember that the brake booster and power steering do not function when the engine is not running. Because the engine is turned off, it will take greater effort to operate the brake pedal and steering wheel.**

**⚠ CAUTION**

- **If transmission failure occurs, transport your vehicle on a flat-bed truck.**
- **For CVT models, the traveling speed must be limited to less than 30 km/h (20 mph) and the traveling distance to less than 50 km (31 miles). For greater speeds and distances, transport your vehicle on a flat-bed truck.**

# Electronic parking brake – if the electronic parking brake cannot be released

We recommend that you contact your SUBARU dealer and have your SUBARU dealer release the electronic parking brake.

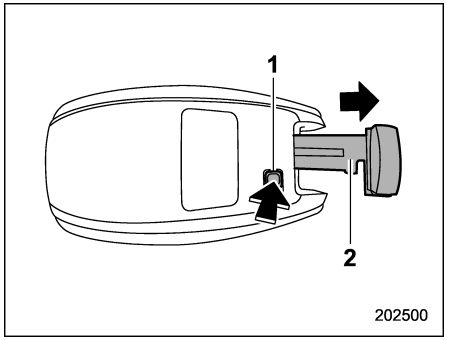
## Access key – if access key does not operate properly

**⚠ CAUTION**

**Keep metallic objects, magnetic sources and signal transmitters away from the area between the access key and the push-button ignition switch. They may interfere with the communication between the access key and the push-button ignition switch.**

If the locking/unlocking procedures, power switch procedures or engine start procedures cannot be operated because of strong radio signals in the surrounding area or the access key battery being low, perform the following procedure. When the battery of the access key is discharged, replace it with a new one. Refer to "Replacing battery of access key" ☞11-61.

### ■ Locking and unlocking




1) Release button
2) Mechanical key

While pressing the release button of the access key, take out the mechanical key.

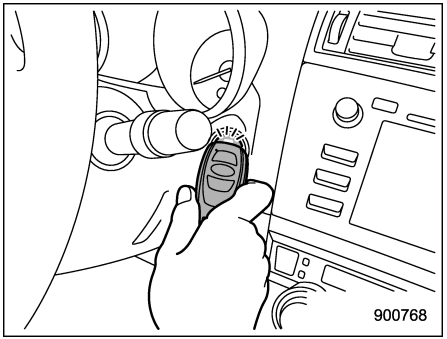
Lock or unlock the driver's door with the mechanical key in the procedure described in "Locking and unlocking from the outside with key" ☞2-4.

**NOTE**

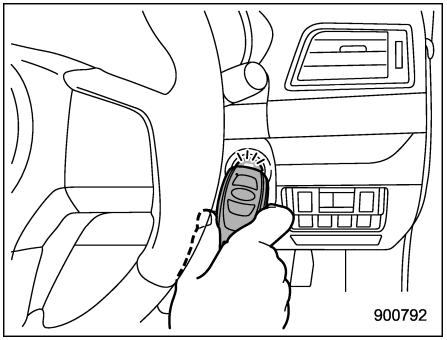
**After locking or unlocking, be sure to attach the mechanical key back to the access key.**

### ■ Switching power

1. Apply the parking brake.
2. Shift the shift lever into neutral (MT models) or the select lever into the "P" position (CVT models).
3. Depress the clutch pedal (MT models) or brake pedal (CVT models).




**Left-hand drive models**




**Right-hand drive models**

– CONTINUED –

4. Hold the access key with the buttons facing you, and touch the push-button ignition switch with it.

When the communication between the access key and the vehicle is completed, a chime (ding) will sound. At the same time, the status of the push-button ignition switch changes to either of the following.

- When the keyless access with push-button start system is deactivated: “ACC”
- Under other conditions: “ON”

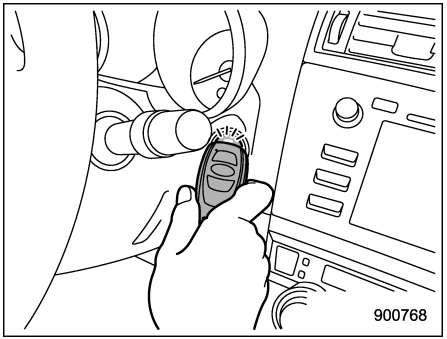
5. When the keyless access with push-button start system is deactivated, press the push-button ignition switch with the clutch pedal (MT models) or brake pedal (CVT models) released. The status of the push-button ignition switch then changes to “ON”.

## NOTE

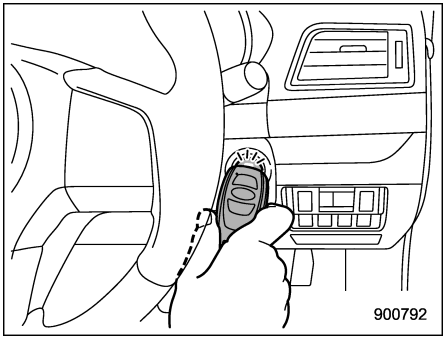
**If the power does not switch even though the above procedure was followed precisely, we recommend that you contact your SUBARU dealer.**

## ■ Starting engine

1. Apply the parking brake.
2. Shift the shift lever into neutral (MT models) or the select lever into the “P” position (CVT models).
3. Depress the brake pedal.
4. Depress the clutch pedal (MT models).




**Left-hand drive models**




**Right-hand drive models**

5. Hold the access key with the buttons facing you, and touch the push-button ignition switch with it.

When the communication between the access key and the vehicle is completed, a chime (ding) will sound. At the same time, the push-button ignition switch turns to the “ACC” or “ON” position.

6. While depressing the brake pedal (all models) and the clutch pedal (MT models), press the push-button ignition switch.

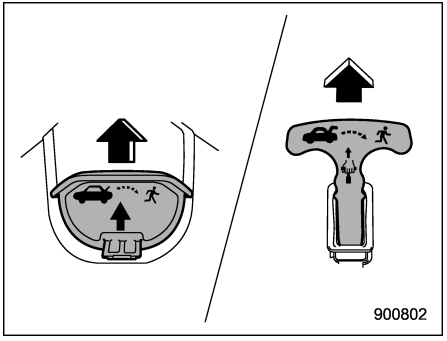
## NOTE

**If the engine does not start even though the above procedure was followed precisely, we recommend that you contact your SUBARU dealer.**

## Trunk lid (Sedan) – if the trunk lid cannot be opened

In the event that you cannot open the trunk lid, you can open it by performing the following procedure.

1. Fold down the rear seat. For details, refer to “Folding down the rear seatback” ☞1-14.
2. Enter the trunk from the rear passenger compartment.

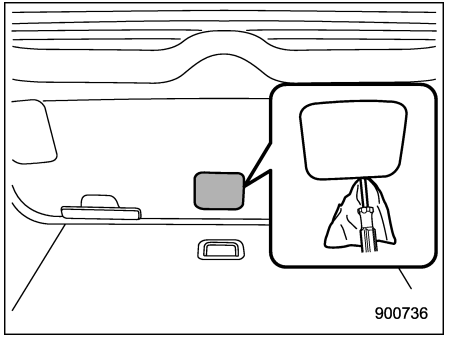



**Trunk lid release lever**

3. Pull the trunk lid release lever. Then the trunk lid will open.

## Rear gate (Outback) – if the rear gate cannot be opened

In the event that you cannot open the rear gate by pressing the rear gate opener button (all models) or using the power rear gate (if equipped), you can open it from inside the cargo area.

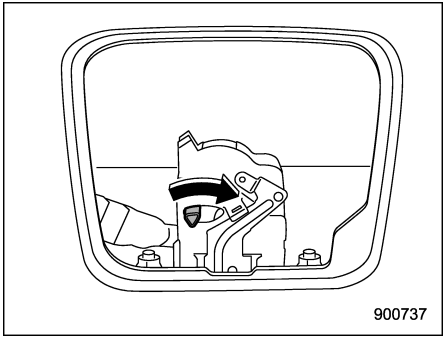



1. Remove the access cover at the bottom-center of the rear gate trim using flat-head screwdriver.
2. Locate the rear gate lock release lever behind the rear gate trim panel.

**⚠ CAUTION**

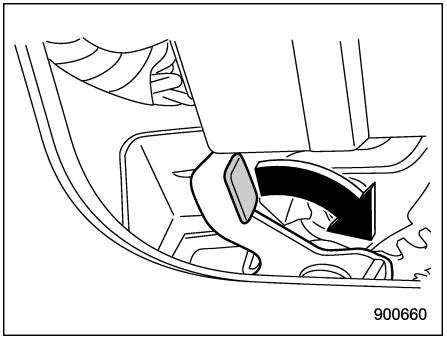
**Never operate the rear gate lock release lever with your fingers because doing so may cause an injury.**

**Always use a flat-head screwdriver or a similar tool.**




**Models without power rear gate**

*– CONTINUED –*




**Models with power rear gate**

3. Turn the lever to the right position using a flat-head screwdriver or a similar tool. Then the rear gate will open.

## Power rear gate - if power rear gate does not operate properly

### ■ When the power rear gate is deactivated

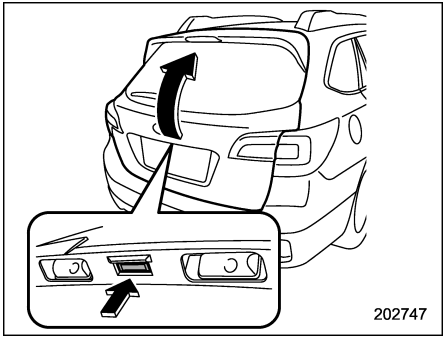
#### NOTE

**While the power rear gate is temporarily deactivated, if it is struck by body parts or objects and sustains a strong impact, the temporary deactivation may be canceled. The purpose of this is to absorb the impact of the collision and it is not a malfunction. In this case, the rear gate will not open or close automatically.**

If the power rear gate senses a malfunction, an electronic chirp will sound and the rear gate will stop opening or closing.

In order for the rear gate to open and close automatically, carry out the following operation. If the rear gate does not open and close automatically after carrying out this operation, we recommend that you have the vehicle checked at a SUBARU dealer.

**▼ When the rear gate is closed**




1. Press and hold the rear gate opener button. If the rear gate does not open, perform the procedure described in “Rear gate (Outback) – if the rear gate cannot be opened” ☞9-31.
2. Gently close the rear gate by hand until it reaches the half-shut position.
3. Operate the power rear gate to confirm it is recovered.

**▼ When the rear gate is stuck at the fully open position or does not fully close**

1. Gently close the rear gate by hand until it reaches the half-shut position. If the rear gate does not close, perform the procedure described in “Rear gate

(Outback) – if the rear gate cannot be opened” ☞9-31.

2. Operate the power rear gate to confirm it is recovered.

### ■ When the rear gate cannot be opened

Perform the procedure described in “Rear gate (Outback) – if the rear gate cannot be opened” ☞9-31.

### ■ When the rear gate cannot be closed

**⚠ CAUTION**

- **On areas which are not flat, such as hills, do not conduct any of the following actions. The rear gate may close suddenly and hit someone’s head, face or catch fingers and body parts in it, resulting in injury.**
- **Even while conducting the following actions on a flat surface, be careful not to be injured by getting caught in or hit by the rear gate.**
- **After closing the rear gate by the following methods, we recommend that you have the vehicle checked at a SUBARU dealer.**

If the rear gate cannot be closed due to a flat battery, etc., while the rear gate is stopped midway, it can be closed by hand.

1. Gently close the rear gate by hand until it reaches the half-shut position. If the rear gate does not close, perform the procedure described in “Rear gate (Outback) – if the rear gate cannot be opened” ☞9-31.
2. Operate the power rear gate to confirm it is recovered.

## Running out of fuel (diesel engine models)

**⚠ CAUTION**

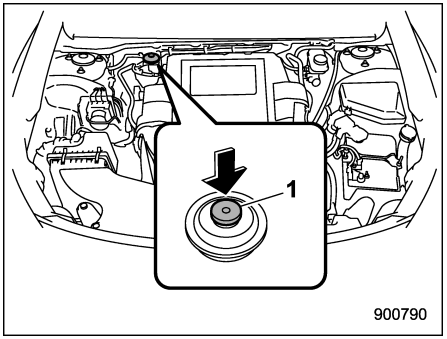
- **Do not try to start the engine before refueling and operating the priming pump. Doing so could damage the engine and fuel system.**
- **Do not operate the starter motor for more than 30 seconds of total time. Doing so could overheat the starter motor and discharge the vehicle battery.**

Perform the following procedure to restart the engine.

1. Refuel your vehicle.

For the fuel requirements and refueling procedure, refer to “Fuel” ☞7-3.

*– CONTINUED –*




1) Priming pump

2. Operate the priming pump located in the front passenger's side of the engine compartment by depressing the pumping knob until you feel strong resistance to bleed the trapped air from the fuel system.

3. Try to start the engine within 15 seconds of starter motor operation.

If the engine does not start, perform step 2 once again and restart the engine within 15 seconds of starter motor operation.

If the engine still does not start the second time, we recommend that you contact your nearest SUBARU dealer for assistance.

4. After starting the engine, depress the accelerator pedal lightly until the engine runs smoothly. Also, confirm that all warning and indicator lights have turned off. The fuel injection system automatically lowers the idle speed as the engine warms up.

## If your vehicle is involved in an accident

**⚠ CAUTION**

**If your vehicle is involved in an accident, be sure to inspect the ground under the vehicle before restarting the engine. If you find that fuel has leaked on the ground, do not try to restart the engine. The fuel system has been damaged and is in need of repair. Immediately contact the nearest automotive service facility. We recommend that you consult your SUBARU dealer.**

Your vehicle has a fuel pump shut off system. When the vehicle sustains an impact in an accident, etc., the fuel pump shut off system stops supplying the fuel in order to minimize fuel leakage.

Perform the following procedures to restart the engine after the system is activated.

**Models without "keyless access with push-button start system":**

1. Turn the ignition switch to the "LOCK" or "ACC" position.
2. Restart the engine.

**Models with “keyless access with push-button start system”:**

1. Turn the push-button ignition switch to the “ACC” or “OFF” position.
2. Restart the engine.

**Exterior care** ..... **10-2**
- **Washing** ..... **10-2**
- **Waxing and polishing** ..... **10-3**
- **Cleaning aluminum wheels** ..... **10-4**

**Corrosion protection** ..... **10-4**
- **Most common causes of corrosion** ..... **10-4**
- **To help prevent corrosion** ..... **10-4**

**Cleaning the interior** ..... **10-5**
- **Seat fabric** ..... **10-5**
- **Leather seat materials** ..... **10-5**
- **Synthetic leather upholstery** ..... **10-6**
- **Climate control panel, audio panel, instrument panel, console panel, switches, combination meter, and other plastic surfaces** ..... **10-6**
- **Monitor (if equipped)** ..... **10-6**

## Exterior care

### ■ Washing

**⚠ CAUTION**

- **When washing the vehicle, the brakes may get wet. As a result, the brake stopping distance will be longer. To dry the brakes, drive the vehicle at a safe speed while lightly depressing the brake pedal to heat up the brakes.**
- **Do not wash the engine compartment and area adjacent to it. If water enters the engine air intake or electrical parts, it will cause engine trouble or a malfunction of the power steering.**
- **Do not use any organic solvents when washing the surface of the bulb assembly cover. However, if a detergent with organic solvents is used to wash the cover surface, completely rinse off the detergent with water. Otherwise, the cover surface may be damaged.**
- **Models with automatic rain sensing windshield wipers: When washing the vehicle, turn off the wiper. If the wiper switch is in the "AUTO" position while washing the vehicle, the wipers may operate unexpectedly and cause injury.**
- **Outback only: Since your vehicle is equipped with a rear wiper, automatic car-wash brushes could become tangled around it, damaging the wiper arm and other components. Ask the automatic car-wash operator not to let the brushes touch the wiper arm or to fix the wiper arm on the rear window glass with adhesive tape before operating the machine.**

**NOTE**

**When having your vehicle washed in an automatic car wash:**

**• Make sure beforehand that the car wash is of suitable type.**

**• When washing a vehicle equipped with automatic rain sensing windshield wipers, make sure that the wiper is turned off. If the wiper switch is in the "AUTO" position, the wipers may operate unexpectedly while washing the vehicle and the wiper blades could be damaged.**

The best way to preserve your vehicle's beauty is frequent washing. Wash the vehicle at least once a month to avoid contamination by road grime.

Wash dirt off with a wet sponge and plenty of lukewarm or cold water. Do not wash the vehicle with hot water and in direct sunlight.

Salt, chemicals, insects, tar, soot, tree sap, and bird droppings should be washed off by using a light detergent, as required. If you use a light detergent, make certain that it is a neutral detergent. Do not use strong soap or chemical detergents. All cleaning agents should be promptly flushed from the surface and not allowed to dry there. Rinse the vehicle thoroughly with plenty of lukewarm water. Wipe the remaining water off with a chamois or soft cloth.

**▼ Washing the underbody**

Chemicals, salts and gravel used for deicing road surfaces are extremely corrosive, accelerating the corrosion of underbody components, such as the exhaust system, fuel and brake lines, brake cables, floor pan and fenders, and suspension.

Thoroughly flush the underbody and inside of the fenders with lukewarm or cold

water at frequent intervals to reduce the harmful effects of such agents.

Mud and sand adhering to the underbody components may accelerate their corrosion.

After driving off-road or on muddy or sandy roads, wash the mud and sand off the underbody.

Carefully flush the suspension and axle parts, as they are particularly prone to mud and sand buildup. Do not use a sharp-edged tool to remove caked mud.

**⚠ CAUTION**

- **Be careful not to damage brake hoses, sensor harnesses, and other parts when washing suspension components.**
- **Be careful not to flush the engine bottom for a long time. It may cause damage of some electrical parts.**

**▼ Using a warm water washer**

- Keep a good distance of 30 cm (12 in) or more between the washer nozzle and the vehicle.
- Do not wash the same area continuously.
- If a stain will not come out easily, wash by hand. Some warm water washers are of the high temperature, high pressure type, and they can damage or deform the resin parts such as moldings, or cause water to leak into the vehicle.

## ■ Waxing and polishing

Always wash and dry the vehicle before waxing and polishing.

Use a good quality polish and wax and apply them according to the manufacturer's instructions. Wax or polish when the painted surface is cool.

Be sure to polish and wax the chrome trim, as well as the painted surfaces. Loss of wax on a painted surface leads to loss of the original luster and also quickens the deterioration of the surface. It is recommended that a coat of wax be applied at least once a month, or whenever the surface no longer repels water.

If the appearance of the paint has diminished to the point where the luster or tone cannot be restored, lightly polish the surface with a fine-grained compound. Never polish just the affected area, but include the surrounding area as well. Always polish in only one direction. A No. 2000 grain compound is recommended. Never use a coarse-grained compound. Coarser grained compounds have a smaller grain-size number and could damage the paint. After polishing with a compound, coat with wax to restore the original luster. Frequent polishing with a compound or an incorrect polishing technique will result in removing the paint layer and exposing the undercoat. When in doubt, we recommend that you always contact your SUBARU dealer or an auto paint specialist.

**⚠ CAUTION**

**Do not use any agents with organic solvents on the surface of the bulb assembly cover. However, if a polish or wax with organic solvents is applied to the cover surface, completely wipe off the polish or wax. Otherwise, the cover surface may be damaged.**

## NOTE

**Be careful not to block the windshield washer nozzles with wax when waxing the vehicle.**

– CONTINUED –

### ■ Cleaning aluminum wheels

- Promptly wipe the aluminum wheels clean of any kind of grime or agent. If dirt is left on too long, it may be difficult to clean off.
- Do not use soap containing grit to clean the wheels. Be sure to use a neutral cleaning agent, and later rinse thoroughly with water. Do not clean the wheels with a stiff brush or expose them to a high-speed washing device.
- Clean the vehicle (including the aluminum wheels) with water as soon as possible when it has been splashed with sea water, exposed to sea breezes, or driven on roads treated with salt or other agents.

## Corrosion protection

Your SUBARU has been designed and built to resist corrosion. Special materials and protective finishes have been used on most parts of the vehicle to help maintain fine appearance, strength, and reliable operation.

### ■ Most common causes of corrosion

The most common causes of corrosion are:

- The accumulation of moisture retaining dirt and debris in body panel sections, cavities, and other areas.
- Damage to paint and other protective coatings caused by gravel and stone chips or minor accidents.

Corrosion is accelerated on the vehicle when:

- It is exposed to road salt or dust control chemicals, or used in coastal areas where there is more salt in the air, or in areas where there is considerable industrial pollution.
- It is driven in areas of high humidity, especially when temperatures range just above freezing.
- Dampness in certain parts of the vehicle remains for a long time, even though other parts of the vehicle may be dry.
- High temperatures will cause corrosion to parts of the vehicle which cannot dry quickly due to lack of proper ventilation.

### ■ To help prevent corrosion

Wash the vehicle regularly to prevent corrosion of the body and suspension components. Also, wash the vehicle promptly after driving on any of the following surfaces:

- roads that have been salted to prevent them from freezing in winter
- mud, sand or gravel
- coastal roads

After the winter has ended, it is recommended that the underbody be given a very thorough washing.

Before the beginning of winter, check the condition of underbody components, such as the exhaust system, fuel and brake lines, brake cables, suspension, steering system, floor pan, and fenders. If any of them are found to be rusted, they should be given an appropriate rust prevention treatment or should be replaced. We recommend that you contact your SUBARU dealer to perform this kind of

maintenance and treatment if you need assistance.

Repair chips and scratches in the paint as soon as you find them.

Check the interior of the vehicle for water and dirt accumulation under the floor mats because that could cause corrosion. Occasionally check under the mats to make sure the area is dry.

Keep your garage dry. Do not park your vehicle in a damp, poorly ventilated garage. In such a garage, corrosion can be caused by dampness. If you wash the vehicle in the garage or put the vehicle into the garage when wet or covered with snow, that can cause dampness.

If your vehicle is operated in cold weather and/or in areas where road salts and other corrosive materials are used, the door hinges and locks and hood latch should be inspected and lubricated periodically.

## Cleaning the interior

Use a soft, damp cloth to clean the climate control panel, audio equipment, instrument panel, center console, combination meter panel, and switches. (Do not use organic solvents.)

### ■ Seat fabric

Remove loose dirt, dust or debris with a vacuum cleaner. If the dirt is caked on the fabric or hard to remove with a vacuum cleaner, use a soft brush then vacuum it.

Wipe the fabric surface with a tightly wrung cloth and dry the seat fabric thoroughly. If the fabric is still dirty, wipe using a solution of mild soap and lukewarm water then dry thoroughly.

If the stain does not come out, try a commercially available fabric cleaner. Use the cleaner on a hidden place and make sure it does not affect the fabric adversely. Use the cleaner according to its instructions.

**⚠ CAUTION**

**When cleaning the seat, do not use benzine, paint thinner, or any similar materials. Doing so could damage the surface and cause the color to deteriorate.**

### ■ Leather seat materials

The leather used by SUBARU is a high quality natural product which will retain its distinctive appearance and feel for many years with proper care.

Allowing dust or road dirt to build up on the surface can cause the material to become brittle and to wear prematurely. Regular cleaning with a soft, moist, natural fiber cloth should be performed monthly, taking care not to soak the leather or allow water to penetrate the stitched seams.

A mild detergent suitable for cleaning woolen fabrics may be used to remove difficult dirt spots, rubbing with a soft, dry cloth afterwards to restore the luster. If your SUBARU is to be parked for a long time in bright sunlight, it is recommended that the seats and head restraints be covered, or the windows shaded, to prevent fading or shrinkage.

Minor surface blemishes or bald patches may be treated with a commercial leather

– CONTINUED –

spray lacquer. You will discover that each leather seat section will develop soft folds or wrinkles, which is characteristic of genuine leather.

## ■ Synthetic leather upholstery

The synthetic leather material used on the SUBARU may be cleaned using mild soap or detergent and water, after first vacuuming or brushing away loose dirt. Allow the soap to soak in for a few minutes and wipe off with a clean, damp cloth. Commercial foam-type cleaners suitable for synthetic leather materials may be used when necessary.

**⚠ CAUTION**

**Strong cleaning agents such as solvents, paint thinners, window cleaner or fuel must never be used on leather or synthetic interior materials. Doing so could damage the surface and cause the color to deteriorate.**

## ■ Climate control panel, audio panel, instrument panel, console panel, switches, combination meter, and other plastic surfaces

Use a soft, damp cloth to clean the climate control panel, audio equipment, instrument panel, center console, combination meter panel, and switches.

**⚠ CAUTION**

- **Do not use organic solvents such as paint thinners or fuel, or strong cleaning agents that contain those solvents.**
- **Do not use chemical solvents that contain silicone on the vehicle audio system, electrical components of the air-conditioner or any switches. If silicone adheres to these parts, it may cause damage to electrical components.**

## ■ Monitor (if equipped)

To clean the audio/navigation monitor, wipe it with a silicone cloth or with a soft cloth. If the monitor is extremely dirty, clean it with a soft cloth moistened with neutral detergent then carefully wipe off any remaining detergent.

**⚠ CAUTION**

- **Do not spray neutral detergent directly onto the monitor. Doing so could damage the monitor's components.**
- **Do not wipe the monitor with a hard cloth. Doing so could scratch the monitor.**
- **Do not use cleaning fluid that contains thinner, fuel, or any other volatile substance. Such cleaning fluid could erase the lettering on the switches at the bottom of the monitor.**

Maintenance schedule ..... 11-3
Maintenance precautions..... 11-7
Before checking or servicing in the engine compartment..... 11-7
When checking or servicing in the engine compartment..... 11-8
When checking or servicing in the engine compartment while the engine is running..... 11-8
Maintenance tips ..... 11-9
Removing and reinstalling clips..... 11-9
Engine hood ..... 11-11
Engine compartment overview..... 11-13
2.5 L models ..... 11-13
3.6 L models ..... 11-14
Turbo diesel engine models..... 11-15
Engine oil..... 11-16
Engine oil consumption..... 11-16
Checking the oil level ..... 11-16
Changing the oil and oil filter..... 11-19
Recommended grade and viscosity ..... 11-21
Synthetic oil..... 11-22
Cooling system ..... 11-22
Cooling fan, hose and connections..... 11-22
Engine coolant..... 11-23
Air cleaner element..... 11-24
Replacing the air cleaner element ..... 11-24
Spark plugs (petrol engine models) ..... 11-27
Recommended spark plugs ..... 11-27
Drive belts ..... 11-27
Manual transmission oil ..... 11-27
Recommended grade and viscosity..... 11-27
Continuously variable transmission fluid ..... 11-28
Front differential gear oil (CVT models) and rear differential gear oil..... 11-28
Recommended grade and viscosity..... 11-28
Brake fluid..... 11-28
Checking the fluid level..... 11-28
Recommended brake fluid ..... 11-29
Clutch fluid (MT models)..... 11-30
Checking the fluid level..... 11-30
Recommended clutch fluid..... 11-31
Brake booster ..... 11-31
Brake pedal ..... 11-31
Checking the brake pedal free play ..... 11-31
Checking the brake pedal reserve distance..... 11-32
Clutch pedal (MT models) ..... 11-32
Checking the clutch function..... 11-32
Checking the clutch pedal free play..... 11-32
Replacement of brake pad ..... 11-33
Breaking-in of new brake pads..... 11-33
Tires and wheels..... 11-33
Types of tires..... 11-33
Tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS) (if equipped)..... 11-34
Tire inspection..... 11-35
Tire pressures and wear ..... 11-35
Wheel balance ..... 11-37
Wear indicators ..... 11-38
Tire rotation direction mark..... 11-38
Tire rotation..... 11-38

Tire replacement ..... 11-39
Wheel replacement..... 11-40
**Aluminum wheels (if equipped) ..... 11-40**
**Windshield washer fluid ..... 11-41**
**Replacement of wiper blades ..... 11-42**
Windshield wiper blade assembly ..... 11-42
Windshield wiper blade rubber ..... 11-43
Rear window wiper blade assembly (Outback) ..... 11-44
Rear window wiper blade rubber (Outback) ..... 11-44
**Battery..... 11-46**
Battery Precautions!..... 11-46
**Fuses ..... 11-47**
**Installation of accessories..... 11-49**
**Replacing bulbs ..... 11-49**
Low beam headlights (models with LED headlights)..... 11-49
Halogen headlights ..... 11-50
Front turn signal light ..... 11-51
Front fog light..... 11-51
Rear combination lights ..... 11-53
Back-up light/Rear fog light (if equipped) (Sedan)..... 11-55
Back-up light (Outback) ..... 11-56
Rear fog light (Outback)..... 11-56
License plate light ..... 11-57
Dome light..... 11-58
Vanity mirror light..... 11-58
Map light ..... 11-58
Door step light..... 11-59
Cargo area light (Outback) ..... 11-59
Trunk light (Sedan) ..... 11-59
Other lights on the vehicle ..... 11-60
**Replacing battery..... 11-60**
Replacing battery of access key..... 11-61
Replacing battery of transmitter ..... 11-62

## Maintenance schedule

To keep your vehicle in proper operating condition and to assure peak performance at all times, the recommended maintenance service should be performed in accordance with the maintenance schedule.

### NOTE

**The frequency of scheduled inspection and maintenance services as set forth is minimal. However, it may be necessary that they be performed more frequently depending on road conditions, weather, atmospheric conditions and vehicle usage. These conditions may differ from one country to another. Therefore there may be special requirement in your country. We recommend that you ask your authorized SUBARU dealer for the actual maintenance schedule applied to your vehicle.**

Continue periodic maintenance beyond 120,000 km (75,000 miles) or 96 months by returning to the second column of the maintenance schedule and adding 120,000 km (75,000 miles) or 96 months to the column headings.

Symbols used:
**R:** Replace
**I:** Inspect, and then adjust, correct or replace if necessary.
**P:** Perform
**(I):** Recommended service for safe vehicle operation

| MAINTENANCE ITEM | | MAINTENANCE INTERVAL (Number of months or km (miles), whichever occurs first) | | | | | | | | | REMARKS |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | Months | 12 | 24 | 36 | 48 | 60 | 72 | 84 | 96 | |
| | | × 1,000 km | 15 | 30 | 45 | 60 | 75 | 90 | 105 | 120 | |
| | | × 1,000 miles | 9 | 19 | 28 | 38 | 47 | 56 | 66 | 75 | |
| 1 | Engine oil | 3.6 L models | **R** | **R** | **R** | **R** | **R** | **R** | **R** | **R** | See NOTE 1) |
| | | Except 3.6 L models | **R** | **R** | **R** | **R** | **R** | **R** | **R** | **R** | |
| 2 | Engine oil filter | 3.6 L models | **R** | **R** | **R** | **R** | **R** | **R** | **R** | **R** | See NOTE 1) |
| | | Except 3.6 L models | **R** | **R** | **R** | **R** | **R** | **R** | **R** | **R** | |

– CONTINUED –

| MAINTENANCE ITEM | | | | MAINTENANCE INTERVAL (Number of months or km (miles), whichever occurs first) | | | | | | | | REMARKS |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | | Months | 12 | 24 | 36 | 48 | 60 | 72 | 84 | 96 | |
| | | | | × 1,000 km | 15 | 30 | 45 | 60 | 75 | 90 | 105 | 120 | |
| | | | | × 1,000 miles | 9 | 19 | 28 | 38 | 47 | 56 | 66 | 75 | |
| 3 | Drive belt | | | | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | **Replace every 160,000 km (100,000 miles)** |
| 4 | Cooling system, hoses and connections | | | | | I | | I | | I | | I | |
| 5 | Replace engine coolant (SUBARU Super Coolant or equivalent) | | | | 1st replacement: **132 months (11 years)/220,000 km (137,500 miles)** On and after the 2nd replacement: **Every 72 months (6 years)/ 120,000 km (75,000 miles)** | | | | | | | | |
| 6 | Fuel system, lines and connections | | | | | I | | I | | I | | I | See NOTE 2) |
| 7 | Fuel filter | Petrol engine models | For Europe (excluding CIS and Israel) | | | | | | | | | R | Replace every 120,000 km (75,000 miles) |
| | | | For others | | | | | | | R | | | Replace every 90,000 km (56,000 miles) |
| | | Diesel engine models | | | | | | R | | | | R | |
| 8 | Air cleaner element | | | | I | I | R | I | I | R | I | I | • Replace every 45,000 km (28,000 miles)<br>• See NOTE 3) |
| 9 | Spark plugs | Petrol engine models | | | | | | | | | R | | Replace every 105,000 km (66,000 miles) |

| MAINTENANCE ITEM | | | MAINTENANCE INTERVAL (Number of months or km (miles), whichever occurs first) | | | | | | | | REMARKS |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | Months | 12 | 24 | 36 | 48 | 60 | 72 | 84 | 96 | |
| | | × 1,000 km | 15 | 30 | 45 | 60 | 75 | 90 | 105 | 120 | |
| | | × 1,000 miles | 9 | 19 | 28 | 38 | 47 | 56 | 66 | 75 | |
| 10 | Transmission/differential (front & rear) lubricants (gear oil) | | | I | | R | | I | | R | See NOTE 4) |
| 11 | Continuously variable transmission fluid | | | I | | I | | I | | I | See NOTE 6) |
| 12 | Brake fluid | | | R | | R | | R | | R | See NOTE 5) |
| 13 | Disc brake pads and discs/Front and rear axle boots and axle shaft joint portions | | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | See NOTE 2) |
| 14 | Brake lining and drums (including parking brake linings and drums) | | | I | | I | | I | | I | See NOTE 2) |
| 15 | Inspect brake lines and check operation of parking and service brake system | | | P | | P | | P | | P | See NOTE 2) |
| 16 | Clutch system | | | I | | I | | I | | I | Adjust pedal free play at 1,600 km (1,000 miles) |
| 17 | Steering and suspension system | | | I | | I | | I | | I | See NOTE 2) |
| 18 | Front and rear wheel bearing | | | | | | | | | (I) | |
| 19 | Air filtration system (air filter) | For Europe (excluding CIS and Israel) | I | R | I | R | I | R | I | R | See NOTE 3) |
| | | For others | Replace every 12 months or 12,000 km (7,500 miles) whichever comes first | | | | | | | | See NOTE 3) |

*– CONTINUED –*

## NOTE

**1) When the vehicle is used under severe driving conditions mentioned in the following examples*, the engine oil and oil filter should be changed more frequently.**
**2) When the vehicle is used under severe driving conditions mentioned in the following examples*, inspection should be performed at every 15,000 km (9,000 miles) or 12 months whichever occurs first.**
**3) When the vehicle is used under severe driving conditions mentioned in the following examples*, the air cleaner element and air filter should be replaced more frequently.**
**4) When the vehicle is frequently operated under severe driving conditions, such as towing a trailer, replacement of differential gear oil (front and rear) and manual transmission gear oil should be performed more frequently.**
**5) When the vehicle is used under following areas, change fluid every 15,000 km (9,000 miles) or 12 months whichever occurs first.**
**(1) High humidity areas**
**(2) Mountainous areas**
**6) When the vehicle is used under the severe driving conditions mentioned in the following examples*, the continuously variable transmission fluid should be changed every 45,000 km (28,000 miles).**

* Examples of severe driving conditions:
(1) Operating in extremely cold weather (Items 1, 2 and 17 only)
(2) Towing a trailer (Items 1, 2, 10, 11, 13 and 15 only)
(3) Repeated short trips (Items 1, 2, 13 and 14 only)
(4) Driving in dusty roads (Items 8, 13, 14, 17, 18 and 19 only)
(5) Driving in rough and/or muddy roads (items 13, 14, 17 and 19 only)
(6) Driving in areas using road salt or other corrosive materials (items 6, 13, 14, 15 and 17 only)
(7) Living in coastal areas (items 6, 13, 14, 15 and 17 only)

## Maintenance precautions

When maintenance and service are required, it is recommended that all work be done by an authorized SUBARU dealer.

If you perform maintenance and service by yourself, you should familiarize yourself with the information provided in this section on general maintenance and service for your SUBARU.

Incorrect or incomplete service could cause improper or unsafe vehicle operation. Any problems caused by improper maintenance and service performed by you are not eligible for warranty coverage.

**⚠ WARNING**

- **Always select a safe area when performing maintenance on your vehicle.**
- **Always be very careful to avoid injury when working on the vehicle. Remember that some of the materials in the vehicle may be hazardous if improperly used or handled, for example, battery acid.**
- **Your vehicle should only be serviced by persons fully competent to do so. Serious personal injury may result to persons not experienced in servicing vehicles.**
- **Always use the proper tools and make certain that they are well maintained.**
- **Never get under the vehicle supported only by a jack. Always use safety stands to support the vehicle.**
- **Never keep the engine running in a poorly ventilated area, such as a garage or other closed areas.**
- **Do not smoke or allow open flames around the fuel or battery. This will cause a fire.**
- **Because the fuel system is under pressure, we recommend that you have the fuel filter replaced by your SUBARU dealer.**
- **Wear adequate eye protection to guard against getting oil or fluids in your eyes. If something does get in your eyes, thoroughly wash them out with clean water.**
- **Do not tamper with the wiring of the SRS airbag system or seatbelt pretensioner system, or attempt to take its connectors apart, as that may activate the system or it can render it inoperative when it should be operative. NEVER use a circuit tester for these wiring. If your SRS airbag or seatbelt pretensioner needs service, we recommend that you consult your nearest SUBARU dealer.**

### ■ Before checking or servicing in the engine compartment

**⚠ WARNING**

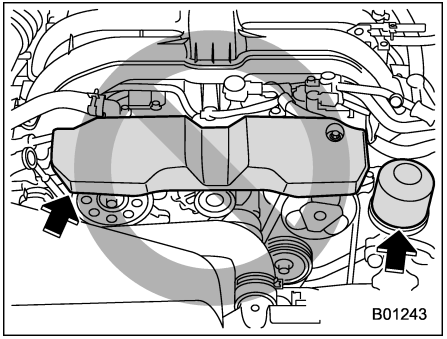
- **Always stop the engine and apply the parking brake to prevent the vehicle from moving.**
- **Always let the engine cool down. Engine parts become very hot when the engine is running and remain hot for some time after the engine has stopped.**
- **Do not spill engine oil, engine coolant, brake fluid or any other fluid on hot engine components. This may cause a fire.**
- **When the ignition switch is in the "ON" position, the cooling fan may operate suddenly even when the engine is stopped. If your body or clothes come into contact with a rotating fan, that**

– CONTINUED –

**could result in serious injury. To avoid risk of injury, perform the following precautions.**

- **Models with push-button start system:**
  **Always turn the push-button ignition switch to the "OFF" position and confirm that the operation indicator on the switch is turned off. Then take the access key out from the vehicle.**
- **Models without push-button start system:**
  **Always remove the key from the ignition switch.**

## ■ When checking or servicing in the engine compartment



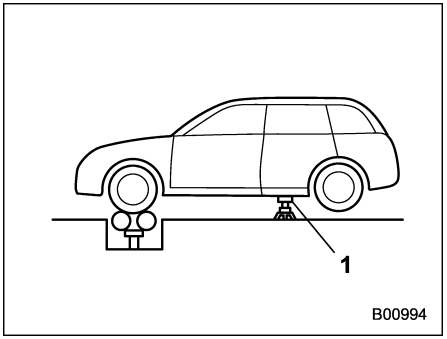

**⚠ CAUTION**

- **Do not contact the cover while checking the components in the engine compartment. Doing so may cause your hand to slip off the drive belt cover and result in an injury.**
- **Except 3.6 L models: Do not touch the oil filter until the engine has cooled down completely. Doing so may result in a burn or other injury. Note that the oil filter becomes very hot when the engine is running and remains hot for some time after the engine has stopped.**

## ■ When checking or servicing in the engine compartment while the engine is running

**⚠ WARNING**

**A running engine can be dangerous. Keep your fingers, hands, clothing, hair and tools away from the cooling fan, belts and any other moving engine parts. Removing rings, watches and ties is advisable.**




1) Safety stand

For any maintenance and inspection performed on AWD vehicles which requires a running engine and all four wheels turning, jack up all four wheels or use free rollers to prevent the vehicle from moving. Never race the engine or brake suddenly.

**⚠ CAUTION**

**Your vehicle cannot be changed over from AWD to FWD. If any maintenance or inspection requires a running engine and all four wheels turning, be sure to jack up all four wheels or use free rollers.**

## Maintenance tips

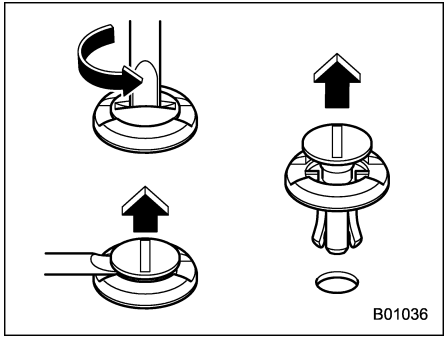
Some clips and fender linings must be removed before replacing the air cleaner elements or specific bulbs.

### ■ Removing and reinstalling clips

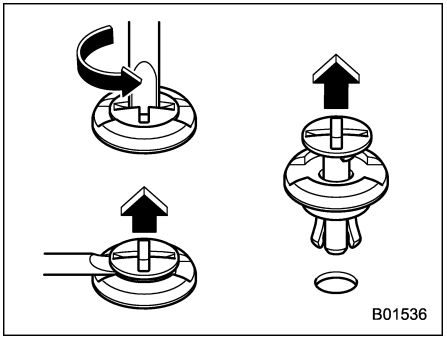
#### ▼ Removing clips

There are several types of clips used for your vehicle.

▽ **Type A and D clips**




**Type A clips**

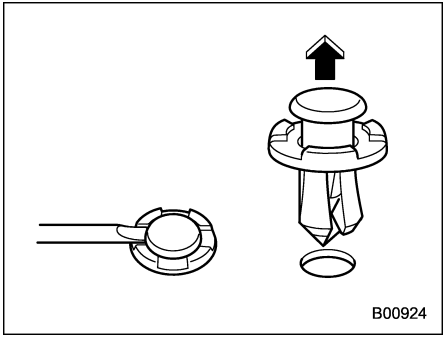



**Type D clips**

1. Turn the clips counterclockwise using a flat-head screwdriver until the center portion of the clip is raised.
2. Remove the clips with a flat-head screwdriver using leverage.
3. Remove the entire clip by pulling it up.

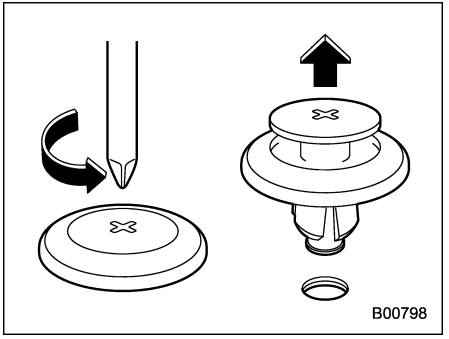
– CONTINUED –

▽ **Type B clips**



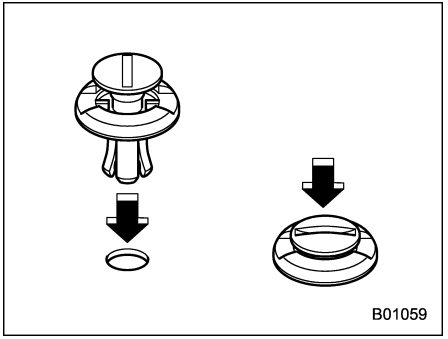

1. Pull out the center portion of the clip using a flat-head screwdriver as shown in the illustration.
2. Pull the protruded center portion to remove the entire body of the clip.

▽ **Type C clips**

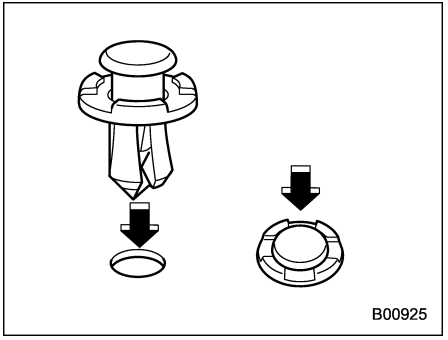



1. Turn the clip counterclockwise using a Phillips screwdriver until the center portion of the clip is raised.
2. Remove the entire clip by pulling it up.

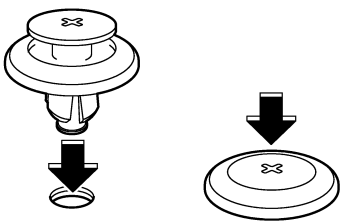
▼ **Reinstalling clips**



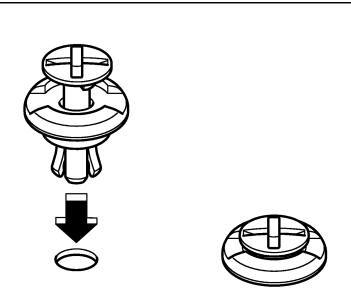

**Type A clips**




**Type B clips**




**Type C clips**




**Type D clips**

Insert the clip without the center portion first and then push the center portion of the clip into the hole.

## Engine hood

**⚠ WARNING**

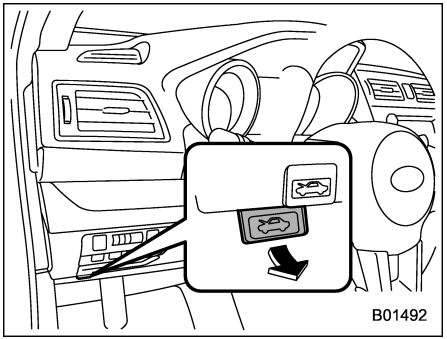
**Always check that the hood is properly locked before you start driving. If it is not, it might fly open while the vehicle is moving and block your view, which may cause an accident and serious bodily injury.**

**⚠ CAUTION**

- **When you open the engine hood, do not stand the wiper blades up. Furthermore, while the hood is open, do not operate the windshield wipers. Doing so could result in damage to the engine hood and wiper blades.**
- **Be extremely careful not to catch fingers or other objects when closing the engine hood.**
- **Do not push the hood forcibly to close it. It could deform the metal.**
- **Be extremely careful opening the engine hood when the wind is strong. The engine hood could close suddenly, possibly causing injuries from slamming.**
- **Do not install accessories other than genuine SUBARU parts or an equivalent to the engine hood. If the engine hood becomes too heavy, the stay may not be able to support holding it open.**

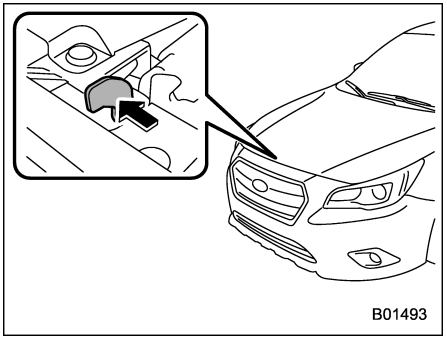
**To open the hood:**

1. If the wiper blades are lifted off the windshield, return them to their original positions.




2. Pull the hood lock release knob under the instrument panel.

– CONTINUED –




3. Release the secondary hood release by moving the lever between the front grille and the hood toward the left.
4. Lift up the hood.

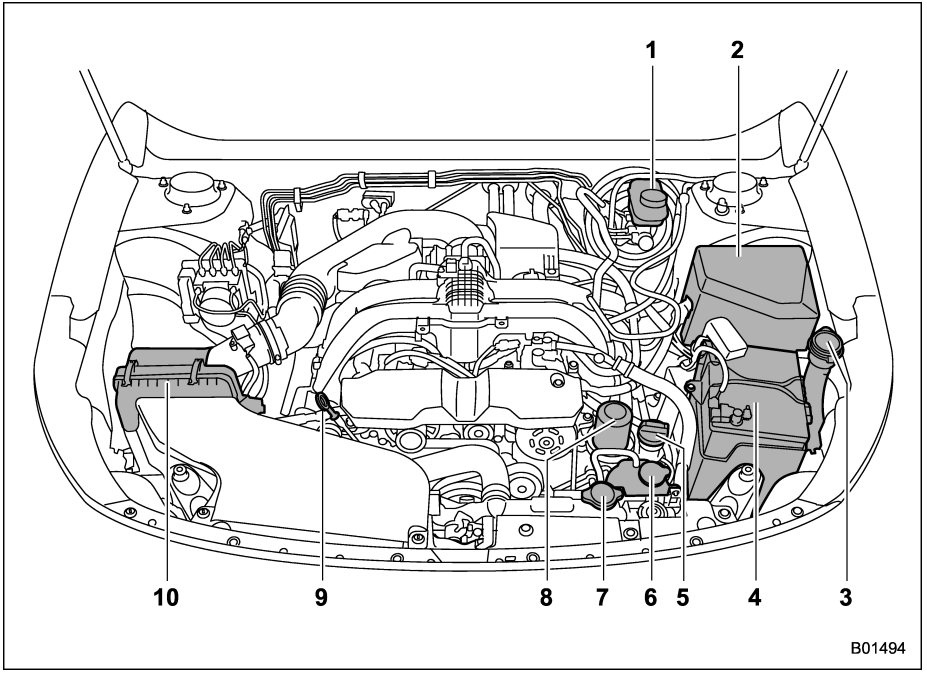
**To close the hood:**

1. Lower the hood to a height of approximately 15 cm (5.9 in) above its closed position and then let it drop.
2. After closing the hood, be sure the hood is securely locked.

If this does not close the hood, release it from a slightly higher position. Do not push the hood forcibly to close it. It could deform the metal.

## Engine compartment overview

### ■ 2.5 L models

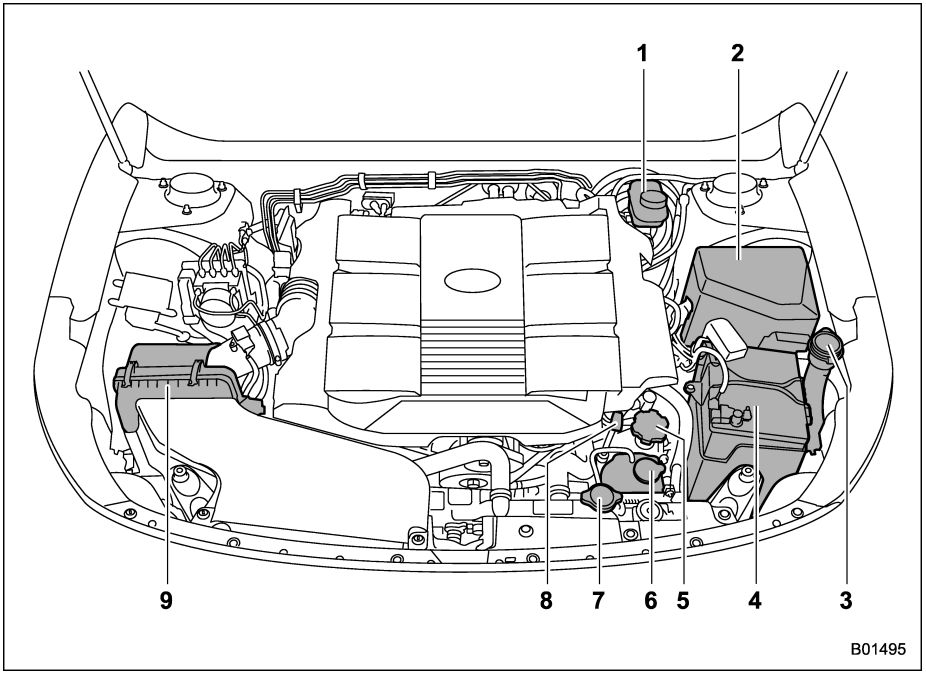



The illustration above is for left-hand drive models. The location of item No. 1 (brake fluid reservoir) for right-hand drive models is the opposite of that shown here.

1) Brake fluid reservoir (page 11-28)
2) Fuse box (page 11-47)
3) Windshield washer tank (page 11-41)
4) Battery (page 11-46)
5) Engine oil filler cap (page 11-16)
6) Engine coolant reservoir (page 11-23)
7) Radiator cap (page 11-23)
8) Engine oil filter (page 11-19)
9) Engine oil level gauge (page 11-16)
10) Air cleaner case (page 11-24)

– CONTINUED –

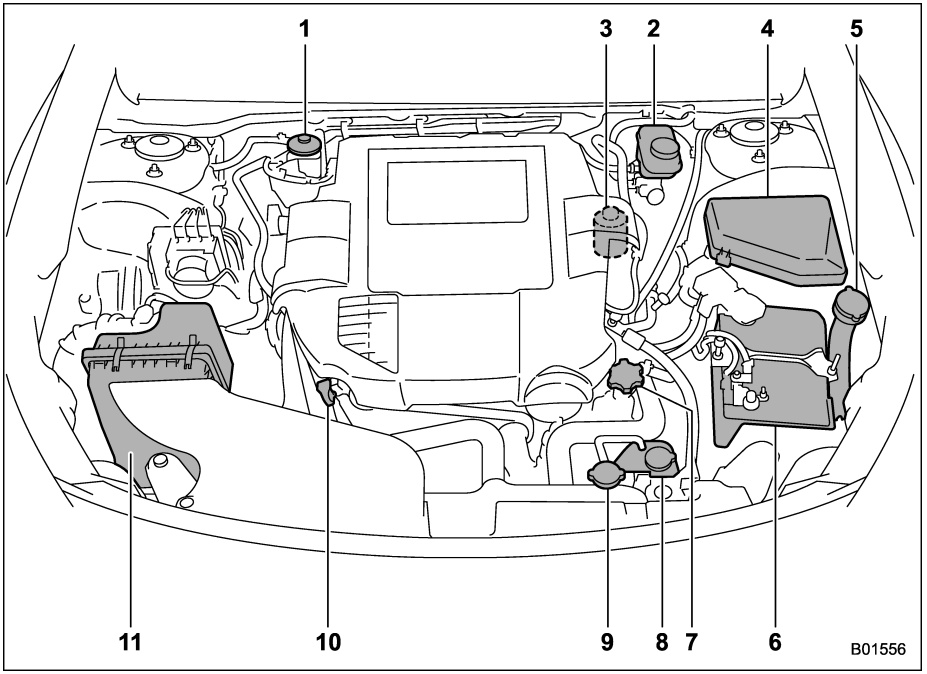
## ■ 3.6 L models




The illustration above is for left-hand drive models. The location of item No. 1 (brake fluid reservoir) for right-hand drive models is the opposite of that shown here.

1) Brake fluid reservoir (page 11-28)
2) Fuse box (page 11-47)
3) Windshield washer tank (page 11-41)
4) Battery (page 11-46)
5) Engine oil filler cap (page 11-16)
6) Engine coolant reservoir (page 11-23)
7) Radiator cap (page 11-23)
8) Engine oil level gauge (page 11-16)
9) Air cleaner case (page 11-24)

## ■ Turbo diesel engine models




The illustration above is for left-hand drive models. The locations of item No. 1 (priming pump) and No. 2 (brake and clutch fluid reservoir) for right-hand drive models are the opposite of those shown here.

1) Priming pump (page 9-33)
2) Brake fluid reservoir/Clutch fluid reservoir (MT) (page 11-28)
3) Engine oil filter (page 11-19)
4) Fuse box (page 11-47)
5) Windshield washer tank (page 11-41)
6) Battery (page 11-46)
7) Engine oil filler cap (page 11-16)
8) Engine coolant reservoir (page 11-23)
9) Radiator cap (page 11-22)
10) Engine oil level gauge (page 11-16)
11) Air cleaner case (page 11-24)

## Engine oil

**⚠ CAUTION**

- **If the level gauge does not come out easily, twist the level gauge right and left, then pull it out. Otherwise, you may be injured accidentally straining yourself.**
- **Use only engine oil with the recommended grade and viscosity.**
- **Be careful not to spill engine oil when adding it. If oil touches the exhaust pipe, it may cause a bad smell, smoke, and/or a fire. If engine oil gets on the exhaust pipe, be sure to wipe it off.**

### ■ Engine oil consumption

Some engine oil will be consumed while driving. Under the following conditions, oil consumption can be increased and thus require refilling between maintenance intervals:

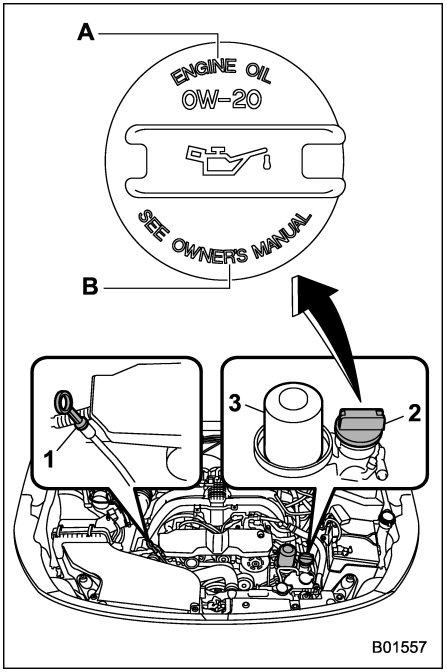
- When the engine is new and within the break-in period
- When the engine oil is of lower quality
- When the incorrect oil viscosity is used
- When engine braking is employed
- When the engine is operated at high engine speeds
- When the engine is operated under heavy loads
- When towing a trailer
- When the engine idles for long periods of time
- When the vehicle is operated in stop and go and/or heavy traffic situations
- When the vehicle is used under severe thermal conditions
- When the vehicle accelerates and decelerates frequently

Under these or similar conditions, you should check your oil at least every 2nd fuel fill-up and change your engine oil more frequently. If your oil consumption rate for petrol engine models is greater than 1 liter every 2,000 kilometers or 1 quart every 1,200 miles, contact your SUBARU dealer who may perform a test under controlled conditions.

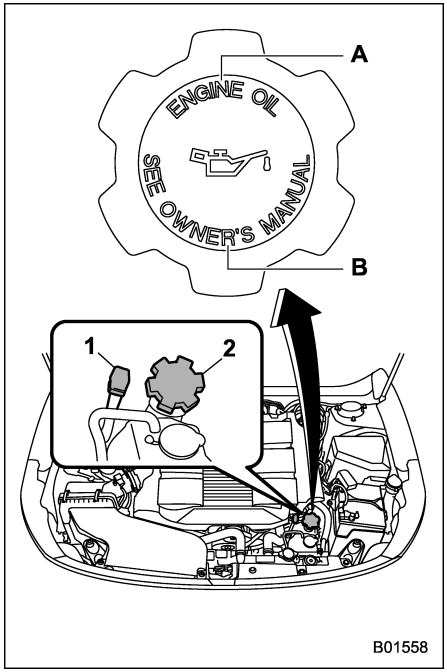
### ■ Checking the oil level

**▼ Petrol engine**

1. Park the vehicle on a level surface and stop the engine. If you check the oil level just after stopping the engine, wait a few minutes for the oil to drain back into the oil pan before checking the level.



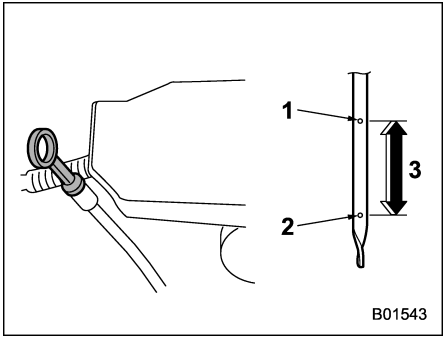

**2.5 L models**
1) Engine oil level gauge
2) Engine oil filler cap
3) Oil filter
A) ENGINE OIL
B) SEE OWNER'S MANUAL




**3.6 L models**
1) Engine oil level gauge
2) Engine oil filler cap
A) ENGINE OIL
B) SEE OWNER'S MANUAL

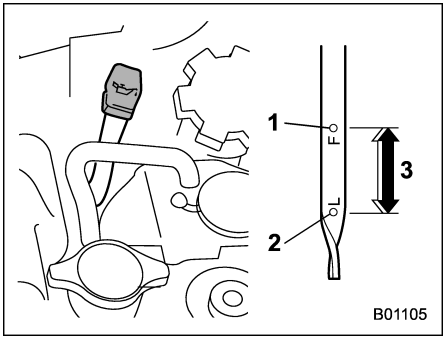
2. Pull out the level gauge, wipe it clean, and insert it again.

3. Be sure the level gauge is correctly inserted until it stops (for 3.6 L models, with the graphic symbol "" on its top appearing as shown in the illustration).




**2.5 L models**
1) Full level
2) Low level
3) Approximately 1.0 liter (1.1 US qt, 0.9 Imp qt) from low level to full level

*– CONTINUED –*




**3.6 L models**
1) Full level
2) Low level
3) Approximately 1.0 liter (1.1 US qt, 0.9 Imp qt) from low level to full level

4. Pull out the oil level gauge again.
5. **2.5 L models:**

Check the oil levels on both sides of the level gauge. The engine oil level must be judged by the lowest of the two levels. If the oil level is below the low level mark, add oil so that the full level is reached.

**3.6 L models:**

Check the oil level on the gauge. If the oil level is below the low level mark, add oil so that the full level is reached.

**⚠ CAUTION**

- **For 2.5 L models, be careful not to touch the engine oil filter when removing the oil filler cap. Doing so may result in a burn, a pinched finger, or may cause some other injury.**
- **Use only engine oil with the recommended grade and viscosity.**
- **Be careful not to spill engine oil when adding it. If oil touches the exhaust pipe, it may cause a bad smell, smoke, and/or a fire. If engine oil gets on the exhaust pipe, be sure to wipe it off.**

## NOTE

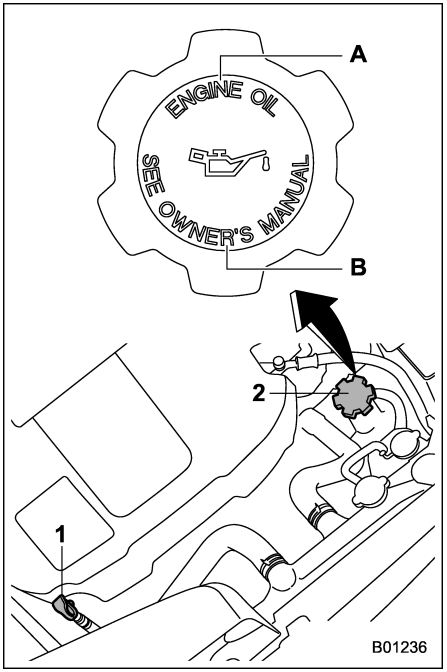
**To prevent overfilling the engine oil, do not add any additional oil above the full level when the engine is cold.**

**▼ Diesel engine**

## NOTE

**Make sure to check the engine oil level 5 minutes after the engine stops. Waiting any longer will prevent accurate oil level measurement.**

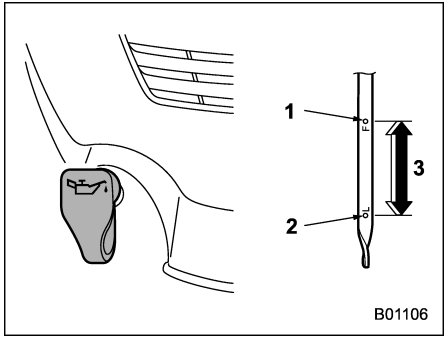
1. Park the vehicle on a level surface.
2. Keep the engine idling until the idle speed stabilizes. When starting the engine from the completely cold state, continue warming up the engine until it reaches the normal operating temperature range, as notified by the turning off of the coolant temperature low indicator light that has illuminated in blue on the combination meter. After that, stop the engine and wait for 5 minutes.




1) Engine oil level gauge
2) Engine oil filler cap
A) ENGINE OIL
B) SEE OWNER'S MANUAL

3. Pull out the level gauge, wipe it clean, and insert it again.

4. Be sure the level gauge is correctly inserted until it stops with the graphic symbol "" on its top appearing as shown in the illustration.




1) Full level
2) Low level
3) Approximately 1.0 liter (1.1 US qt, 0.9 Imp qt) from low level to full level

5. Pull out the level gauge again and check the oil level on it. If it is below the low level, it is necessary to add engine oil to bring the level up to the full level.

6. To add engine oil, remove the engine oil filler cap and slowly pour engine oil through the filler neck.

**CAUTION**

- **Use only engine oil with the recommended grade and viscosity.**
- **Be careful not to spill engine oil when adding it. If oil touches the exhaust pipe, it may cause a bad smell, smoke, and/or a fire. If engine oil gets on the exhaust pipe, be sure to wipe it off.**

## NOTE

**To prevent overfilling the engine oil, do not add any additional oil above the full level.**

7. Restart the engine and keep the engine idling until the idle speed stabilizes.

8. Stop the engine. After 5 minutes, check the oil level again.

## ■ Changing the oil and oil filter

Change the oil and oil filter according to the maintenance schedule.

The engine oil and oil filter must be changed more frequently than listed in the maintenance schedule, when short trips are frequently made, when towing a trailer, or when driving in extremely cold

– CONTINUED –

weather.

## NOTE

**• Changing the engine oil and oil filter should be performed by a well-trained expert. We recommend that you contact your SUBARU dealer for changing the engine oil and oil filter. Fully trained mechanics are on standby at a SUBARU dealer to utilize the special tools, spare parts and recommended oil for this work, and also, used oils are properly disposed of.**

**• If performing oil replacement yourself, observe the local regulations and dispose of waste oil properly.**

**• For diesel engine models, the engine oil replacement data that is stored in the on-board computer should be reset using a special tool every time engine oil and the oil filter are replaced. If the data is not reset, the diesel particulate filter warning light does not operate properly. To reset the data of the on-board computer without a special tool, see the following item.**

**▼ Resetting the oil replacement data (diesel engine models)**

## NOTE

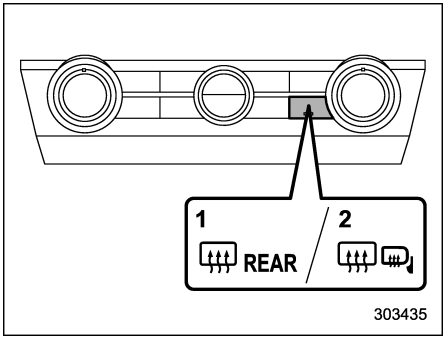
**If the resetting procedure was unsuccessful, repeat steps 1) through 5) after performing the following items.**

**– Wait for 30 seconds with engine idling.**

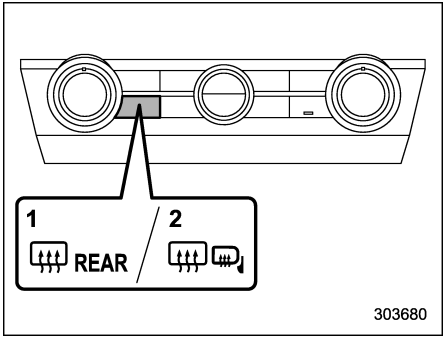
**– Turn the engine off, and restart the engine after waiting 15 seconds.**

After engine oil and the oil filter have been replaced, the oil replacement data should be reset. To reset the data without a special tool, perform the following procedures.

1. Depress the brake pedal.
2. Start the engine, and keep it in idling. For the engine starting procedure, refer to “Starting and stopping engine (models without push-button start system)” ☞7-7 or “Starting and stopping engine (models with push-button start system)” ☞7-10.
3. For MT models, release the clutch pedal.
4. With depressing the brake pedal, perform the following steps:
   (1) Push the rear window defogger switch to ON.

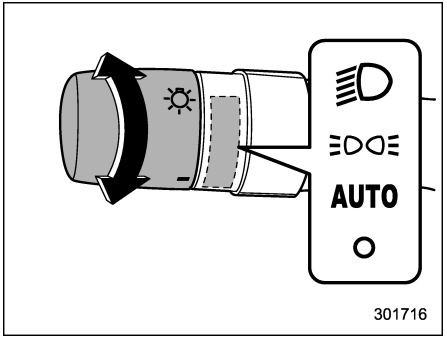



**Left-hand drive models**
1) Models without outside mirror defogger
2) Models with outside mirror defogger

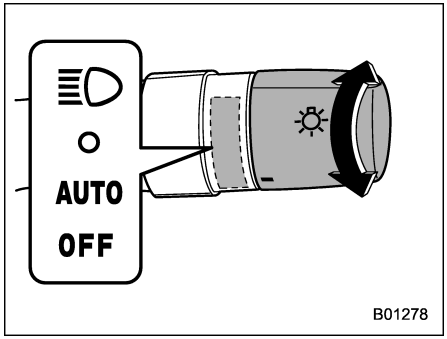



**Right-hand drive models**
1) Models without outside mirror defogger
2) Models with outside mirror defogger

(2) Turn the headlight switch to the following position.
– "≡D◁≡" position (except Australia models)
– "O" position (Australia models)




**Except Australia models**

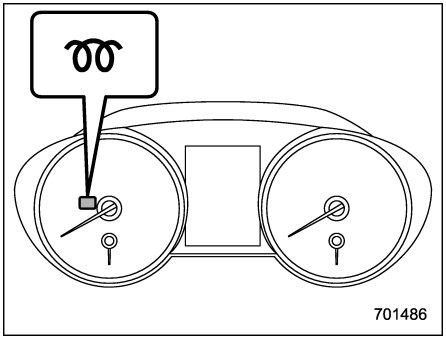



**Australia models**

(3) Push the rear window defogger switch to OFF.
(4) Turn the headlight switch to the off position.
(5) Repeat steps (1) through (4) once more, and go to next step.
(6) Release the brake pedal.

## NOTE

**Each step between (1) through (6) must be operated within 4 seconds.**




**Preheating indicator light**

5. Preheating indicator light will blink approximately 5 seconds when the data was reset successfully.

## ■ Recommended grade and viscosity

**⚠ CAUTION**

**Use only engine oil with the recommended grade and viscosity.**

Refer to "Engine oil" ☞12-5.

## NOTE

**Engine oil viscosity (thickness) affects fuel economy. Oils of lower viscosity provide better fuel economy. However,**

*– CONTINUED –*

**in hot weather, oil of higher viscosity is required to properly lubricate the engine.**

### ■ Synthetic oil

You can use synthetic engine oil that meets the same requirements given for conventional engine oil. When using synthetic oil, you must use oil of the same classification, viscosity and grade shown in this Owner's Manual. Refer to "Engine oil" ☞12-5. Also, you must follow the oil and filter changing intervals shown in the maintenance schedule. Refer to "Maintenance schedule" ☞11-3.

### NOTE

**Synthetic oil of the grade and viscosity noted in chapter 12 is the recommended engine oil for optimum engine performance. Conventional oil may be used with no detriment to engine durability or driveability.**

## Cooling system

**⚠ WARNING**

**Never attempt to remove the radiator cap until the engine has been shut off and has cooled down completely. Since the coolant is under pressure, you may suffer serious burns from a spray of boiling hot coolant when the cap is removed.**

**⚠ CAUTION**

- **The cooling system has been filled at the factory with a high quality, corrosion-inhibiting, year-round coolant which provides protection against freezing down to −36°C (−33°F). Make sure to always use genuine SUBARU Super Coolant or an equivalent (non-amine type coolant).**
- **If the coolant requires water dilution, be sure to use soft water (or clear and drinkable water) and to follow the required dilution ratio.**
- **Mixing with a different coolant and/or hard water may result in problems including, but not limited to, shortened engine component life, cooling system clogging, coolant leaks and engine damage from overheating. Therefore, never mix different kinds of coolant and/or hard water even if freezing temperatures are not expected.**
- **Do not splash the engine coolant over painted parts. The alcohol contained in the engine coolant may damage the paint surface.**

### ■ Cooling fan, hose and connections

Your vehicle employs an electric cooling fan which is thermostatically controlled to operate when the engine coolant reaches a specific temperature.

If the radiator cooling fan does not operate even when the engine coolant temperature gauge exceeds the normal operating range, the cooling fan circuit may be defective. Refer to "Temperature gauge" ☞3-11.

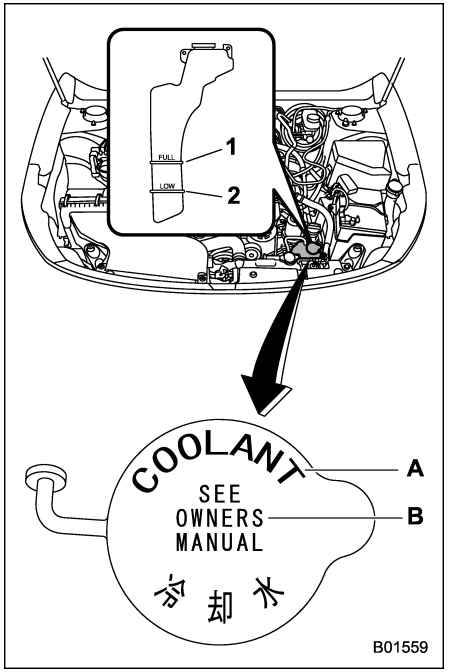
Check the fuse and replace it if necessary. Refer to "Fuses" ☞11-47 and "Fuses and circuits" ☞12-14. If the fuse is not blown,

we recommend that you have the cooling system checked by your SUBARU dealer.

If frequent addition of coolant is necessary, there may be a leak in the engine cooling system. It is recommended that the cooling system and connections be checked for leaks, damage, or looseness.

## ■ Engine coolant

### ▼ Checking the coolant level




1) "FULL" level mark
2) "LOW" level mark
A) COOLANT
B) SEE OWNER'S MANUAL

Check the coolant level at each fuel stop.

1. Check the coolant level on the outside of the reservoir while the engine is cool.
2. If the level is close to or lower than the "LOW" level mark, add coolant up to the "FULL" level mark. If the reserve tank is empty, remove the radiator cap and refill as required.
3. After refilling the reserve tank and the radiator, reinstall the cap and check that the rubber gaskets inside the radiator cap are in the proper position.

**⚠ CAUTION**

- **Be careful not to spill engine coolant when adding it. If coolant touches the exhaust pipe, it may cause a bad smell, smoke, and/or a fire. If engine coolant gets on the exhaust pipe, be sure to wipe it off.**
- **Do not splash the engine coolant over painted parts. The alcohol contained in the engine coolant may damage the paint surface.**

### ▼ Changing the coolant

It may be difficult to change the coolant. We recommend that you have the coolant changed by your SUBARU dealer if

– CONTINUED –

necessary.

The coolant should be changed according to the maintenance schedule in the “Maintenance schedule” ☞11-3.

## Air cleaner element

The air cleaner element functions as a filter screen. When the element is perforated or removed, engine wear will be excessive and engine life shortened.

It is unnecessary to clean or wash the air cleaner element.

**⚠ WARNING**

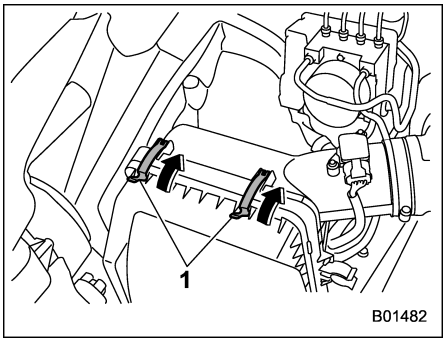
**Do not operate the engine with the air cleaner element removed. The air cleaner element not only filters intake air but also stops flames if the engine backfires. If the air cleaner element is not installed when the engine backfires, you could be burned.**

**⚠ CAUTION**

**When replacing the air cleaner element, we recommend that you use a genuine SUBARU air cleaner element. If it is not used, there is the possibility of causing a negative effect to the engine.**

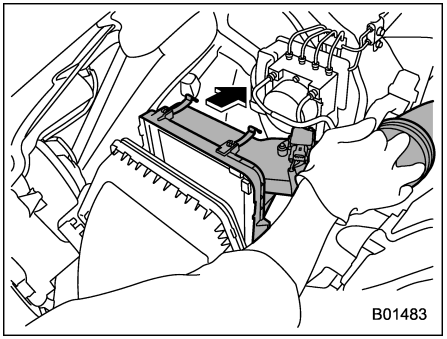
### ■ Replacing the air cleaner element

#### ▼ 2.5 L models and diesel engine models

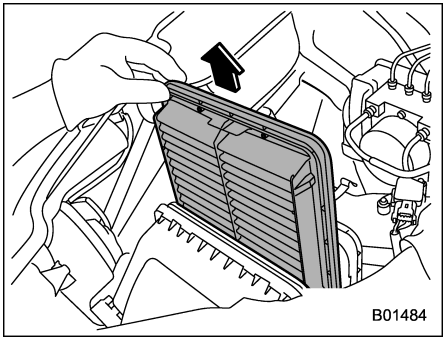



1) Clip

1. Unsnap the two clips holding the air cleaner case (rear).




2. Open the air cleaner case.

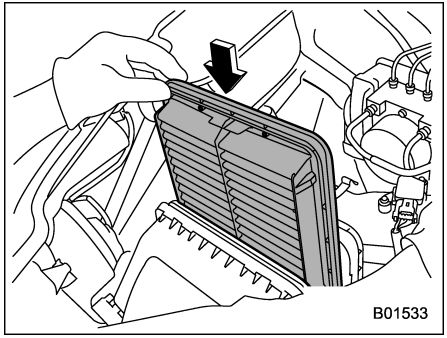



3. Remove the air cleaner element.

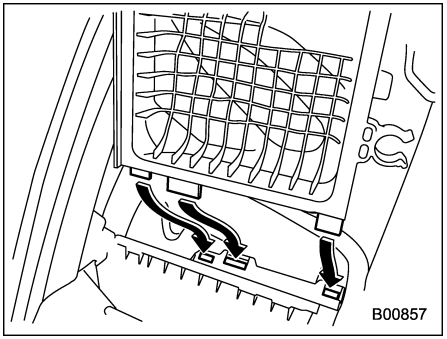
**⚠ CAUTION**

**If the inside of the air cleaner case is extremely soiled (for example, by sand), we recommend that you contact a SUBARU dealer and have the air cleaner case cleaned.**

4. If you find large foreign objects such as leaves inside the air cleaner case, remove the foreign objects.



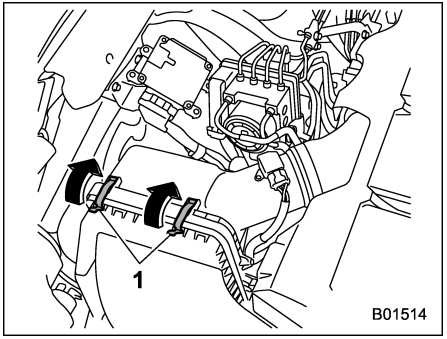

5. Install a new air cleaner element in the way the longitudinal side and the transverse side face as shown in the illustration.




6. To install the air cleaner case (rear), insert the three projections on the air cleaner case (rear) into the slits on the air cleaner case (front).
7. Install in the reverse order of removal.

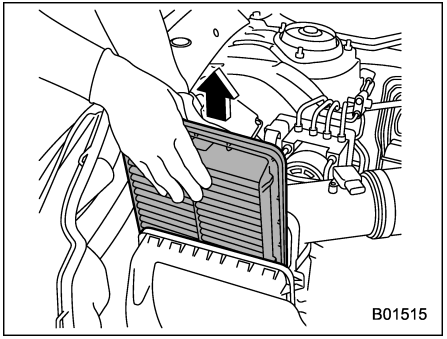
– CONTINUED –

▼ **3.6 L models**




1) Clips

1. Unsnap the two clips holding the air cleaner case (rear).

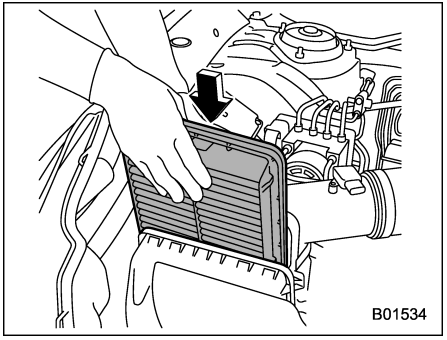



2. Open the air cleaner case and remove the air cleaner element.

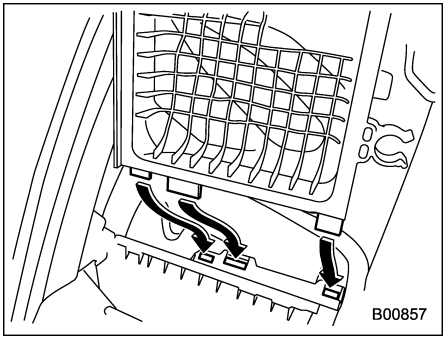
**CAUTION**

**If the inside of the air cleaner case is extremely soiled (for example, by sand), we recommend that you contact a SUBARU dealer and have the air cleaner case cleaned.**

3. If you find large foreign objects such as leaves inside the air cleaner case, remove the foreign objects.




4. Install a new air cleaner element in the way the longitudinal side and the transverse side face as shown in the illustration.




5. To install the air cleaner case (rear), insert the three projections on the air cleaner case (rear) into the slits on the air cleaner case (front).
6. Install the removed parts in the reverse order of removal.

## Spark plugs (petrol engine models)

It may be difficult to replace the spark plugs. It is recommended that you have the spark plugs replaced by your SUBARU dealer.

The spark plugs should be replaced according to the maintenance schedule. Refer to “Maintenance schedule” ☞11-3.

### ■ Recommended spark plugs

Refer to “Electrical system” ☞12-12.

## Drive belts

It is unnecessary to check the deflection of the drive belt periodically because your engine is equipped with an automatic belt tension adjuster. However, replacement of the belt should be done according to the maintenance schedule. We recommend that you consult your SUBARU dealer for replacement.

If the drive belt is loose, cracked or worn, we recommend that you contact your SUBARU dealer.

## Manual transmission oil

It is unnecessary to check the manual transmission oil level. However, if necessary, we recommend that you consult your SUBARU dealer for inspection.

### ■ Recommended grade and viscosity

Each oil manufacturer has its own base oils and additives. Never use different brands together. For details, refer to “Manual transmission, front differential and rear differential gear oil” ☞12-9.

## Continuously variable transmission fluid

There is no fluid level gauge. It is unnecessary to check the continuously variable transmission fluid level. However, if necessary, we recommend that you consult your SUBARU dealer for inspection.

## Front differential gear oil (CVT models) and rear differential gear oil

There is no oil level gauge. To check the gear oil level, we recommend that you consult your SUBARU dealer for inspection.

### ■ Recommended grade and viscosity

Each oil manufacturer has its own base oils and additives. Never use different brands together. For details, refer to "Manual transmission, front differential and rear differential gear oil" ☞12-9.

**⚠ CAUTION**

**Using a differential gear oil other than the specified oil may cause occurrences of rattling noises while idling and poor fuel consumption.**

## Brake fluid

### ■ Checking the fluid level

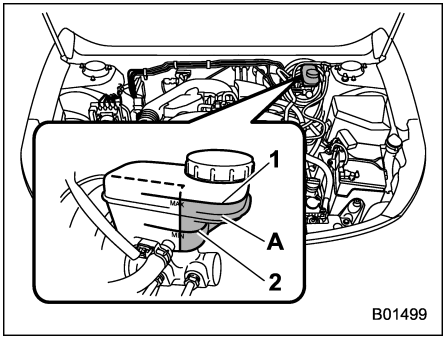
**⚠ WARNING**

- **Never let brake fluid contact your eyes because brake fluid can be harmful to your eyes. If brake fluid gets in your eyes, immediately flush them thoroughly with clean water. For safety, when performing this work, wearing eye protection is advisable.**
- **Brake fluid absorbs moisture from the air. Any absorbed moisture can cause a dangerous loss of braking performance. For vehicles with manual transmission, the brake fluid in the brake fluid reservoir is also used as the clutch fluid for the clutch system. Therefore, moisture-absorbed brake fluid may interfere with the proper operation of the clutch system.**

- **If the vehicle requires frequent refilling, there may be a leak. If you suspect a problem, we recommend that you have the vehicle checked at your SUBARU dealer.**

**⚠ CAUTION**

- **When adding brake fluid, be careful not to allow any dirt into the reservoir.**
- **Never splash the brake fluid over painted surfaces or rubber parts. Alcohol contained in the brake fluid may damage them.**
- **Be careful not to spill brake fluid when adding it. If brake fluid touches the exhaust pipe, it may cause a bad smell, smoke, and/or a fire. If brake fluid gets on the exhaust pipe, be sure to wipe it off.**




1) "MAX" level line
2) "MIN" level line

A) The brake fluid level must be checked in this area.

Check the fluid level monthly.

Check the fluid level on the outside of the reservoir. Be sure to check the fluid level for the brake system at the **front part of the reservoir** (shaded area in the illustration). For MT models, this reservoir is used for both the brake and clutch systems and has chambers for each system. If the fluid level is below "MIN", add the recommended brake fluid to "MAX".

Use only brake fluid from a sealed container.

## ■ Recommended brake fluid

Refer to "Fluids" ☞12-11.

**⚠ CAUTION**

**Never use different brands of brake fluid together. Also, avoid mixing DOT 3 and DOT 4 brake fluids even if they are the same brand.**

## Clutch fluid (MT models)

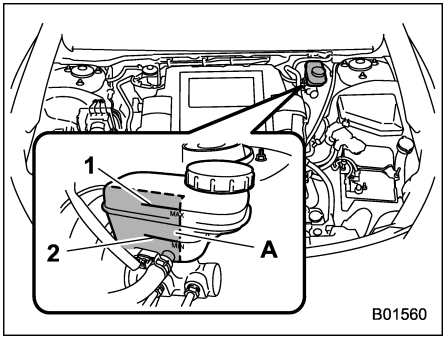
### ■ Checking the fluid level

**⚠ WARNING**

**Never let clutch fluid contact your eyes because clutch fluid can be harmful to your eyes. If clutch fluid gets in your eyes, immediately flush them thoroughly with clean water. For safety, when performing this work, wearing eye protection is advisable.**

**⚠ CAUTION**

- **Clutch fluid absorbs moisture from the air. Any absorbed moisture can cause improper clutch operation.**
- **If the vehicle requires frequent refilling, there may be a leak. If you suspect a problem, we recommend that you have the vehicle checked at your SUBARU dealer.**
- **When clutch fluid is added, be careful not to allow any dirt into the tank.**
- **Never splash the clutch fluid over painted surfaces or rubber parts. Alcohol contained in the clutch fluid may damage them.**
- **Be careful not to spill clutch fluid when adding it. If clutch fluid touches the exhaust pipe, it may cause a bad smell, smoke, and/or a fire. If clutch fluid gets on the exhaust pipe, be sure to wipe it off.**
- **The fluid level for the clutch system must be checked at the inboard side of the reservoir. It cannot be checked at the outboard side of the reservoir.**




1) "MAX" level line
2) "MIN" level line
A) The clutch fluid level must be checked in this area.

Check the fluid level monthly.

Check the fluid level on the outside of the reservoir. Because this reservoir is used for both the brake and clutch systems and has chambers for each system, be sure to check the fluid level for the clutch system at the **inboard side of the reservoir** (shaded area in the illustration). If the fluid level is below "MIN", add the recommended clutch fluid to "MAX".

Use only clutch fluid from a sealed container.

### ■ Recommended clutch fluid

Refer to “Fluids” ☞12-11.

**⚠ CAUTION**

**Never use different brands of clutch fluid together. Also, avoid mixing DOT 3 and DOT 4 brake fluids even if they are the same brand.**

## Brake booster

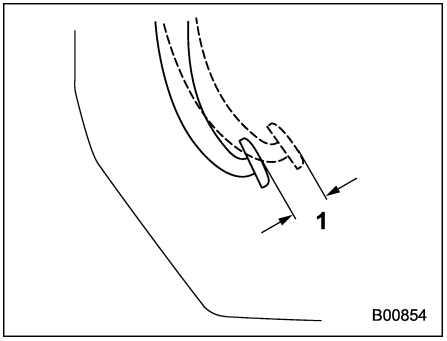
If the brake booster does not operate as described in the following, we recommend that you have it checked by your SUBARU dealer.

1. With the engine off, depress the brake pedal several times, applying the same pedal force each time. The distance the pedal travels should not vary.
2. With the brake pedal depressed, start the engine. The pedal should move slightly down to the floor.
3. With the brake pedal depressed, stop the engine and keep the pedal depressed for 30 seconds. The pedal height should not change.
4. Start the engine again and run for approximately 1 minute then turn it off. Depress the brake pedal several times to check the brake booster. The brake booster operates properly if the pedal stroke decreases with each depression.

## Brake pedal

Check the brake pedal free play and reserve distance according to the maintenance schedule.

### ■ Checking the brake pedal free play



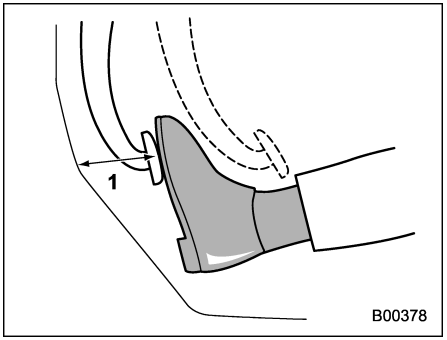

1) 0.5 – 2.7 mm (0.02 – 0.11 in)

Stop the engine and firmly depress the brake pedal several times. Then, check the amount of free play by pulling up the brake pedal with a force of less than 10 N (1 kgf, 2 lbf).

If the free play is not within proper specification, we recommend that you contact your SUBARU dealer.

– CONTINUED –

### ■ Checking the brake pedal reserve distance




1) Left-hand drive models:
More than 65 mm (2.56 in)
Right-hand drive models:
More than 85 mm (3.35 in)

Depress the pedal with a force of approximately 294 N (30 kgf, 66 lbf) and measure the distance between the upper surface of the pedal pad and the floor.

When the measurement is smaller than the specification, or when the pedal does not operate smoothly, we recommend that you contact with your SUBARU dealer.

## Clutch pedal (MT models)

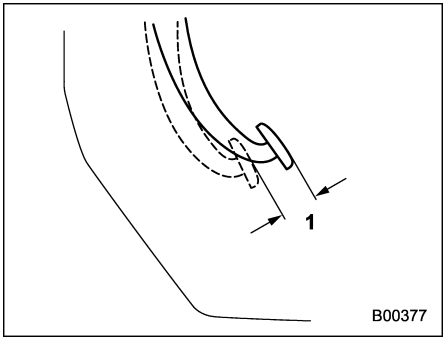
Check the clutch pedal free play and reserve distance according to the maintenance schedule.

### ■ Checking the clutch function

Check the clutch engagement and disengagement.

1. With the engine idling, check that there are no abnormal noises when the clutch pedal is depressed, and that shifting into 1st or reverse feels smooth.
2. Start the vehicle by releasing the pedal slowly to check that the engine and transmission smoothly couple without any sign of slippage.

### ■ Checking the clutch pedal free play




1) 4 – 13 mm (0.16 – 0.51 in)

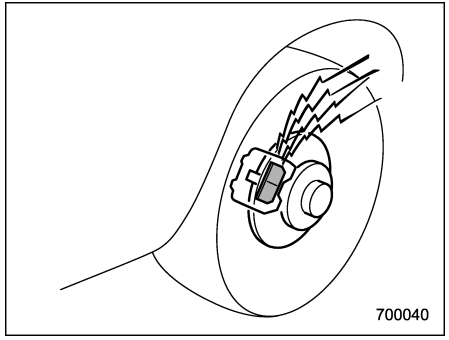
Lightly depress the clutch pedal down with your finger until you feel resistance, and check the free play.

If the free play is not within proper specification, we recommend that you contact your SUBARU dealer.

## Replacement of brake pad

**⚠ CAUTION**

- **If you continue to drive despite the scraping noise from the audible brake pad wear indicator, it will result in the need for costly brake rotor repair or replacement.**
- **It is recommended that you disconnect the vehicle battery before replacing the brake pad. However, it is dangerous to disconnect the vehicle battery. We recommend that you have your SUBARU dealer replace the brake pad.**




The disc brakes have audible wear indicators on the brake pads. If the brake pads wear close to their service limit, the wear indicator makes a very audible scraping noise when the brake pedal is applied.

If you hear this scraping noise each time you apply the brake pedal, we recommend that you have the brake pads serviced by your SUBARU dealer as soon as possible.

### ■ Breaking-in of new brake pads

When replacing the brake pad, we recommend that you use only genuine SUBARU parts. After replacement, the new parts must be broken in as follows.

**▼ Brake pad**

While maintaining a speed of 50 to 65 km/h (30 to 40 mph), step on the brake pedal lightly. Repeat this five or more times.

## Tires and wheels

### ■ Types of tires

You should be familiar with type of tires present on your vehicle.

**▼ All season tires**

All season tires are designed to provide an adequate measure of traction, handling and braking performance in year-round driving including snowy and icy road conditions. However all season tires do not offer as much traction performance as winter (snow) tires in heavy or loose snow or on icy roads.

All season tires are identified by “ALL SEASON” and/or “M+S” (Mud & Snow) on the tire sidewall.

**▼ Summer tires**

Summer tires are high-speed capability tires best suited for highway driving under dry conditions.

Summer tires are inadequate for driving on slippery roads such as on snow-covered or icy roads.

If you drive your vehicle on snow-covered or icy roads, we strongly recommend the use of winter (snow) tires.

When installing winter tires, be sure to replace all four tires.

– CONTINUED –

### ▼ Winter (snow) tires

Winter tires are best suited for driving on snow-covered and icy roads. However winter tires do not perform as well as summer tires and all season tires on roads other than snow-covered and icy roads.

## ■ Tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS) (if equipped)

The tire pressure monitoring system provides the driver with a warning message by sending a signal from a sensor that is installed in each wheel when tire pressure is severely low. The tire pressure monitoring system will activate only when the vehicle is driven. Also, this system may not react immediately to a sudden drop in tire pressure (for example, a blow-out caused by running over a sharp object).

If you adjust the tire pressures in a warm garage and will then drive the vehicle in cold outside air, the resulting drop in tire pressures may cause the low tire pressure warning light to illuminate. To avoid this problem when adjusting the tire pressures in a warm garage, inflate the tires to pressures higher than those shown on the tire placard. Specifically, inflate them by an extra 6.9 kPa (0.07 kgf/cm$^2$, 1 psi) for every difference of 5.6°C (10°F) between the temperature in the garage and the temperature outside. By way of example, the following table shows the required tire pressures that correspond to various outside temperatures when the temperature in the garage is 15.5°C (60°F).

**Example:**

Tire size: 225/60R17 99V

Standard tire pressures:

Front: 220 kPa (2.2 kgf/cm$^2$, 32 psi)

Rear: 210 kPa (2.1 kgf/cm$^2$, 30 psi)

Garage temperature: 15.5°C (60°F)

| Outside temperature | Adjusted pressure [kPa (kgf/cm$^2$, psi)] | |
|---|---|---|
| | Front | Rear |
| −1°C (30°F) | 240 (2.4, 35) | 230 (2.3, 33) |
| −12°C (10°F) | 255 (2.55, 37) | 240 (2.4, 35) |
| −23°C (−10°F) | 270 (2.7, 39) | 255 (2.55, 37) |

If the low tire pressure warning light illuminates when you drive the vehicle in cold outside air after adjusting the tire pressures in a warm garage, re-adjust the tire pressures using the method described above. Then, increase the vehicle speed to at least 40 km/h (25 mph) and check to see that the low tire pressure warning light turns off a few minutes later. If the low tire pressure warning light does not turn off, the tire pressure monitoring system may not be functioning normally. In this event, we recommend that you go to a SUBARU dealer to have the system inspected as soon as possible.

While the vehicle is driven, friction between tires and the road surface causes the tires to warm up. After illumination of the low tire pressure warning light, any increase in the tire pressures caused by an increase in the outside air temperature or by an increase in the temperature in the tires can cause the low tire pressure warning light to turn off.

System resetting is necessary when the wheels are changed (for example, a switch to snow tires) and new TPMS valves are installed on the newly fitted wheels. We recommend that you have this work performed by a SUBARU dealer following wheel replacement.

It may not be possible to install TPMS valves on certain wheels that are on the market. Therefore, if you change the wheels (for example, a switch to snow tires), use wheels that have the same part number as the standard-equipment wheels. Without four operational TPMS valve/sensors on the wheels, the TPMS will not fully function and the warning light on the combination meter will illuminate steadily after blinking for approximately one minute.

When a tire is replaced, adjustments are necessary to ensure continued normal operation of the tire pressure monitoring system. As with wheel replacement, therefore, we recommend that you have the work performed by a SUBARU dealer.

**WARNING**

**If the low tire pressure warning light does not illuminate briefly after the ignition switch is turned ON or the light illuminates steadily after blinking for approximately one minute, we recommend that you have your Tire Pressure Monitoring System checked at a SUBARU dealer as soon as possible.**

**If this light illuminates while driving, never brake suddenly and keep driving straight ahead while gradually reducing speed. Then slowly pull off the road to a safe place. Otherwise an accident involving serious vehicle damage and serious personal injury could occur.**

**If this light still illuminates while driving after adjusting the tire pressure, a tire may have significant damage and a fast leak that causes the tire to lose air rapidly. If you have a flat tire, replace it with a spare tire as soon as possible.**

**When a spare tire is mounted or a wheel rim is replaced without the original pressure sensor/transmitter being transferred, the low tire pressure warning light will illuminate steadily after blinking for approximately one minute. This indicates the TPMS is unable to monitor all four road wheels. We recommend that you contact your SUBARU dealer as soon as possible for tire and sensor replacement and/or system resetting. If the light illuminates steadily after blinking for approximately one minute, we recommend that you promptly contact a SUBARU dealer to have the system inspected.**

## ■ Tire inspection

Check on a daily basis that the tires are free from serious damage, nails, and stones. At the same time, check the tires for abnormal wear.

We recommend that you contact your SUBARU dealer immediately if you find any problem.

## NOTE

**• When the wheels and tires strike curbs or are subjected to harsh treatment as when the vehicle is driven on a rough surface, they can suffer damage that cannot be seen with the naked eye. This type of damage does not become evident until time has passed. Try not to drive over curbs, potholes or on other rough surfaces. If doing so is unavoidable, keep the vehicle's speed down to a walking pace or less, and approach the curbs as squarely as possible. Also, make sure the tires are not pressed against the curb when you park the vehicle.**

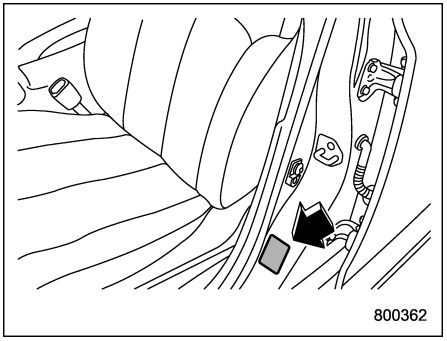
**• If you feel unusual vibration while driving or find it difficult to steer the vehicle in a straight line, one of the tires and/or wheels may be damaged. We recommend that you drive slowly to the nearest authorized SUBARU dealer and have the vehicle inspected.**

## ■ Tire pressures and wear

Maintaining the correct tire pressures helps to maximize the tires' service lives and is essential for good running performance. Check and, if necessary, adjust the pressure of each tire (including the spare - if equipped) at least once a month (for example, during a fuel stop) and

– CONTINUED –

before any long journey.




**Tire placard**

Check the tire pressures when the tires are cold. Use a pressure gauge to adjust the tire pressures to the values shown on the tire placard. The tire placard is located on the door pillar on the driver's side.

Driving even a short distance warms up the tires and increases the tire pressures. Also, the tire pressures are affected by the outside temperature. It is best to check tire pressure outdoors before driving the vehicle.

When a tire becomes warm, the air inside it expands, causing the tire pressure to increase. Be careful not to mistakenly release air from a warm tire to reduce its pressure.

**⚠ WARNING**

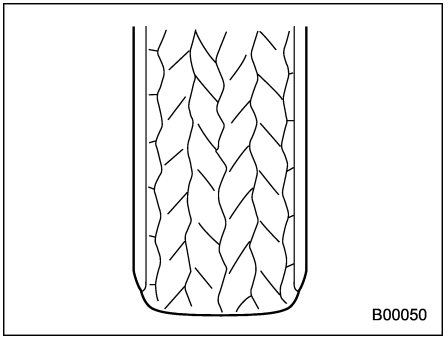
**Do not let air out of warm tires to adjust pressure. Doing so will result in low tire pressure.**

## NOTE

- **The air pressure in a tire increases by approximately 30 kPa (0.3 kgf/cm$^2$, 4.3 psi) when the tire becomes warm.**
- **The tires are considered cold when the vehicle has been parked for at least 3 hours or has been driven less than 1.6 km (1 mile).**

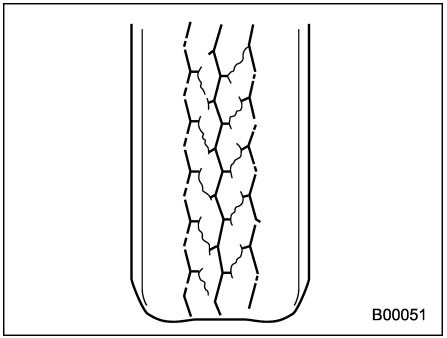
Incorrect tire pressures detract from controllability and ride comfort, and they cause the tires to wear abnormally.

- **Correct tire pressure** (tread worn evenly)



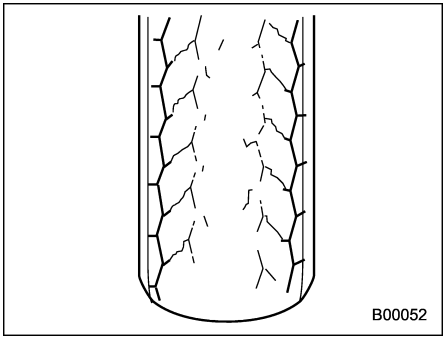

Roadholding is good, and steering is responsive. Rolling resistance is low, so fuel consumption is also lower.

• **Abnormally low tire pressure** (tread worn at shoulders)




Rolling resistance is high, so fuel consumption is also higher.

• **Abnormally high tire pressure** (tread worn in center)




Ride comfort is poor. Also, the tire magnifies the effects of road surface bumps and dips, possibly resulting in vehicle damage.

If the tire placard shows tire pressures for the vehicle when fully loaded and for the vehicle when towing a trailer, adjust the tire pressures to the values that match current loading conditions.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Driving at high speeds with excessively low tire pressures can cause the tires to deform severely and to rapidly become hot. A sharp increase in temperature could cause tread separation, and destruction of the tires. The resulting loss of vehicle control could lead to an accident.**

## ■ Wheel balance

Each wheel was correctly balanced when your vehicle was new, but the wheels will become unbalanced as the tires become worn during use. Wheel imbalance causes the steering wheel to vibrate slightly at certain vehicle speeds and detracts from the vehicle's straight-line stability. It can also cause steering and suspension system problems and abnormal tire wear. If you suspect that the wheels are not correctly balanced, we recommend that you have them checked and adjusted by your SUBARU dealer. Also have them adjusted after tire repairs and after tire rotation.

**⚠ CAUTION**

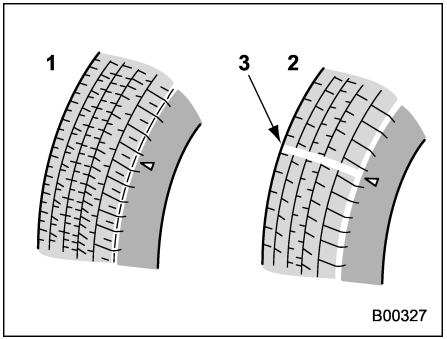
**Loss of correct wheel alignment causes the tires to wear on one side and reduces the vehicle's running stability. We recommend that you contact your SUBARU dealer if you notice abnormal tire wear.**

– CONTINUED –

## NOTE

**The suspension system is designed to hold each wheel at a certain alignment (relative to the other wheels and to the road) for optimum straight-line stability and cornering performance.**

## ■ Wear indicators




1) New tread
2) Worn tread
3) Tread wear indicator

Each tire incorporates a tread wear indicator, which becomes visible when the depth of the tread grooves decreases to 1.6 mm (0.063 in). A tire must be replaced when the tread wear indicator appears as a solid band across the tread.

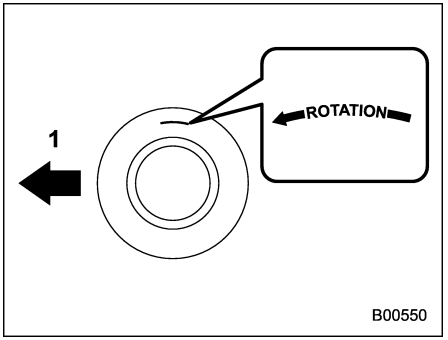
**⚠ WARNING**

**When a tire's tread wear indicator becomes visible, the tire is worn beyond the acceptable limit and must be replaced immediately. With a tire in this condition, driving at high speeds in wet weather can cause the vehicle to hydroplane. The resulting loss of vehicle control can lead to an accident.**

## NOTE

**For safety, inspect tire tread regularly and replace the tires before their tread wear indicators become visible.**

## ■ Tire rotation direction mark




**Example of tire rotation direction mark**
1) Front

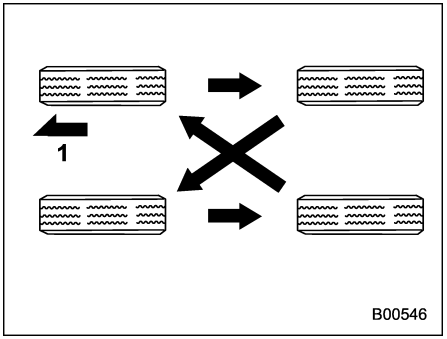
If the tire has the rotation direction specification, the tire rotation direction mark is placed on its sidewall.

When you install a tire that has the tire rotation direction mark, install the tire with the direction mark facing forward.

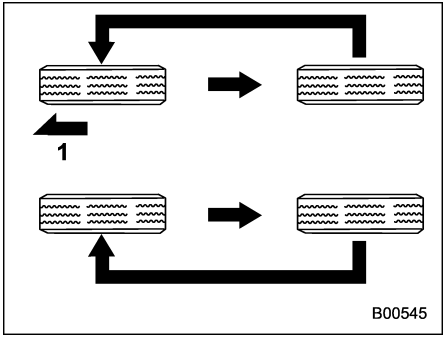
## ■ Tire rotation

## NOTE

**For models with flat tire repair kit, it may be difficult to rotate the tires. We recommend that you have the tires rotated by your SUBARU dealer.**




**Vehicles equipped with 4 non-unidirectional tires**
1) Front




**Vehicles equipped with unidirectional tires**
1) Front

Tire wear varies from wheel to wheel. To maximize the life of each tire and ensure that the tires wear uniformly, it is best to rotate the tires every 10,000 km (6,200 miles). Move the tires to the positions shown in the illustration each time they are rotated.

Replace any damaged or unevenly worn tire at the time of rotation. After tire rotation, adjust the tire pressures and make sure the wheel nuts are correctly tightened.

After driving approximately 1,000 km (600 miles), check the wheel nuts again and retighten any nut that has become loose.

## ■ Tire replacement

The wheels and tires are important and integral parts of your vehicle's design; they cannot be changed arbitrarily. The tires fitted as standard equipment are optimally matched to the characteristics of the vehicle and were selected to give the best possible combination of running performance, ride comfort, and service life. It is essential for every tire to have a size and construction matching those shown on the tire placard and to have a speed symbol and load index matching those shown on the tire placard.

Using tires of a non-specified size detracts from controllability, ride comfort, braking performance, speedometer accuracy and odometer accuracy. It also creates incorrect body-to-tire clearances and inappropriately changes the vehicle's ground clearance.

All four tires must be the same in terms of manufacturer, brand (tread pattern), construction, and size. You are advised to replace the tires with new ones that are identical to those fitted as standard equipment.

For safe vehicle operation, SUBARU recommends replacing all four tires at the same time.

**⚠ WARNING**

- **When replacing or installing tire(s), all four tires must be the same for the following items.**
  **(a) Size**
  **(b) Circumference**
  **(c) Speed symbol**
  **(d) Load index**
  **(e) Construction**
  **(f) Manufacturer**
  **(g) Brand (tread pattern)**
  **(h) Degrees of wear**

  **For items (a) to (d), you must**

– CONTINUED –

**obey the specification that is printed on the tire placard. The tire placard is located on the bottom of the driver's door pillar.**

**If all four tires are not the same in items (a) to (h), there is a possibility that it may lead to serious mechanical damage to the drive train of your car and affect the following factors.**

**— Ride**

**— Handling**

**— Braking**

**— Speedometer/Odometer calibration**

**— Clearance between the body and the tires**

**It also may be dangerous and lead to loss of vehicle control, and it can lead to an accident.**

- **Use only radial tires. Do not use radial tires together with belted bias tires and/or bias-ply tires. Doing so can dangerously reduce controllability, resulting in an accident.**

## ■ Wheel replacement

When replacing wheels due, for example, to damage, make sure the replacement wheels match the specifications of the wheels that are fitted as standard equipment. Replacement wheels are available from SUBARU dealers.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Use only those wheels that are specified for your vehicle. Wheels not meeting specifications could interfere with brake caliper operation and may cause the tires to rub against the wheel well housing during turns. The resulting loss of vehicle control could lead to an accident.**

### NOTE

**When any of the wheels are removed and replaced for tire rotation or to change a flat tire, always check the tightness of the wheel nuts after driving approximately 1,000 km (600 miles). If any nut is loose, tighten it to the specified torque.**

## Aluminum wheels (if equipped)

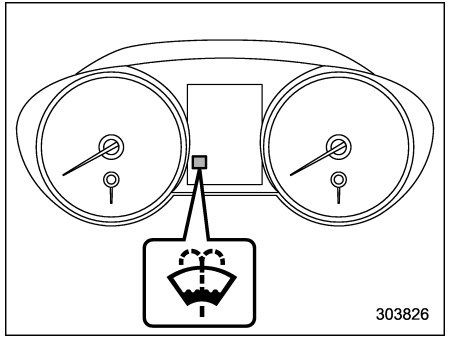
Aluminum wheels can be scratched and damaged easily. Handle them carefully to maintain their appearance, performance, and safety.

- When any of the wheels are removed and replaced for tire rotation or to change a flat, always check the tightness of the wheel nuts after driving approximately 1,000 km (600 miles). If any nut is loose, tighten it to the specified torque.
- Never apply oil to the threaded parts, wheel nuts, or tapered surface of the wheel.
- Never let the wheel rub against sharp protrusions or curbs.
- Be sure to fit tire chains on uniformly and completely around the tire, otherwise the chains may scratch the wheel.
- When wheel nuts, balance weights, or the center cap is replaced, we recommend that you replace them with genuine SUBARU parts designed for aluminum wheels.

## Windshield washer fluid

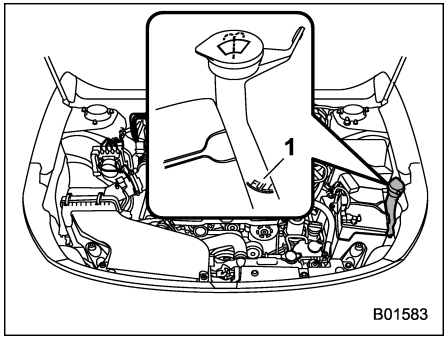
**⚠ CAUTION**

**Never use engine coolant as washer fluid because it could cause paint damage.**




**Windshield washer fluid warning indicator**

When there is only a small amount of washer fluid remaining, the windshield washer fluid warning indicator will appear. When this occurs, refill the washer fluid as follows.




1) "FULL" mark

Remove the washer tank filler cap, then add fluid until it reaches the "FULL" mark on the tank.

Use windshield washer fluid. If windshield washer fluid is unavailable use clean water.

In areas where water freezes in winter, use an anti-freeze type windshield washer fluid. SUBARU Windshield Washer Fluid contains 58.5% methyl alcohol and 41.5% surfactant, by volume. Its freezing temperature varies according to how much it is diluted, as indicated in the following table.

| Washer Fluid Concentration | Freezing Temperature |
|---|---|
| **30%** | **−12°C (10.4°F)** |
| **50%** | **−20°C (−4°F)** |
| **100%** | **−45°C (−49°F)** |

In order to prevent freezing of washer fluid, check the freezing temperatures in the table above when adjusting the fluid concentration to the outside temperature.

If you fill the reservoir tank with a fluid with a different concentration from the one used previously, purge the old fluid from the piping between the reservoir tank and washer nozzles by operating the washer for a certain period of time. Otherwise, if the concentration of the fluid remaining in the piping is too low for the outside temperature, it may freeze and block the nozzles.

**⚠ CAUTION**

**Adjust the washer fluid concentration appropriately for the outside temperature. If the concentration is inappropriate, sprayed washer fluid may freeze on the windshield and obstruct your view, and the fluid may freeze in the reservoir tank.**

## Replacement of wiper blades

Grease, wax, insects, or other material on the windshield or the wiper blade results in jerky wiper operation and streaking on the glass. If you cannot remove the streaks after operating the windshield washer or if the wiper operation is jerky, clean the outer surface of the windshield (or rear window) and the wiper blades using a sponge or soft cloth with a neutral detergent or mild abrasive cleaner. After cleaning, rinse the windshield and wiper blades with clean water. The windshield is clean if beads do not form when you rinse the windshield with water.

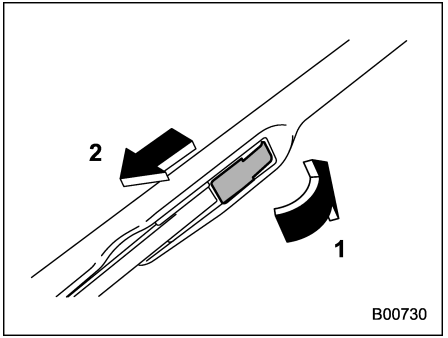
**⚠ CAUTION**

- **Do not clean the wiper blades with fuel or a solvent, such as paint thinner or benzine. This will cause deterioration of the wiper blades.**
- **When you wish to raise the passenger-side wiper arm, first raise the driver-side wiper arm. Otherwise, the passenger-side wiper assembly and driver-side wiper assembly will touch each other, possibly resulting in scratches.**
- **Return the passenger-side wiper arm to its original position before returning the driver-side wiper arm to its original position. Otherwise, the passenger-side wiper assembly and driver-side wiper assembly will touch each other, possibly resulting in scratches.**
- **While removing the wiper blades from the wiper arms, do not return the wiper arms to the original positions. Otherwise, the windshield surface may be scratched.**
- **When returning the raised wiper arms to the original positions, carefully return the wiper arms on the windshield by hand. You should not return the wiper arms to the windshield only by the return spring. Otherwise, the wiper arms may be deformed and/or the windshield surface may be scratched.**

If you cannot eliminate the streaking even after following this method, replace the wiper blades using the following procedures.

### ■ Windshield wiper blade assembly

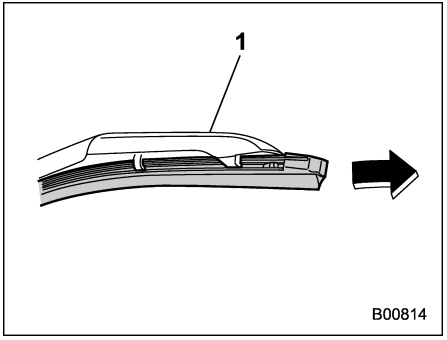
1. Raise the wiper arm off the windshield.




1) Open the cover
2) Pull down the wiper blade

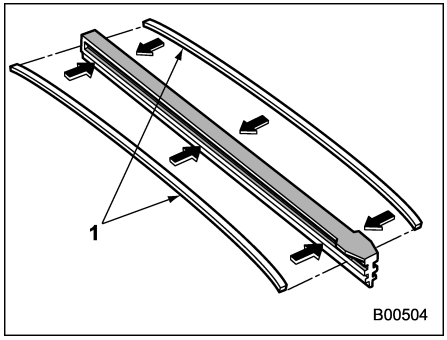
2. Remove the wiper blade assembly by opening the cover and pulling it down in the direction shown in the illustration.
3. Install the wiper blade assembly to the wiper arm. Make sure that it locks in place.
4. Hold the wiper arm by hand and slowly lower it in position.

## ■ Windshield wiper blade rubber



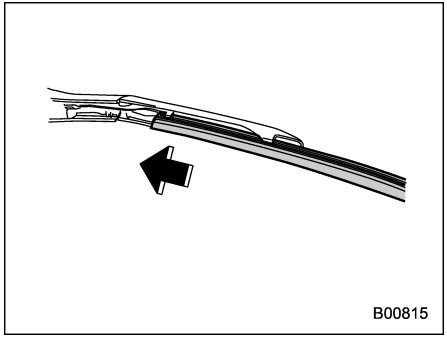

1) Support

1. Grasp the locked end of the blade rubber assembly and pull it firmly until the stoppers on the rubber are free of the support.

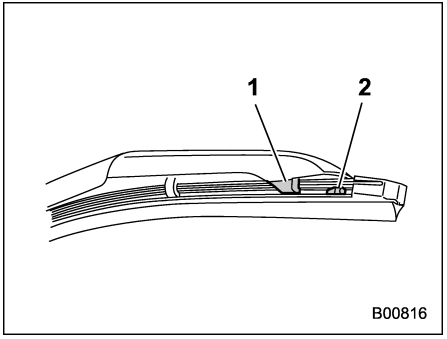



1) Metal spines

2. If the new blade rubber is not provided with two metal spines, remove the metal spines from the old blade rubber and install them in the new blade rubber.




3. Align the claws of the support with the grooves in the rubber and slide the blade rubber assembly into the support until it locks.



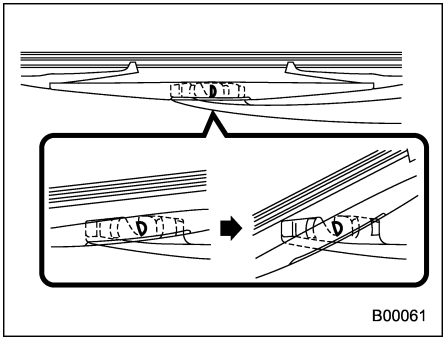

1) Claw
2) Stopper

4. Be sure to position the claws at the end of the support between the stoppers on the rubber as shown. If the rubber is not retained properly, the wiper blade may scratch the windshield.

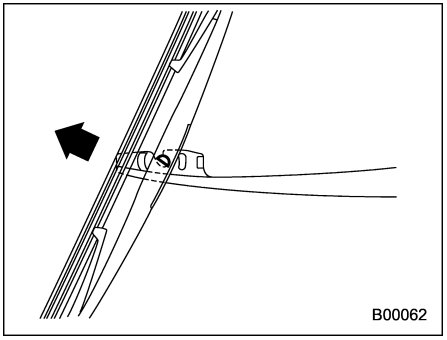
– CONTINUED –

## ■ Rear window wiper blade assembly (Outback)

1. Raise the wiper arm off the rear window.

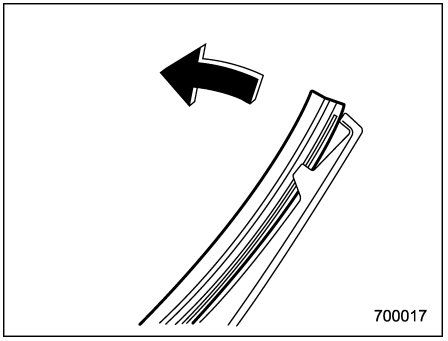



2. Turn the wiper blade assembly counterclockwise.

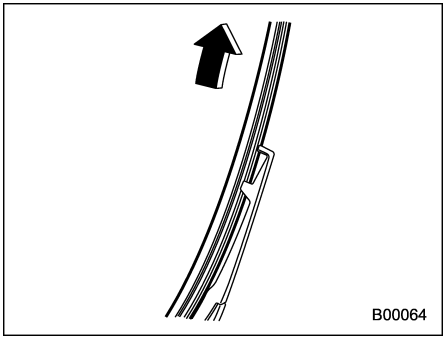



3. Pull the wiper blade assembly toward you to remove it from the wiper arm.
4. Install the wiper blade assembly to the wiper arm. Make sure that it locks in place.
5. Hold the wiper arm by hand and slowly lower it in position.

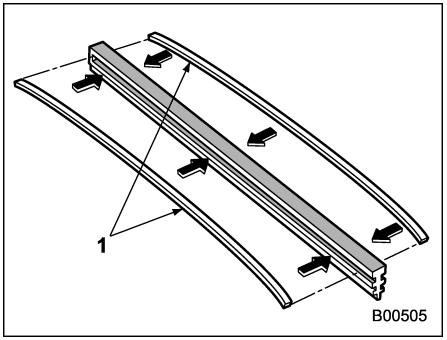
## ■ Rear window wiper blade rubber (Outback)




1. Pull out the end of the blade rubber assembly to unlock it from the plastic support.

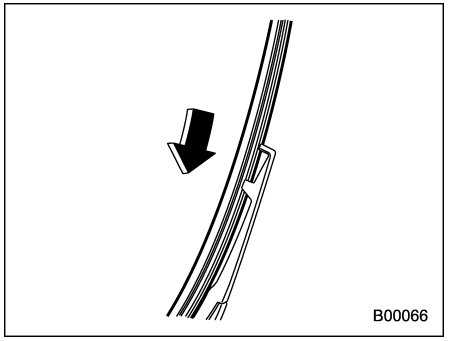



2. Pull the blade rubber assembly out of the plastic support.

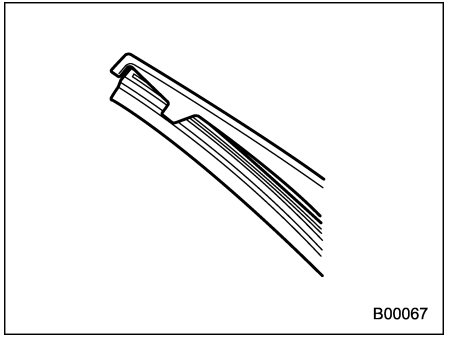



1) Metal spines

3. If the new blade rubber is not provided with two metal spines, remove the metal spines from the old blade rubber and install them in the new blade rubber.




4. Align the claws of the plastic support with the grooves in the blade rubber assembly, then slide the blade rubber assembly into place.




Securely retain both ends of the rubber with the stoppers on the plastic support ends. If the rubber is not retained properly, the wiper may scratch the rear window glass.

## Battery

### ■ Battery Precautions!

**⚠ WARNING**

**Read these instructions carefully:**

**To ensure safe and correct handling of your battery, read the following precautions carefully before using the battery or inspecting it.**

**Wear eye protection:**

**Always wear eye protection when working near your vehicle's battery. Battery fluid contains sulfuric acid, so it can cause blindness if splashed into your eyes. Also, batteries emit highly flammable, explosive hydrogen gas. Eye protection is vital for protection in the event that this gas ignites.**

**Battery fluid contains sulfuric acid:**

**Since battery fluid contains sulfuric acid, be sure to wear eye protection and protective gloves when inspecting your vehicle's battery. Avoid tipping the battery and subjecting it to shocks since this could cause fluid to spill.**

**Under no circumstances allow battery fluid to make contact with your skin, eyes, or clothing since this can cause blindness and burns. If battery fluid splashes onto your skin, eyes or clothing, wash it away immediately with plenty of water. If battery fluid splashes into your eyes, seek medical attention immediately.**

**If battery fluid is accidentally swallowed, immediately drink a large amount of milk or water, and seek medical attention immediately.**

**Battery fluid is corrosive. If it splashes onto your vehicle's paintwork or fabrics, wash it away immediately with plenty of water.**

**Keep children away:**

**Batteries must be handled only by persons who are aware of the potential hazards. Take particular care to keep children away from your vehicle's battery. Improper handling can cause blindness and burns.**

**Keep flames away:**

**Before working on or near your vehicle's battery, extinguish all cigarettes, matches, and lighters. Also, keep the battery away from flammable items and electrical sparks. Since batteries emit highly flammable, explosive hydrogen gas, any flames or sparks in the vicinity could cause an explosion.**

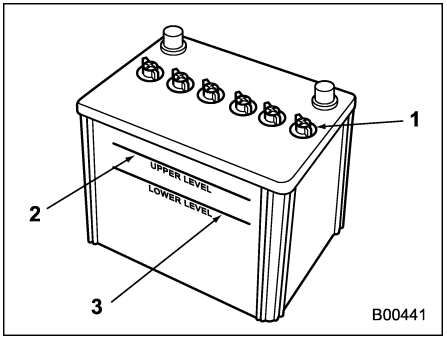
**When working near your vehicle's battery, take care that metal tools do not short-circuit the battery's (+) and (−) terminals or connect the battery's (+) terminal to the vehicle's body. A short circuit could create electrical sparks and lead to an explosion.**

**To prevent electrical sparks, all rings, wristwatches, and other metal accessories must be taken off before work is carried out on or near the battery.**

**Prevent explosions:**

**While being charged, batteries emit highly flammable, explosive hydro-**

**gen gas. To prevent an explosion, charge your vehicle's battery in a well ventilated area and keep flames away.**




1) Cap
2) Upper level
3) Lower level

It is unnecessary to periodically check the battery fluid level or periodically refill with distilled water.

However, if the battery fluid level is below the lower level, remove the cap. Fill to the upper level with distilled water.

**⚠ CAUTION**

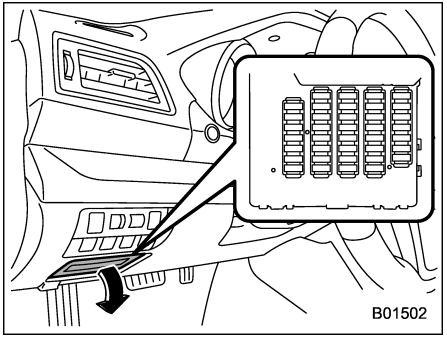
**Never use more than 10 amperes when charging the battery because it will shorten battery life.**

## Fuses

**⚠ CAUTION**

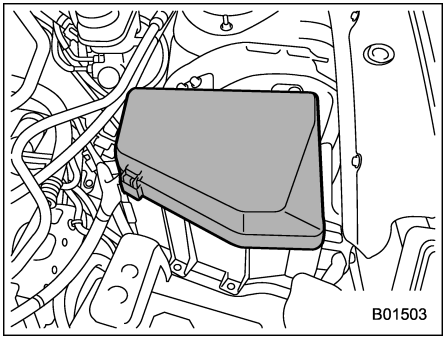
**Never replace a fuse with one having a higher rating or with material other than a fuse because serious damage or a fire could result.**

The fuses are designed to melt during an overload to prevent damage to the wiring harness and electrical equipment. The fuses are located in two fuse boxes.

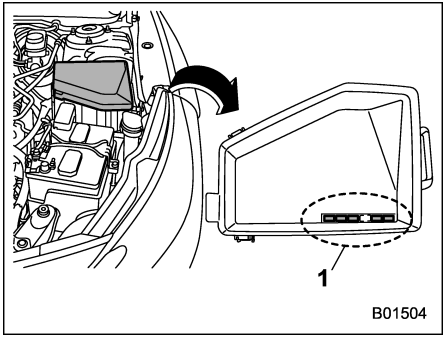



One is located under the instrument panel behind the fuse box cover on the driver's seat side. To remove the cover, pull it out.

– CONTINUED –

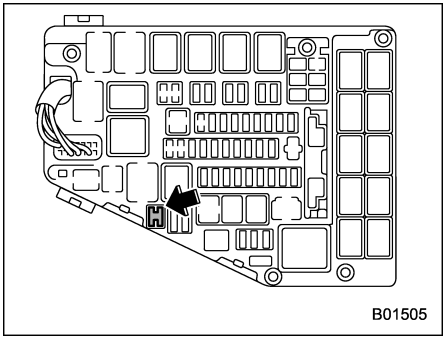



The other one (main fuse box) is housed in the engine compartment.

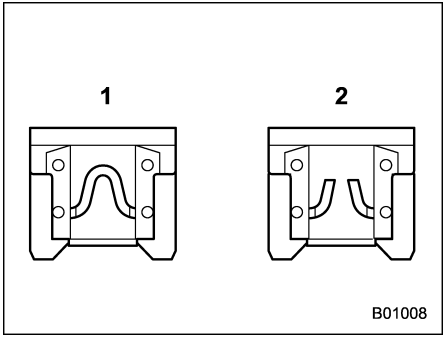



1) Spare fuses

The spare fuses are stored in the main fuse box cover in the engine compartment.



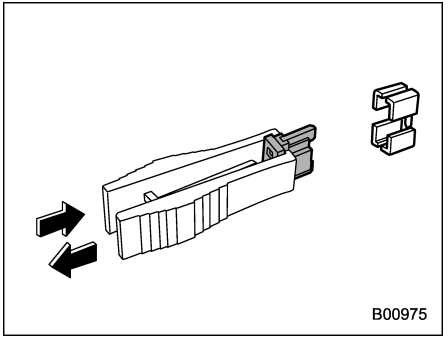

The fuse puller is stored in the main fuse box in the engine compartment.




1) Good
2) Blown

If any lights, accessories or other electrical controls do not operate, inspect the corresponding fuse. If a fuse has blown, replace it.

1. Turn the ignition switch to the “LOCK”/“OFF” position and turn off all electrical accessories.
2. Remove the cover.
3. Determine which fuse may be blown. Look at the back side of each fuse box cover and refer to “Fuses and circuits” ☞12-14.




4. Pull out the fuse with the fuse puller.
5. Inspect the fuse. If it has blown, replace it with a spare fuse of the same rating.
6. If the same fuse blows again, this indicates that its system has a problem. We recommend that you contact your SUBARU dealer for repairs.

## Installation of accessories

We recommend that you always consult your SUBARU dealer before installing fog lights or any other electrical equipment in your vehicle. Such accessories may cause the electronic system to malfunction if they are incorrectly installed or if they are not suited for the vehicle. We recommend that you install only genuine SUBARU accessories on your vehicle.

Also, we recommend that you always consult your SUBARU dealer before installing a radio in your vehicle.

## Replacing bulbs

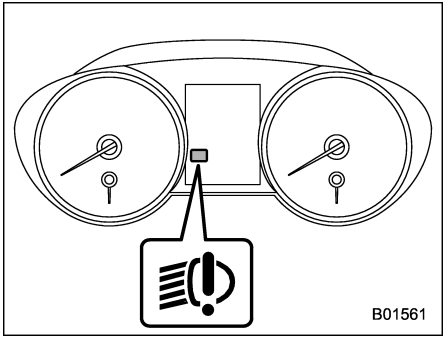
**⚠ WARNING**

**Bulbs may become very hot while illuminated. Before replacing bulbs, turn off the lights and wait until the bulbs cool down. Otherwise, there is the risk of sustaining a burn injury.**

**⚠ CAUTION**

**Replace any bulb only with a new bulb of the specified wattage. Using a bulb of different wattage could result in a fire. For the specified wattage of each bulb, refer to "Bulb chart" ☞12-18.**

### ■ Low beam headlights (models with LED headlights)




The LED headlight warning light illuminates if the LED headlights malfunction. We recommend that you have your vehicle inspected at a SUBARU dealer as soon as possible.

– CONTINUED –

## ■ Halogen headlights

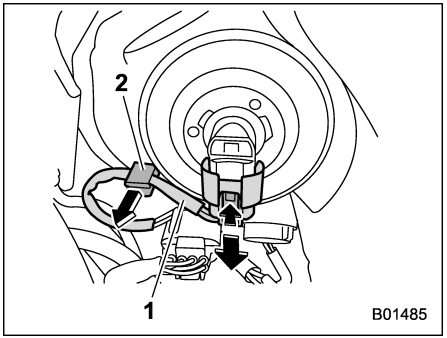
**⚠ CAUTION**

**Halogen headlight bulbs become very hot while in use. If you touch the bulb surface with bare hands or greasy gloves, fingerprints or grease on the bulb surface will develop into hot spots, causing the bulb to break. If there are finger prints or grease on the bulb surface, wipe them away with a soft cloth moistened with alcohol.**

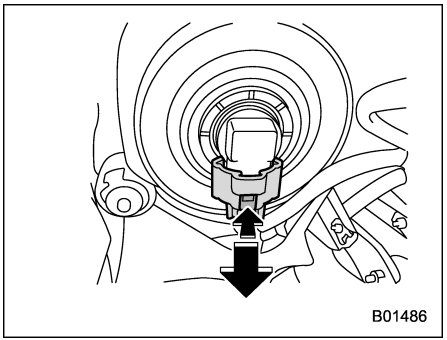
### NOTE

**• If headlight aiming is required, we recommend that you consult your SUBARU dealer for proper adjustment of the headlight aim.**
**• It may be difficult to replace the bulbs. We recommend that you have the bulbs replaced by your SUBARU dealer if necessary.**

Perform the following steps to replace the bulbs.

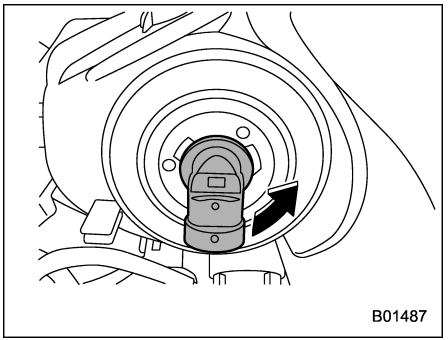



**Low beam headlight (if equipped)**
1) Electrical connector
2) Clip

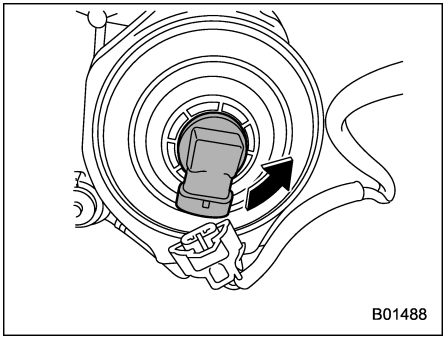



**High beam headlight**

1. Disconnect the electrical connector from the bulb. When replacing the low beam headlight bulb, remove the electrical connector from the clip before disconnecting the connector.



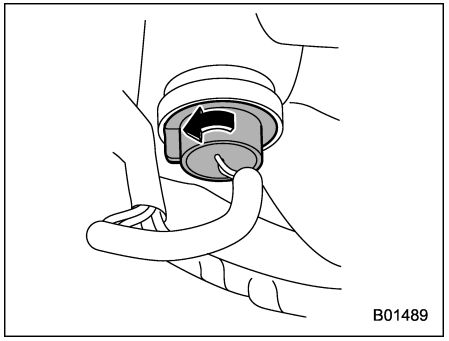

**Low beam headlight (if equipped)**




**High beam headlight**

2. Remove the bulb from the headlight assembly by turning it counterclockwise.
3. Replace the bulb with new one. At this time, use care not to touch the bulb surface.
4. To install the bulb to the headlight assembly, turn it clockwise until it clicks.
5. Reconnect the electrical connector.

## ■ Front turn signal light

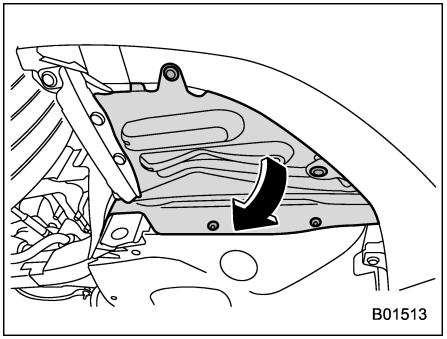



1. Turn the socket counterclockwise and pull it out.
2. Pull out the bulb from the socket and replace the bulb with a new one.

## ■ Front fog light

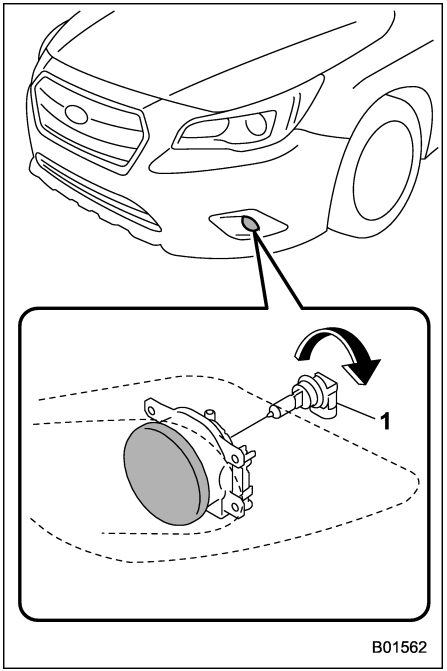
### NOTE

**It may be difficult to replace the bulbs. We recommend that you have the bulbs replaced by your SUBARU dealer if necessary.**

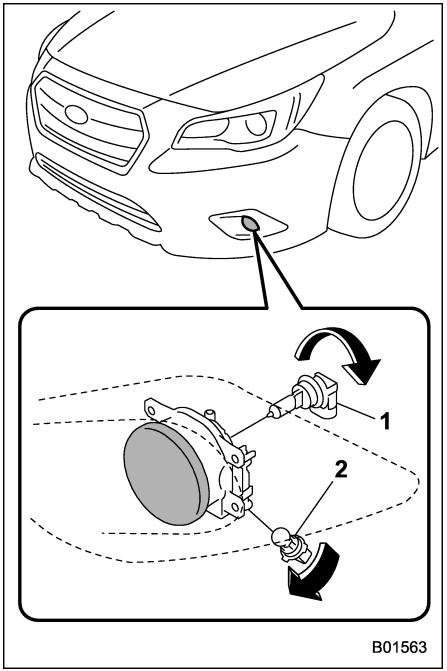



1. Remove the clips.
2. Turn over the mud guard.
3. Disconnect the electrical connector.

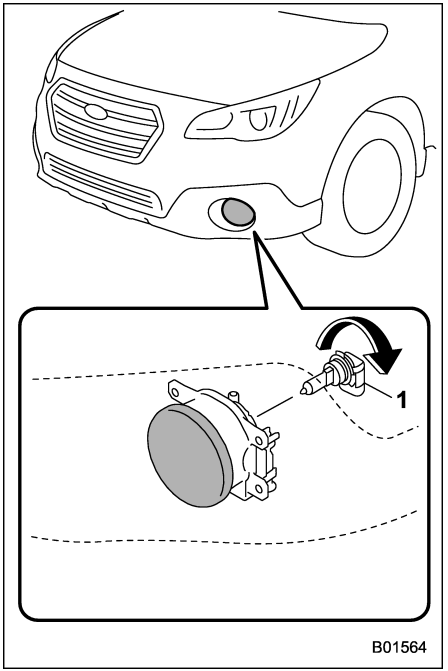
– CONTINUED –



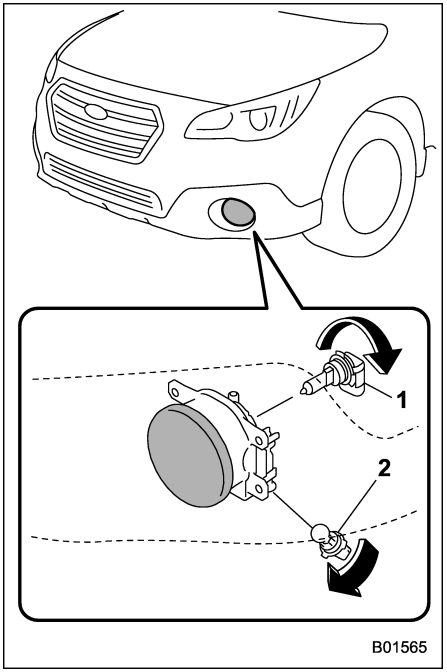

**Sedan (type A)**
1) Fog light




**Sedan (type B)**
1) Fog light
2) Daytime running light




**Outback (type A)**
1) Fog light




**Outback (type B)**
1) Fog light
2) Daytime running light

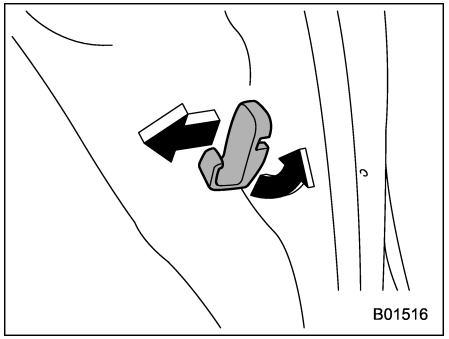
4. Remove the bulb.
5. Replace the bulb with a new one.
6. After replacing the bulb, reattach the mud guard.

## ■ Rear combination lights

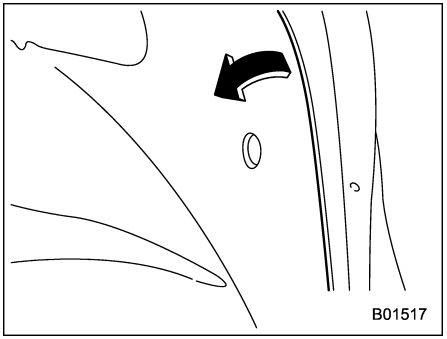
### ▼ Sedan

### NOTE

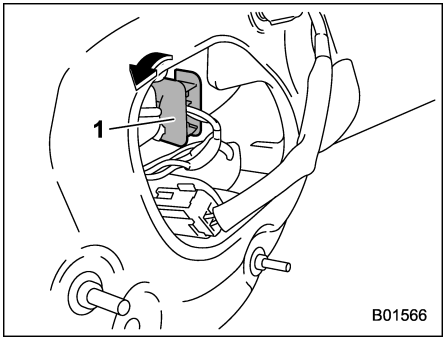
**It may be difficult to replace the bulbs. We recommend that you have the bulbs replaced by your SUBARU dealer if necessary.**




1. Turn the shopping bag hook 90 degrees counterclockwise and pull it out.




2. Turn over the trunk trim panel.



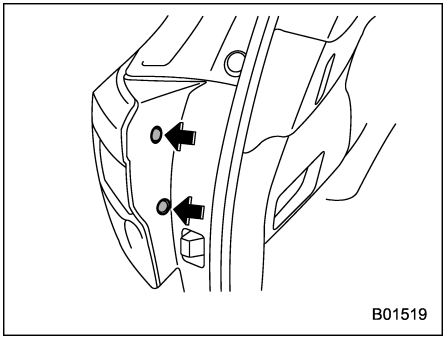

1) Rear turn signal light

3. Remove the bulb holder from the rear combination light assembly by turning it counterclockwise. Use pliers if necessary.

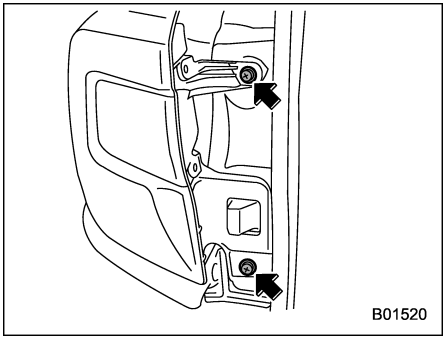
– CONTINUED –

4. Pull the bulb out of the bulb holder and replace it with a new one.
5. Set the bulb holder into the rear combination light assembly and turn it clockwise until it locks.
6. Securely lock the cover against the trunk trim.
7. Reattach the shopping bag hook.

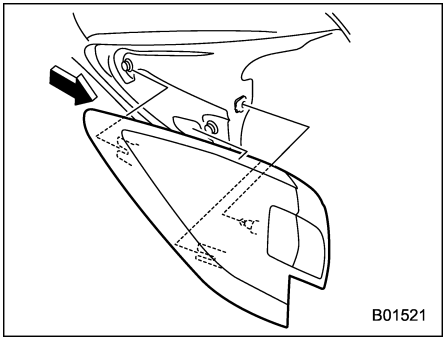
▼ **Outback**



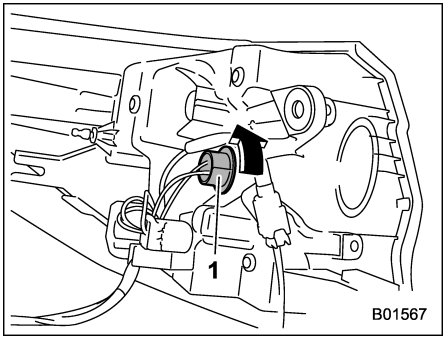

1. Undo the clips. For the method to undo the clips, refer to “Type C clips” ☞11-10.
2. Remove the cover.




3. Remove the upper and lower screws.

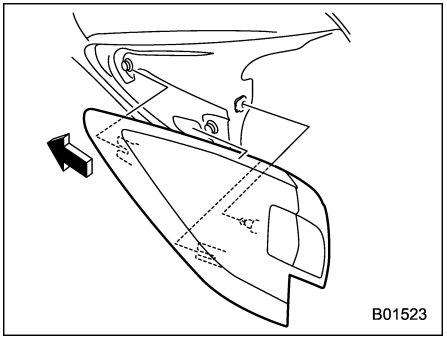



4. Slide the rear combination light assembly straight rearward and remove it from the vehicle.

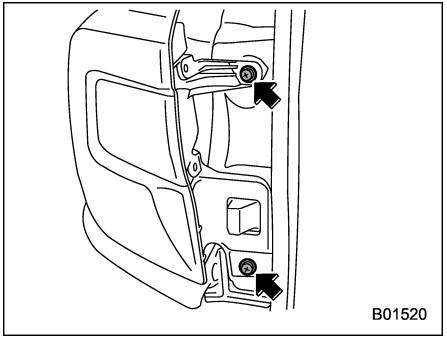



1) Rear turn signal light

5. Remove the bulb holder from the rear combination light assembly by turning it counterclockwise.
6. Pull the bulb out of the bulb holder and replace it with a new one.
7. Set the bulb holder into the rear combination light assembly and turn it clockwise until it locks.




8. Reinstall the rear combination light assembly by sliding the two-pronged part of the combination light assembly securely to each holder of the vehicle side.



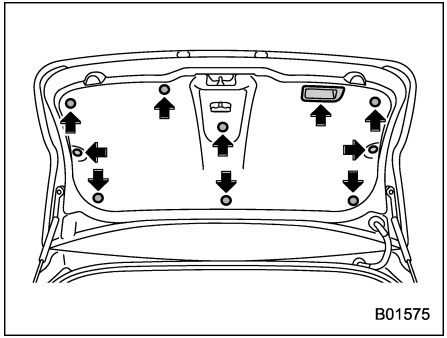

9. Tighten the upper and lower screws.
10. Reinstall the side cover.

## ■ Back-up light/Rear fog light (if equipped) (Sedan)

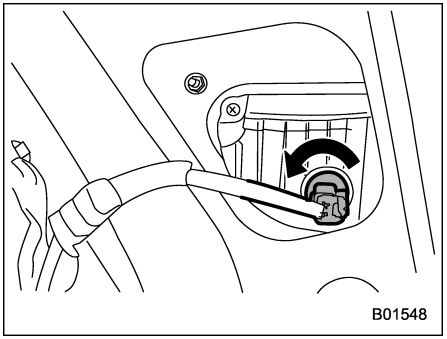
### NOTE

**It may be difficult to replace the bulbs. We recommend that you have the bulbs replaced by your SUBARU dealer if necessary.**

1. Open the trunk.



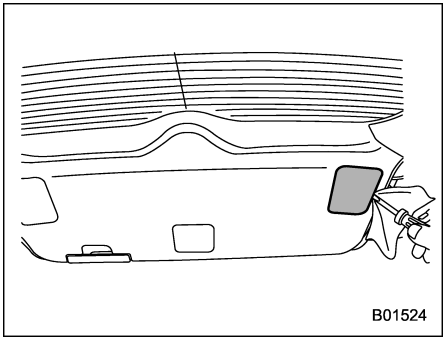

2. Remove the trunk trim lining by removing the clips and trunk trim handle indicated in the illustration.



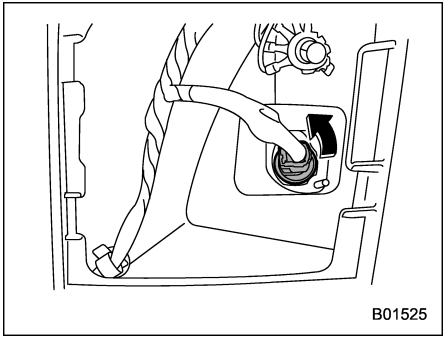

3. Turn the bulb socket counterclockwise and remove it.
4. Pull the bulb out of the bulb socket and replace it with a new one.
5. Install the bulb socket by turning it clockwise.
6. Reconnect the electrical connector.
7. Reinstall the trunk trim lining.

*– CONTINUED –*

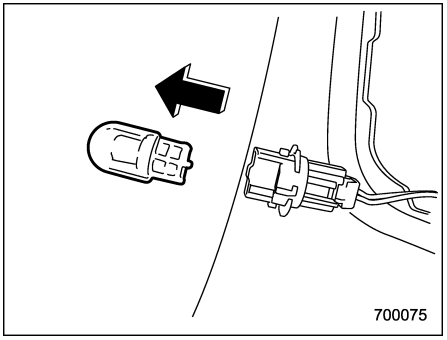
## ■ Back-up light (Outback)




1. Apply a flat-head screwdriver to the light cover as shown in the illustration, and pry the light cover off from the rear gate trim.




2. Turn the bulb socket counterclockwise and remove it.

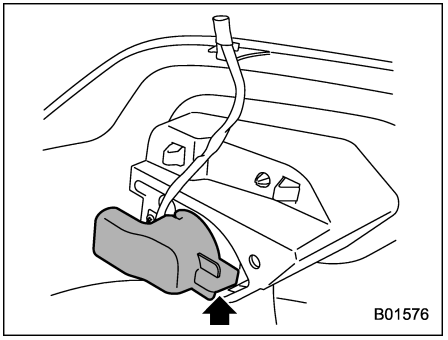



3. Pull the bulb out of the bulb socket and replace it with a new one.
4. Install the bulb socket by turning it clockwise.
5. Install the light cover on the rear gate.

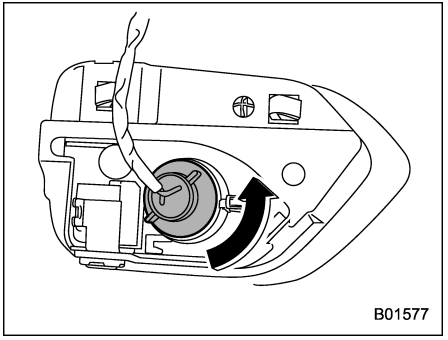
## ■ Rear fog light (Outback)

### NOTE

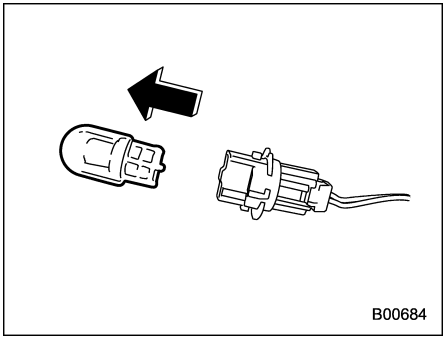
**It may be difficult to replace the bulb. We recommend that you have the bulb replaced by your SUBARU dealer if necessary.**




1. Remove the bulb cover inside the rear bumper by removing the screw.




2. Turn the bulb socket counterclockwise and remove it.


B00684

3. Pull the bulb out of the bulb socket and replace it with a new one.
4. Install the bulb socket by turning it clockwise.
5. Reinstall the bulb cover.

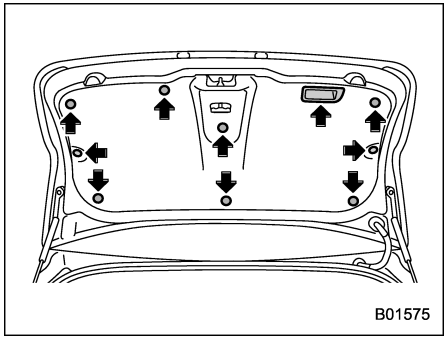
## ■ License plate light

### ▼ Sedan

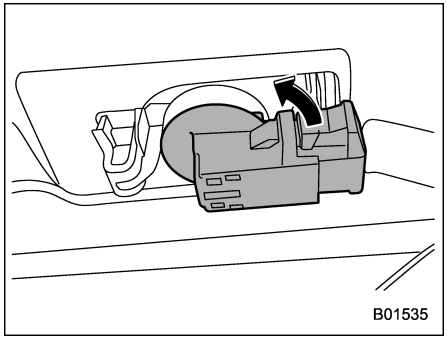
**NOTE**

**It may be difficult to replace the bulbs. We recommend that you have the bulbs replaced by your SUBARU dealer if necessary.**

1. Open the trunk.

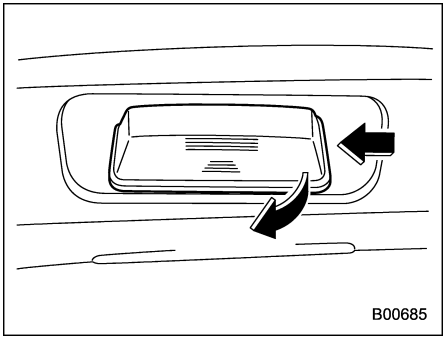

B01575

2. Remove the trunk trim lining by removing the clips and trunk trim handle indicated in the illustration.


B01535

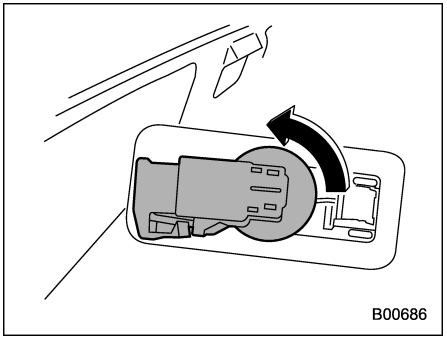
3. Turn the bulb socket counterclockwise and remove it.
4. Pull the bulb out of the bulb socket and replace it with a new one.
5. Install the bulb socket by turning it clockwise.
6. Reinstall the trunk trim lining.

### ▼ Outback


B00685

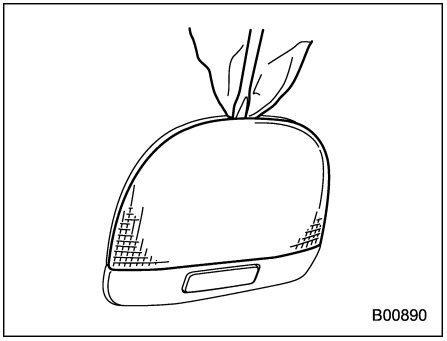
1. To remove the right-hand side license plate light cover, insert a finger into the right side of the cover, and then press once to the left and pull it out. To remove the left-hand side license plate light cover, insert a finger into the left side of the cover, and then press once to the right and pull it out.

– CONTINUED –

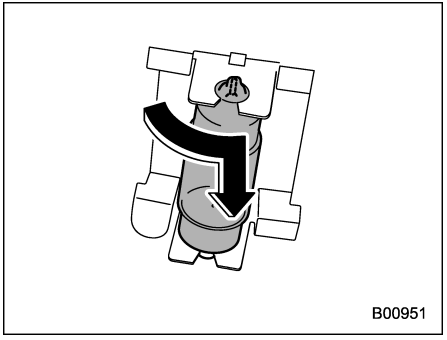



2. Turn the bulb socket counterclockwise and pull out the socket.
3. Pull the bulb out of the socket.
4. Install a new bulb.
5. Reinstall the bulb socket and the license plate light cover.

## ■ Dome light




1. Remove the lens by prying the edge of the lens with a flat-head screwdriver.




2. Turn the bulb until the flat surfaces at its ends are aligned vertically.
3. Pull the bulb straight downward to remove it.
4. Install a new bulb.
5. Reinstall the lens.

## ■ Vanity mirror light

**CAUTION**

**Replacing the bulb could cause burns since the bulb may be very hot. We recommend that you have the bulb replaced by your SUBARU dealer.**

## ■ Map light

**CAUTION**

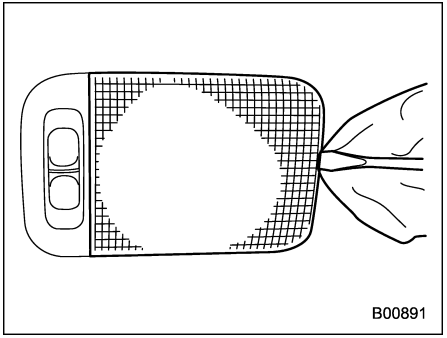
**Replacing the bulb could cause burns since the bulb may be very hot. We recommend that you have the bulb replaced by your SUBARU dealer.**

## ■ Door step light

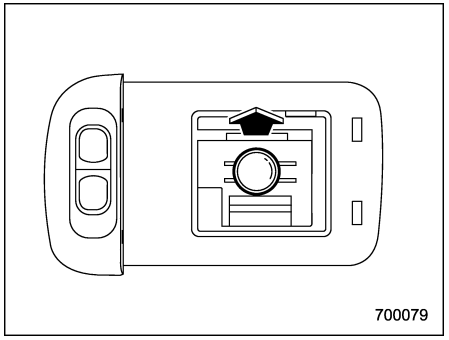
**⚠ CAUTION**

**Replacing the bulb could cause a short circuit. Also, replacing the bulb could cause burns since the bulb may be very hot. We recommend that you have the bulb replaced by your SUBARU dealer.**

## ■ Cargo area light (Outback)




1. Remove the lens by prying the edge of the lens with a flat-head screwdriver.



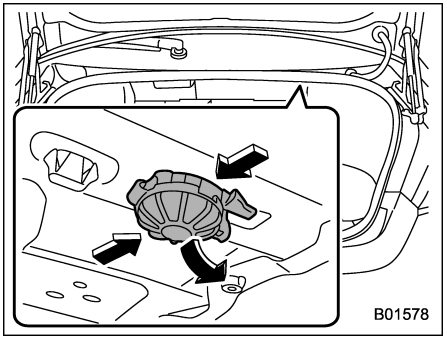

2. Pull the bulb out of the socket.
3. Install a new bulb.
4. Reinstall the lens.

## ■ Trunk light (Sedan)

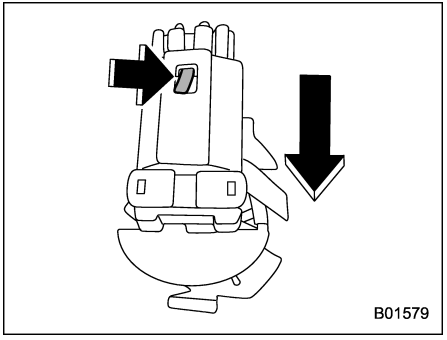
**⚠ CAUTION**

**Replacing the bulb could cause burns since the bulb may be very hot. We recommend that you have the bulb replaced by your SUBARU dealer.**

1. Open the trunk lid.

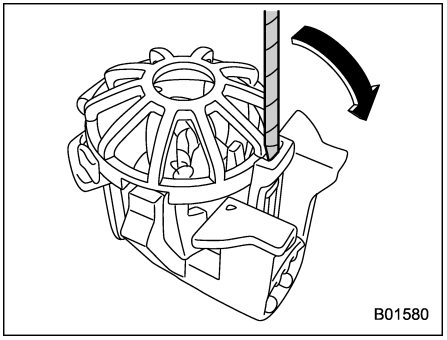



2. Pinch the sides of the trunk light assembly to release the hooks, and pull it toward the lower right.




3. Remove the trunk light by releasing the tab of the electrical connector.

– CONTINUED –




4. Remove the lens by prying the tab of the lens with a flat-head screwdriver.
5. Pull out the bulb.
6. Install a new bulb.
7. Reinstall the lens.
8. Reconnect the electrical connector.
9. Reinstall the trunk light assembly.

### ■ Other lights on the vehicle

**It may be difficult to replace the bulbs of other lights on the vehicle. We recommend that you have the bulbs replaced by your SUBARU dealer if necessary.**

## Replacing battery

The access key / transmitter battery may be discharged under the following conditions.

- The operation of the keyless access function is unstable
- The operating distance of the remote keyless entry system is unstable
- The transmitter does not operate properly when used within the standard distance

Replace the battery with a new one.

**⚠ CAUTION**

- **Do not let dust, oil or water get on or in the access key/transmitter when replacing battery.**
- **Be careful not to touch or damage the printed circuit board in the access key/transmitter when replacing the battery.**
- **Be careful not to allow children to touch the battery and any removed parts; children could swallow them.**
- **Danger of explosion if battery is incorrectly replaced. Replace only with the same or equivalent**

type.

- Batteries shall not be exposed to excessive heat such as sunshine, fire or the like.

## NOTE

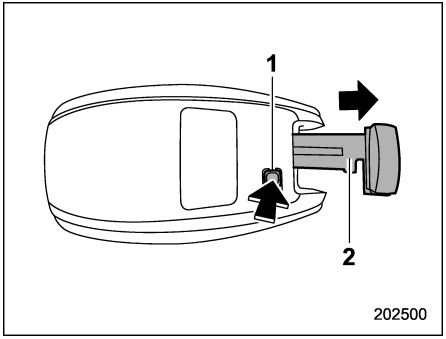
- Replace only with the same or equivalent type of battery recommended by the manufacturer.
- Dispose of used batteries according to the local laws.
- Mount the battery in the correct orientation to prevent fluid leakage. Be careful not to bend the terminals. It may result in a malfunction.
- It is recommended that the battery should be replaced by a SUBARU dealer.
- Use a new battery.
- After replacing the battery, confirm that the access key/transmitter functions properly.

## ■ Replacing battery of access key

**CAUTION**

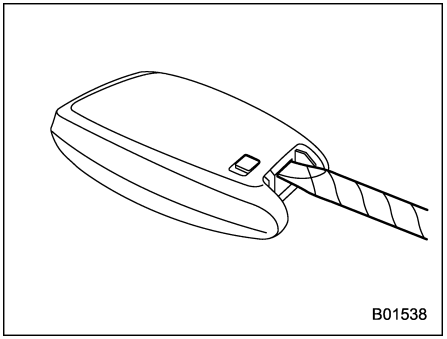
**When removing or fitting the access key cover, make sure that the plastic part does not come off or become misaligned.**

**Battery: Button battery CR2032**

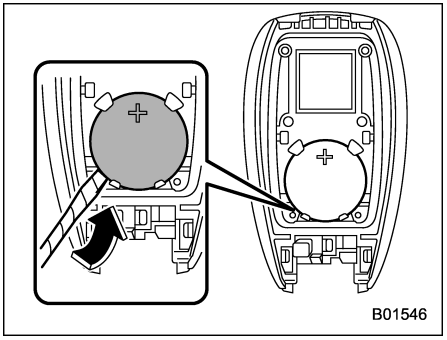



1) Release button
2) Mechanical key

1. Take out the mechanical key.

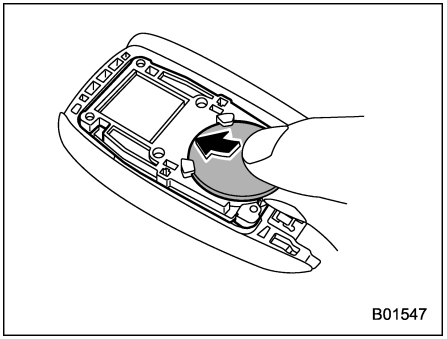



2. Wrap a flat-head screwdriver with vinyl tape or a cloth, and insert it in the gap to remove the cover.

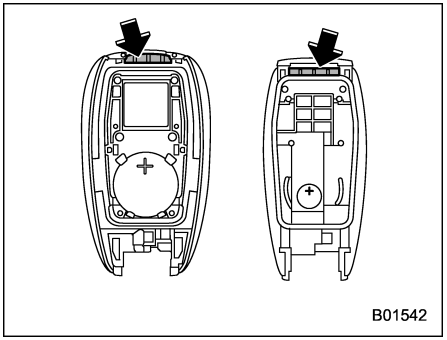



3. Take out the battery using a flat-head screwdriver with vinyl tape or a cloth.

– CONTINUED –



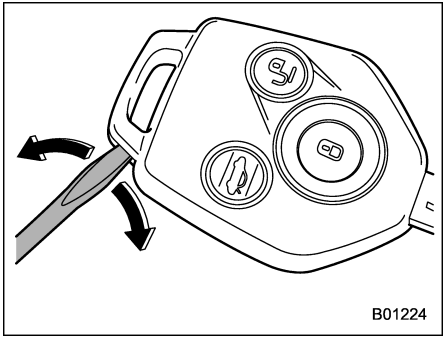

4. Insert a new battery with its positive (+) side facing upward as shown in the figure.



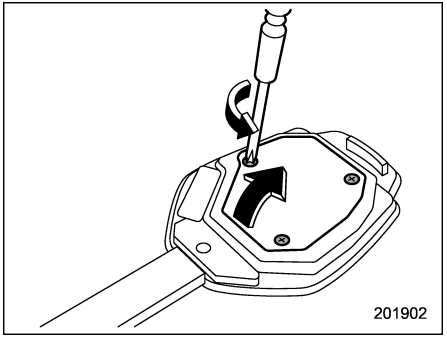

5. Attach the cover to the access key by fitting the projections and recesses together.

## ■ Replacing battery of transmitter

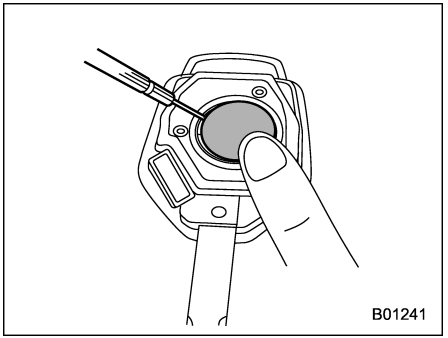
### ▼ Models without TPMS



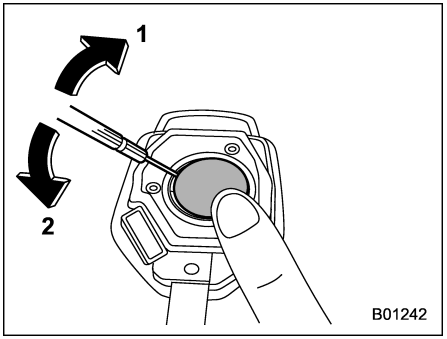

1. Open the key head using a flat-head screwdriver.



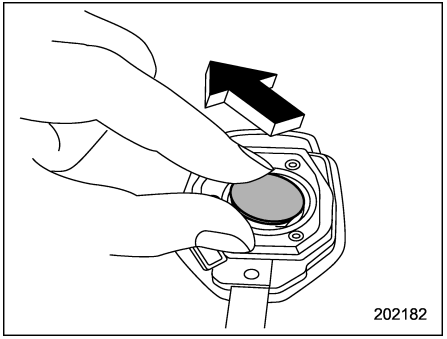

2. Remove the three screws and then remove the cover.



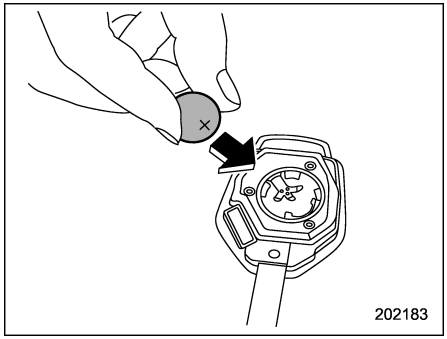

3. Create a gap between the battery and the case by pushing the battery gently with your finger as shown in the illustration. Then, insert a flat-head screwdriver that has been wrapped in insulating tape into the gap.



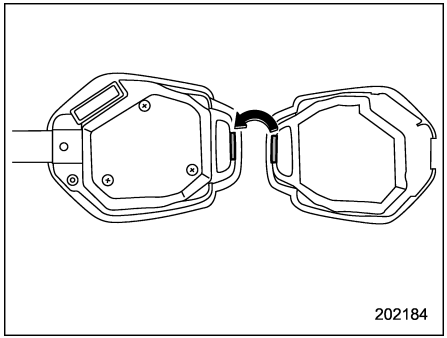

4. Move the flat-head screwdriver in the order shown in 1. and 2., and remove the battery, taking care not to damage the base panel or terminal.




5. Remove the old battery.



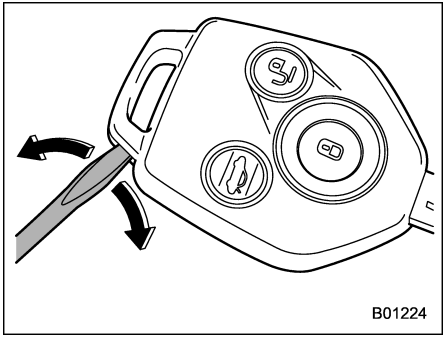

6. Fit a new battery (type **CR-1620** or equivalent) in the case with its positive (+) side facing upward.




7. Put the case together by fitting the mating part of the button side into the hook on the key side.

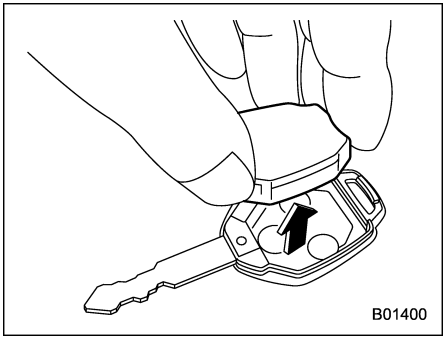
**After the battery is replaced, the transmitter must be synchronized with the remote keyless entry system's control unit. Press either the "🔓" or "🔒" button several times to synchronize the unit.**

**▼ Models with TPMS**

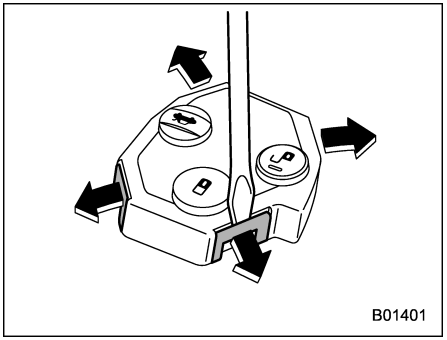



1. Open the key head using a flat-head screwdriver.

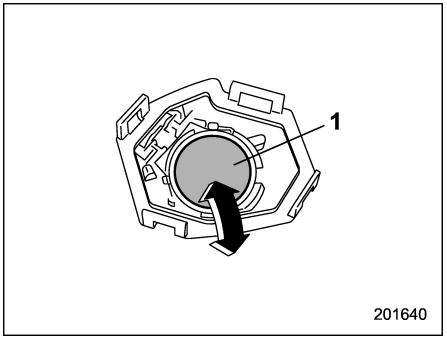
*– CONTINUED –*




2. Remove the transmitter case from the key head.




3. Open the transmitter case by releasing the hooks.




1) Negative (−) side facing up

4. Replace the old battery with a new battery (type **CR1620** or equivalent) making sure to install the new battery with the negative (−) side facing up.
5. Put together the transmitter case by fitting the hooks on the case.
6. Reinstall the transmitter case in the key head.
7. Refit the removed half of the key head.

**After the battery is replaced, the transmitter must be synchronized with the remote keyless entry system's control unit. Press either the "🔓" or "🔒" button six times to synchronize the unit.**

**Specifications** ..... 12-2
- Dimensions ..... 12-2
- Engine ..... 12-4
- Fuel ..... 12-4
- Engine oil ..... 12-5
- Manual transmission, front differential and rear differential gear oil ..... 12-9
- Fluids ..... 12-11
- Engine coolant ..... 12-11
- Electrical system ..... 12-12
- Tires ..... 12-12
- Brake disc ..... 12-13

**Fuses and circuits** ..... 12-14
- Fuse panel located in the passenger compartment ..... 12-14
- Fuse panel located in the engine compartment ..... 12-16

**Bulb chart** ..... 12-18

**Vehicle identification** ..... 12-21

# Specifications

These specifications are subject to change without notice.

## ■ Dimensions

### ▼ Sedan

mm (in)

| Item | | 2.5 L models | 3.6 L models |
|---|---|---|---|
| Drive system | | AWD | |
| Transmission type | | CVT | |
| Overall length | | 4,795 (188.8) | |
| Overall width | | 1,840 (72.4) | |
| Overall height | | 1,500 (59.1) | |
| Wheelbase | | 2,750 (108.3) | |
| Tread | Front | 1,580 (62.2) | |
| | Rear | 1,595 (62.8) | |
| Ground clearance*1 | | 150 (5.9) | |

*1: Measured with vehicle empty
MT: Manual Transmission
CVT: Continuously Variable Transmission
AWD: All-Wheel Drive

## ▼ Outback

mm (in)

| Item | | Ground clearance “200 mm (7.9 in)” models | | | Ground clearance “213 mm (8.4 in)” models | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | Petrol engine models | Diesel engine models | | Petrol engine models | | Diesel engine models | |
| | | | | | 2.5 L models | 3.6 L models | | |
| Drive system | | AWD | | | | | | |
| Transmission type | | CVT | MT | CVT | CVT | | MT | CVT |
| Overall length | | 4,815 (189.6) | | | | | | |
| Overall width | | 1,840 (72.4) | | | | | | |
| Overall height | | 1,605 (63.2) | | | 1,675 (65.9) | | | |
| Wheelbase | | 2,745 (108.1) | | | | | | |
| Tread | Front | 1,575 (62.0) | | | 1,570 (61.8) | | | |
| | Rear | 1,590 (62.6) | | | 1,580 (62.2) | | | |
| Ground clearance*1 | | 200 (7.9) | | | 213 (8.4) | | | |

*1: Measured with vehicle empty
MT: Manual Transmission
CVT: Continuously Variable Transmission
AWD: All-Wheel Drive

– CONTINUED –

## ■ Engine

| Engine model | Petrol engine | | Diesel engine |
|---|---|---|---|
| | FB25<br>(2.5 L, DOHC, non-turbo) | EZ36<br>(3.6 L, DOHC, non-turbo) | EE20Z<br>(2.0 L, DOHC, turbo) |
| Engine type | Horizontally opposed, liquid cooled 4 cylinder, 4-stroke petrol engine | Horizontally opposed, liquid cooled 6 cylinder, 4 stroke petrol engine | Horizontally opposed, liquid cooled 4 cylinder, 4-stroke diesel engine |
| Displacement cc (cu-in) | 2,498 (152.4) | 3,630 (221.5) | 1,998 (121.9) |
| Bore × Stroke mm (in) | 94.0 × 90.0<br>(3.70 × 3.54) | 92.0 × 91.0<br>(3.62 × 3.58) | 86.0 × 86.0<br>(3.39 × 3.39) |
| Compression ratio | 10.3 : 1 | 10.5 : 1 | 15.2 : 1 |
| Firing order | 1 – 3 – 2 – 4 | 1 – 6 – 3 – 2 – 5 – 4 | 1 – 3 – 2 – 4 |

## ■ Fuel

| Vehicle model | | Fuel requirement | Fuel tank capacity |
|---|---|---|---|
| Petrol engine models | Australia models | **Unleaded petrol** with Research Octane number **91 or higher** | 60 liters (15.9 US gal, 13.2 Imp gal) |
| | Other models | **Unleaded petrol** with Research Octane number **95 or higher***1 | |
| Diesel engine models | | Diesel fuel with a specification of **EN590 or an equivalent** | |

*1: If the specified grade fuel is not available, refer to “Fuel” ☞7-3.

## ■ Engine oil

For the checking, adding and replacing procedure or other details, refer to “Engine oil” ☞11-16.

### NOTE

**The procedure for changing the engine oil and oil filter should be performed by a properly-trained expert. It is recommended that you have this service performed by your SUBARU dealer.**

#### ▼ Approved engine oil

Always use the SUBARU approved engine oil. For further details, we recommend that you contact your SUBARU dealer.
If the approved engine oil is unavailable, use the alternative engine oil described on the next page.

*– CONTINUED –*

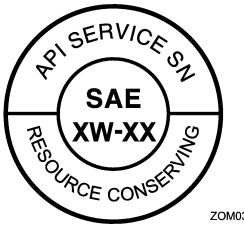
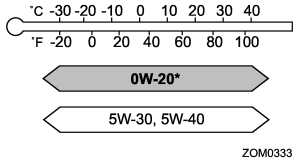
### ▼ Alternative engine oil

If the SUBARU approved oil is unavailable, the following alternative oil can be used.

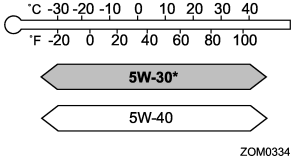
## NOTE

**Each quantity indicated here is only a guideline. The necessary quantity for replacement may differ slightly depending on the temperature and other factors.**

#### ▽ 2.5 L models

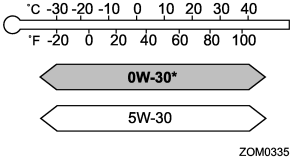
| Oil grade | SAE viscosity No. and applicable temperature | Oil capacity |
|---|---|---|
|  <br>ZOM0377<br>API (American Petroleum Institute) classification **SN** with the words "RESOURCE CONSERVING"<br>**or**<br>  <br>ZOM0293<br>ILSAC (International Lubricant Specification Advisory Committee) **GF-5**, which can be identified with the ILSAC certification mark (Starburst mark)<br>**or**<br>ACEA (Association des Constructeurs Europeens d'Automobiles) specification A3 or A5 | 0W-20, 5W-30 and 5W-40 can be used.<br>0W-20* is equivalent to the factory-filled engine oil and good for fuel economy and starting in cold weather.<br>  <br>ZOM0333<br>*: recommended | · Adding the oil from L to F level: 1.0 liter (1.1 US qt, 0.9 Imp qt)<br>· Changing the oil and oil filter: 4.8 liters (5.1 US qt, 4.2 Imp qt) |

▽ **3.6 L models**

| Oil grade | SAE viscosity No. and applicable temperature | Engine oil capacity |
|---|---|---|
|  <br>ZOM0377<br>API (American Petroleum Institute) classification **SN** with the words “RESOURCE CONSERVING”<br>**or**<br>  <br>ZOM0293<br>ILSAC (International Lubricant Specification Advisory Committee) **GF-5**, which can be identified with the ILSAC certification mark (Starburst mark)<br>**or**<br>ACEA (Association des Constructeurs Europeens d’Automobiles) specification A3 or A5 | 5W-30 and 5W-40 can be used.<br>5W-30* is equivalent to the factory-filled engine oil and good for engine performance and protection.<br>  <br>ZOM0334<br>*: recommended | · Adding the oil from L to F level: 1.0 liter (1.1 US qt, 0.9 Imp qt)<br>· Changing the oil and oil filter: 6.5 liters (6.9 US qt, 5.7 Imp qt) |

– CONTINUED –

▽ **Diesel engine models**

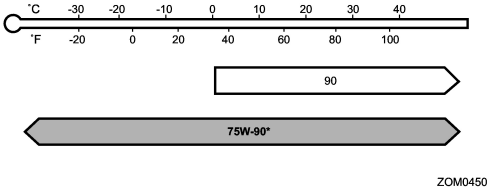
| Oil grade | SAE viscosity No. and applicable temperature | Engine oil capacity |
|---|---|---|
| ACEA (Association des Constructeurs Europeens d'Automobiles) specification C2 or C3 | 0W-30, 5W-30 can be used.<br>0W-30* is equivalent to the factory-filled engine oil and good for fuel economy and starting in cold weather.<br>  <br>*: recommended | – Adding the oil from L to F level: 1.0 liter (1.1 US qt, 0.9 Imp qt)<br>– Changing the oil and oil filter: 5.9 liters (6.2 US qt, 5.2 Imp qt) |

## ■ Manual transmission, front differential and rear differential gear oil

| Oil | Manual transmission oil |
|---|---|
| Oil grade | • SUBARU Extra MT*3<br>• API classification GL-5 (75W-90)*4 |
| Oil capacity*1 | 3.3 liters (3.5 US qt, 2.9 Imp qt) |
| Remarks*2 | “Manual transmission oil” ☞11-27 |

*1: The indicated oil quantity is only a guideline. The necessary quantity for replacement may differ slightly depending on the temperature and other factors. After refilling the gearbox with oil, the oil level should be checked.
*2: For more details about maintenance and service, refer to the indicated section.
*3: Equivalent to factory-filled oil.
*4: You may use this type of manual transmission oil. However, using this type of oil will detract from driveability and fuel efficiency.

– CONTINUED –

| Oil | Front differential gear oil (CVT models) | | Rear differential gear oil |
|---|---|---|---|
| Oil grade | • SUBARU Extra MT*3<br>• API classification GL-5 (75W-90) | | API classification GL-5 |
| SAE viscosity No. and applicable temperature | • 75W-90*<br>• 90<br>  <br><br>*: recommended | | |
| Oil capacity*1 | 2.5 L models | 1.2 liters (1.3 US qt, 1.1 Imp qt) | 0.8 liters (0.8 US qt, 0.7 Imp qt) |
| | Other models | 1.4 liters (1.5 US qt, 1.2 Imp qt) | |
| Remarks*2 | “Front differential gear oil (CVT models) and rear differential gear oil” ☞11-28 | | “Front differential gear oil (CVT models) and rear differential gear oil” ☞11-28 |

*1: The indicated oil quantity is only a guideline. The necessary quantity for replacement may differ slightly depending on the temperature and other factors. After refilling the gearbox with oil, the oil level should be checked.
*2: For more details about maintenance and service, refer to the indicated section.
*3: Equivalent to factory-filled oil.

## ■ Fluids

| Fluid | Fluid type*1 | Fluid capacity*2 | | Remarks*3 |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Continuously variable transmission fluid (CVT models) | We recommend that you consult your SUBARU dealer. | 2.5 L models | 11.5 liters (12.2 US qt, 10.1 Imp qt) | "Continuously variable transmission fluid" ☞11-28 |
| | | Other models | 12.7 liters (13.4 US qt, 11.2 Imp qt) | |
| Brake fluid | FMVSS No. 116, fresh DOT 3 or DOT 4 brake fluid | – | | "Brake fluid" ☞11-28 |
| Clutch fluid (MT models) | FMVSS No. 116, fresh DOT 3 or DOT 4 brake fluid | – | | "Clutch fluid (MT models)" ☞11-30 |

*1: Use one of the indicated types of fluid.
*2: The indicated fluid quantity is only a guideline. The necessary quantity for replacement may differ slightly depending on the temperature and other factors.
*3: For more details about maintenance and service, refer to the indicated section.

## ■ Engine coolant

| Vehicle model | | | Coolant capacity | Coolant type |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 2.5 L models | | CVT models | 7.7 liters (8.1 US qt, 6.8 Imp qt) | SUBARU Super Coolant |
| 3.6 L models | Right-hand drive models | CVT models | 7.1 liters (7.5 US qt, 6.2 Imp qt) | |
| | Left-hand drive models | CVT models | 7.0 liters (7.4 US qt, 6.2 Imp qt) | |
| Diesel engine models | | MT models | 8.3 liters (8.8 US qt, 7.3 Imp qt) | |
| | | CVT models | 8.2 liters (8.7 US qt, 7.2 Imp qt) | |

The indicated coolant quantity is only a guideline. The necessary quantity for replacement may differ slightly depending on the temperature and other factors. For more details about maintenance and service, refer to "Cooling system" ☞11-22.

– CONTINUED –

## ■ Electrical system

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Battery type and capacity (5HR) | 2.5 L models | Models with Auto Start Stop system | Q-85-R |
| | | Other models | 55D23R |
| | 3.6 L models | | 95D26R |
| | Diesel engine models | | S95-R |
| Alternator | Petrol engine models | | 12V-130A |
| | Diesel engine models | MT models | 12V-150A |
| | | CVT models | 12V-170A |
| Spark plugs (petrol engine models) | 3.6 L models | | SILFR6C11 (NGK) |
| | 2.5 L models | | SILZKAR7B11 (NGK) |

## ■ Tires

| Item | Temporary spare tire | | Conventional tires |
|---|---|---|---|
| Tire size | 205/55R17 | 215/60R17 | For the tire specifications, e.g., tire size, load index and speed category, see the tire pressure label located on the door pillar on the driver's side. |
| Tire inflation pressure (recommended cold tire inflation pressure) | 290 kPa (2.9 kgf/cm$^2$, 42 psi) | | |
| Wheel nut tightening torque | 120 N·m (12 kgf·m, 89 lbf·ft)*1 *2 | | |

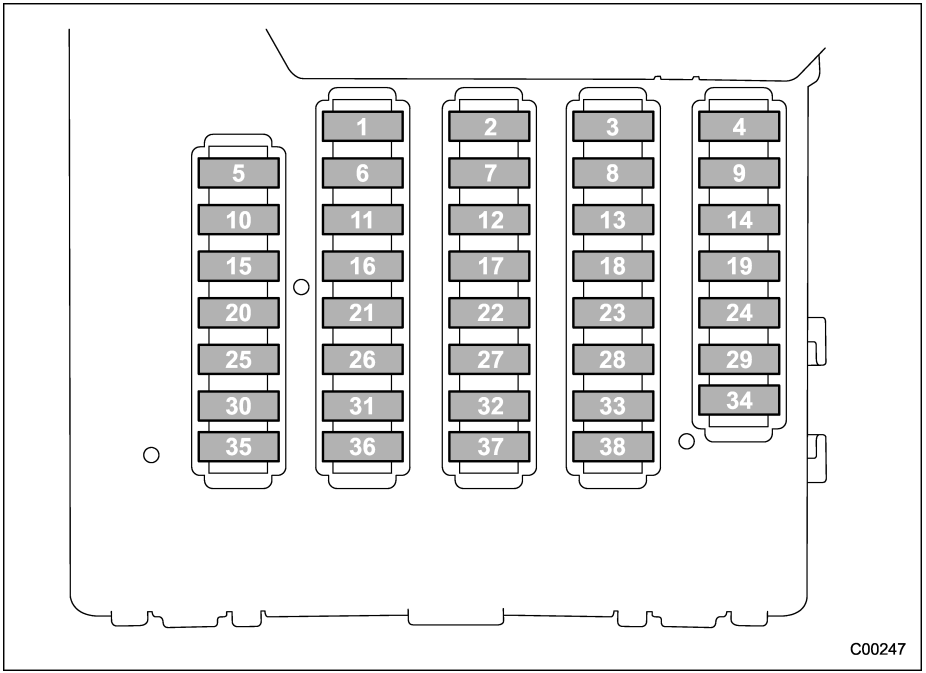
*1: This torque is equivalent to applying approximately 40 to 50 kgf (88 to 110 lbf) at the end of the wheel nut wrench. If you have tightened the wheel nuts by yourself, have the tightening torque checked at the nearest automotive service facility as soon as possible.
*2: For the wheel nut tightening procedure, refer to "Changing a flat tire" ☞9-7.

## ■ Brake disc

If you need information on the usage limit value of brake discs and the method for measuring them, we recommend that you consult your SUBARU dealer.

## Fuses and circuits

### ■ Fuse panel located in the passenger compartment

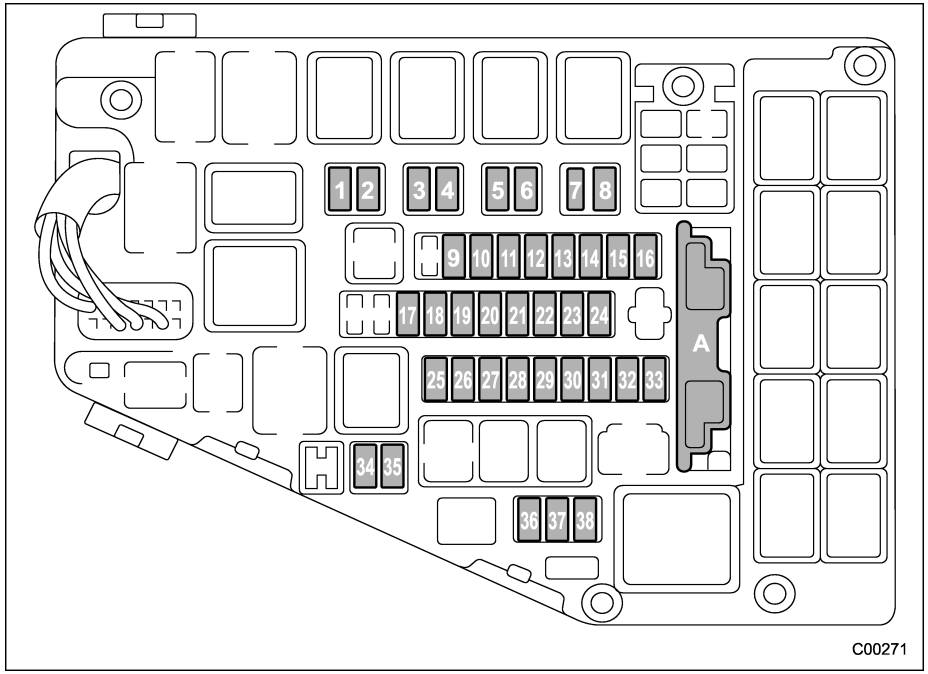



| Fuse panel | Fuse rating | Circuit |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | 7.5A | START1 |
| 2 | 20A | 12V SOCKET |
| 3 | 7.5A | IG1-1 |
| 4 | 15A | AUDIO NAVI |
| 5 | 15A | UNIT IG2-2 |
| 6 | 20A | P/W R.LH |
| 7 | 10A | CIGAR |
| 8 | 15A | A/C IG |
| 9 | 7.5A | ACC |
| 10 | 7.5A | UNIT IG2-1 |
| 11 | 30A | P/W MAIN1 |
| 12 | 7.5A | START2 |
| 13 | Empty | |
| 14 | 7.5A | UNIT+B |
| 15 | 7.5A | METER IG |
| 16 | 20A | P/W R.RH |
| 17 | 7.5A | MIR |
| 18 | 7.5A | LAMP IG |
| 19 | 7.5A | IG1-2 |
| 20 | 10A | SRS AIR BAG |
| 21 | 20A | P/W PASS1 |
| 22 | 15A | SEAT HTR R |

| Fuse panel | Fuse rating | Circuit |
|---|---|---|
| 23 | 10A | DRL |
| 24 | 20A | P/W MAIN2 |
| 25 | Empty | |
| 26 | 10A | BACK UP |
| 27 | 15A | WIPER DEICER |
| 28 | 7.5A | TRAIL R.FOG |
| 29 | 20A | P/W PASS2 |
| 30 | Empty | |
| 31 | 7.5A | SMT |
| 32 | 15A | SEAT HTR F |
| 33 | 7.5A | KEY SW |
| 34 | 7.5A | D_OP+B |
| 35 | 20A | SUN ROOF |
| 36 | Empty | |
| 37 | 7.5A | STOP |
| 38 | 7.5A | EYE SIGHT |

*– CONTINUED –*

## ■ Fuse panel located in the engine compartment




A) Main fuse

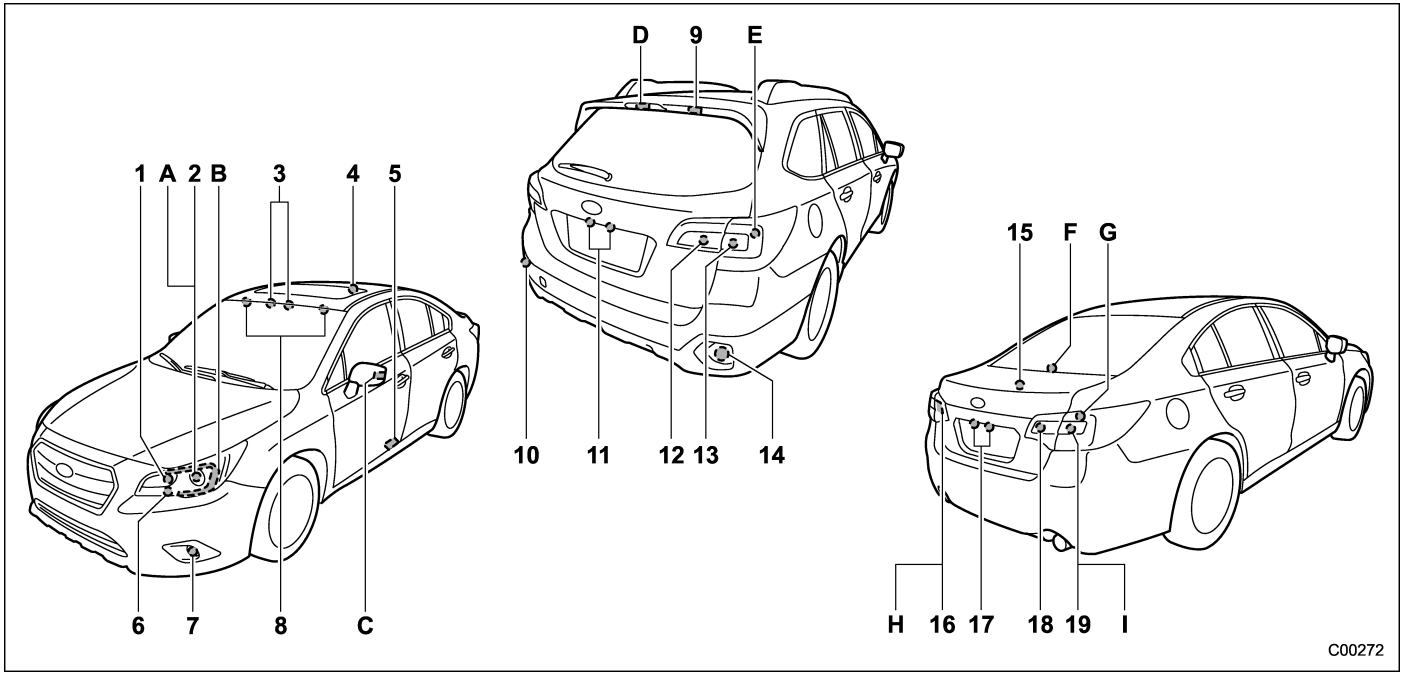
| Fuse panel | Fuse rating | Circuit |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | 7.5A | HORN RH |
| 2 | 7.5A | HORN LH |
| 3 | 10A | ILLUMI |
| 4 | 10A | TAIL |
| 5 | 15A | H/L LO RH |
| 6 | 15A | H/L LO LH |
| 7 | 10A | H/L HI RH |
| 8 | 10A | H/L HI LH |
| 9 | 15A | D/L |
| 10 | 10A | Auto Start Stop |
| 11 | 7.5A | ALT-S |
| 12 | 20A | FUEL |
| 13 | 15A | HAZARD |
| 14 | 30A | IG2 |
| 15 | 7.5A | PU B/UP |
| 16 | 7.5A | OBD |
| 17 | 20A*1<br>25A*2 | O2 HTR |
| 18 | 15A | E/G2 |
| 19 | 15A | ETC |

*1: Except 3.6 L models
*2: 3.6 L models

| Fuse panel | Fuse rating | Circuit |
|---|---|---|
| 20 | 15A | E/G1 |
| 21 | 15A | AVCS |
| 22 | 20A[*3]<br>15A[*4] | INJ |
| 23 | 7.5A | CVT SSR |
| 24 | 20A | TCU |
| 25 | 30A | BACKUP |
| 26 | 7.5A | ACTGS |
| 27 | 25A | SUB FAN |
| 28 | 25A | MAIN FAN |
| 29 | 30A | ABS SOL |
| 30 | 20A | AUDIO |
| 31 | 25A | R.DEF |
| 32 | 15A | BLOWER |
| 33 | 15A | BLOWER |
| 34 | 10A | F.FOG RH |
| 35 | 10A | F.FOG LH |
| 36 | 15A | R.WIPER |
| 37 | 15A | F.WASH |
| 38 | 30A | F.WIPER |

*3: Diesel engine models
*4: Petrol engine models

## Bulb chart




**NOTE**

**Lights from A to G are the LED (Light Emitting Diode) type. We recommend that you consult your SUBARU dealer for replacement.**

| | | Wattage | Bulb No. |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1) | High beam headlight | 12V-60W | HB3 |
| 2) | Low beam headlight (models without LED headlight) | 12V-55W | H11 |
| 3) | Map light | 12V-8W | |
| 4) | Dome light | 12V-8W | |
| 5) | Door step light | 12V-5W | W5W |
| 6) | Front turn signal light | 12V-21W | WY21W |
| 7) | Front fog light | 12V-19W | H16 |
| | Front fog light/Daytime running light | 12V-35W/13W | H8-P13W |
| 8) | Vanity mirror light | 12V-2W | |
| 9) | Cargo area light | 12V-13W | |
| 10) | Rear fog light (left-hand drive models) (Outback) | 12V-21W | W21W |
| 11) | Licence plate light (Outback) | 12V-5W | W5W |
| 12) | Back-up light (Outback) | 12V-16W | W16W |
| 13) | Rear turn signal light (Outback) | 12V-21W | WY21W |
| 14) | Rear fog light (right-hand drive models) (Outback) | 12V-21W | W21W |
| 15) | Trunk light (Sedan) | 12V-3.8W | |
| 16) | Back-up light (right-hand drive models) (Sedan) | 12V-16W | W16W |
| 17) | License plate light (Sedan) | 12V-5W | W5W |
| 18) | Back-up light (left-hand drive models) (Sedan) | 12V-16W | W16W |
| 19) | Rear turn signal light (Sedan) | 12V-21W | WY21W |
| A) | Low beam headlight (models with LED headlight) | 12V-22W | – |
| B) | Front position light | 12V-1.2W | – |
| C) | Side turn signal light (if equipped) | 12V-1.1W | – |
| D) | High mount stop light (Outback) | 12V-0.8W | – |

– CONTINUED –

| | | Wattage | Bulb No. |
|---|---|---|---|
| E) | Tail and stop light (Outback) | 12V-0.4/4.7W | – |
| F) | High mount stop light (Sedan) | 12V-0.8W | – |
| G) | Tail and stop light (Sedan) | 12V-0.4/4.7W | – |
| H) | Rear fog light (left-hand drive models) (Sedan) | 12V-1.1W | – |
| I) | Rear fog light (right-hand drive models) (Sedan) | 12V-1.1W | – |

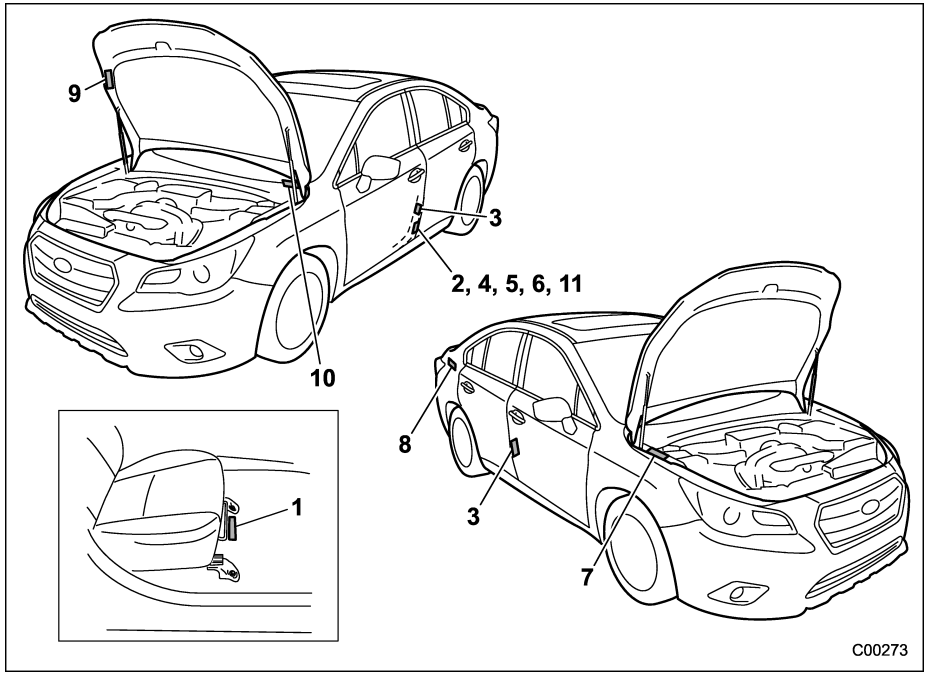
**⚠ WARNING**

**Bulbs may become very hot while illuminated. Before replacing bulbs, turn off the lights and wait until the bulbs cool down. Otherwise, there is a risk of sustaining a burn injury.**

**⚠ CAUTION**

**Replace any bulb only with a new bulb of the specified wattage. Using a bulb of different wattage could result in a fire.**

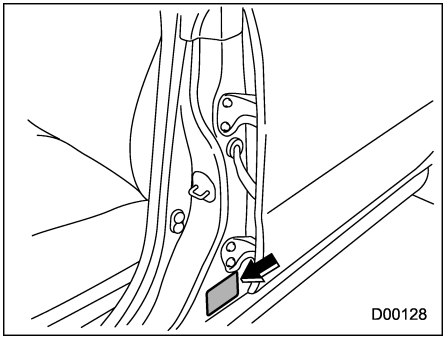
## Vehicle identification




1) Vehicle identification number
2) ID label (Europe models)
3) Tire inflation pressure label
4) Year of manufacture label (Middle East models)
5) Model number label (General models)
6) Built date label (Australia models)
7) ADR compliance plate (Australia models)
8) Fuel label
9) Air conditioner label
10) Vehicle identification number plate (if equipped)
11) ID label (Russia models)

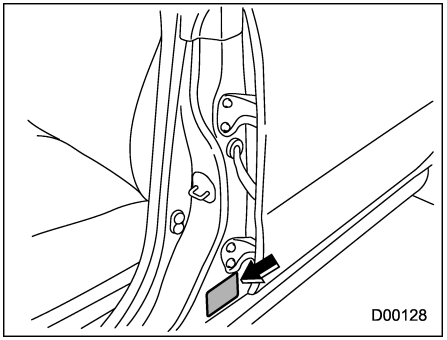
Year of manufacture and a country of origin (Middle East models only) ..... 13-2
ID label (Russia models) ..... 13-2
Speed limit, maximum torque and maximum power at rpm (Middle East models only) ..... 13-3
Fuel consumption and $CO_2$-emissions (EU only) ..... 13-4
Declaration of conformity in accordance with the radio and telecommunications terminal equipment directive 1999/5/EC ..... 13-5
Transmitter for the keyless entry system ..... 13-5
Receiver for the keyless entry system ..... 13-7
Immobilizer ..... 13-9
LF Oscillator ..... 13-14
Bluetooth® module ..... 13-20
Compressor ..... 13-21
Technical information ..... 13-22
Singapore models ..... 13-22
Panama models ..... 13-23
Dominican Republic models ..... 13-24
Serbia models ..... 13-24
Indonesia models ..... 13-25
Taiwan models ..... 13-25
Jordan models ..... 13-26
Argentina models ..... 13-27
Jamaica models ..... 13-27
Commonwealth of Dominica models ..... 13-27
Brazil models ..... 13-28
Republic of South Africa models ..... 13-30
Russia/Kazakhstan models ..... 13-30
Paraguay models ..... 13-30
Uruguay models ..... 13-31
Australia/New Zealand models ..... 13-31
Thailand models ..... 13-31
Israel models ..... 13-32
Oman models ..... 13-34
UAE models ..... 13-34
Nigeria models ..... 13-34
Declaration of conformity in accordance with the Machinery Directive 2006/42/EC ..... 13-35
Jack ..... 13-35

## Year of manufacture and a country of origin (Middle East models only)




The calendar year when your vehicle was manufactured and a country of origin are indicated in the “Year of manufacture label” attached to the driver’s door jam.

## ID label (Russia models)




The ID label is located on the left side center pillar as shown in the illustration.

# Speed limit, maximum torque and maximum power at rpm (Middle East models only)

**Sedan**

| Model | 2.5 L | 3.6 L |
|---|---|---|
| | CVT | CVT |
| Speed limit km/h (mph) | 210 (130) | 240 (149) |
| Maximum torque N·m (kgf·m, lbf·ft)/rpm | 235 (24.0, 173)/4,000 | 350 (35.7, 258)/4,400 |
| Maximum power kW (PS, HP)/rpm | 129 (175, 173)/5,800 | 191 (260, 256)/6,000 |

- The performance data above is the numeric value measured according to the GSO-ISO-1585-2008 quality norm.
- The performance data above is the numeric value measured from petrol with an octane rating of 95 (Research Octane number).

**Outback**

| Model | 2.5 L | 3.6 L |
|---|---|---|
| | CVT | CVT |
| Speed limit km/h (mph) | 198 (123) | 235 (146) |
| Maximum torque N·m (kgf·m, lbf·ft)/rpm | 235 (24.0, 173)/4,000 | 350 (35.7, 258)/4,400 |
| Maximum power kW (PS, HP)/rpm | 129 (175, 173)/5,800 | 191 (260, 256)/6,000 |

- The performance data above is the numeric value measured according to the GSO-ISO-1585-2008 quality norm.
- The performance data above is the numeric value measured from petrol with an octane rating of 95 (Research Octane number).

# Fuel consumption and $CO_2$-emissions (EU only)

**Petrol engine models that conform to "Euro 6"**

| Model and Type | | Fuel consumption according to Regulation (EC) No. 715/2007-136/2014 (L/100km) | | | $CO_2$-emissions according to Regulation (EC) No. 715/2007-136/2014 (g/km) | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | Urban | Extra-urban | Total | Urban | Extra-urban | Total |
| 2.5 L models | CVT | 8.7 | 6.0 | 7.0 | 201 | 138 | 161 |

**Diesel engine models that conform to "Euro 6"**

| Model and Type | | Fuel consumption according to Regulation (EC) No. 715/2007-136/2014 (L/100km) | | | $CO_2$-emissions according to Regulation (EC) No. 715/2007-136/2014 (g/km) | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | Urban | Extra-urban | Total | Urban | Extra-urban | Total |
| 2.0 L models | 6MT | 6.9 | 4.8 | 5.6 | 178 | 126 | 145 |
| | CVT | 7.5 | 5.3 | 6.1 | 194 | 139 | 159 |

# Declaration of conformity in accordance with the radio and telecommunications terminal equipment directive 1999/5/EC

## ■ Transmitter for the keyless entry system

### ▼ With TPMS

**ALPS** ALPS ELECTRIC CO., LTD. Engineering Headquarters
6-3-36, Nakazato, Furukawa, Osaki-city, Miyagi-pref, 989-6181, Japan
Phone +81 229-23-5111 Fax +81 229-23-5129

**DECLARATION of CONFORMITY**

**For**

CE

Product: Keyless Entry System
(Hand unit)
Model: TWB1G762
Type: Transmitter

**Supplied by**
ALPS ELECTRIC CO.,LTD.
6-3-36, Nakazato, Furukawa, Osaki-city,
Miyagi-pref., JAPAN 989-6181

**Technical Construction File held by**
ALPS ELECTRIC CO.,LTD.
6-3-36, Nakazato, Furukawa, Osaki-city,
Miyagi-pref., JAPAN 989-6181

**Notified Body - R&TTE Directive** N/A

| | **Standard used for comply** |
|---|---|
| **R&TTE Directive (Article 3.1(a) Safety)** | EN 60065: 2002 + Amd.1: 2006 + Amd.11: 2008 + Amd.2: 2010 +Amd.12: 2011 |
| **R&TTE Directive (Article 3.1(b) EMC)** | EN 301 489-1 V1.9.2: 2011-09<br>EN 301 489-3 V1.4.1: 2002-08 |
| **R&TTE Directive (Article 3.2 Spectrum)** | EN 300 220-1 V2.4.1 : 2012-05<br>EN 300 220-2 V2.4.1 : 2012-05 |

**Means of Conformity**

We declare under our sole responsibility that the Product (s) is conformity with the essential requirements and other relevant requirements of the Radio and Telecommunication Terminal Equipment (R&TTE) Directive (1999/5/EC).

**Date of issue:** May 16, 2013

**Signature of Responsible Person:**

Toru Kinoshita
Group Manager
GROUP 5 ENGINEERING DEPT. M5

D00251

*– CONTINUED –*

CalsonicKansei
CalsonicKansei Corp.
2-1917, Nisshin-cho, Kita-ku, Saitama-shi, Saitama-ken
331-8501, Japan
TEL : +81-48-660-4073 FAX : +81-48-661-1026

# DECLARATION of CONFORMITY

We, **CalsonicKansei Corp.** of the above address, hereby declare, at our sole responsibility, that the following product conforms to the Essential Requirements of the Radio and Telecommunications Terminal Equipment Directive 1999/5/EC in accordance with the tests conducted to the appropriate requirements of the relevant standards, as listed herewith.

| | |
|---|---|
| **Product:** | **Keyless Entry System (Transmitter)** |
| **Model/ Type Number:** | **TF001** |
| **Directive and Standards used:** | **Radio: EN 300 220-1 V2.3.1 (2010-02)**<br>**EN 300 220-2 V2.3.1 (2010-02)**<br>**EMC : EN 301 489-1 V1.8.1(2008-04)**<br>**EN 301 489-3 V1.4.1 (2002-08)**<br>**Safety: EN 60065 :2002 + Amd.1 :2006**<br>**incl. EN60065:2002+Amd.11:2008** |

**Year of affixing CE marking: 2011**

Signature : Haruyoshi Hayashi

Name : Haruyoshi Hayashi

Position : Deputy General Manager
Electric Design Group

Date : August 27, 2011

CAUTION - Danger of explosion if battery is incorrectly replaced. Replace only with the same or equivalent type.
CAUTION - Do not exposed to excessive heat such as sunshine, fire or the like.

D00224

## ■ Receiver for the keyless entry system

### ▼ With TPMS

ALPS® **ALPS ELECTRIC CO., LTD.** Engineering Headquarters
6-3-36, Nakazato, Furukawa, Osaki-city, Miyagi-pref. 989-6181, Japan
Phone +81 229-23-5111 Fax +81 229-23-5129

# DECLARATION of CONFORMITY

For

CE

Product: TPMS/RKE Receiver
Model: TWD1G776
Type: Receiver

**Supplied by**
ALPS ELECTRIC CO.,LTD.
6-3-36, Nakazato, Furukawa, Osaki-city,
Miyagi-pref., JAPAN 989-6181

**Technical Construction File held by**
ALPS ELECTRIC CO.,LTD.
6-3-36, Nakazato, Furukawa, Osaki-city,
Miyagi-pref., JAPAN 989-6181

**Notified Body - R&TTE Directive** N/A

| | **Standard used for comply** |
|---|---|
| **R&TTE Directive (Article 3.1(a) Safety)** | EN 60065: 2002 + Amd.1: 2006 + Amd.11: 2008 + Amd.2: 2010 +Amd.12; 2011 |
| **R&TTE Directive (Article 3.1(b) EMC)** | EN 301 489-1 V1.9.2: 2011-09<br>EN 301 489-3 V1.4.1: 2002-08 |
| **R&TTE Directive (Article 3.2 Spectrum)** | EN 300 220-1 V2.4.1 : 2012-05<br>EN 300 220-2 V2.4.1 : 2012-05 |

**Means of Conformity**

We declare under our sole responsibility that the Product (s) is conformity with the essential requirements and other relevant requirements of the Radio and Telecommunication Terminal Equipment (R&TTE) Directive (1999/5/EC).

**Date of issue:** May 16, 2013

**Signature of Responsible Person:**

Toru Kinoshita
Group Manager
GROUP 5 ENGINEERING DEPT. M5

D00252

*– CONTINUED –*



CalsonicKansei Corp.
2-1917, Nisshin-cho, Kita-ku, Saitama-shi, Saitama-ken
331-8501, Japan
TEL : +81-48-660-4073 FAX : +81-48-661-1026

# DECLARATION of CONFORMITY

We, **CalsonicKansei Corp.** of the above address, hereby declare, at our sole responsibility, that the following product conforms to the Essential Requirements of the Radio and Telecommunications Terminal Equipment Directive 1999/5/EC in accordance with the tests conducted to the appropriate requirements of the relevant standards, as listed herewith.

| | |
|---|---|
| **Product:** | **Keyless Entry System (Receiver)** |
| **Model/ Type Number:** | **GSREU52** |
| **Directive and Standards used:** | **Radio: EN 300 220-1 V2.3.1 (2010-02)**<br>**EN 300 220-2 V2.3.1 (2010-02)**<br>**EMC : EN 301 489-1 V1.8.1(2008-04)**<br>**EN 301 489-3 V1.4.1 (2002-08)**<br>**Safety: EN 60065 :2002 + Amd.1 :2006**<br>**incl. EN60065:2002+Amd.11:2008** |

**Year of affixing CE marking: 2011**

Signature : Haruyoshi Hayashi

Name : Haruyoshi Hayashi

Position : Deputy General Manager
Electric Design Group

Date : August 27, 2011

D00225

## ■ Immobilizer

### ▼ Models with “keyless access with push-button start system”

SUBARU

**FUJI HEAVY INDUSTRIES LTD.**
SUBARU ENGINEERING DIVISION
1-1 SUBARU-CHO OTA-SHI GUNMA 373-8555 JAPAN
Phone: +81 276-26-2771 Fax: +81 276-26-3069

R&TTE Declaration of Conformity

We,

Manufacturer's Name: Fuji Heavy Industries Ltd.
Manufacturer's Address: 1-1,Subaru-cho,Ota-shi,Gunma 373-8555 JAPAN

hereby declare under our sole responsibility that the product:

Product Name: Immobilizer
Product Model: SSPIMB02
to which this declaration relates is in conformity with the essential requirements and other relevant requirements of the R&TTE Directive (1999/5/EC). The product is compliant with the following standards and/or other normative documents:

-Health & safety requirements: EN60950-1
-EMC requirements EN301 489-1 & EN301 489-3
-Effective uses of radio spectrum: EN300 330-2

Supplementary information:

| | |
|---|---|
| * CE mark | CE |
| * Member states intended for use | EU and EFTA |

Date: May 13, 2015

Signature: Takashi Nishida
Takashi Nishida

D00379

*– CONTINUED –*

**English**
Hereby, Fuji Heavy Industries Ltd., declares that this SSPIMB02 is in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1999/5/EC.

**Suomi**
Fuji Heavy Industries Ltd. vakuuttaa täten että SSPIMB02 tyyppinen laite on direktiivin 1999/5/EY oleellisten vaatimusten ja sitä koskevien direktiivin muiden ehtojen mukainen.

**Nederlands**
Hierbij verklaart Fuji Heavy Industries Ltd. dat het toestel SSPIMB02 in overeenstemming is met de essentiële eisen en de andere relevante bepalingen van richtlijn 1999/5/EG.

**Français**
Par la présente Fuji Heavy Industries Ltd. déclare que l'appareil SSPIMB02 est conforme aux exigences essentielles et aux autres dispositions pertinentes de la directive 1999/5/CE.

D00296

**Svenska**
Härmed intygar Fuji Heavy Industries Ltd. att denna SSPIMB02 står I överensstämmelse med de väsentliga egenskapskrav och övriga relevanta bestämmelser som framgår av direktiv 1999/5/EG.

**Dansk**
Undertegnede Fuji Heavy Industries Ltd. erklærer herved, at følgende udstyr SSPIMB02 overholder de væsentlige krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF.

**Deutsch**
Hiermit erklärt Fuji Heavy Industries Ltd., dass sich das Gerät SSPIMB02 in Übereinstimmung mit den grundlegenden Anforderungen und den übrigen einschlägigen Bestimmungen der Richtlinie 1999/5/EG befindet.

**Ελληνικά**
ΜΕ ΤΗΝ ΠΑΡΟΥΣΑ Fuji Heavy Industries Ltd. ΔΗΛΩΝΕΙ ΟΤΙ SSPIMB02 ΣΥΜΜΟΡΦΩΝΕΤΑΙ ΠΡΟΣ ΤΙΣ ΟΥΣΙΩΔΕΙΣ ΑΠΑΙΤΗΣΕΙΣ ΚΑΙ ΤΙΣ ΛΟΙΠΕΣ ΣΧΕΤΙΚΕΣ ΔΙΑΤΑΞΕΙΣ ΤΗΣ ΟΔΗΓΙΑΣ 1999/5/ΕΚ.

D00297

**Italiano**
Con la presente Fuji Heavy Industries Ltd. dichiara che questo SSPIMB02 è conforme ai requisiti essenziali ed alle altre disposizioni pertinenti stabilite dalla direttiva 1999/5/CE.

**Español**
Por medio de la presente Fuji Heavy Industries Ltd. declara que el SSPIMB02 cumple con los requisitos esenciales y cualesquiera otras disposiciones aplicables o exigibles de la Directiva 1999/5/CE.

**Português**
Fuji Heavy Industries Ltd. declara que este SSPIMB02 está conforme com os requisitos essenciais e outras disposições da Directiva 1999/5/CE.

**Malti**
Hawnhekk, Fuji Heavy Industries Ltd., jiddikjara li dan SSPIMB02 jikkonforma mal-ħtiġijiet essenzjali u ma provvedimenti oħrajn relevanti li hemm fid-Dirrettiva 1999/5/EC.

D00298

**Eesti keel**

Käesolevaga kinnitab Fuji Heavy Industries Ltd. seadme SSPIMB02 vastavust direktiivi 1999/5/EÜ põhinõuetele ja nimetatud direktiivist tulenevatele teistele asjakohastele sätetele.

**Magyar**

Alulírott, Fuji Heavy Industries Ltd. nyilatkozom, hogy a SSPIMB02 megfelel a vonatkozó alapvetõ követelményeknek és az 1999/5/EC irányelv egyéb elõírásainak.

**Slovenčina**

Fuji Heavy Industries Ltd. týmto vyhlasuje, že SSPIMB02 spĺňa základné požiadavky a všetky príslušné ustanovenia Smernice 1999/5/ES.

**Čeština**

Fuji Heavy Industries Ltd. tímto prohlašuje, že tento SSPIMB02 je ve shodě se základními požadavky a dalšími příslušnými ustanoveními směrnice 1999/5/ES.

D00299

**Slovenščina**

Fuji Heavy Industries Ltd. izjavlja, da je ta SSPIMB02 v skladu z bistvenimi zahtevami in ostalimi relevantnimi določili direktive 1999/5/ES.

**Lietuvių kalba**

Šiuo Fuji Heavy Industries Ltd. deklaruoja, kad šis SSPIMB02 atitinka esminius reikalavimus ir kitas 1999/5/EB Direktyvos nuostatas.

**Latviešu valoda**

Ar šo Fuji Heavy Industries Ltd. deklarē, ka SSPIMB02 atbilst Direktīvas 1999/5/EK būtiskajām prasībām un citiem ar to saistītajiem noteikumiem.

**Polski**

Niniejszym Fuji Heavy Industries Ltd. oświadcza, że SSPIMB02 jest zgodny z zasadniczymi wymogami oraz pozostałymi stosownymi postanowieniami Dyrektywy 1999/5/EC.

D00300

**Íslenska**

Hér með lýsir Fuji Heavy Industries Ltd. yfir því að SSPIMB02 er í samræmi við grunnkröfur og aðrar kröfur, sem gerðar eru í tilskipun 1999/5/EC.

**Norsk**

Fuji Heavy Industries Ltd. erklærer herved at utstyret SSPIMB02 er i samsvar med de grunnleggende krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF.

**български**

С настоящето, Fuji Heavy Industries Ltd., декларира, че SSPIMB02 е в съответствие със съществените изисквания и другите приложими разпоредби на Директива 1999/5/EC.

**Română**

Prin prezenta, Fuji Heavy Industries Ltd., declară că aparatul SSPIMB02 este in conformitate cu cerinţele esenţiale şi cu alte prevederi pertinente ale Directivei 1999/5/CE.

D00301

***– CONTINUED –***

**Црногорски језик**
Ovim, Fuji Heavy Industries Ltd., izjavljuje da ovaj SSPIMB02 je usklađen sa bitnim zahtjevima i drugim relevantnim odredbama Direktive 1999/5/EC.

**Hrvatski**
Ovim Fuji Heavy Industries Ltd., izjavljuje da je SSPIMB02 u sklau s bitnim zahtjevima i drugim relevantnim odredbama Direktive 1999/5/EC i Pravilnika o RiTT opremi (NN 25/2012).

**Српски/srpski**
Ovim, Fuji Heavy Industries Ltd., deklariše da je SSPIMB02 u skladu sa osnovnim zahtevima i ostalim relevantnim odredbama Direktive 1999/5/EC.

**Shqip**
Nepermjet kesaj, Fuji Heavy Industries Ltd., deklaroj qe ky SSPIMB02 eshte ne pajtim me kerkesat thelbesore dhe dispozitat e tjera perkatese te Direktives 1999/5/EC.

D00302

### ▼ Models without “keyless access with push-button start system”

**English**
Hereby, Tokai Rika Co., Ltd., declares that this RI-38BFH is in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1999/5/EC.

**Suomi**
Tokai Rika Co., Ltd. vakuuttaa täten että RI-38BFH tyyppinen laite on direktiivin 1999/5/EY oleellisten vaatimusten ja sitä koskevien direktiivin muiden ehtojen mukainen.

**Nederlands**
Hierbij verklaart Tokai Rika Co., Ltd. dat het toestel RI-38BFH in overeenstemming is met de essentiële eisen en de andere relevante bepalingen van richtlijn 1999/5/EG.

**Français**
Par la présente Tokai Rika Co., Ltd. déclare que l’appareil RI-38BFH est conforme aux exigences essentielles et aux autres dispositions pertinentes de la directive 1999/5/CE.

**Svenska**
Härmed intygar Tokai Rika Co., Ltd. att denna RI-38BFH står I överensstämmelse med de väsentliga egenskapskrav och övriga relevanta bestämmelser som framgår av direktiv 1999/5/EG.

**Dansk**
Undertegnede Tokai Rika Co., Ltd. erklærer herved, at følgende udstyr RI-38BFH overholder de væsentlige krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF.

**Deutsch**
Hiermit erklärt Tokai Rika Co., Ltd., dass sich das Gerät RI-38BFH in Übereinstimmung mit den grundlegenden Anforderungen und den übrigen einschlägigen Bestimmungen der Richtlinie 1999/5/EG befindet.

**Ελληνικά**
ΜΕ ΤΗΝ ΠΑΡΟΥΣΑ Tokai Rika Co., Ltd. ΔΗΛΩΝΕΙ ΟΤΙ RI-38BFH ΣΥΜΜΟΡΦΩΝΕΤΑΙ ΠΡΟΣ ΤΙΣ ΟΥΣΙΩΔΕΙΣ ΑΠΑΙΤΗΣΕΙΣ ΚΑΙ ΤΙΣ ΛΟΙΠΕΣ ΣΧΕΤΙΚΕΣ ΔΙΑΤΑΞΕΙΣ ΤΗΣ ΟΔΗΓΙΑΣ 1999/5/ΕΚ.

**Italiano**
Con la presente Tokai Rika Co., Ltd. dichiara che questo RI-38BFH è conforme ai requisiti essenziali ed alle altre disposizioni pertinenti stabilite dalla direttiva 1999/5/CE.

**Español**

Por medio de la presente Tokai Rika Co., Ltd. declara que el RI-38BFH cumple con los requisitos esenciales y cualesquiera otras disposiciones aplicables o exigibles de la Directiva 1999/5/CE.

**Português**

Tokai Rika Co., Ltd. declara que este RI-38BFH está conforme com os requisitos essenciais e outras disposições da Directiva 1999/5/CE.

**Malti**

Hawnhekk, Tokai Rika Co., Ltd., jiddikjara li dan RI-38BFH jikkonforma mal-ħtiġijiet essenzjali u ma provvedimenti oħrajn relevanti li hemm fid-Dirrettiva 1999/5/EC.

**Eesti keel**

Käesolevaga kinnitab Tokai Rika Co., Ltd. seadme RI-38BFH vastavust direktiivi 1999/5/EÜ põhinõuetele ja nimetatud direktiivist tulenevatele teistele asjakohastele sätetele.

**Magyar**

Alulírott, Tokai Rika Co., Ltd. nyilatkozom, hogy a RI-38BFH megfelel a vonatkozó alapvetõ követelményeknek és az 1999/5/EC irányelv egyéb elõírásainak.

**Slovenčina**

Tokai Rika Co., Ltd. týmto vyhlasuje, že RI-38BFH spĺňa základné požiadavky a všetky príslušné ustanovenia Smernice 1999/5/ES.

**Čeština**

Tokai Rika Co., Ltd. tímto prohlašuje, že tento RI-38BFH je ve shodě se základními požadavky a dalšími příslušnými ustanoveními směrnice 1999/5/ES.

**Slovenščina**

Tokai Rika Co., Ltd. izjavlja, da je ta RI-38BFH v skladu z bistvenimi zahtevami in ostalimi relevantnimi določili direktive 1999/5/ES.

**Lietuvių kalba**

Šiuo Tokai Rika Co., Ltd. deklaruoja, kad šis RI-38BFH atitinka esminius reikalavimus ir kitas 1999/5/EB Direktyvos nuostatas.

**Latviešu valoda**

Ar šo Tokai Rika Co., Ltd. deklarē, ka RI-38BFH atbilst Direktīvas 1999/5/EK būtiskajām prasībām un citiem ar to saistītajiem noteikumiem.

**Polski**

Niniejszym Tokai Rika Co., Ltd. oświadcza, że RI-38BFH jest zgodny z zasadniczymi wymogami oraz pozostałymi stosownymi postanowieniami Dyrektywy 1999/5/EC.

**Íslenska**

Hér með lýsir Tokai Rika Co., Ltd. yfir því að RI-38BFH er í samræmi við grunnkröfur og aðrar kröfur, sem gerðar eru í tilskipun 1999/5/EC.

**Norsk**

Tokai Rika Co., Ltd. erklærer herved at utstyret RI-38BFH er i samsvar med de grunnleggende krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF.

**български**

С настоящето, Tokai Rika Co., Ltd., декларира, че RI-38BFH е в съответствие със съществените изисквания и другите приложими разпоредби на Директива 1999/5/EC.

**Română**

Prin prezenta, Tokai Rika Co., Ltd., declară că aparatul RI-38BFH este în conformitate cu cerinţele esenţiale şi cu alte prevederi pertinente ale Directivei 1999/5/CE.

**Црногорски језик**

Ovim, Tokai Rika Co., Ltd., izjavljuje da ovaj RI-38BFH je usklađen sa bitnim zahtjevima i drugim relevantnim odredbama Direktive 1999/5/EC.

***– CONTINUED –***

**Hrvatski**

Ovim Tokai Rika Co., Ltd., izjavljuje da je RI-38BFH u sklau s bitnim zahtjevima i drugim relevantnim odredbama Direktive 1999/5/EC i Pravilnika o RiTT opremi (NN 25/2012).

**Српски/srpski**

Ovim, Tokai Rika Co., Ltd., deklariše da je RI-38BFH u skladu sa osnovnim zahtevima i ostalim relevantnim odredbama Direktive 1999/5/EC.

**Shqip**

Nepermjet kesaj, Tokai Rika Co., Ltd., deklaroj qe ky RI-38BFH eshte ne pajtim me kerkesat thelbesore dhe dispozitat e tjera perkatese te Direktives 1999/5/EC.

The DECLARATION of CONFORMITY (DoC) is available at the following address:
http://www.tokai-rika.co.jp/pc/

CE

## ■ LF Oscillator

The latest “DECLARATION of CONFORMITY” (DoC) is available at the following address:
http://www.globaldenso.com/en/products/oem/index.html

CE

**English**

Hereby, DENSO CORPORATION, declares that this 14AHB is in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1999/5/EC.

**Suomi**

DENSO CORPORATION vakuuttaa täten että 14AHB tyyppinen laite on direktiivin 1999/5/EY oleellisten vaatimusten ja sitä koskevien direktiivin muiden ehtojen mukainen.

**Nederlands**

Hierbij verklaart DENSO CORPORATION dat het toestel 14AHB in overeenstemming is met de essentiële eisen en de andere relevante bepalingen van richtlijn 1999/5/EG.

**Français**

Par la présente DENSO CORPORATION déclare que l’appareil 14AHB est conforme aux exigences essentielles et aux autres dispositions pertinentes de la directive 1999/5/CE.

D00303

**Svenska**

Härmed intygar DENSO CORPORATION att denna 14AHB står I överensstämmelse med de väsentliga egenskapskrav och övriga relevanta bestämmelser som framgår av direktiv 1999/5/EG.

**Dansk**

Undertegnede DENSO CORPORATION erklærer herved, at følgende udstyr 14AHB overholder de væsentlige krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF.

**Deutsch**

Hiermit erklärt DENSO CORPORATION, dass sich das Gerät 14AHB in Übereinstimmung mit den grundlegenden Anforderungen und den übrigen einschlägigen Bestimmungen der Richtlinie 1999/5/EG befindet.

**Ελληνικά**

ΜΕ ΤΗΝ ΠΑΡΟΥΣΑ DENSO CORPORATION ΔΗΛΩΝΕΙ ΟΤΙ 14AHB ΣΥΜΜΟΡΦΩΝΕΤΑΙ ΠΡΟΣ ΤΙΣ ΟΥΣΙΩΔΕΙΣ ΑΠΑΙΤΗΣΕΙΣ ΚΑΙ ΤΙΣ ΛΟΙΠΕΣ ΣΧΕΤΙΚΕΣ ΔΙΑΤΑΞΕΙΣ ΤΗΣ ΟΔΗΓΙΑΣ 1999/5/ΕΚ.

D00304

**Italiano**

Con la presente DENSO CORPORATION dichiara che questo 14AHB è conforme ai requisiti essenziali ed alle altre disposizioni pertinenti stabilite dalla direttiva 1999/5/CE.

**Español**

Por medio de la presente DENSO CORPORATION declara que el 14AHB cumple con los requisitos esenciales y cualesquiera otras disposiciones aplicables o exigibles de la Directiva 1999/5/CE.

**Português**

DENSO CORPORATION declara que este 14AHB está conforme com os requisitos essenciais e outras disposições da Directiva 1999/5/CE.

**Malti**

Hawnhekk, DENSO CORPORATION, jiddikjara li dan 14AHB jikkonforma malħtiġijiet essenzjali u ma provvedimenti oħrajn relevanti li hemm fid-Dirrettiva 1999/5/EC.

D00305

**Eesti keel**

Käesolevaga kinnitab DENSO CORPORATION seadme 14AHB vastavust direktiivi 1999/5/EÜ põhinõuetele ja nimetatud direktiivist tulenevatele teistele asjakohastele sätetele.

**Magyar**

Alulírott, DENSO CORPORATION nyilatkozom, hogy a 14AHB megfelel a vonatkozó alapvetõ követelményeknek és az 1999/5/EC irányelv egyéb elõírásainak.

**Slovenčina**

DENSO CORPORATION týmto vyhlasuje, že 14AHB spĺňa základné požiadavky a všetky príslušné ustanovenia Smernice 1999/5/ES.

**Čeština**

DENSO CORPORATION tímto prohlašuje, že tento 14AHB je ve shodě se základními požadavky a dalšími příslušnými ustanoveními směrnice 1999/5/ES.

D00306

*– CONTINUED –*

**Slovenščina**
DENSO CORPORATION izjavlja, da je ta 14AHB v skladu z bistvenimi zahtevami in ostalimi relevantnimi določili direktive 1999/5/ES.

**Lietuvių kalba**
Šiuo DENSO CORPORATION deklaruoja, kad šis 14AHB atitinka esminius reikalavimus ir kitas 1999/5/EB Direktyvos nuostatas.

**Latviešu valoda**
Ar šo DENSO CORPORATION deklarē, ka 14AHB atbilst Direktīvas 1999/5/EK būtiskajām prasībām un citiem ar to saistītajiem noteikumiem.

**Polski**
Niniejszym DENSO CORPORATION oświadcza, że 14AHB jest zgodny z zasadniczymi wymogami oraz pozostałymi stosownymi postanowieniami Dyrektywy 1999/5/EC.

D00307

**Íslenska**
Hér með lýsir DENSO CORPORATION yfir því að 14AHB er í samræmi við grunnkröfur og aðrar kröfur, sem gerðar eru í tilskipun 1999/5/EC.

**Norsk**
DENSO CORPORATION erklærer herved at utstyret 14AHB er i samsvar med de grunnleggende krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF.

**български**
С настоящето, DENSO CORPORATION, декларира, че 14AHB е в съответствие със съществените изисквания и другите приложими разпоредби на Директива 1999/5/EC.

**Română**
Prin prezenta, DENSO CORPORATION, declară că aparatul 14AHB este in conformitate cu cerințele esențiale și cu alte prevederi pertinente ale Directivei 1999/5/CE.

D00308

**Црногорски језик**
Ovim, DENSO CORPORATION, izjavljuje da ovaj 14AHB je usklađen sa bitnim zahtjevima i drugim relevantnim odredbama Direktive 1999/5/EC.

**Српски/srpski**
Ovim, DENSO CORPORATION, deklariše da je 14AHB u skladu sa osnovnim zahtevima i ostalim relevantnim odredbama Direktive 1999/5/EC.

**Hrvatski**
Ovim DENSO CORPORATION, izjavljuje da je 14AHB u sklau s bitnim zahtjevima i drugim relevantnim odredbama Direktive 1999/5/EC i Pravilnika o RiTT opremi (NN 25/2012).

**Shqip**
Nepermjet kesaj, DENSO CORPORATION, deklaroj qe ky 14AHB eshte ne pajtim me kerkesat thelbesore dhe dispozitat e tjera perkatese te Direktives 1999/5/EC.

D00309

**English**
Hereby, FUJI HEAVY INDUSTRIES LTD., declares that this FJ14-1 is in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1999/5/EC.

**Suomi**
FUJI HEAVY INDUSTRIES LTD. vakuuttaa täten että FJ14-1 tyyppinen laite on direktiivin 1999/5/EY oleellisten vaatimusten ja sitä koskevien direktiivin muiden ehtojen mukainen.

**Nederlands**
Hierbij verklaart FUJI HEAVY INDUSTRIES LTD. dat het toestel FJ14-1 in overeenstemming is met de essentiële eisen en de andere relevante bepalingen van richtlijn 1999/5/EG.

**Français**
Par la présente FUJI HEAVY INDUSTRIES LTD. déclare que l'appareil FJ14-1 est conforme aux exigences essentielles et aux autres dispositions pertinentes de la directive 1999/5/CE.

D00310

**Svenska**
Härmed intygar FUJI HEAVY INDUSTRIES LTD. att denna FJ14-1 står I överensstämmelse med de väsentliga egenskapskrav och övriga relevanta bestämmelser som framgår av direktiv 1999/5/EG.

**Dansk**
Undertegnede FUJI HEAVY INDUSTRIES LTD. erklærer herved, at følgende udstyr FJ14-1 overholder de væsentlige krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF.

**Deutsch**
Hiermit erklärt FUJI HEAVY INDUSTRIES LTD., dass sich das Gerät FJ14-1 in Übereinstimmung mit den grundlegenden Anforderungen und den übrigen einschlägigen Bestimmungen der Richtlinie 1999/5/EG befindet.

**Ελληνικά**
ΜΕ ΤΗΝ ΠΑΡΟΥΣΑ FUJI HEAVY INDUSTRIES LTD. ΔΗΛΩΝΕΙ ΟΤΙ FJ14-1 ΣΥΜΜΟΡΦΩΝΕΤΑΙ ΠΡΟΣ ΤΙΣ ΟΥΣΙΩΔΕΙΣ ΑΠΑΙΤΗΣΕΙΣ ΚΑΙ ΤΙΣ ΛΟΙΠΕΣ ΣΧΕΤΙΚΕΣ ΔΙΑΤΑΞΕΙΣ ΤΗΣ ΟΔΗΓΙΑΣ 1999/5/ΕΚ.

D00311

**Italiano**
Con la presente FUJI HEAVY INDUSTRIES LTD. dichiara che questo FJ14-1 è conforme ai requisiti essenziali ed alle altre disposizioni pertinenti stabilite dalla direttiva 1999/5/CE.

**Español**
Por medio de la presente FUJI HEAVY INDUSTRIES LTD. declara que el FJ14-1 cumple con los requisitos esenciales y cualesquiera otras disposiciones aplicables o exigibles de la Directiva 1999/5/CE.

**Português**
FUJI HEAVY INDUSTRIES LTD. declara que este FJ14-1 está conforme com os requisitos essenciais e outras disposições da Directiva 1999/5/CE.

**Malti**
Hawnhekk, FUJI HEAVY INDUSTRIES LTD., jiddikjara li dan FJ14-1 jikkonforma mal-ħtiġijiet essenzjali u ma provvedimenti oħrajn relevanti li hemm fid-Dirrettiva 1999/5/EC.

D00312

*– CONTINUED –*

**Eesti keel**

Käesolevaga kinnitab FUJI HEAVY INDUSTRIES LTD. seadme FJ14-1 vastavust direktiivi 1999/5/EÜ põhinõuetele ja nimetatud direktiivist tulenevatele teistele asjakohastele sätetele.

**Magyar**

Alulírott, FUJI HEAVY INDUSTRIES LTD. nyilatkozom, hogy a FJ14-1 megfelel a vonatkozó alapvetõ követelményeknek és az 1999/5/EC irányelv egyéb elõírásainak.

**Slovenčina**

FUJI HEAVY INDUSTRIES LTD. týmto vyhlasuje, že FJ14-1 spĺňa základné požiadavky a všetky príslušné ustanovenia Smernice 1999/5/ES.

**Čeština**

FUJI HEAVY INDUSTRIES LTD. tímto prohlašuje, že tento FJ14-1 je ve shodě se základními požadavky a dalšími příslušnými ustanoveními směrnice 1999/5/ES.

D00313

**Slovenščina**

FUJI HEAVY INDUSTRIES LTD. izjavlja, da je ta FJ14-1 v skladu z bistvenimi zahtevami in ostalimi relevantnimi določili direktive 1999/5/ES.

**Lietuvių kalba**

Šiuo FUJI HEAVY INDUSTRIES LTD. deklaruoja, kad šis FJ14-1 atitinka esminius reikalavimus ir kitas 1999/5/EB Direktyvos nuostatas.

**Latviešu valoda**

Ar šo FUJI HEAVY INDUSTRIES LTD. deklarē, ka FJ14-1 atbilst Direktīvas 1999/5/EK būtiskajām prasībām un citiem ar to saistītajiem noteikumiem.

**Polski**

Niniejszym FUJI HEAVY INDUSTRIES LTD. oświadcza, że FJ14-1 jest zgodny z zasadniczymi wymogami oraz pozostałymi stosownymi postanowieniami Dyrektywy 1999/5/EC.

D00314

**Íslenska**

Hér með lýsir FUJI HEAVY INDUSTRIES LTD. yfir því að FJ14-1 er í samræmi við grunnkröfur og aðrar kröfur, sem gerðar eru í tilskipun 1999/5/EC.

**Norsk**

FUJI HEAVY INDUSTRIES LTD. erklærer herved at utstyret FJ14-1 er i samsvar med de grunnleggende krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF.

**български**

С настоящето, FUJI HEAVY INDUSTRIES LTD., декларира, че FJ14-1 е в съответствие със съществените изисквания и другите приложими разпоредби на Директива 1999/5/ЕС.

**Română**

Prin prezenta, FUJI HEAVY INDUSTRIES LTD., declară că aparatul FJ14-1 este in conformitate cu cerinţele esenţiale şi cu alte prevederi pertinente ale Directivei 1999/5/CE.

D00315

**Црногорски језик**
Ovim, FUJI HEAVY INDUSTRIES LTD., izjavljuje da ovaj FJ14-1 je usklađen sa bitnim zahtjevima i drugim relevantnim odredbama Direktive 1999/5/EC.

**Српски/srpski**
Ovim, FUJI HEAVY INDUSTRIES LTD., deklariše da je FJ14-1 u skladu sa osnovnim zahtevima i ostalim relevantnim odredbama Direktive 1999/5/EC.

**Hrvatski**
Ovim FUJI HEAVY INDUSTRIES LTD., izjavljuje da je FJ14-1 u sklau s bitnim zahtjevima i drugim relevantnim odredbama Direktive 1999/5/EC i Pravilnika o RiTT opremi (NN 25/2012).

**Shqip**
Nepermjet kesaj, FUJI HEAVY INDUSTRIES LTD., deklaroj qe ky FJ14-1 eshte ne pajtim me kerkesat thelbesore dhe dispozitat e tjera perkatese te Direktives 1999/5/EC.

D00316

*– CONTINUED –*

Clarion
moves you • connects you

Clarion Co., Ltd.
■ Headquarters & Technology Center
7-2 Shintoshin, Chuo-ku, Saitama-shi, Saitama, 330-0081, Japan
TEL: +81-48-601-3700
■ Headquarters-Annex Office
Land Axis Tower 30F,11-2, Shintoshin, Chuo-ku, Saitama-shi, Saitama 330-6030, Japan
TEL: +81-48-601-3700

# EC DECLARATION of CONFORMITY

Document No. 14DC-CT01

We **Clarion Co., Ltd.**
(manufacturer)

**7-2, Shintoshin, Chuo-ku, Saitama-shi, Saitama 330-0081, Japan**
(address)

declare under our sole responsibility that the product

**DisplayAudio**
**Model: PF-3639, PF-3658, PF-3637, PF-3638**

(name, type or models, possibly sources and numbers of items)

to which this declaration relates is in conformity with the following standard(s) or other normative document(s)

EN 300 328 V1.8.1 (2012-16)
EN 55013:2001+A1:2003+A2:2006, EN 55020:2007+A11:2011
EN 301 489-1 V1.9.2 (2011-09)
EN 301 489-17 V2.2.1 (2012-09)
EN 60950-1:2006+Amd.11:2009+Amd.1:2010+Amd.12:2011
EN 62479: 2010

(title and/or number and date of issue of the standard(s) or other normative document(s))

(if applicable) following the provisions of Directive **1999/5/EC.**
Regarding EN 55013 and EN 55020, refer to the official Journal of EMC Directive.

Saitama Japan
3, March 2014
(Place and date of issue)

Teruo Niitsuma
Teruo Niitsuma
Experimental Evaluation Department Manager
(name and signature or equivalent marking of authorized person)

D00319

YOKOHAMA

ECDoC-Y01

# EC Declaration of Conformity

Manufacturer: THE YOKOHAMA RUBBER CO., LTD.
Address: 2-1, Oiwake, Hiratsuka city, Kanagawa, Japan

Object of declaration

Product: Compressor
Model No.: X44 (C53#18)

conforms with the essential requirements of the EMC Directive 2004/108/EC, based on the following specifications applied;

EU Harmonized standards
EN 61000-6-2:2005
EN 61000-6-4:2007 + A1:2011

Authorized representative in Europe:
YOKOHAMA EUROPE GmbH
Monschauerstrasse 12, D-40549 Düsseldorf, GERMANY

Signed for and on behalf of: THE YOKOHAMA RUBBER CO., LTD.

Signature: _____

Masahiro Iida
General Manager
Tire Quality Assurance Department

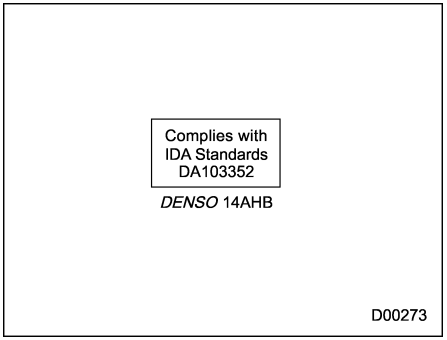
Date of Issue: 26th August, 2013

D00336

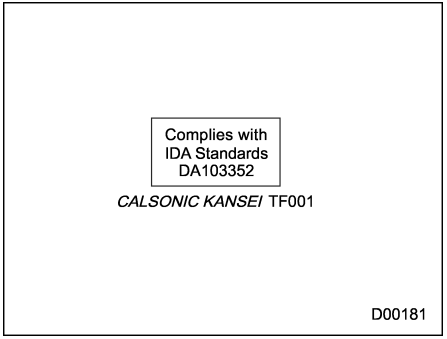
# Technical information

## ■ Singapore models

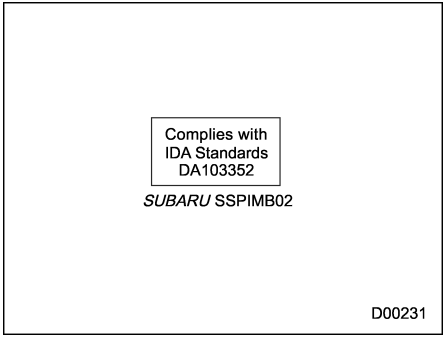
### ▼ Access key



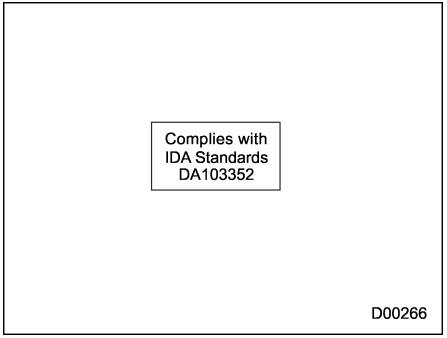

### ▼ Remote keyless entry transmitter



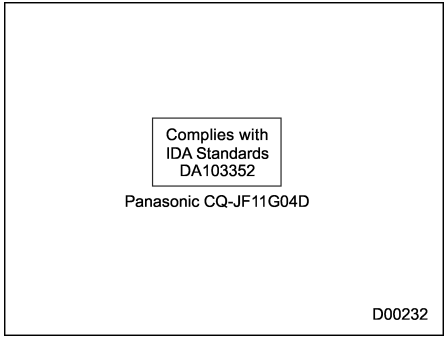

### ▼ Immobilizer for models with “Keyless access with push-button start system”



▼ **Immobilizer for models without "Keyless access with push-button start system"**




▼ **Bluetooth® module**




## ■ Panama models

- Access key
- Keyless access with push-button start system
- Immobilizer for models with "keyless access with push-button start system"
- Immobilizer for models without "keyless access with push-button start system"

FCC ID: Y8PFJ14-2
FCC ID: HYQ14AHC
FCC ID: Y8PSSPIMB02
FCC ID: MOZRI-38BFH

**⚠ CAUTION**

**FCC WARNING**

**Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.**

## NOTE

**This device complies with part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.**

*– CONTINUED –*

## ■ Dominican Republic models

- Immobilizer for models with “keyless access with push-button start system”
- Immobilizer for models without “keyless access with push-button start system”

FCC ID: Y8PSSPIMB02
FCC ID: MOZRI-38BFH

**⚠ CAUTION**

**FCC WARNING**

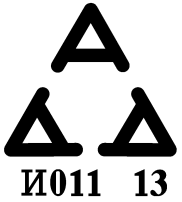
**Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user’s authority to operate the equipment.**

### NOTE

**This device complies with part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.**

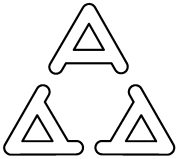
## ■ Serbia models

▼ **Tire pressure monitoring system**




D00263

▼ **Access key**



И011 13

D00274



DENSO 14AHB

D00275

## ■ Indonesia models

**Access key:**

31146/SDPPI/2013
2361

D00276

## ■ Taiwan models

### ▼ Access key

第十二條
經型式認證合格之低功率射頻電機，非經許可，公司、商號或使用者均不得擅自變更頻率、加大功率或變更原設計之特性及功能。

第十四條
低功率射頻電機之使用不得影響飛航安全及干擾合法通信；經發現有干擾現象時，應立即停用，並改善至無干擾時方得繼續使用。
前項合法通信，指依電信法規定作業之無線電通信。
低功率射頻電機須忍受合法通信或工業、科學及醫療用電波輻射性電機設備之干擾。

500631

### ▼ Keyless access with push-button start system

第十二條
經型式認證合格之低功率射頻電機，非經許可，公司、商號或使用者均不得擅自變更頻率、加大功率或變更原設計之特性及功能。

第十四條
低功率射頻電機之使用不得影響飛航安全及干擾合法通信；經發現有干擾現象時，應立即停用，並改善至無干擾時方得繼續使用。
前項合法通信，指依電信法規定作業之無線電通信。
低功率射頻電機須忍受合法通信或工業、科學及醫療用電波輻射性電機設備之干擾。

500631

– CONTINUED –

### ▼ Immobilizer for models with “keyless access with push-button start system”

第十二條
經型式認證合格之低功率射頻電機，非經許可，公司、商號或使用者均不得擅自變更頻率、加大功率或變更原設計之特性及功能。

第十四條
低功率射頻電機之使用不得影響飛航安全及干擾合法通信；經發現有干擾現象時，應立即停用，並改善至無干擾時方得繼續使用。
前項合法通信，指依電信法規定作業之無線電通信。
低功率射頻電機須忍受合法通信或工業、科學及醫療用電波輻射性電機設備之干擾。

500631

### ▼ Immobilizer for models without “keyless access with push-button start system”

第十二條
經型式認證合格之低功率射頻電機，非經許可，公司、商號或使用者均不得擅自變更頻率、加大功率或變更原設計之特性及功能。

第十四條
低功率射頻電機之使用不得影響飛航安全及干擾合法通信；經發現有干擾現象時，應立即停用，並改善至無干擾時方得繼續使用。
前項合法通信，指依電信法規定作業之無線電通信。
低功率射頻電機須忍受合法通信或工業、科學及醫療用電波輻射性電機設備之干擾。

500631

## ■ Jordan models

### ▼ Access key

TRC/LPD/2013/178

D00277

### ▼ Remote keyless entry transmitter

TRC approved the Keyless Transmitter and Receiver.

Model No : TF001
Certificate Number : TRC/LPD/2013/222

Model No : GSREU52
Certificate Number : TRC/LPD/2013/223

D00278

## ■ Argentina models

### ▼ Access key

DENSO
14AHB
CNC H-12307

D00279

### ▼ Remote keyless entry transmitter

Incluye módulo : TRANSMISOR
Marca : SUBARU
Modelo : TF001
CNC H−12945

D00280

## ■ Jamaica models

### ▼ Access key

This product has been Type Approved by Jamaica: SMA-14AHB.

### ▼ Keyless access with push-button start system

This product has been Type Approved by Jamaica: SMA-FJ14-1.

### ▼ Immobilizer for models with “keyless access with push-button start system”

This product has been Type Approved by Jamaica: SMA, Equipment identifier is placed on the product.

### ▼ Immobilizer for models without “keyless access with push-button start system”

This product has been Type Approved by Jamaica: SMA, Equipment identifier is placed on the product.

### ▼ Remote keyless entry transmitter

This product has been Type Approved by Jamaica: SMA-“TF001”.

This product has been Type Approved by Jamaica: SMA-“GSREU52”.

## ■ Commonwealth of Dominica models

- Access key
- Keyless access with push-button start system

The latest “DECLARATION of CONFORMITY” (DoC) is available at the following address:
http://www.globaldenso.com/en/products/oem/index.html

CE

Hereby, DENSO CORPORATION declares that this 14AHB is in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1999/5/EC.

Hereby, FUJI HEAVY INDUSTRIES LTD. declares that this FJ14-1 is in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1999/5/EC.

– CONTINUED –

## ■ Brazil models

### ▼ Access key

Este equipamento está homologado pela ANATEL de acordo com os procedimentos regulamentados pela Resolução 242/2000 e atende aos requisitos técnicos aplicados.

Este equipamento opera em caráter secundário, isto é, não tem direito a proteção contra interferência prejudicial, mesmo de estações do mesmo tipo, e não pode causar interferência a sistemas operando em caráter primário.

D00282




D00281

### ▼ Keyless access with push-button start system

Este equipamento está homologado pela ANATEL de acordo com os procedimentos regulamentados pela Resolução 242/2000 e atende aos requisitos técnicos aplicados.

Este equipamento opera em caráter secundário, isto é, não tem direito a proteção contra interferência prejudicial, mesmo de estações do mesmo tipo, e não pode causar interferência a sistemas operando em caráter primário.

D00282

### ▼ Immobilizer for models with “keyless access with push-button start system”

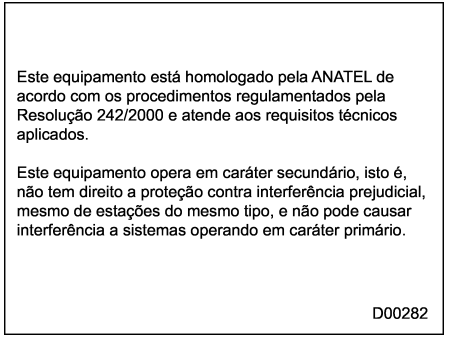
Este equipamento está homologado pela ANATEL de acordo com os procedimentos regulamentados pela Resolução 242/2000 e atende aos requisitos técnicos aplicados.

Este equipamento opera em caráter secundário, isto é, não tem direito a proteção contra interferência prejudicial, mesmo de estações do mesmo tipo, e não pode causar interferência a sistemas operando em caráter primário.

D00282




### ▼ Immobilizer for models without “keyless access with push-button start system”



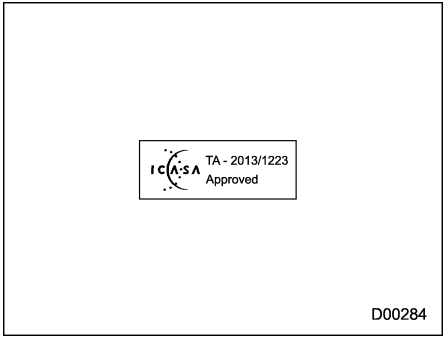




– CONTINUED –

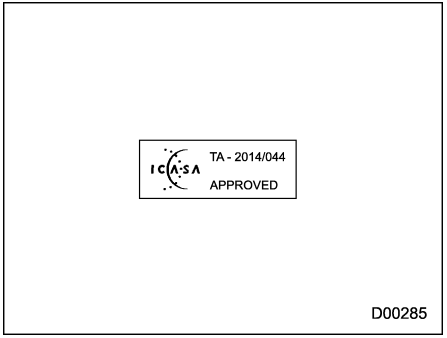
## ■ Republic of South Africa models

▼ **Access key**

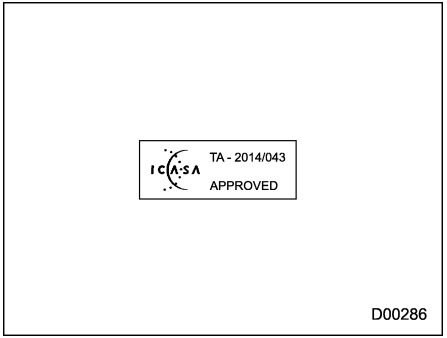



▼ **Remote keyless entry transmitter**

**TF001:**

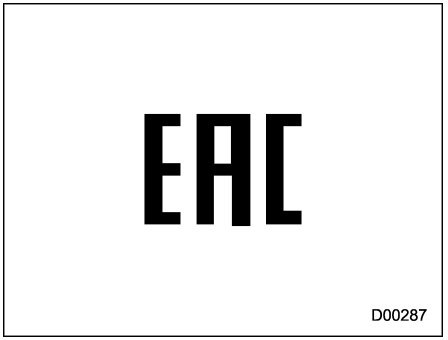



**GSREU52:**




## ■ Russia/Kazakhstan models

**Remote keyless entry transmitter:**




MODEL No: TF001 (Keyless Transmitter)
: GSREU52 (Keyless Receiver)
Manufacturer: Calsonic Kansei Corp.
Country of Production: JAPAN
Contact Information:
http://www.calsonickansei.co.jp
Local Contact Person: Subaru Motor LLC

## ■ Paraguay models

**Remote keyless entry transmitter:**

Model Number: TF001
Approved Number: 2014-01-I-00015
Manufacturer: Calsonic Kansei Corporation.

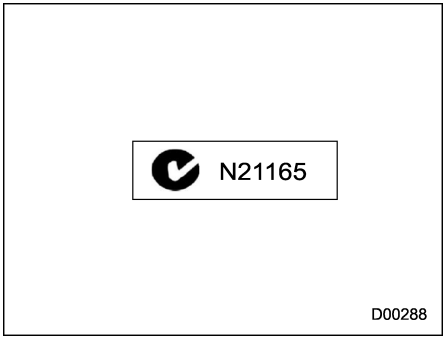
Vendor: Tokyo Motors S.A.
Address: Av. Eusebio Ayala No. 4649 Km. 5 1/2 Asuncion, Paraguay
Contains Transmitter Module Approved by CONATEL.

## ■ Uruguay models

**Remote keyless entry transmitter:**
URSEC approved the Keyless Transmitter TF001.

## ■ Australia/New Zealand models

**Remote keyless entry transmitter:**




## ■ Thailand models

**Remote keyless entry transmitter:**
This telecommunication equipment conforms to NTC technical requirement.

– CONTINUED –

## ■ Israel models

### ▼ Tire pressure monitoring system

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Name of Permit owner: | Schrader Electronics | Telephone:02894483067 | |
| Model:SUBARU HSSI 433Mhz | Manufacturer:Schrader Electronics. Country of Manufacture:United Kingdom | | |
| Type Approval No:51-38706 | | Valid From:2.10.2013 | |
| Permit No:64-08013 | | Valid To:29.9.2018 | |

D00264

## ▼ Remote keyless entry transmitter

Manufacturer: : ALPS ELECTRIC CO., LTD.
Model: : TWB1G762
Country: : Japan

א. השימוש במכשיר הינו על בסיס "משני" ופטור מרשיון הפעלה אלחוטי.
כלומר – לא מוגן מהפרעות וללא הפרעה למערכות אחרות הפועלות כדין.
רק "בפעולת בזק" לשימוש עצמי של הלקוח בלבד, הציוד פטור מרשיון הפעלה אלחוטי.
מתן "שרות בזק" לצד ג' מחייב רשיון מיוחד ממשרד התקשורת.
ב. אסור להחליף את האנטנה המקורית של המכשיר, ולא לעשות בו כל שינוי טכני אחר.

Manufacturer: : ALPS ELECTRIC CO., LTD.
Model: : TWD1G776
Country: : Japan

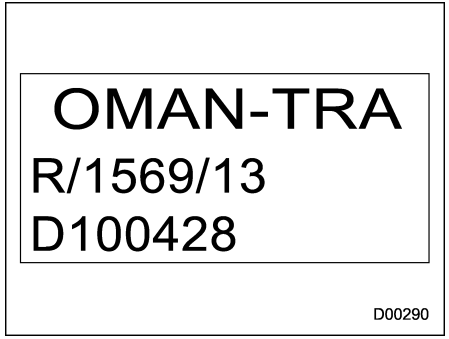
א. השימוש במכשיר הינו על בסיס "משני" ופטור מרשיון הפעלה אלחוטי.
כלומר – לא מוגן מהפרעות וללא הפרעה למערכות אחרות הפועלות כדין.
ב. רק "בפעולת בזק" לשימוש עצמי של הלקוח בלבד, הציוד פטור מרשיון הפעלה אלחוטי.
מתן "שרות בזק" לצד ג' מחייב רשיון מיוחד ממשרד התקשורת.

D00289

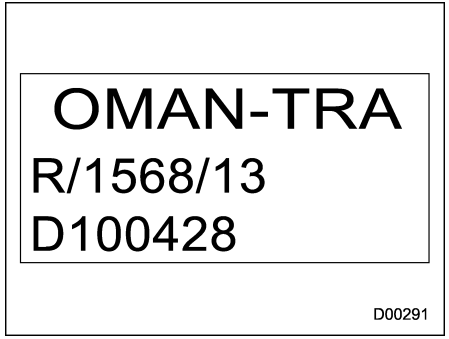
– CONTINUED –

## ■ Oman models

**Remote keyless entry transmitter:**



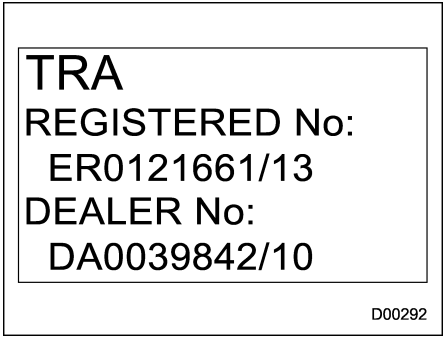

**Model No.: TF001**



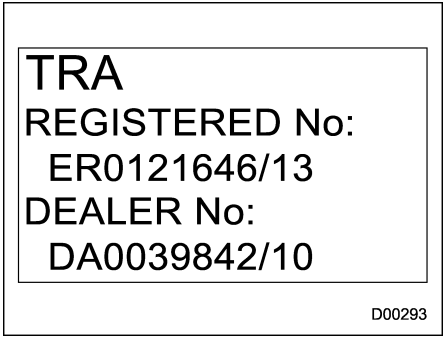

**Model No.: GSREU52**

## ■ UAE models

**Remote keyless entry transmitter:**



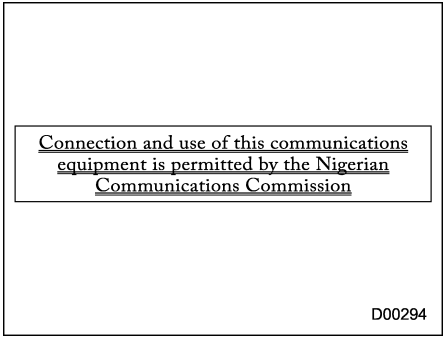

**TF001**




**GSREU52**

## ■ Nigeria models

**Remote keyless entry transmitter:**



# Declaration of conformity in accordance with the Machinery Directive 2006/42/EC

## ■ Jack

MANUFACTURERS DECLARATION
OF CONFORMITY

GOODMAN

For

CE

Pantagraph Car Jack

Models: PJF900 & PJF1000

Manufactured by
Taihei Industrial Co., Ltd.
No.49-1, Kagekatsu-Cho.
Fushimi-ku,
Kyoto 612-8307
Japan

**Means of Conformity**
The Product is in conformity with EC law as approximated by the following directives:
Machinery Directive 2006/42/EC based on Technical Documentation File No. 2185 Issue 1, Revision 0, August 2013

**Standards used as guidance**
**Machinery Directive**

**ISO12100: 2010**
**Limited reference to EN 1494:2000/A1: 2008**
**Refer to complete listing in TF**

**Technical File compiled from manufacturers documentation and held in the EU, on behalf of the manufacturer by**
TRaC Global Ltd
100 Frobisher Business Park,
Leigh Slinton Road, Malvern,
Worcestershire, WR14 1BX
United Kingdom

**Signature of Responsible Person:** **Mr. Masato Nasu**
**President**

**MACHINE SERIAL No.**

**Date:** **28th August 2013**

**Certificate No.** **TRA-015417-01 DofC Issue 1**

D00265

**A**
Abbreviation ..... 2
ABS (Anti-lock Brake System) ..... 7-28
Warning light ..... 3-19
Access key ..... 2-8
Warning indicator ..... 3-25
Accessories ..... 5-2, 11-49
Accessory power outlet ..... 6-8
Additional information for Europe ..... 8-24
Air cleaner element ..... 11-24
Air conditioner
Automatic climate control system ..... 4-4
Manual climate control system ..... 4-5
Air filtration system ..... 4-9
Airflow selection ..... 4-5
All-Wheel Drive warning light ..... 3-25
Aluminum wheel ..... 11-40
Cleaning ..... 10-4
Antenna system ..... 5-2
FM reception ..... 5-2
Printed antenna ..... 5-2
Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) ..... 7-28
Appendix ..... 5-107
Certification ..... 5-107
Certification for Paraguay models ..... 5-108
Certification for UAE models ..... 5-107
Armrest ..... 1-15
Ashtray ..... 6-9
AT OIL TEMP warning light ..... 3-17
Audio
Antenna system ..... 5-2
Set ..... 5-3
Audio set ..... 5-3
Type A audio set (for Europe) ..... 5-4
Type B audio set (except for Europe) ..... 5-5
Type C audio set (for Australia) ..... 5-6
Audio/visual remote controls ..... 5-23
Steering switches ..... 5-23
Auto on/off headlights ..... 3-47
Sensor ..... 3-49
Auto Start Stop system ..... 7-49
Indicator ..... 3-35
OFF indicator ..... 3-34
Warning indicator ..... 3-34
Automatic climate control system ..... 4-4
Automatic headlight beam leveler ..... 3-52
Warning light ..... 3-25
Automatic Locking Retractor/Emergency Locking Retractor (ALR/ELR) ..... 1-17
Automatic rain sensing windshield wipers ..... 3-59
Sensor ..... 3-60
Sensor sensitivity control ..... 3-60

**B**
Basic information before use ..... 5-7
Connecting and disconnecting a USB memory/portable device ..... 5-8
Entering letters and numbers/list screen operation ..... 5-10
Initial screen ..... 5-7
Loading and unloading a disc ..... 5-8
Screen adjustment ..... 5-12
Touch screen gestures ..... 5-9

Touch screen operation ..... 5-10
Basic operation ..... 5-16
Some basics ..... 5-16
Battery ..... 11-46
Disposal and recycling ..... 8
Drainage prevention function ..... 2-6
Jump starting ..... 9-20
Replacement (access key) ..... 11-61
Replacement (transmitter) ..... 11-62
Bluetooth® settings ..... 5-74
Registering/connecting Bluetooth® device ..... 5-74
Setting Bluetooth details ..... 5-77
Booster seat ..... 1-38
Bottle holder ..... 6-7
Brake
Assist ..... 7-27
Booster ..... 7-26, 11-31
Disc ..... 12-13
Fluid ..... 11-28, 12-11
Pad and lining ..... 11-33
Parking ..... 7-36
Pedal ..... 11-31
System ..... 7-26
Brake pedal
Free play ..... 11-31
Reserve distance ..... 11-32
Brake system ..... 7-26
Warning light ..... 3-21
Braking ..... 7-26
Tips ..... 7-26
Breaking-in of new brake pads and linings ..... 11-33
Bulb
Chart ..... 12-18
Replacing ..... 11-49

C
Cargo area
Cover ..... 6-13
Light ..... 6-3, 11-59
Tie-down hooks ..... 6-17
Catalytic converter ..... 8-3
Center
Console ..... 6-5
Changing
Coolant ..... 11-23
Flat tire ..... 9-7
Oil and oil filter ..... 11-19
Charge warning light ..... 3-16
Checking
Brake pedal free play ..... 11-31
Brake pedal reserve distance ..... 11-32
Clutch function ..... 11-32
Clutch pedal free play ..... 11-32
Coolant level ..... 11-23
Fluid level (brake fluid) ..... 11-28
Fluid level (clutch fluid) ..... 11-30
Fluid level (washer fluid) ..... 11-41
Oil level (engine oil) ..... 11-16
Child restraint systems ..... 1-26
Installation of a booster seat ..... 1-38
Installation with seatbelt ..... 1-33
ISOFIX anchor bars ..... 1-39

Top tether anchorages ..... 1-42
Child safety ..... 4
Locks ..... 2-26
Chime
Key ..... 3-4
Light ..... 3-47
Seatbelt ..... 3-13
Cleaning
Aluminum wheels ..... 10-4
Interior ..... 10-5
Ventilation grille ..... 4-8
Climate control system ..... 4-3
Automatic ..... 4-4
Manual ..... 4-5
Clock ..... 3-35
Clutch
Fluid ..... 11-30, 12-11
Pedal ..... 11-32
Coat hook ..... 6-11
Command list ..... 5-104
Console ..... 6-5
Continuously variable transmission
Fluid ..... 11-28, 12-11
Oil temperature warning light (AT OIL TEMP) ..... 3-17
Coolant ..... 11-23, 12-11
Cooling system ..... 11-22
Corrosion protection ..... 10-4
Crossbars ..... 8-16
Cruise control ..... 7-45
Indicator ..... 3-32
Set indicator ..... 3-32
Cup holder ..... 6-6
Front passenger's ..... 6-6
Rear passenger's ..... 6-7

**D**

Daytime running light system ..... 3-50
Declaration of conformity in accordance with the radio and telecommunications terminal equipment directive 1999/5/EC ..... 13-5
Defogger ..... 3-63
Defrosting ..... 4-7
Deicer ..... 3-63
Diesel fuel ..... 7-3
Diesel particulate filter ..... 8-4
Warning indicator ..... 3-33
Differential gear oil
Front ..... 11-28, 12-9
Rear ..... 11-28, 12-9
Dimensions ..... 12-2
Disc brake pad wear warning indicators ..... 7-27
Dome light ..... 6-2, 11-58
Door
Locks ..... 2-4
Open indicator light ..... 3-24
Step light ..... 11-59
Double locking system ..... 2-24
Double trip meter ..... 3-9
Drive belts ..... 11-27
Driving
All-Wheel Drive vehicle ..... 8-6
All-Wheel Drive warning light ..... 3-25

Car phone/cell phone ..... 7
Drinking ..... 6
Drugs ..... 6
Foreign countries ..... 8-5
Off road ..... 8-8
Pets ..... 7
Snowy and icy roads ..... 8-12
Tips ..... 7-16, 7-22, 8-2
Tired or sleepy ..... 7
Winter ..... 8-10

**E**

ECO gauge ..... 3-12
Electrical system ..... 12-12
Electronic Brake Force Distribution (EBD) system ..... 7-29
Warning ..... 3-22
Electronic parking brake ..... 7-36
Automatic release function by accelerator pedal ..... 7-38
Hill Holder ..... 7-38
Warning ..... 3-22, 7-40
Emergency Locking Retractor (ELR) ..... 1-16
EN590 ..... 7-3
Engine
Compartment overview ..... 11-13
Coolant ..... 11-23, 12-11
Exhaust gas (carbon monoxide) ..... 5, 8-2
Hood ..... 11-11
Low oil level warning indicator ..... 3-17
Oil ..... 11-16, 12-5
Overheating ..... 9-24
Starting & stopping ..... 7-7, 7-10
Exterior care ..... 10-2

**F**

Flat tire repair kit ..... 9-12
Technical data ..... 9-19
Flat tires ..... 9-7
Floor mat ..... 6-10
Fluid level
Brake ..... 11-28
Clutch ..... 11-30
Continuously variable transmission ..... 11-28
Fog light ..... 3-55
Bulb ..... 11-51, 12-18
Indicator light ..... 3-33
Switch ..... 3-55
Folding mirror switch ..... 3-67
Front
Differential gear oil ..... 11-28, 12-9
Fog light ..... 3-55, 11-51, 12-18
Fog light indicator light ..... 3-33
Fog light switch ..... 3-55
Seatbelt pretensioners ..... 1-24
Turn signal light ..... 11-51
Front fog light ..... 3-55
Bulb ..... 11-51, 12-18
Indicator light ..... 3-33
Switch ..... 3-55
Front seats ..... 1-2
Forward and backward adjustment ..... 1-3
Head restraint adjustment ..... 1-8
Power seat ..... 1-4

Reclining ..... 1-4
Seat height adjustment (driver's seat) ..... 1-4
Fuel ..... 7-3, 12-4
Consumption and $CO_2$-emissions (EU only) ..... 13-4
Consumption indicator ..... 3-35
Economy hints ..... 8-2
Filler lid and cap ..... 7-4
Filter warning indicator ..... 3-24
Gauge ..... 3-10
Fuel filter warning light (diesel engine models) ..... 3-24
Fuses ..... 11-47
Fuses and circuits ..... 12-14

**G**

Glove box ..... 6-4

**H**

Hazard warning flasher ..... 3-8, 9-2
Head restraint adjustment
Front seat ..... 1-8
Rear seat ..... 1-11
Headlight ..... 3-47
Beam leveler ..... 3-52
Bulb wattage ..... 12-18
Control switch ..... 3-47
Flasher ..... 3-50
Indicator light ..... 3-33
OFF delay setting ..... 3-48
Washer ..... 3-65
High beam indicator light ..... 3-32
High/low beam change (dimmer) ..... 3-49
Hill descent control ..... 7-33, 7-35
Indicator ..... 3-33
Hill Holder ..... 7-38
Indicator light ..... 3-23
Switch ..... 7-39
Hill start assist ..... 7-41, 7-42
To activate/deactivate ..... 7-42
Hill start assist (MT models) ..... 7-41
To activate/deactivate ..... 7-42
Hook
Coat ..... 6-11
Convenient ..... 6-12
Convenient tie-down ..... 6-17
Shopping bag ..... 6-12
Towing and tie-down ..... 9-25
Horn ..... 3-68
Hose and connections ..... 11-22

**I**

Ignition switch ..... 3-3
Light ..... 3-4
Illumination brightness control ..... 3-51
Immobilizer ..... 2-3
Indicator light ..... 3-30
Indicator light
Auto Start Stop ..... 3-35
Auto Start Stop OFF ..... 3-34
Cruise control ..... 3-32
Cruise control set ..... 3-32
Door open ..... 3-24
Front fog light ..... 3-33

Headlight ..... 3-33
High beam ..... 3-32
Hill descent control ..... 3-33
Hill Holder ..... 3-23
Immobilizer ..... 3-30
Preheating ..... 3-33
Rear fog light ..... 3-33
Rear seatbelt ..... 3-14
Select lever/Gear position ..... 3-31
SI-DRIVE ..... 3-31
Turn signal ..... 3-32
Vehicle Dynamics Control OFF ..... 3-21
Vehicle Dynamics Control operation ..... 3-21
X-mode ..... 3-33
Information display ..... 3-35
Inside mirror ..... 3-66
Installation of accessories ..... 5-2
Interior lights ..... 6-2
ISOFIX anchor bars ..... 1-39

**J**

Jack-up point ..... 9-7
Jump starting ..... 9-20

**K**

Key ..... 2-2
Number plate ..... 2-2
Reminder chime ..... 3-4
Replacement ..... 2-3
Keyless access entry function ..... 2-12
Keyless access with push-button start system ..... 2-8
Disabling keyless access functions ..... 2-16
Locking and unlocking doors ..... 2-12
Opening rear gate ..... 2-14
Opening trunk ..... 2-14
Warning chimes and warning indicator ..... 3-25
When access key does not operate properly ..... 9-29
Keyless entry system ..... 2-21

**L**

Leather seat materials ..... 10-5
License plate light ..... 11-57
Light
Back-up (Outback) ..... 11-56
Back-up/Rear fog (Sedan) ..... 11-55
Cargo area ..... 6-3, 11-59
Control switch ..... 3-47
Daytime running ..... 3-50
Dome ..... 6-2, 11-58
Door step ..... 11-59
Front fog ..... 3-55, 11-51
Front position ..... 3-47
Ignition switch ..... 3-4
License plate ..... 11-57
Map ..... 6-2, 11-58
Rear combination ..... 11-53
Rear fog ..... 3-56, 11-55, 11-56
Rear turn signal ..... 11-53
Trunk ..... 11-59
Turn signal ..... 3-50, 11-51, 11-53
Vanity mirror ..... 6-4, 11-58
Loading your vehicle ..... 8-14

Low fuel warning light ..... 3-24
Low tire pressure warning light ..... 3-18

**M**
Maintenance
- Precautions ..... 11-7
- Schedule ..... 11-3
- Seatbelt ..... 1-23
- Tips ..... 11-9
- Tools ..... 9-3

Malfunction indicator light (Check Engine light) ..... 3-16
Manual
- Climate control system ..... 4-5
- Mode (continuously variable transmission) ..... 7-20
- Seat ..... 1-3
- Transmission ..... 7-14
- Transmission oil ..... 11-27, 12-9

Map light ..... 6-2, 11-58
Media operation ..... 5-44
- AUX ..... 5-68
- Bluetooth audio ..... 5-61
- CD ..... 5-44
- iPod ..... 5-54
- USB memory ..... 5-49

Meters and gauges ..... 3-8
Mirror defogger ..... 3-63
Mirrors ..... 3-66

**N**
New vehicle break-in driving ..... 8-2

**O**
Odometer ..... 3-9
Off road driving ..... 8-8
Oil filter ..... 11-19
Oil level
- Engine ..... 11-16
- Manual transmission ..... 11-27
- Warning light ..... 3-17

Oil pressure warning light ..... 3-17
Other settings ..... 5-13
Outside
- Mirror defogger ..... 3-63
- Mirrors ..... 3-66
- Temperature indicator ..... 3-36

Overhead console ..... 6-5
Overheating engine ..... 9-24

**P**
Parking ..... 7-36
- Brake ..... 7-36
- Tips ..... 7-40

Periodic inspections ..... 8-5
Petrol fuel ..... 7-3
Phone operation (Hands-free system for cellular phones) ..... 5-80
- Calling on the Bluetooth phone ..... 5-85
- Quick reference ..... 5-80
- Receiving on the Bluetooth phone ..... 5-92
- Some basics ..... 5-82
- Talking on the Bluetooth phone ..... 5-93

PIN Code Access ..... 2-18

Pocket ..... 6-6
Power
Door locking switch ..... 2-7
Outlets ..... 6-8
Outside mirrors ..... 3-67
Rear gate ..... 2-33, 9-32
Seat ..... 1-4
Steering ..... 7-25
Steering warning light ..... 3-23
Windows ..... 2-27
Precautions against vehicle modification ..... 1-26, 1-75
Preheating indicator light ..... 3-33
Preparing to drive ..... 7-7
Priming pump ..... 9-33, 11-15
Printed antenna ..... 5-2
Push-button
Ignition switch ..... 3-5
Starting and stopping engine ..... 7-10

**R**

Radio operation ..... 5-34
AM/FM radio ..... 5-34
Rear
Combination lights ..... 11-53
Differential gear oil ..... 11-28, 12-9
Fog light switch ..... 3-56
Gate ..... 2-32
Turn signal light ..... 11-53
Rear fog light ..... 3-56, 11-56
Indicator light ..... 3-33
Rear seat ..... 1-11
Armrest ..... 1-15
Folding down ..... 1-14
Head restraint adjustment ..... 1-11
Reclining ..... 1-13
Rear view camera ..... 6-18
Rear window
Defogger ..... 3-63
Wiper and washer switch ..... 3-62
Wiper blades ..... 11-44
Recommended
Brake fluid ..... 12-11
Clutch fluid ..... 12-11
Continuously variable transmission fluid ..... 12-11
Engine oil ..... 12-5
Front differential gear oil ..... 12-9
Manual transmission oil ..... 12-9
Rear differential gear oil ..... 12-9
Spark plugs ..... 12-12
Refueling ..... 7-4
Remote keyless entry system ..... 2-21
Replacement
Brake pad and lining ..... 11-33
Wiper blades ..... 11-42
Replacing
Access key battery ..... 11-61
Air cleaner element ..... 11-24
Remote keyless entry transmitter battery ..... 11-62
Replacing bulbs ..... 11-49, 12-18
Back-up light (Outback) ..... 11-56
Back-up light/Rear fog light (Sedan) ..... 11-55
Cargo area light ..... 11-59

Dome light ..... 11-58
Door step light ..... 11-59
Front fog light ..... 11-51
Front turn signal light ..... 11-51
Halogen headlight ..... 11-50
License plate light ..... 11-57
Map light ..... 11-58
Rear combination light ..... 11-53
Rear fog light (Outback) ..... 11-56
Rear turn signal light ..... 11-53
Trunk light ..... 11-59
Vanity mirror light ..... 11-58
Rocking the vehicle ..... 8-14
Roof rack ..... 8-15
Roof rails with integrated cross bars ..... 8-16
Running out of fuel ..... 9-33

**S**

Safety
Precautions when driving ..... 3
Symbol ..... 2
Warnings ..... 2
Sealing flat tire ..... 9-10
Flat tire repair kit ..... 9-12
How to seal ..... 9-14
Safety precautions ..... 9-10
Seat
Fabric ..... 10-5
Front ..... 1-2
Heater ..... 1-9
Height adjustment ..... 1-4
Memory function ..... 1-5
Power ..... 1-4
Rear ..... 1-11
Seatbelt ..... 3, 1-15
Fastening ..... 1-17
Maintenance ..... 1-23
Pretensioners ..... 1-24
Safety tips ..... 1-15
Warning light and chime ..... 3-13
Security
Immobilizer ..... 2-3
Select lever
Position indicator ..... 3-31
Shift lock function ..... 7-19
Setup ..... 5-95
Phone settings ..... 5-95
Shopping bag hook ..... 6-12
SI-DRIVE ..... 7-22
Indicator ..... 3-31
Snow tires ..... 8-13, 11-34
Snowy and icy roads ..... 8-12
Spark plugs ..... 11-27, 12-12
Specifications ..... 12-2
Speed limit, maximum torque and maximum power at rpm (Middle East models only) ..... 13-3
Speedometer ..... 3-8
SRS airbag (Supplemental Restraint System airbag) ... 3, 1-45
SRS airbag system
Monitors ..... 1-73
Servicing ..... 1-74
Warning light ..... 3-15

Starting & stopping engine ..... 7-7, 7-10
Steering wheel
Power..... 7-25
Tilt/telescopic..... 3-68
Stop light ..... 11-53
Storage compartment ..... 6-4
Sun shade ..... 2-41
Sun visors..... 6-4
Sunroof..... 2-39
Supplemental Restraint System airbag (SRS)..... 1-45
Synthetic leather upholstery ..... 10-6

**T**
Tachometer ..... 3-10
Temperature gauge ..... 3-11
Temperature warning light
AT OIL TEMP ..... 3-17
Temporary spare tire ..... 9-2
Tether (child restraint system)..... 1-42
Tie-down hooks ..... 9-25
Tips for operating the audio/visual system..... 5-25
Operating information ..... 5-25
Tire ..... 11-33, 12-12
Chains..... 8-13
Inspection ..... 11-35
Pressures and wear ..... 11-35
Replacement ..... 11-39
Rotation..... 11-38
Size and pressure..... 12-12
Types ..... 11-33
Tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS)..... 7-43, 9-19, 11-34
TPMS mode setting ..... 7-44
Warning light..... 3-18
Tires and wheels ..... 11-33
Tools..... 9-3
Top tether anchorages ..... 1-42
Towing ..... 9-24
All wheels on the ground..... 9-28
Flat-bed truck..... 9-27
Hooks ..... 9-25
Weight ..... 8-20
Trailer
Hitch..... 8-21
Towing ..... 8-20
Towing tips ..... 8-22
Trip meter..... 3-9
Trunk lid ..... 2-31, 9-31
Trunk light ..... 11-59
Turn signal
Indicator lights..... 3-32
Lever ..... 3-50

**U**
Under-floor storage compartment..... 6-17
Useful information..... 5-32
STARLINK (for Europe)..... 5-32

**V**
Vanity mirror ..... 6-4
Light ..... 11-58
Vehicle
Identification ..... 12-21

Symbols ..... 3
Vehicle Dynamics Control
OFF indicator light ..... 3-21
OFF switch ..... 7-32
Operation indicator light ..... 3-21
System ..... 7-30
Warning light ..... 3-20
Ventilator ..... 4-2
Voice command system operation ..... 5-101
Voice command system ..... 5-101

**W**
Warning and indicator lights ..... 3-12
Warning chimes
Keyless access with push-button start system ..... 3-25
Seatbelt ..... 3-13
Warning light
ABS ..... 3-19
Access key ..... 3-26
All-Wheel Drive ..... 3-25
AT OIL TEMP ..... 3-17
Auto Start Stop ..... 3-34
Automatic headlight beam leveler ..... 3-25
Brake system ..... 3-21
Charge ..... 3-16
Diesel particulate filter ..... 3-33
Electronic parking brake ..... 3-22
Engine low oil level ..... 3-17
Fuel filter ..... 3-24
Keyless access with push-button start system ..... 3-25
Low fuel ..... 3-24
Low tire pressure ..... 3-18
Oil pressure ..... 3-17
Over-rev ..... 3-34
Power steering ..... 3-23
Seatbelt ..... 3-13
SRS airbag system ..... 3-15
Vehicle Dynamics Control ..... 3-20
Windshield washer fluid ..... 3-24
Warranties ..... 1
Washing ..... 10-2
Waxing and polishing ..... 10-3
Wear indicators ..... 11-38
What to do if... ..... 5-97
Troubleshooting ..... 5-97
Wheel
Aluminum ..... 11-40
Balance ..... 11-37
Nut tightening torque ..... 12-12
Replacement ..... 11-40
Windows ..... 2-27
Windshield
Washer fluid ..... 11-41
Wiper and washer switches ..... 3-59
Wiper blades ..... 11-42
Wiper deicer ..... 3-63
Winter
Diesel ..... 7-3
Driving ..... 8-10
Tires ..... 8-13, 11-34
Wiper and washer ..... 3-57
Wiper deicer ..... 3-63

**X**
X-mode..... 7-33
Indicator..... 3-33

**Y**
Year of manufacture (Middle East models only) ..... 13-2

# GAS STATION REFERENCE

## ■ Fuel:

### ▼ Petrol engine models

#### ▽ Australia models

Use only **unleaded petrol** with **91 Octane or higher**. This octane rating is the Research Octane number. For optimum engine performance and driveability, it is recommended that you use premium grade unleaded petrol.

#### ▽ Other models

Use only **unleaded petrol**. The use of unleaded petrol with **95 Octane or higher** is recommended. This octane rating is the Research Octane number. If unleaded petrol with 95 Octane or higher is not available, unleaded petrol with 90 Octane or higher may be used.

### ▼ Diesel engine models

Use only **diesel** fuel with a specification of **EN590 or an equivalent**.

## ■ Fuel capacity:

60 liters (15.9 US gal, 13.2 Imp gal)

## ■ Engine oil:

Always use the SUBARU approved engine oil. For further details, please contact your SUBARU dealer.
If the approved engine oil is unavailable, use the alternative engine oil described as follows.

### ▼ Petrol engine models

Use only the following oils.

- API classification SN with the words “RESOURCE CONSERVING”
- or ILSAC GF-5, which can be identified with the ILSAC certification mark (Starburst mark)
- or ACEA specification A3 or A5

For the complete viscosity requirements, refer to “Engine oil” ☞12-5.

### ▼ Diesel engine models

Use only ACEA specification C2 or C3.

For the complete viscosity requirements, refer to “Diesel engine models” ☞12-8.

## ■ Engine oil capacity:

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Petrol engine models | 2.5 L models | 4.8 liters (5.1 US qt, 4.2 Imp qt) |
| | 3.6 L models | 6.5 liters (6.9 US qt, 5.7 Imp qt) |
| Diesel engine models | | 5.9 liters (6.2 US qt, 5.2 Imp qt) |

The indicated oil quantity is only a guideline and is estimated based on a case when the engine oil is changed with an oil filter. After refilling the engine with oil, the oil level should be checked using an oil level gauge. For more details about maintenance and service, refer to “Engine oil” ☞11-16.

## ■ Cold tire pressure:

See the label located under the driver’s door latch.